This page intentionally left blank
Cognitive Psychology

ROBERT J. STERNBERG
Oklahoma State University

KARIN STERNBERG
Oklahoma State University

with contributions of the
Investigating Cognitive Psychology boxes by

JEFF MIO
California State University–Pomona
## Contents in Brief

| CHAPTER 1 | Introduction to Cognitive Psychology | 1 |
| CHAPTER 2 | Cognitive Neuroscience | 41 |
| CHAPTER 3 | Visual Perception | 84 |
| CHAPTER 4 | Attention and Consciousness | 135 |
| CHAPTER 5 | Memory: Models and Research Methods | 185 |
| CHAPTER 6 | Memory Processes | 228 |
| CHAPTER 7 | The Landscape of Memory: Mental Images, Maps, and Propositions | 269 |
| CHAPTER 8 | The Organization of Knowledge in the Mind | 319 |
| CHAPTER 9 | Language | 359 |
| CHAPTER 10 | Language in Context | 401 |
| CHAPTER 11 | Problem Solving and Creativity | 442 |
| CHAPTER 12 | Decision Making and Reasoning | 487 |
| Glossary | 530 |
| References | 538 |
| Name Index | 593 |
| Subject Index | 603 |
## Contents

### CHAPTER 1

**Introduction to Cognitive Psychology** 1
- Believe It or Not: Now You See It, Now You Don’t 2

Cognitive Psychology Defined 3
- Philosophical Antecedents of Psychology: Rationalism versus Empiricism 6
- Psychological Antecedents of Cognitive Psychology 7
  - Early Dialectics in the Psychology of Cognition 7
- Practical Applications of Cognitive Psychology: Pragmatism 9
  - It’s Only What You Can See That Counts: From Associationism to Behaviorism 11
- Believe It or Not: Scientific Progress!? 12
  - The Whole Is More Than the Sum of Its Parts: Gestalt Psychology 13

Emergence of Cognitive Psychology 13
- Early Role of Psychobiology 14
- Add a Dash of Technology: Engineering, Computation, and Applied Cognitive Psychology 14

Cognition and Intelligence 17
- What Is Intelligence? 17
- Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Intelligence 17
  - Three Cognitive Models of Intelligence 18

Research Methods in Cognitive Psychology 22
- Goals of Research 22
- Distinctive Research Methods 23
- In the Lab of Henry L. Roediger 24
- Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Self-Reports 32

Fundamental Ideas in Cognitive Psychology 34
Key Themes in Cognitive Psychology 36
Summary 38
Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions 39
Key Terms 40
Media Resources 40

### CHAPTER 2

**Cognitive Neuroscience** 41
- Believe It or Not: Does Your Brain Use Less Power Than Your Desk Lamp? 42

Cognition in the Brain: The Anatomy and Mechanisms of the Brain 43
- Gross Anatomy of the Brain: Forebrain, Midbrain, Hindbrain 43
- In the Lab of Martha Farah 47
  - Cerebral Cortex and Localization of Function 51
**CHAPTER 4**

**Attention and Consciousness  135**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Believe It or Not: Does Paying Attention Enable You to Make Better Decisions?</th>
<th>136</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Nature of Attention and Consciousness</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attention</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attending to Signals over the Short and Long Terms</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search: Actively Looking</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective Attention</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Attenuation Model</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Divided Attention</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Dividing Your Attention</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Believe It or Not: Are You Productive When You’re Multitasking?</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factors That Influence Our Ability to Pay Attention</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroscience and Attention: A Network Model</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intelligence and Attention</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When Our Attention Fails Us</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder (ADHD)</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change Blindness and Inattentional Blindness</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spatial Neglect—One Half of the World Goes Amiss</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dealing with an Overwhelming World—Habituation and Adaptation</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practical Applications of Cognitive Psychology: Overcoming Boredom</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic and Controlled Processes in Attention</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic and Controlled Processes</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the Lab of John F. Kihlstrom</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Does Automatization Occur?</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatization in Everyday Life</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mistakes We Make in Automatic Processes</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 7
The Landscape of Memory: Mental Images, Maps, and Propositions

Believe It or Not: City Maps of Music for the Blind

Mental Representation of Knowledge

Communicating Knowledge: Pictures versus Words

Dual-Code Theory: Images and Symbols

In the Lab of Stephen Kosslyn

Storing Knowledge as Abstract Concepts: Propositional Theory

Do Propositional Theory and Imagery Hold Up to Their Promises?

Mental Manipulations of Images

Principles of Visual Imagery

Neuroscience and Functional Equivalence

Mental Rotations

In the Lab of Elizabeth Loftus

The Effect of Context on Memory

The Constructive Nature of Memory

Autobiographical Memory

Believe It or Not: Caught in the Past!!

Memory Distortions

In the Lab of Elizabeth Loftus

The Effect of Context on Memory

Key Themes

Summary

Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

Key Terms

Media Resources
Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Image Scaling 294
Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Image Scanning 295
Examining Objects: Image Scanning 296
Representational Neglect 298
Synthesizing Images and Propositions 299
Do Experimenters’ Expectations Influence Experiment Outcomes? 299
Johnson-Laird’s Mental Models 301
Neuroscience: Evidence for Multiple Codes 304
Spatial Cognition and Cognitive Maps 308
Of Rats, Bees, Pigeons, and Humans 308
Practical Applications of Cognitive Psychology: Dual Codes 308
Rules of Thumb for Using Our Mental Maps: Heuristics 310
Believe It or Not: Memory Test? Don’t Compete with Chimpanzees! 311
Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Mental Maps 314
Creating Maps from What You Hear: Text Maps 314
Key Themes 316
Summary 316
Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions 318
Key Terms 318
Media Resources 318

CHAPTER 8
The Organization of Knowledge in the Mind 319
Believe It or Not: There Is a Savant in All of Us 320
Declarative versus Procedural Knowledge 321
Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Testing Your Declarative and Procedural Knowledge 321
Organization of Declarative Knowledge 322
Concepts and Categories 323
Believe It or Not: Some Numbers Are Odd, and Some Are Odder 328
Semantic-Network Models 332
Schematic Representations 336
Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Scripts—The Doctor 338
Practical Applications of Cognitive Psychology: Scripts in Your Everyday Life 339
Representations of How We Do Things: Procedural Knowledge 340
The “Production” of Procedural Knowledge 340
Nondeclarative Knowledge 342
Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Procedural Knowledge 342
Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Priming 343
Integrative Models for Representing Declarative and Nondeclarative Knowledge 344
Combining Representations: ACT-R 344
Parallel Processing: The Connectionist Model 348
How Domain General or Domain Specific Is Cognition? 354
CHAPTER 10
Language in Context 401
 Believe It or Not: Is It Possible to Count Without Words for Numbers?  402
 Language and Thought 403
 Differences among Languages  403
 Believe It or Not: Do You See Colors to Your Left Differently than Colors to Your Right?  408
 In the Lab of Keith Rayner  411
 Bilingualism and Dialects  412
 Slips of the Tongue  418
 Metaphorical Language  419
 Language in a Social Context  421
 Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Language in Different Contexts  422
 Speech Acts  423
 Characteristics of Successful Conversations  426
 Gender and Language  426
 Practical Applications of Cognitive Psychology: Improving Your Communication with Others  429
 Do Animals Have Language?  429
 Neuropsychology of Language  432
 Brain Structures Involved in Language  432
 Aphasia  436
 Autism  438
 Key Themes  439
 Summary  440
 Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions  441
 Key Terms  441
 Media Resources  441

CHAPTER 11
Problem Solving and Creativity  442
 Believe It or Not: Can Novices Have An Advantage Over Experts?  443
 The Problem-Solving Cycle  444
 Types of Problems  447
 Well-Structured Problems  447
 Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Move Problems  447
 Ill-Structured Problems and the Role of Insight  454
 Obstacles and Aids to Problem Solving  460
 Mental Sets, Entrenchment, and Fixation  460
 Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Luchins’s Water-Jar Problems  461
Inductive Reasoning 519
What Is Inductive Reasoning? 519
Causal Inferences 521
Categorical Inferences 521
Reasoning by Analogy 522

An Alternative View of Reasoning 523
Neuroscience of Reasoning 524
Investigating Cognitive Psychology: When There Is No “Right” Choice 525

Key Themes 526
Summary 527
Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions 528
Key Terms 528
Media Resources 529

Glossary 530
References 538
Name Index 593
Subject Index 603
To the Instructor

Welcome to the Sixth Edition of *Cognitive Psychology*. This edition is now coauthored by Karin Sternberg, PhD. As you will see, this edition underwent a major revision. We reorganized and meticulously revised all chapters with the goal of providing an even more comprehensible text that integrates the latest research but also retains students’ interest by providing more examples from other areas of research and from the real world.

**What Are the Goals of this Book?**

Cognitive psychologists study a wide range of psychological phenomena, such as perception, learning, memory, and thinking. In addition, cognitive psychologists study seemingly less cognitively oriented phenomena, such as emotion and motivation. In fact, almost any topic of psychological interest may be studied from a cognitive perspective. In this textbook, we describe some of the preliminary answers to questions asked by researchers in the main areas of cognitive psychology. The goals of this book are to:

- present the field of cognitive psychology in a comprehensive but engaging manner;
- integrate the presentation of the field under the general banner of human intelligence; and
- interweave throughout the text key themes and key ideas that permeate cognitive psychology.

**Our Mission in Revising the Text**

A number of goals guided us through revising *Cognitive Psychology*. In particular we decided to:

- make the text more accessible and understandable;
- make cognitive psychology more fascinating and less intimidating;
- increase coverage of applications in other areas of psychology as well as in the real world; and
- better integrate coverage of human intelligence and cognitive neuroscience in each chapter.

**Key Themes and Ideas**

The key themes of this book, discussed in greater detail in Chapter 1, are:

1. nature versus nurture;
2. rationalism versus empiricism;
3. structures versus processes;
4. domain generality versus domain specificity;
5. validity of causal inferences versus ecological validity;
6. applied versus basic research; and
7. biological versus behavioral methods.

The key ideas of this book, also discussed at more length in Chapter 1, are as follows:

1. Empirical data and theories are both important. Data in cognitive psychology can be fully understood only in the context of an explanatory theory, but theories are empty without empirical data.
2. Cognition is generally adaptive but not in all specific instances.
3. Cognitive processes interact with each other and with non-cognitive processes.
4. Cognition needs to be studied through a variety of scientific methods.
5. All basic research in cognitive psychology may lead to applications, and all applied research may lead to basic understandings.

Major Organizing and Special Pedagogical Features

Special features, some new and some established, characterize *Cognitive Psychology* Sixth Edition. Here are the new features:

- **Believe It or Not** feature boxes present incredible and exciting information and facts from the world of cognitive psychology.
- A “Neuroscience and …” section in every chapter.
- An “Intelligence and …” section in every chapter integrates the theme of intelligence with the chapter topic at hand. The separate intelligence chapter, formerly Chapter 13, has been eliminated.
- **Concept Checks** follow each major section to encourage students to quickly check their comprehension.

And here are some of the established features:

- **Practical Applications of Cognitive Psychology** feature boxes help students think about applications of cognitive psychology in their own lives.
- **Investigating Cognitive Psychology** features present mini-experiments and tasks that students can complete on their own.

What’s New to the 6th Edition

*Cognitive Psychology, 6th edition* underwent a major revision to make the book more comprehensible, accessible, and interesting to students. Revision highlights include:

- Revised In the Lab features, including new profiles of Henry Roediger, III in Chapter 1; Martha Farah in Chapter 2; Marvin Chun in Chapter 3; and Keith Rayner in Chapter 10.
- **Believe It or Not** boxes now appear in every chapter to make cognitive psychology more fascinating and less intimidating to students and to show it can be fun and surprising.
• The *Practical Applications* boxes now conclude with a critical thinking question.
• Concept Checks now appear after each major section.
• Updated Suggested Readings are now preceded by headings so students can quickly find what they are interested in.
• Key experiments are now clearly highlighted in *Investigating Cognitive Psychology* boxes.
• Thoroughly integrated intelligence coverage (formerly Chapter 13, Intelligence) now appears throughout the 6th edition.
• Advance organizers added to improve the reading flow and students’ understanding of how things fit together into a larger context.
• Updated chapter organization for greater comprehensibility.
• Reduced coverage of cognitive development and other non-cognitive topics more accurately reflect the focus of cognitive psychology courses.
• New subheadings increase understanding of content matter and larger context.

Chapter-specific revisions include:

**Chapter 1**

1. An all new introduction to intelligence in Chapter 1 discusses what intelligence is, how intelligence relates to cognition, and three cognitive models of intelligence (Carroll, Gardner, Sternberg).
2. New everyday examples include analyzing why companies spend so much money on advertising products that students use, for example, Apple iPhone and Windows 7.
3. New example in section on why learning about psychology’s history is important: a discussion on newspapers’ coverage of the success of educational programs, hardly any which use control groups.
4. New example of how nurture influences cognition by comparing Western and Asian cultures.
5. Expanded discussion of rationalism vs. empiricism now includes Plato and Aristotle.
6. Expanded explanation of Descartes’ views.
7. Enhanced introduction to section on early dialectics and explanation of what dialectics are.
8. Expanded explanation of what being a structuralist means in terms of psychology.
10. Explanation of Ebbinghaus’s experiment and new Ebbinghaus’s forgetting curve figure.
11. New example from contemporary times has been added to the section on behaviorism explaining how reward and punishment are used in modern psychotherapy.
12. New section on criticisms of behaviorism.
13. New *Believe It or Not* box on scientific “progress” in the first half of the 20th century and the introduction of prefrontal lobotomies.
14. New explanation of why behaviorists regarded the mind as a “black box”.
15. New *In the Lab of Henry L. Roediger, III* feature.
16. New coverage of control variables.
17. New explanation of why control over experimental conditions is important.
18. Expanded section on when to use correlational studies and discuss their potential shortcomings.
19. New section on how other professions and fields benefit from findings in cognitive psychology.

Chapter 2

1. New organization: Now a section on the anatomy and mechanisms of the brain discusses the structure of the brain first before going into details regarding neuronal structure and function; a second section then discusses research methods/methods of viewing the brain; a third section discusses brain disorders; and a fourth (new) section covers intelligence and neuroscience.
2. New In the Lab of Martha Farah box.
3. Updated discussion of the function of brain parts reflects the latest literature.
4. Expanded explanation of how autism relates to the function of the amygdala.
5. Reorganized discussion of the hippocampus.
6. Updated and expanded information on the function of the hypothalamus.
7. New coverage of the evolution of the human brain.
8. Updated and expanded coverage of the lateralization of function.
9. New explanation of vocabulary frequently used to describe brain regions: dorsal, caudal, rostral, ventral.
10. The concept of “action potential” is now discussed.
11. Expanded coverage of myelin and Nodes of Ranvier.
12. Updated coverage of neurotransmitters to reflect current status of knowledge.
13. New coverage of genetic knockout studies and neurochemical ways to induce particular lesions in the section on animal studies.
14. New coverage of “noise” in EEG recordings, and how this noise can be dealt with by averaging recordings.
15. New detailed example of a study using ERP to help students understand the technique.
16. New explanation of the N400 effect.
17. Updated discussion of research and imaging methods, including new references.
18. Expanded information on CT scans, angiography, and MRIs.
20. New explanation of how DTI works.
21. Expanded section on TMS and introduced concept of rTMS.
22. Brain disorders discussion now begins by explaining why brain disorders are of importance to finding out how the brain works.
23. New section (part of former Chapter 13, Intelligence) on intelligence and neuroscience that discusses the connection between intelligence and (a) brain size, (b) neurons, (c) brain metabolism as well as biological bases of intelligence testing and the P-FIT theory of intelligence.

Chapter 3

1. New “hands-on” activity now opens chapter by asking students to look out of the window to see for themselves how objects that are farther away look small, even if they are huge.
2. Reorganized chapter first presents basics of perception, perceptual illusions, and how our visual system works; then, the theories of perception, perception of objects and forms, perceptual constancies; and last, deficits in perception.
3. New introduction to “From Sensation to Perception” discussion illustrates with two examples how complex perception can be.
4. New In the Lab of Marvin Chun feature box.
5. New coverage of the Ganzfeld effect and experiment to experience the Ganzfeld effect.
6. New discussion of light as a precondition for vision, and about the spectrum of light waves and which ones humans can see.
7. Reorganized coverage of how our visual system works.
8. Visual pathways discussion expanded, updated, and now appears near the beginning of the chapter.
9. New introduction to approaches to perception (that is, the part about theories), and a more thorough explanation of what bottom-up and top-down approaches are.
10. Direct perception is now discussed as part of bottom-up theories discussion.
11. New sections on the everyday importance of neuroscience and direct perception.
12. New section discusses template theory as an example of a chunk-based theory and connects visual perception with long-term memory.
13. New section on neuroscience and template theories.
14. New discussion of why it is so hard for computers to read handwriting.
15. Updated coverage of pandemonium model and updated coverage of the local-precedence effect.
17. New section on neuroscience and recognition-by-components theory.
18. Top-down theories section now includes discussion of intelligence and perception.
19. Expanded coverage of elaboration/explanation of object-centered versus viewer-centered representation.
20. Reorganized discussion of Gestalt approach section.
22. New neuropsychological research on perceptual constancies.
23. New coverage of stereoscopic seeing with just one eye in strabismic eyes.
24. Expanded coverage of neuroscience and depth perception, with new research results.
25. Reorganized discussion of ataxias and agnosias separately discusses “difficulties in perceiving the what” and “difficulties in knowing the how”.
26. New section on perception in practice with respect to traffic and accidents.

Chapter 4

1. Reorganized chapter first presents attention (signal detection, vigilance, search, selective attention, and divided attention), then discusses what happens when attentional processes fail; habituation and adaptation, as well as automatic and controlled processes in attention are explored; and last, consciousness.
2. Included new introductory example for introduction to signal detection and vigilance: lifeguard on beach and research psychologist.
3. Expanded coverage of neuroscience and vigilance.
4. New research on feature integration theory.
5. Expanded coverage of the neuroscience of visual search and aging.
6. Updated discussion of selective attention.
7. Expanded discussion of neuroscience and selective attention.
8. Divided attention now integrates information regarding human intelligence.
9. Updated and reorganized coverage of theories of divided attention.
10. Revised network model discussion in “Neuroscience and Attention” section.
11. New section on intelligence and attention includes discussion of reaction time and inspection time.
12. Reorganized and updated discussion of section “When our attention fails us” includes a discussion of Gardner’s theory of intelligence as potentially relevant to ADHD treatment.
13. Updated discussion of change blindness and inattentional blindness.
14. Updated coverage of “extinction” in spatial neglect as well as updated information on neuroscience research in spatial neglect.
15. “Controlled and Automatic Processes” section has been reorganized and updated.
16. Sternberg’s triarchic theory of intelligence now connected to controlled and automatic processes.
17. The Stroop effect is now featured in “automatization in daily life”.
18. Updated discussion of consciousness.

**Chapter 5**

1. New discussion of intelligence testing and culture that describes problems of culture-fair testing and how memory abilities may differ across different cultural groups.
2. New coverage of long-term store and new techniques that are being developed to help students transfer learned facts into long-term memory.
3. Expanded coverage of how experiments were conducted on the levels-of-processing approach and what their results mean (in particular, why people with schizophrenia have memory problems).
4. Fisher & Craik (1977) experiment about the effectiveness of acoustic and semantic retrieval has been elaborated more, with examples to make clear the differences between the different kinds of retrieval.
5. Expanded coverage of the phonological loop.
6. New section on intelligence and working memory.
7. New discussion of neuropsychological coverage added to the section on amnesia.
8. New explanation of double dissociation.
9. Updated coverage in section on how memories are stored.
10. Expanded explanation of the term long-term potentiation.

**Chapter 6**

1. Updated research on long-term storage.
2. Expanded neuropsychological coverage of section on long-term storage.
3. New section explaining the difference between interference and decay.
4. Expanded coverage of the spacing effect.
5. Expanded coverage of organization of information.
7. Expanded coverage and new figure on neuropsychological experiments on retrieval from long-term memory.
8. Expanded coverage of the “recent-probes task”.
9. Expanded coverage of flashbulb memory and the effect of mood on memory.
10. Updated research on memory distortions.
11. Updated research on eyewitness testimony; expanded coverage and new introduction of the post-identification feedback effect.
12. Expanded coverage of children as eyewitnesses and lineups.
13. Updated research on context effects.

Chapter 7

1. Revised coverage of internal and external representations.
2. Updated research on mental imagery.
3. New research on mental rotations.
4. Updated coverage of gender and mental rotation.
5. Updated research on image scanning.
6. Updated research on section “synthesizing images and propositions”.
7. Updated coverage of demand characteristics.
8. Updated discussion of Johnson-Laird’s mental models.
9. Updated discussion of mental shortcuts.

Chapter 8

1. Updated research on concepts.
2. Updated research on prototypes.
3. New coverage of VAM (varying abstraction model) theory in the exemplars discussion.
4. New discussion of concepts in different cultures.
5. Updated research on scripts, ACT-R, and the PDP model.
6. Expanded section on criticism of connectionist models.

Chapter 9

1. New discussion of reading and discourse have been added to this chapter (previously chapter 10).
2. New introduction to section “What is language” discusses how many languages there are in the world, that still new languages are being discovered, etc.
3. Updated research on basic components of words.
4. New introduction to the section on processes of language comprehension.
5. Updated research on section “the view of speech perception as ordinary”.
6. New coverage of new research to explain the phenomenon of phonemic restoration.
8. Updated section on the McGurk effect with the latest neuropsychological research.
9. Updated coverage of semantics.
10. Updated research in the section on syntactical priming.
13. Expanded explanation of the critique of Chomsky’s theory.
14. Updated research on dyslexia.
15. Updated research on lexical processes in reading.
16. New section on intelligence and lexical access speed (from previous chapter 13).
17. Updated research on propositional representations.
18. Updated research on “Representing the Text in Mental Models.”

Chapter 10

1. New coverage of animal language (formerly in Chapter 9).
2. Reorganized discussion of the neuropsychology of language.
3. New In the Lab of Keith Rayner boxed feature.
4. New coverage in colors discussion includes recent research and demonstrates how one’s language can influence color perception.
5. New research in section on verbs and grammatical gender features description of new research experiments on grammatical gender and prepositions.
6. New neuropsychological research on bilinguals.
7. Updated research on second language acquisition.
9. Updated research on language mixtures and change.
10. Extended coverage of neuroscience and bilingualism.
11. Updated research on slips of the tongue.
12. New coverage of Steven Pinker’s new theory of indirect speech.
13. Updated research on gender and language.
14. Updated and revised coverage of animal language.
15. New coverage of the brain and word recognition.
16. New coverage of the brain and semantic processing.
17. Expanded and updated coverage on the brain and syntax.
18. Updated and extended coverage of the brain and language acquisition.
19. Updated and extended coverage on the plasticity of the brain.
20. New and updated research on the brain and gender difference in language processing.
21. Updated research on autism.

Chapter 11

1. Reorganized discussion of the problem-solving cycle.
2. Streamlined discussion of well-structured problems.
3. Updated section on problem representation.
4. Streamlined discussion of insight.
5. Streamlined discussion of the early Gestaltist view.
7. Coverage of neuroscience and insight aggregated into a neuroscience section, expanded, and updated.
8. Streamlined discussion of intentional transfer.
9. Revised discussion of incubation includes new coverage of a meta-analysis.
10. New discussion of intelligence and complex solving (formerly chapter 13).
11. Section on expertise has been updated and an experiment on beer tasting in experts and novices has been added.
13. Updated coverage of innate talent and acquired skill.
14. New and updated coverage of artificial intelligence and expertise (formerly chapter 13).
15. Updated and streamlined coverage of creativity.
16. Updated discussion of neuroscience and creativity.

Chapter 12

1. Reorganized discussion of judgment and decision making for improved comprehension.
2. New explanation of the difference between the model of economic man and woman and subjective expected utility theory.
3. Streamlined discussion of subjective expected utility theory.
4. Streamlined and updated coverage of satisficing now includes a comparison with classical decision theory.
5. Updated discussion of framing effects.
6. Updated coverage of gambler’s fallacy and hot hand.
7. Updated discussion of the evaluation of heuristics.
8. Updated section on naturalistic decision making.
10. Updated and streamlined coverage of syllogisms.
12. Streamlined section on reaching causal inferences.
13. Updated section on categorical inferences.
14. Updated coverage of an alternative view of reasoning.
15. Updated and expanded section on the neuroscience of reasoning.

Ancillaries

As an instructor, you have a multitude of resources available to you to assist you in the teaching of your class. Student ancillaries are also offered. Available resources include:

Instructor’s Manual with Test Bank—Written by Donna Dahlgren of Indiana University Southeast. The Instructor’s Manual portion contains chapter outlines, in-class demonstrations, discussion topics, and suggested websites. The Test Bank portion consists of approximately 75 multiple choice and 20 short-answer questions per chapter. Each multiple-choice item is labeled with the page reference and level of difficulty.

PowerLecture with ExamView—With the one-stop digital library and presentation tool, instructors can assemble, edit, and present custom lectures with ease. The PowerLecture, contains a selection of digital media from Wadsworth's latest titles in introductory psychology, including figures and tables. Create, deliver,
and customize printed and online tests and study guides in minutes with Exam-View’s easy-to-use assessment and tutorial system. Also included are animations, video clips, and preassembled Microsoft PowerPoint lecture slides, written by Lise Abrams of University of Florida, based on each specific text. Instructors can use the material or add their own material for a truly customized lecture presentation.

**CogLab 3.0**—Free with every new copy of this book, CogLab 3.0 lets students do more than just think about cognition. CogLab 3.0 uses the power of the web to teach concepts using important classic and current experiments that demonstrate how the mind works. Nothing is more powerful for students than seeing the effects of these experiments for themselves! CogLab 3.0 includes features such as simplified student registration, a global database that combines data from students all around the world, between-subject designs that allow for new kinds of experiments, and a “quick display” of student summaries. Also included are trial-by-trial data, standard deviations, and improved instructions.

And when you adopt Sternberg’s COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY, you and your students will have access to a rich array of online teaching and learning resources that you won’t find anywhere else. The outstanding site features tutorial quizzes, a glossary, weblinks, flashcards, and more!

**Acknowledgments**

We are grateful to a number of reviewers who have contributed to the development of this book:

Jane L. Pixley, Radford University  
Martha J. Hubertz, Florida Atlantic University  
Jeffrey S. Anastasi, Sam Houston State University  
Robert J. Crutcher, University of Dayton  
Eric C. Odgaard, University of South Florida  
Takashi Yamauchi, Texas A & M University  
David C. Somers, Boston University  
Michael J. McGuire, Washburn University  
Kimberly Rynearson, Tarleton State University

A special thank you goes to Gerd Gigerenzer and Julian Marewski for their helpful review of, and comments on, Chapter 12.

We would also like to thank Ann Greenberger, developmental editor, as well as all members of our Wadsworth/Cengage Learning editorial and production teams: Jaime Perkins, Acquisitions Editor; Paige Leeds, Assistant Editor; Lauren Keyes, Media Editor; Beth Kluckhohn, Senior Project Manager for PreMedia Global; Tangelique Williams, Developmental Editor; Matt Ballantyne, Senior Content Project Manager; and Jessica Alderman, Editorial Assistant.
To the Student

Why do we remember people whom we met years ago, but sometimes seem to forget what we learned in a course shortly after we take the final exam (or worse, sometimes right before)? How do we manage to carry on a conversation with one person at a party and simultaneously eavesdrop on another more interesting conversation taking place nearby? Why are people so often certain that they are correct in answering a question when in fact they are not? These are just three of the many questions that are addressed by the field of cognitive psychology.

Cognitive psychologists study how people perceive, learn, remember, and think. Although cognitive psychology is a unified field, it draws on many other fields, most notably neuroscience, computer science, linguistics, anthropology, and philosophy. Thus, you will find some of the thinking of all these fields represented in this book. Moreover, cognitive psychology interacts with other fields within psychology, such as psychobiology, developmental psychology, social psychology, and clinical psychology.

For example, it is difficult to be a clinical psychologist today without a solid knowledge of developments in cognitive psychology because so much of the thinking in the clinical field draws on cognitive ideas, both in diagnosis and in therapy. Cognitive psychology has also provided a means for psychologists to investigate experimentally some of the exciting ideas that have emerged from clinical theory and practice, such as notions of unconscious thought.

Cognitive psychology will be important to you not only in its own right, but also in helping you in all of your work. For example, knowledge of cognitive psychology can help you better understand how best to study for tests, how to read effectively, and how to remember difficult-to-learn material.

Cognitive psychologists study a wide range of psychological phenomena such as perception, learning, memory, and thinking. In addition, cognitive psychologists study seemingly less cognitively oriented phenomena, such as emotion and motivation. In fact, almost any topic of psychological interest may be studied from a cognitive perspective. In this textbook we describe some of the preliminary answers to questions asked by researchers in the main areas of cognitive psychology.

- Chapter 1, Introduction to Cognitive Psychology: What are the origins of cognitive psychology, and how do people do research in this field?
- Chapter 2, Cognitive Neuroscience: What structures and processes of the human brain underlie the structures and processes of human cognition?
- Chapter 3, Visual Perception: How does the human mind perceive what the senses receive? How does the human mind perceive forms and patterns?
- Chapter 4, Attention and Consciousness: What basic processes of the mind govern how information enters our minds, our awareness, and our high-level processes of information handling?
- Chapter 5, Memory: Models and Research Methods: How are different kinds of information (e.g., our experiences related to a traumatic event, the names of U.S. presidents, or the procedure for riding a bicycle) represented in memory?
• Chapter 6, Memory Processes: How do we move information into memory, keep it there, and retrieve it from memory when needed?
• Chapter 7, The Landscape of Memory: Mental Images, Maps, and Propositions: How do we mentally represent information in our minds? Do we do so in words, in pictures, or in some other form representing meaning? Do we have multiple forms of representation?
• Chapter 8, The Organization of Knowledge in the Mind: How do we mentally organize what we know?
• Chapter 9, Language: How do we derive and produce meaning through language?
• Chapter 10, Language in Context: How does our use of language interact with our ways of thinking? How does our social world interact with our use of language?
• Chapter 11, Problem Solving and Creativity: How do we solve problems? What processes aid and impede us in reaching solutions to problems? Why are some of us more creative than others? How do we become and remain creative?
• Chapter 12, Decision Making and Reasoning: How do we reach important decisions? How do we draw reasonable conclusions from the information we have available? Why and how do we so often make inappropriate decisions and reach inaccurate conclusions?

To acquire the knowledge outlined above, we suggest you make use of the following pedagogical features of this book:

1. Chapter outlines, beginning each chapter, summarize the main topics covered and thus give you an advance overview of what is to be covered in that chapter.
2. Opening questions emphasize the main questions each chapter addresses.
3. Boldface terms, indexed at ends of chapters and defined in the glossary, help you acquire the vocabulary of cognitive psychology.
4. End-of-chapter summaries return to the questions at the opening of each chapter and show our current state of knowledge with regard to these questions.
5. End-of-chapter questions help you ensure both that you have learned the basic material and that you can think in a variety of ways (factual, analytical, creative, and practical) with this material.
6. Suggested readings refer you to other sources that you can consult for further information on the topics covered in each chapter.
7. Investigating Cognitive Psychology demonstrations, appearing throughout the chapters, help you see how cognitive psychology can be used to demonstrate various psychological phenomena.
8. Practical Applications of Cognitive Psychology demonstrations show how you and others can apply cognitive psychology to your everyday lives.
9. In the Lab of . . . boxes tell you what it really is like to do research in cognitive psychology. Prominent researchers speak in their own words about their research—what research problems excite them most and what they are doing to address these problems.
10. Believe It or Not boxes present incredible and exciting information and facts from the world of cognitive psychology.
11. Key Themes sections, near the end of each chapter, relate the content of the chapters to the key themes expressed in Chapter 1. These sections will help
you see the continuity of the main ideas of cognitive psychology across its various subfields.

12. CogLab, an exciting series of laboratory demonstrations in cognitive psychology provided by the publisher of this textbook (Wadsworth), is available for purchase with this text. You can actively participate in these demonstrations and thereby learn firsthand what it is like to be involved in cognitive-psychological research.

This book contains an overriding theme that unifies all the diverse topics found in the various chapters: Human cognition has evolved over time as a means of adapting to our environment, and we can call this ability to adapt to the environment intelligence. Through intelligence, we cope in an integrated and adaptive way with the many challenges with which the environment presents us.

Although cognitive psychologists disagree about many issues, there is one issue about which almost all of them agree; namely, cognition enables us to successfully adapt to the environments in which we find ourselves. Thus, we need a construct such as that of human intelligence, if only to provide a shorthand way of expressing this fundamental unity of adaptive skill. We can see this unity at all levels in the study of cognitive psychology. For example, diverse measures of the psychophysical functioning of the human brain show correlations with scores on a variety of tests of intelligence. Selective attention, the ability to tune in certain stimuli and tune out others, is also related to intelligence, and it has even been proposed that an intelligent person is one who knows what information to attend to and what information to ignore. Various language and problem-solving skills are also related to intelligence, pretty much without regard to how it is measured. In brief, then, human intelligence can be seen as an entity that unifies and provides direction to the workings of the human cognitive system.

We hope you enjoy this book, and we hope you see why we are enthusiastic about cognitive psychology and proud to be cognitive psychologists.
About the Authors

Robert J. Sternberg is Provost and Senior Vice President as well as Professor of Psychology at Oklahoma State University. Prior to that, he was Dean of the School of Arts and Sciences and Professor of Psychology at Tufts University, and before that, IBM Professor of Psychology and Education in the Department of Psychology at Yale University.

Dr. Sternberg received his B.A. from Yale and his Ph.D. in Psychology from Stanford University. He also holds 11 honorary doctorates.

He has received numerous awards, including the James McKeen Cattell Award from the American Psychological Society; the Early Career and McCandless Awards from the APA; and the Outstanding Book, Research Review, Sylvia Scribner and Palmer O. Johnson Awards from the AERA.

Dr. Sternberg has served as President of the American Psychological Association and of the Eastern Psychological Association and is currently President-elect of the Federation of Associations of Brain and Behavioral Sciences. In addition, he has been editor of the *Psychological Bulletin* and of the *APA Review of Books: Contemporary Psychology* and is a member of the Society of Experimental Psychologists. He was the director of the Center for the Psychology of Abilities, Competencies, and Expertise at Yale University and then Tufts University.

Karin Sternberg is Adjunct Assistant Professor at Oklahoma State University. She has a PhD in psychology from the University of Heidelberg, Germany, as well as an MBA with a specialization in banking from the University of Cooperative Education in Karlsruhe, Germany. Karin did some of her doctoral research at Yale and her postdoctoral work in psychology at the University of Connecticut. Afterwards, she worked as a research associate at Harvard University’s Kennedy School of Government and School of Public Health. In 2008, together with her husband, Robert J. Sternberg, she founded Sternberg Consulting. The company’s focus is on applying in practice their theories of intelligence, wisdom, creativity, and leadership, among others. This has led to consulting work and product development based on their theories (e.g., admissions tests for higher education institutions and schools, training programs, etc.).
This page intentionally left blank
Introduction to Cognitive Psychology

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Cognitive Psychology Defined
Philosophical Antecedents of Psychology: Rationalism versus Empiricism
Psychological Antecedents of Cognitive Psychology
   Early Dialectics in the Psychology of Cognition
      Understanding the Structure of the Mind: Structuralism
      Understanding the Processes of the Mind: Functionalism
      An Integrative Synthesis: Associationism
   It’s Only What You Can See That Counts: From Associationism to Behaviorism
   Proponents of Behaviorism
   Criticisms of Behaviorism
   Behaviorists Daring to Peek into the Black Box
   The Whole Is More Than the Sum of Its Parts: Gestalt Psychology

Emergence of Cognitive Psychology
   Early Role of Psychobiology
   Add a Dash of Technology: Engineering, Computation, and Applied Cognitive Psychology

Cognition and Intelligence
   What Is Intelligence?

Three Cognitive Models of Intelligence
   Carroll: Three-Stratum Model of Intelligence
   Gardner: Theory of Multiple Intelligences
   Sternberg: The Triarchic Theory of Intelligence

Research Methods in Cognitive Psychology
   Goals of Research
   Distinctive Research Methods
      Experiments on Human Behavior
      Psychobiological Research
      Self-Reports, Case Studies, and Naturalistic Observation
      Computer Simulations and Artificial Intelligence
   Putting It All Together

Fundamental Ideas in Cognitive Psychology

Key Themes in Cognitive Psychology

Summary

Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

Key Terms

Media Resources
Here are some of the questions we will explore in this chapter:

1. What is cognitive psychology?
2. How did psychology develop as a science?
3. How did cognitive psychology develop from psychology?
4. How have other disciplines contributed to the development of theory and research in cognitive psychology?
5. What methods do cognitive psychologists use to study how people think?
6. What are the current issues and various fields of study within cognitive psychology?

BELIEVE IT OR NOT

Now You See It, Now You Don’t!
Cognitive psychology yields all kinds of surprising findings. Dan Simons of the University of Illinois is a master of surprises (see Simons, 2007; Simons & Ambinder, 2005; Simons & Rensink, 2005). Try it out yourself! Watch the following videos and see if you have any comments on them.

http://viscog.beckman.illinois.edu/flashmovie/23.php

Note: Do not read on before you have watched the video.

Did you notice that the person who answers the phone is not the same as the one who was at the desk? Note that they are wearing distinctively different clothing. You have just seen an example of change blindness—our occasional inability to recognize changes. You will learn more about this concept in Chapter 3.

Now view the following video. Your task will be to count the number of times that students in white shirts pass the basketball. You must not count passes by students wearing black shirts:

http://viscog.beckman.illinois.edu/flashmovie/15.php

Note: Do not read on before you have watched the video.

Well, it doesn’t really matter how many passes there were. Did you notice the person in the gorilla outfit walk across the video as the students were throwing the balls? Most people don’t notice. This video demonstrates a phenomenon called inattentional blindness. You will learn more about this concept in Chapter 4. Throughout this book, we will explore these and many other phenomena.

Think back to the last time you went to a party or social gathering. There were probably tens and maybe hundreds of students in a relatively small room. Maybe music played in the background, and you could hear chatter all around. Yet, when you talked to your friends, you were able to figure out and even concentrate on what they said, filtering out all the other conversations that were going on in the background. Suddenly, however, your attention might have shifted because you heard someone in another conversation nearby mention your name. What processes would have been at work in this situation? How were you able to filter out irrelevant voices in your mind and focus your attention on just one of the many voices you heard? And why did you notice your name being mentioned, even though you did
not purposefully listen to the conversations around you? Our ability to focus on one out of many voices is one of the most striking phenomena in cognitive psychology, and is known as the “cocktail party effect.”

Cognitive processes are continuously taking place in your mind and in the minds of the people around you. Whether you pay attention to a conversation, estimate the speed of an approaching car when crossing the street, or memorize information for a test at school, you are perceiving information, processing it, and remembering or thinking about it. This book is about those cognitive processes that are often hidden in plain sight and that we take for granted because they seem so automatic to us. This chapter will introduce you to some of the people who helped form the field of cognitive psychology and make it what it is today. The chapter also will discuss methods used in cognitive-psychological research.

**Cognitive Psychology Defined**

What will you study in a textbook about cognitive psychology?

**Cognitive psychology** is the study of how people perceive, learn, remember, and think about information. A cognitive psychologist might study how people perceive various shapes, why they remember some facts but forget others, or how they learn language. Consider some examples:

- Why do objects look farther away on foggy days than they really are? The discrepancy can be dangerous, even deceiving drivers into having car accidents.
- Why do many people remember a particular experience (e.g., a very happy moment or an embarrassment during childhood), yet they forget the names of people whom they have known for many years?
Why are many people more afraid of traveling in planes than in automobiles? After all, the chances of injury or death are much higher in an automobile than in a plane.

Why do you often well remember people you met in your childhood but not people you met a week ago?

Why do marketing executives in large companies spend so much company money on advertisements?

These are some of the kinds of questions that we can answer through the study of cognitive psychology.

Consider just the last of these questions: Why does Apple, for example, spend so much money on advertisements for its iPhone? After all, how many people remember the functional details of the iPhone, or how those functions are distinguished from the functions of other phones? One reason Apple spends so much is because of the availability heuristic, which you will study in Chapter 12. Using this heuristic, we make judgments on the basis of how easily we can call to mind what we perceive as relevant instances of a phenomenon (Tversky & Kahneman, 1973). One such judgment is the question of which phone you should buy when you need a new cell phone. We are much more likely to buy a brand and model of a phone that is familiar. Similarly, Microsoft paid huge amounts of money to market its roll-out of Windows 7 in order to make the product cognitively available to potential customers and thus increase the chances that the potential customers would become actual ones. The bottom line is that understanding cognitive psychology can help us understand much of what goes on in our everyday lives.

Why study the history of cognitive psychology? If we know where we came from, we may have a better understanding of where we are heading. In addition, we can learn from past mistakes. For example, there are numerous newspaper stories about how one educational program or another has resulted in particular gains in student achievement. However, it is relatively rare to read that a control group has been used. A control group would tell us about the achievement of students who did not have that educational program or who maybe were in an alternative program. It may be that these students also would show a gain. We need to compare the students in the experimental group to those in the control group to determine whether the gain of the students in the experimental group was greater than the gain of those in the control group. We can learn from the history of our field that it is important to include control groups, but not everyone learns this fact.

In cognitive psychology, the ways of addressing fundamental issues have changed, but many of the fundamental questions remain much the same. Ultimately, cognitive psychologists hope to learn how people think by studying how people have thoughts about thinking.

The progression of ideas often involves a dialectic. A dialectic is a developmental process where ideas evolve over time through a pattern of transformation. What is this pattern? In a dialectic:

- **A thesis is proposed.** A thesis is a statement of belief. For example, some people believe that human nature governs many aspects of human behavior (e.g., intelligence or personality; Sternberg, 1999). After a while, however, certain individuals notice apparent flaws in the thesis.
• **An antithesis emerges.** Eventually, or perhaps even quite soon, an antithesis emerges. An *antithesis* is a statement that counters a previous statement of belief. For example, an alternative view is that our nurture (the environmental contexts in which we are reared) almost entirely determines many aspects of human behavior.

• **A synthesis integrates the viewpoints.** Sooner or later, the debate between the thesis and the antithesis leads to a synthesis. A *synthesis* integrates the most credible features of each of two (or more) views. For example, in the debate over nature versus nurture, the interaction between our innate (inborn) nature and environmental nurture may govern human nature.

The dialectic is important because we may be tempted to think that if one view is right, another seemingly contrasting view must be wrong. For example, in the field of intelligence, there has been a tendency to believe that intelligence is either all or mostly genetically determined, or else all or mostly environmentally determined. A similar debate has raged in the field of language acquisition. Often, we are better off posing such issues not as either/or questions, but rather as examinations of how different forces covary and interact with each other. Indeed, the most widely accepted current contention is that the “nature or nurture” view is incomplete. Nature and nurture work together in our development.

Nurture can work in different ways in different cultures. Some cultures, especially Asian cultures, tend to be more dialectical in their thinking, whereas other cultures, such as European and North American ones, tend to be more linear (Nisbett, 2003). In other words, Asians are more likely to be tolerant of holding beliefs that are contradictory, seeking a synthesis over time that resolves the contradiction. Europeans and Americans expect their belief systems to be consistent with each other.

Similarly, people from Asian cultures tend to take a different viewpoint than Westerners when approaching a new object (e.g., a movie of fish in an ocean; Nisbett & Masuda, 2003). In general, people from Western cultures tend to process objects independently of the context, whereas people from many Eastern cultures process objects in conjunction with the surrounding context (Nisbett & Miyamoto, 2005). Asians may emphasize the context more than the objects embedded in those contexts. So if people see a movie of fish swimming around in the ocean, Europeans or Americans will tend to pay more attention to the fish, and Asians may attend to the surround of the ocean in which the fish are swimming. The evidence suggests that culture influences many cognitive processes, including intelligence (Lehman, Chiu, & Schaller, 2004).

If a synthesis seems to advance our understanding of a subject, it then serves as a new thesis. A new antithesis then follows it, then a new synthesis, and so on. Georg Hegel (1770–1831) observed this dialectical progression of ideas. He was a German philosopher who came to his ideas by his own dialectic. He synthesized some of the views of his intellectual predecessors and contemporaries. You will see in this chapter that psychology also evolved as a result of dialectics: Psychologists had ideas about how the mind works and pursued their line of research; then other psychologists pointed out weaknesses and developed alternatives as a reaction to the earlier ideas. Eventually, characteristics of the different approaches are often integrated into a newer and more encompassing approach.
Philosophical Antecedents of Psychology: Rationalism versus Empiricism

Where and when did the study of cognitive psychology begin? Historians of psychology usually trace the earliest roots of psychology to two approaches to understanding the human mind:

- Philosophy seeks to understand the general nature of many aspects of the world, in part through introspection, the examination of inner ideas and experiences (from intro-, “inward, within,” and -spect, “look”);
- Physiology seeks a scientific study of life-sustaining functions in living matter, primarily through empirical (observation-based) methods.

Two Greek philosophers, Plato (ca. 428–348 B.C.) and his student Aristotle (384–322 B.C.), have profoundly affected modern thinking in psychology and many other fields. Plato and Aristotle disagreed regarding how to investigate ideas.

Plato was a rationalist. A rationalist believes that the route to knowledge is through thinking and logical analysis. That is, a rationalist does not need any experiments to develop new knowledge. A rationalist who is interested in cognitive processes would appeal to reason as a source of knowledge or justification.

In contrast, Aristotle (a naturalist and biologist as well as a philosopher) was an empiricist. An empiricist believes that we acquire knowledge via empirical evidence—that is, we obtain evidence through experience and observation (Figure 1.1). In order to explore how the human mind works, empiricists would design experiments and conduct studies in which they could observe the behavior and processes of interest to them. Empiricism therefore leads directly to empirical investigations of psychology.

In contrast, rationalism is important in theory development. Rationalist theories without any connection to observations gained through empiricist methods may not be valid; but mountains of observational data without an organizing theoretical framework may not be meaningful. We might see the rationalist view of the world as a thesis and the empirical view as an antithesis. Most psychologists today seek a synthesis of the two. They base empirical observations on theory in order to explain

(a)

(b)

Figure 1.1 (a) According to the rationalist, the only route to truth is reasoned contemplation; (b) according to the empiricist, the only route to truth is meticulous observation. Cognitive psychology, like other sciences, depends on the work of both rationalists and empiricists.
what they have observed in their experiments. In turn, they use these observations to revise their theories when they find that the theories cannot account for their real-world observations.

The contrasting ideas of rationalism and empiricism became prominent with the French rationalist René Descartes (1596–1650) and the British empiricist John Locke (1632–1704). Descartes viewed the introspective, reflective method as being superior to empirical methods for finding truth. The famous expression “cogito, ergo sum” (I think, therefore I am) stems from Descartes. He maintained that the only proof of his existence is that he was thinking and doubting. Descartes felt that one could not rely on one’s senses because those very senses have often proven to be deceptive (think of optical illusions, for example). Locke, in contrast, had more enthusiasm for empirical observation (Leahey, 2003). Locke believed that humans are born without knowledge and therefore must seek knowledge through empirical observation. Locke’s term for this view was *tabula rasa* (meaning “blank slate” in Latin). The idea is that life and experience “write” knowledge on us. For Locke, then, the study of learning was the key to understanding the human mind. He believed that there are no innate ideas.

In the eighteenth century, German philosopher Immanuel Kant (1724–1804) dialectically synthesized the views of Descartes and Locke, arguing that both rationalism and empiricism have their place. Both must work together in the quest for truth. Most psychologists today accept Kant’s synthesis.

**Psychological Antecedents of Cognitive Psychology**

Cognitive psychology has roots in many different ideas and approaches. The approaches that will be examined include early approaches such as structuralism and functionalism, followed by a discussion of associationism, behaviorism, and Gestalt psychology.

**Early Dialectics in the Psychology of Cognition**

Only in recent times did psychology emerge as a new and independent field of study. It developed in a dialectical way. Typically, an approach to studying the mind would be developed; people then would use it to explore the human psyche. At some point, however, researchers would find that the approach they learned to use had some weaknesses, or they would disagree with some fundamental assumptions of that approach. They then would develop a new approach. Future approaches might integrate the best features of past approaches or reject some or even most of those characteristics. In the following section, we will explore some of the ways of thinking early psychologists employed and trace the development of psychology through the various schools of thinking.

**Understanding the Structure of the Mind: Structuralism**

An early dialectic in the history of psychology is that between structuralism and functionalism (Leahey, 2003; Morawski, 2000). Structuralism was the first major school of thought in psychology. **Structuralism** seeks to understand the structure (configuration of elements) of the mind and its perceptions by analyzing those perceptions into their constituent components (affection, attention, memory, sensation, etc.).
Consider, for example, the perception of a flower. Structuralists would analyze this perception in terms of its constituent colors, geometric forms, size relations, and so on. In terms of the human mind, structuralists sought to deconstruct the mind into its elementary components; they were also interested in how those elementary components work together to create the mind.

Wilhelm Wundt (1832–1920) was a German psychologist whose ideas contributed to the development of structuralism. Wundt is often viewed as the founder of structuralism in psychology (Structuralism, 2009). Wundt used a variety of methods in his research. One of these methods was introspection. **Introspection** is a deliberate looking inward at pieces of information passing through consciousness. The aim of introspection is to look at the elementary components of an object or process.

The introduction of introspection as an experimental method was an important change in the field because the main emphasis in the study of the mind shifted from a rationalist approach to the empiricist approach of trying to observe behavior in order to draw conclusions about the subject of study. In experiments involving introspection, individuals reported on their thoughts as they were working on a given task. Researchers interested in problem solving could ask their participants to think aloud while they were working on a puzzle so the researchers could gain insight into the thoughts that go on in the participants’ minds. In introspection, then, we can analyze our own perceptions.

The method of introspection has some challenges associated with it. First, people may not always be able to say exactly what goes through their mind or may not be able to put it into adequate words. Second, what they say may not be accurate. Third, the fact that people are asked to pay attention to their thoughts or to speak out loud while they are working on a task may itself alter the processes that are going on.

Wundt had many followers. One was an American student, Edward Titchener (1867–1927). Titchener (1910) is sometimes viewed as the first full-fledged structuralist. In any case, he certainly helped bring structuralism to the United States. His experiments relied solely on the use of introspection, exploring psychology from the vantage point of the experiencing individual. Other early psychologists criticized both the method (introspection) and the focus (elementary structures of sensation) of structuralism. These critiques gave rise to a new movement—functionalism.

**Understanding the Processes of the Mind: Functionalism**

An alternative that developed to counter structuralism, functionalism suggested that psychologists should focus on the processes of thought rather than on its contents. **Functionalism** seeks to understand what people do and why they do it. This principal question about processes was in contrast to that of the structuralists, who had asked what the elementary contents (structures) of the human mind are. Functionalists held that the key to understanding the human mind and behavior was to study the processes of how and why the mind works as it does, rather than to study the
structural contents and elements of the mind. They were particularly interested in the practical applications of their research.

Functionalists were unified by the kinds of questions they asked but not necessarily by the answers they found or by the methods they used for finding those answers. Because functionalists believed in using whichever methods best answered a given researcher’s questions, it seems natural for functionalism to have led to pragmatism. **Pragmatists** believe that knowledge is validated by its usefulness: What can you do with it? Pragmatists are concerned not only with knowing what people do; they also want to know what we can do with our knowledge of what people do. For example, pragmatists believe in the importance of the psychology of learning and memory. Why? Because it can help us improve the performance of children in school. It can also help us learn to remember the names of people we meet.

A leader in guiding functionalism toward pragmatism was William James (1842–1910). His chief functional contribution to the field of psychology was a single book: his landmark *Principles of Psychology* (1890/1970). Even today, cognitive psychologists frequently point to the writings of James in discussions of core topics in the field, such as attention, consciousness, and perception. John Dewey (1859–1952) was another early pragmatist who profoundly influenced contemporary thinking in cognitive psychology. Dewey is remembered primarily for his pragmatic approach to thinking and schooling.

Although functionalists were interested in how people learn, they did not really specify a mechanism by which learning takes place. This task was taken up by another group, Associationists.

**An Integrative Synthesis: Associationism**

Associationism, like functionalism, was more of an influential way of thinking than a rigid school of psychology. **Associationism** examines how elements of the mind,
like events or ideas, can become associated with one another in the mind to result in a form of learning. For example, associations may result from:

- **contiguity** (associating things that tend to occur together at about the same time);
- **similarity** (associating things with similar features or properties); or
- **contrast** (associating things that show polarities, such as hot/cold, light/dark, day/night).

In the late 1800s, associationist Hermann Ebbinghaus (1850–1909) was the first experimenter to apply associationist principles systematically. Specifically, Ebbinghaus studied his own mental processes. He made up lists of nonsense syllables that consisted of a consonant and a vowel followed by another consonant (e.g., zax). He then took careful note of how long it took him to memorize those lists. He counted his errors and recorded his response times. Through his self-observations, Ebbinghaus studied how people learn and remember material through **rehearsal**, the conscious repetition of material to be learned (Figure 1.2). Among other things, he found that frequent repetition can fix mental associations more firmly in memory. Thus, repetition aids in learning (see Chapter 6).

Another influential associationist, Edward Lee Thorndike (1874–1949), held that the role of “satisfaction” is the key to forming associations. Thorndike termed this principle the **law of effect** (1905): A stimulus will tend to produce a certain response over time if an organism is rewarded for that response. Thorndike believed that an organism learns to respond in a given way (the effect) in a given situation if it is rewarded repeatedly for doing so (the satisfaction, which serves as a stimulus to future actions). Thus, a child given treats for solving arithmetic problems learns to solve arithmetic problems accurately because the child forms associations between valid solutions and treats. These ideas were the predecessors of the development of behaviorism.

![Ebbinghaus Forgetting Curve](Photo © Bettmann/CORBIS)

Figure 1.2 The Ebbinghaus Forgetting Curve shows that the first few repetitions result in a steep learning curve. Later repetitions result in a slower increase of remembered words.
It’s Only What You Can See That Counts: From Associationism to Behaviorism

Other researchers who were contemporaries of Thorndike used animal experiments to probe stimulus–response relationships in ways that differed from those of Thorndike and his fellow associationists. These researchers straddled the line between associationism and the emerging field of behaviorism. **Behaviorism** focuses only on the relation between observable behavior and environmental events or stimuli. The idea was to make physical whatever others might have called “mental” (Lycan, 2003). Some of these researchers, like Thorndike and other associationists, studied responses that were voluntary (although perhaps lacking any conscious thought, as in Thorndike’s work). Other researchers studied responses that were involuntarily triggered in response to what appear to be unrelated external events.

In Russia, Nobel Prize–winning physiologist Ivan Pavlov (1849–1936) studied involuntary learning behavior of this sort. He began with the observation that dogs salivated in response to the sight of the lab technician who fed them. This response occurred before the dogs even saw whether the technician had food. To Pavlov, this response indicated a form of learning (classically conditioned learning), over which the dogs had no conscious control. In the dogs’ minds, some type of involuntary learning linked the technician to the food (Pavlov, 1955). Pavlov’s landmark work paved the way for the development of behaviorism. His ideas were made known in the United States especially through the work of John B. Watson (see next section).

Classical conditioning involves more than just an association based on temporal contiguity (e.g., the food and the conditioned stimulus occurring at about the same time; Ginns, 2006; Rescorla, 1967). Effective conditioning requires **contingency** (e.g., the presentation of food being contingent on the presentation of the conditioned stimulus; Rescorla & Wagner, 1972; Wagner & Rescorla, 1972). Contingencies in the form of reward and punishment are still used today, for example, in the treatment of substance abuse (Cameron & Ritter, 2007).

Behaviorism may be considered an extreme version of associationism. It focuses entirely on the association between the environment and an observable behavior. According to strict, extreme (“radical”) behaviorists, any hypotheses about internal thoughts and ways of thinking are nothing more than speculation.

**Proponents of Behaviorism**

The “father” of radical behaviorism is John Watson (1878–1958). Watson had no use for internal mental contents or mechanisms. He believed that psychologists should concentrate only on the study of observable behavior (Doyle, 2000). He dismissed thinking as nothing more than subvocalized speech. Behaviorism also differed from previous movements in psychology by shifting the emphasis of experimental research from human to animal participants. Historically, much behaviorist work has been conducted (and still is) with laboratory animals, such as rats or pigeons, because these animals allow for much greater behavioral control of relationships between the environment and the behavior emitted in reaction to it (although behaviorists also have conducted experiments with humans). One problem with using nonhuman animals, however, is determining whether the research can be **generalized** to humans (i.e., applied more generally to humans instead of just to the kinds of nonhuman animals that were studied).

B. F. Skinner (1904–1990), a radical behaviorist, believed that virtually all forms of human behavior, not just learning, could be explained by behavior emitted
in reaction to the environment. Skinner conducted research primarily with non-human animals. He rejected mental mechanisms. He believed instead that *operant conditioning*—involving the strengthening or weakening of behavior, contingent on the presence or absence of reinforcement (rewards) or punishments—could explain all forms of human behavior. Skinner applied his experimental analysis of behavior to many psychological phenomena, such as learning, language acquisition, and problem solving. Largely because of Skinner’s towering presence, behaviorism dominated the discipline of psychology for several decades.

**Criticisms of Behaviorism**

Behaviorism was challenged on many fronts like language acquisition, production, and comprehension. First, although it seemed to work well to account for certain kinds of learning, behaviorism did not account as well for complex mental activities such as language learning and problem solving. Second, more than understanding people’s behavior, some psychologists wanted to know what went on inside the head. Third, it often proved easier to use the techniques of behaviorism in studying nonhuman animals than in studying human ones. Nonetheless, behaviorism continues as a school of psychology, although not one that is particularly sympathetic to the cognitive approach, which involves metaphorically and sometimes literally peering inside people’s heads to understand how they learn, remember, think, and reason. Other criticisms emerged as well, as discussed in the next section.

**Behaviorists Daring to Peek into the Black Box**

Some psychologists rejected radical behaviorism. They were curious about the contents of the mysterious black box. Behaviorists regarded the mind as a black box that is best understood in terms of its input and output, but whose internal processes cannot be accurately described because they are not observable. For example, a critic, Edward Tolman (1886–1959), thought that understanding behavior required taking into account the purpose of, and the plan for, the behavior. Tolman (1932) believed

---

### BELIEVE IT OR NOT

**Scientific Progress!?**

The progress of science can take quite unbelievable turns at times. From the early 1930s to the 1960s, lobotomies were a popular and accepted means of treating mental disorders. A lobotomy involves cutting the connections between the frontal lobes of the brain and the thalamus. Psychiatrist Walter Freeman developed a particular kind of lobotomy in 1946—the transorbital or “ice pick” lobotomy. In this procedure, he used an instrument that looked like an ice pick and inserted it through the orbit of the eyes into the frontal lobes where it was moved back and forth. The patient had been previously rendered unconscious by means of a strong electrical shock. By the late 1950s, tens of thousands of Americans had been subjected to this “psychosurgery.” According to some accounts, people felt reduced tension and anxiety after the surgery; however, there were many people who died or were permanently incapacitated after the lobotomy. Famous lobotomy patients include John F. Kennedy’s sister Rosemary. Unbelievably, lobotomy was even performed on patients who were not aware they were receiving the surgery. The shocking story of Howard Dully, who was lobotomized at age 12 and did not find out about the procedure until much later in life, can be found at [http://www.npr.org/templates/story/story.php?storyId=5014080](http://www.npr.org/templates/story/story.php?storyId=5014080) (Helmes & Velamoor, 2009; MSNBC, 2005).
that all behavior is directed toward a goal. For example, the goal of a rat in a maze may be to try to find food in that maze. Tolman is sometimes viewed as a forefather of modern cognitive psychology.

Bandura (1977b) noted that learning appears to result not merely from direct rewards for behavior, but it also can be social, resulting from observations of the rewards or punishments given to others. The ability to learn through observation is well documented and can be seen in humans, monkeys, dogs, birds, and even fish (Brown & Laland, 2001; Laland, 2004). In humans, this ability spans all ages; it is observed in both infants and adults (Mejia-Arauz, Rogoff, & Paradise, 2005). This view emphasizes how we observe and model our own behavior after the behavior of others. We learn by example. This consideration of social learning opens the way to considering what is happening inside the mind of the individual.

**The Whole Is More Than the Sum of Its Parts: Gestalt Psychology**

Of the many critics of behaviorism, Gestalt psychologists may have been among the most avid. **Gestalt psychology** states that we best understand psychological phenomena when we view them as organized, structured wholes. According to this view, we cannot fully understand behavior when we only break phenomena down into smaller parts. For example, behaviorists tended to study problem solving by looking for subvocal processing—they were looking for the observable behavior through which problem solving can be understood. Gestaltists, in contrast, studied insight, seeking to understand the unobservable mental event by which someone goes from having no idea about how to solve a problem to understanding it fully in what seems a mere moment of time.

The maxim “the whole is more than the sum of its parts” aptly sums up the Gestalt perspective. To understand the perception of a flower, for example, we would have to take into account the whole of the experience. We could not understand such a perception merely in terms of a description of forms, colors, sizes, and so on. Similarly, as noted in the previous paragraph, we could not understand problem solving merely by looking at minute elements of observable behavior (Köhler, 1927, 1940; Wertheimer, 1945/1959). We will have a closer look at Gestalt principles in Chapter 3.

**Emergence of Cognitive Psychology**

In the early 1950s, a movement called the “cognitive revolution” took place in response to behaviorism. **Cognitivism** is the belief that much of human behavior can be understood in terms of how people think. It rejects the notion that psychologists should avoid studying mental processes because they are unobservable. Cognitivism is, in part, a synthesis of earlier forms of analysis, such as behaviorism and Gestaltism. Like behaviorism, it adopts precise quantitative analysis to study how people learn and think; like Gestaltism, it emphasizes internal mental processes.
Early Role of Psychobiology

Ironically, one of Watson’s former students, Karl Spencer Lashley (1890–1958), brashly challenged the behaviorist view that the human brain is a passive organ merely responding to environmental contingencies outside the individual (Gardner, 1985). Instead, Lashley considered the brain to be an active, dynamic organizer of behavior. Lashley sought to understand how the macro-organization of the human brain made possible such complex, planned activities as musical performance, game playing, and using language. None of these activities were, in his view, readily explainable in terms of simple conditioning.

In the same vein, but at a different level of analysis, Donald Hebb (1949) proposed the concept of cell assemblies as the basis for learning in the brain. Cell assemblies are coordinated neural structures that develop through frequent stimulation. They develop over time as the ability of one neuron (nerve cell) to stimulate firing in a connected neuron increases. Behaviorists did not jump at the opportunity to agree with theorists like Lashley and Hebb. In fact, behaviorist B. F. Skinner (1957) wrote an entire book describing how language acquisition and usage could be explained purely in terms of environmental contingencies. This work stretched Skinner’s framework too far, leaving Skinner open to attack. An attack was indeed forthcoming. Linguist Noam Chomsky (1959) wrote a scathing review of Skinner’s ideas. In his article, Chomsky stressed both the biological basis and the creative potential of language. He pointed out the infinite numbers of sentences we can produce with ease. He thereby defied behaviorist notions that we learn language by reinforcement. Even young children continually are producing novel sentences for which they could not have been reinforced in the past.

Add a Dash of Technology: Engineering, Computation, and Applied Cognitive Psychology

By the end of the 1950s, some psychologists were intrigued by the tantalizing notion that machines could be programmed to demonstrate the intelligent processing of information (Rychlak & Struckman, 2000). Turing (1950) suggested that soon it would be hard to distinguish the communication of machines from that of humans. He suggested a test, now called the “Turing test,” by which a computer program would be judged as successful to the extent that its output was indistinguishable, by humans, from the output of humans (Cummins & Cummins, 2000). In other words, suppose you communicated with a computer and you could not tell that it was a computer. The computer then passed the Turing test (Schonbein & Bechtel, 2003).

By 1956 a new phrase had entered our vocabulary. Artificial intelligence (AI) is the attempt by humans to construct systems that show intelligence and, particularly, the intelligent processing of information (Merriam-Webster’s Collegiate Dictionary, 2003). Chess-playing programs, which now can beat most humans, are examples of artificial intelligence. However, experts greatly underestimated how difficult it would be to develop a computer that can think like a human being. Even today, computers have trouble reading handwriting and understanding and responding to spoken language with the ease that humans do.

Many of the early cognitive psychologists became interested in cognitive psychology through applied problems. For example, according to Berry (2002), Donald Broadbent (1926–1993) claimed to have developed an interest in cognitive
psychology through a puzzle regarding AT6 aircraft. The planes had two almost identical levers under the seat. One lever was to pull up the wheels and the other to pull up the flaps. Pilots apparently regularly mistook one for the other, thereby crashing expensive planes upon take-off. During World War II, many cognitive psychologists, including one of the senior author’s advisors, Wendell Garner, consulted with the military in solving practical problems of aviation and other fields that arose out of warfare against enemy forces. Information theory, which sought to understand people’s behavior in terms of how they process the kinds of bits of information processed by computers (Shannon & Weaver, 1963), also grew out of problems in engineering and informatics.

Applied cognitive psychology also has had great use in advertising. John Watson, after he left Johns Hopkins University as a professor, became an extremely successful executive in an advertising firm and applied his knowledge of psychology to reach his success. Indeed, much of advertising has directly used principles from cognitive psychology to attract customers to products (Benjamin & Baker, 2004).

By the early 1960s, developments in psychobiology, linguistics, anthropology, and artificial intelligence, as well as the reactions against behaviorism by many mainstream psychologists, converged to create an atmosphere ripe for revolution.
Early cognitivists (e.g., Miller, Galanter, & Pribram, 1960; Newell, Shaw, & Simon, 1957b) argued that traditional behaviorist accounts of behavior were inadequate precisely because they said nothing about how people think. One of the most famous early articles in cognitive psychology was, oddly enough, on “the magic number seven.” George Miller (1956) noted that the number seven appeared in many different places in cognitive psychology, such as in the literature on perception and memory, and he wondered whether there was some hidden meaning in its frequent reappearance. For example, he found that most people can remember about seven items of information. In this work, Miller also introduced the concept of channel capacity, the upper limit with which an observer can match a response to information given to him or her. For example, if you can remember seven digits presented to you sequentially, your channel capacity for remembering digits is seven. Ulric Neisser's book *Cognitive Psychology* (Neisser, 1967) was especially critical in bringing cognitivism to prominence by informing undergraduates, graduate students, and academics about the newly developing field.

Neisser defined *cognitive psychology* as the study of how people learn, structure, store, and use knowledge. Subsequently, Allen Newell and Herbert Simon (1972) proposed detailed models of human thinking and problem solving from the most basic levels to the most complex. By the 1970s cognitive psychology was recognized widely as a major field of psychological study with a distinctive set of research methods.

In the 1970s, Jerry Fodor (1973) popularized the concept of the modularity of mind. He argued that the mind has distinct modules, or special-purpose systems, to deal with linguistic and, possibly, other kinds of information. Modularity implies that the processes that are used in one domain of processing, such as the linguistic (Fodor, 1973) or the perceptual domain (Marr, 1982), operate independently of processes in other domains. An opposing view would be one of domain-general processing, according to which the processes that apply in one domain, such as perception or language, apply in many other domains as well. Modular approaches are useful in studying some cognitive phenomena, such as language, but have proven less useful in studying other phenomena, such as intelligence, which seems to draw upon many different areas of the brain in complex interrelationships.

Curiously, the idea of the mind as modular goes back at least to phrenologist Franz-Joseph Gall (see Boring, 1950), who in the late eighteenth century believed that the pattern of bumps and swells on the skull was directly associated with one’s pattern of cognitive skills. Although phrenology itself was not a scientifically valid technique, the practice of mental cartography lingered and eventually gave rise to ideas of modularity based on modern scientific techniques.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What is pragmatism, and how is it related to functionalism?
2. How are associationism and behaviorism both similar and different?
3. What is the fundamental idea behind Gestalt psychology?
4. What is the meaning of modularity of mind?
5. How does cognitivism incorporate elements of the schools that preceded it?
Cognition and Intelligence

Human intelligence can be viewed as an integrating, or “umbrella” psychological construct for a great deal of theory and research in cognitive psychology. Intelligence is the capacity to learn from experience, using metacognitive processes to enhance learning, and the ability to adapt to the surrounding environment. It may require different adaptations within different social and cultural contexts. People who are more intelligent tend to be superior in processes such as divided and selective attention, working memory, reasoning, problem solving, decision making, and concept formation. So when we come to understand the mental processes involved in each of these cognitive functions, we also better understand the bases of individual differences in human intelligence.

What Is Intelligence?

Before you read about how cognitive psychologists view intelligence, test your own intelligence with the tasks in Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Intelligence.

Each of the tasks in Investigating Cognitive Psychology is believed, at least by some cognitive psychologists, to require some degree of intelligence. (The answers are at the end of this section.) Intelligence is a concept that can be viewed as tying together all of cognitive psychology. Just what is intelligence, beyond the basic definition? In a recent article, researchers identified approximately 70 different definitions of intelligence (Legg & Hutter, 2007). In 1921, when the editors of the Journal of
Educational Psychology asked 14 famous psychologists that question, the responses varied but generally embraced these two themes. Intelligence involves:

1. the capacity to learn from experience, and
2. the ability to adapt to the surrounding environment.

Sixty-five years later, 24 cognitive psychologists with expertise in intelligence research were asked the same question (Sternberg & Detterman, 1986). They, too, underscored the importance of learning from experience and adapting to the environment. They also broadened the definition to emphasize the importance of metacognition—people’s understanding and control of their own thinking processes. Contemporary experts also more heavily emphasized the role of culture. They pointed out that what is considered intelligent in one culture may be considered stupid in another culture (Serpell, 2000).

There are actually a number of cultural differences in the definition of intelligence. These differences have led to a field of study within intelligence research that examines understanding of cultural differences in the definition of intelligence. This field explores what is termed cultural intelligence, or CQ. This term is used to describe a person’s ability to adapt to a variety of challenges in diverse cultures (Ang et al., 2010; Sternberg & Grigorenko, 2006; Triandis, 2006). Research also shows that personality variables are related to intelligence (Ackerman, 1996, 2010). Taken together, this evidence suggests that a comprehensive definition of intelligence incorporates many facets of intellect.

Definitions of intelligence also frequently take on an assessment-oriented focus. In fact, some psychologists have been content to define intelligence as whatever it is that the tests measure (Boring, 1923). This definition, unfortunately, is circular. According to it, the nature of intelligence is what is tested. But what is tested must necessarily be determined by the nature of intelligence. Moreover, what different tests of intelligence measure is not always the same thing. Different tests measure somewhat different constructs (Daniel, 1997, 2000; Kaufman, 2000; Kaufman & Lichtenberger, 1998). So it is not feasible to define intelligence by what tests measure, as though they all measured the same thing. By the way, the answers to the questions in Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Intelligence are:

1. Rubber. Candles are frequently made of tallow, just as tires are frequently made of (c) rubber.
2. 100%, 0.75, and 1/2 are quantities that successively decrease by 1/4; to complete the series, the answer is (c) one fourth, which is a further decrease by 1/4.
3. The first series was a circle and a square, followed by two squares and a circle, followed by three circles and a square; the second series was three triangles and a square, which would be followed by (b), four squares and a triangle.
4. The person you met is clearly a liar. If the girl about whom this person was talking were a truth-teller, she would have said that she was a truth-teller. If she were a liar, she would have lied and said that she was a truth-teller also. Thus, regardless of whether the girl was a truth-teller or a liar, she would have said that she was a truth-teller. Because the man you met has said that she said she was a liar, he must be lying and hence must be a liar.

Three Cognitive Models of Intelligence

There have been many models of intelligence. Three models are particularly useful when linking human intelligence to cognition: the three-stratum model, the theory of multiple intelligences, and the triarchic theory of intelligence.


Carroll: Three-Stratum Model of Intelligence

According to the three-stratum model of intelligence, intelligence comprises a hierarchy of cognitive abilities comprising three strata (Carroll, 1993):

- Stratum I includes many narrow, specific abilities (e.g., spelling ability, speed of reasoning).
- Stratum II includes various broad abilities (e.g., fluid intelligence, crystallized intelligence, short-term memory, long-term storage and retrieval, information-processing speed).
- Stratum III is just a single general intelligence (sometimes called g).

Of these strata, the most interesting is the middle stratum, which is neither too narrow nor too all-encompassing.

In the middle stratum are fluid ability and crystallized ability. Fluid ability is speed and accuracy of abstract reasoning, especially for novel problems. Crystallized ability is accumulated knowledge and vocabulary (Cattell, 1971). In addition to fluid intelligence and crystallized intelligence, Carroll includes several other abilities in the middle stratum. They are learning and memory processes, visual perception, auditory perception, facile production of ideas (similar to verbal fluency), and speed (which includes both sheer speed of response and speed of accurate responding). Carroll’s model is probably the most widely accepted of the measurement-based models of intelligence. You will learn about these processes in later chapters.

Gardner: Theory of Multiple Intelligences

Howard Gardner (1983, 1993b, 1999, 2006) has proposed a theory of multiple intelligences, in which intelligence comprises multiple independent constructs, not just a single, unitary construct. However, instead of speaking of multiple abilities that together constitute intelligence (e.g., Thurstone, 1938), this theory distinguishes eight distinct intelligences that are relatively independent of each other (Table 1.1). Each is a separate system of functioning, although these systems can interact to produce what we see as intelligent performance. Looking at Gardner’s list of intelligences, you might want to evaluate your own intelligences, perhaps rank ordering your strengths in each.

Gardner does not entirely dismiss the use of psychometric tests. But the base of evidence used by Gardner (e.g., the existence of exceptional individuals in one area, brain lesions that destroy a particular kind of intelligence, or core operations that are essential to performance of a particular intelligence) does not rely on the factor analysis of various psychometric tests alone. Take a moment to reflect:

- In thinking about your own intelligences, how fully integrated do you believe them to be?
- How much do you perceive each type of intelligence as depending on any of the others?

Gardner’s view of the mind is modular. Modularity theorists believe that different abilities—such as Gardner’s intelligences—can be isolated as emanating from distinct portions or modules of the brain. Thus, a major task of existing and future research on intelligence is to isolate the portions of the brain responsible for each of the intelligences. Gardner has speculated as to at least some of these locales, but hard evidence for the existence of these separate intelligences has yet to be produced. Furthermore, some scientists question the strict modularity of Gardner’s theory (Nettelbeck & Young, 1996). Consider the phenomenon of preserved specific
cognitive functioning in autistic savants. Savants are people with severe social and cognitive deficits but with corresponding high ability in a narrow domain. They suggest that such preservation fails as evidence for modular intelligences. The narrow long-term memory and specific aptitudes of savants may not really be intelligent (Nettelbeck & Young, 1996). Thus, there may be reason to question the intelligence of inflexible modules.

**Sternberg: The Triarchic Theory of Intelligence**


- **Creative abilities** are used to generate novel ideas.
- **Analytical abilities** ascertain whether your ideas (and those of others) are good ones.

### Table 1.1  Gardner’s Eight Intelligences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Intelligence</th>
<th>Tasks Reflecting This Type of Intelligence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Linguistic intelligence</td>
<td>Used in reading a book; writing a paper, a novel, or a poem; and understanding spoken words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logical-mathematical intelligence</td>
<td>Used in solving math problems, in balancing a checkbook, in solving a mathematical proof, and in logical reasoning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spatial intelligence</td>
<td>Used in getting from one place to another, in reading a map, and in packing suitcases in the trunk of a car so that they all fit into a compact space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musical intelligence</td>
<td>Used in singing a song, composing a sonata, playing a trumpet, or even appreciating the structure of a piece of music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodily-kinesthetic intelligence</td>
<td>Used in dancing, playing basketball, running a mile, or throwing a javelin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpersonal intelligence</td>
<td>Used in relating to other people, such as when we try to understand another person’s behavior, motives, or emotions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrapersonal intelligence</td>
<td>Used in understanding ourselves—the basis for understanding who we are, what makes us tick, and how we can change ourselves, given our existing constraints on our abilities and our interests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naturalist intelligence</td>
<td>Used in understanding patterns in nature</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From *Multiple Intelligences* by Howard Gardner. Copyright © 1993 by Howard Gardner. Reprinted by permission of Basic Books, a member of Perseus Books, L.L.C.
• Practical abilities are used to implement the ideas and persuade others of their value.

Figure 1.3 illustrates the parts of the theory and the interrelationships of the three parts.

According to the theory, cognition is at the center of intelligence. Information processing in cognition can be viewed in terms of three different kinds of components. First are metacomponents—higher-order executive processes (i.e., metacognition) used to plan, monitor, and evaluate problem solving. Second are performance components—lower-order processes used for implementing the commands of the metacomponents. And third are knowledge-acquisition components—the processes used for learning how to solve the problems in the first place. The components are highly interdependent.

Suppose that you were asked to write a term paper. You would use metacomponents for higher-order decisions. Thus, you would use them to decide on a topic, plan the paper, monitor the writing, and evaluate how well your finished product succeeds in accomplishing your goals for it. You would use knowledge-acquisition components for research to learn about the topic. You would use performance components for the actual writing.

Sternberg and his colleagues performed a comprehensive study testing the validity of the triarchic theory and its usefulness in improving performance. They predicted that matching students’ instruction and assessment to their abilities would lead to improved performance (Sternberg et al., 1996; Sternberg et al., 1999). Students were selected for one of five ability patterns: high only in analytical ability, high only in creative ability, high only in practical ability, high in all three abilities, or not high in any of the three abilities. Then students were assigned at random to one of four instructional groups. Instruction in the groups emphasized either memory-based, analytical, creative, or practical learning. Then the memory-based, analytical, creative, and practical achievement of all students was

Figure 1.3 According to Robert Sternberg, intelligence comprises analytical, creative, and practical abilities. In analytical thinking, we solve familiar problems by using strategies that manipulate the elements of a problem or the relationships among the elements (e.g., comparing, analyzing). In creative thinking, we solve new kinds of problems that require us to think about the problem and its elements in a new way (e.g., inventing, designing). In practical thinking, we solve problems that apply what we know to everyday contexts (i.e., applying, using).
assessed. The researchers found that students who were placed in an instructional condition that matched their strength in terms of pattern of ability outperformed students who were mismatched. Thus, the prediction of the experiment was confirmed. For example, a high-analytical student being placed in an instructional condition that emphasized analytical thinking outperformed a high-analytical student being placed in an instructional condition that emphasized practical thinking.

Teaching students to use all of their analytic, creative, and practical abilities has resulted in improved school achievement for every student, whatever their ability pattern (Grigorenko, Jarvin, & Sternberg, 2002; Sternberg & Grigorenko, 2004; Sternberg, Torff, & Grigorenko, 1998). One important consideration in light of such findings is the need for changes in the assessment of intelligence (Sternberg & Kaufman, 1996). Current measures of intelligence are somewhat one-sided. They measure mostly analytical abilities. They involve little or no assessment of creative and practical aspects of intelligence (Sternberg et al., 2000; Wagner, 2000). A more well-rounded assessment and instruction system could lead to greater benefits of education for a wider variety of students—a nominal goal of education.

One attempt to accomplish this goal can be seen through the Rainbow Project. In the Rainbow Project, students completed the SAT and additional assessments. These additional assessments included measures of creative and practical as well as of analytical abilities (Sternberg & the Rainbow Project Collaborators, 2006). The addition of these supplemental assessments resulted in superior prediction of college grade point average (GPA) as compared with scores on the SAT and high school GPA. In fact, the new tests doubled the prediction of first-year college GPA obtained just by the SAT. Moreover, the new assessments substantially reduced differences in scores among members of diverse ethnic groups.

We have discussed how human intelligence provides a conceptual base for understanding phenomena in cognitive psychology. What methods do we use to study these phenomena?

**Research Methods in Cognitive Psychology**

Researchers employ a variety of research methods. These methods include laboratory or other controlled experiments, psychobiological research, self-reports, case studies, naturalistic observation, and computer simulations and artificial intelligence. Each of these methods will be discussed in detail in this section. To better understand the specific methods used by cognitive psychologists, one must first grasp the goals of research in cognitive psychology.

**Goals of Research**

Briefly, research goals include data gathering, data analysis, theory development, hypothesis formulation, hypothesis testing, and perhaps even application to settings outside the research environment. Often researchers simply seek to gather as much information as possible about a particular phenomenon. They may or may not have preconceived notions regarding what they may find while gathering the data. Their research focuses on describing particular cognitive phenomena, such as how people recognize faces or how they develop expertise.

Data gathering reflects an empirical aspect of the scientific enterprise. Once there are sufficient data on the cognitive phenomenon of interest, cognitive psychologists
use various methods for drawing inferences from the data. Ideally, they use multiple converging types of evidence to support their hypotheses. Sometimes, just a quick glance at the data leads to intuitive inferences regarding patterns that emerge from those data. More commonly, however, researchers use various statistical means of analyzing the data.

Data gathering and statistical analysis aid researchers in describing cognitive phenomena. No scientific pursuit could get far without such descriptions. However, most cognitive psychologists want to understand more than the what of cognition; most also seek to understand the how and the why of thinking. That is, researchers seek ways to explain cognition as well as to describe it. To move beyond descriptions, cognitive psychologists must leap from what is observed directly to what can be inferred regarding observations.

Suppose that we wish to study one particular aspect of cognition. An example would be how people comprehend information in textbooks. We usually start with a theory. A theory is an organized body of general explanatory principles regarding a phenomenon, usually based on observations. We seek to test a theory and thereby to see whether it has the power to predict certain aspects of the phenomena with which it deals. In other words, our thought process is, “If our theory is correct, then whenever x occurs, outcome y should result.” This process results in the generation of hypotheses, tentative proposals regarding expected empirical consequences of the theory, such as the outcomes of research.

Next, we test our hypotheses through experimentation. Even if particular findings appear to confirm a given hypothesis, the findings must be subjected to statistical analysis to determine their statistical significance. Statistical significance indicates the likelihood that a given set of results would be obtained if only chance factors were in operation. For example, a statistical significance level of .05 would mean that the likelihood of a given set of data would be a mere 5% if only chance factors were operating. Therefore, the results are not likely to be due merely to chance. Through this method we can decide to retain or reject hypotheses.

Once our hypothetical predictions have been experimentally tested and statistically analyzed, the findings from those experiments may lead to further work. For example, the psychologist may engage in further data gathering, data analysis, theory development, hypothesis formulation, and hypothesis testing. Based on the hypotheses that were retained and/or rejected, the theory may have to be revised. In addition, many cognitive psychologists hope to use insights gained from research to help people use cognition in real-life situations. Some research in cognitive psychology is applied from the start. It seeks to help people improve their lives and the conditions under which they live their lives. Thus, basic research may lead to everyday applications. For each of these purposes, different research methods offer different advantages and disadvantages.

**Distinctive Research Methods**

Cognitive psychologists use various methods to explore how humans think. These methods include (a) laboratory or other controlled experiments, (b) psychobiological research, (c) self-reports, (d) case studies, (e) naturalistic observation, and (f) computer simulations and artificial intelligence. See Table 1.2 for descriptions and examples of each method. As the table shows, each method offers distinctive advantages and disadvantages.
Experiments on Human Behavior

In controlled experimental designs, an experimenter will usually conduct research in a laboratory setting. The experimenter controls as many aspects of the experimental situation as possible. There are basically two kinds of variables in any given experiment. Independent variables are aspects of an investigation that are individually
manipulated, or carefully regulated, by the experimenter, while other aspects of the investigation are held constant (i.e., not subject to variation). **Dependent variables** are outcome responses, the values of which depend on how one or more independent variables influence or affect the participants in the experiment. When you tell some student research participants that they will do very well on a task, but you do not say anything to other participants, the independent variable is the amount of information that the students are given about their expected task performance. The dependent variable is how well both groups actually perform the task—that is, their score on the math test.

When the experimenter manipulates the independent variables, he or she controls for the effects of irrelevant variables and observes the effects on the dependent variables (outcomes). These irrelevant variables that are held constant are called **control variables**. For example, when you conduct an experiment on people's ability to concentrate when subjected to different kinds of background music, you should make sure that the lighting in the room is always the same, and not sometimes extremely bright and other times dim. The variable of light needs to be held constant.

Another type of variable is the confounding variable. **Confounding variables** are a type of irrelevant variable that has been left uncontrolled in a study. For example, imagine you want to examine the effectiveness of two problem-solving techniques. You train and test one group under the first strategy at 6 A.M. and a second group under the second strategy at 6 P.M. In this experiment, time of day would be a confounding variable. In other words, time of day may be causing differences in performance that have nothing to do with the problem-solving strategy. Obviously, when conducting research, we must be careful to avoid the influence of confounding variables.

In implementing the experimental method, experimenters must use a representative and random sample of the population of interest. They must exert rigorous control over the experimental conditions so that they know that the observed effects can be attributed to variations in the independent variable and nothing else. For example, in the above-mentioned experiment, people's ability to concentrate did not depend on the general lighting conditions in the room, per se, because during a few sessions, the sun shone directly into the eyes of the subjects so that they had trouble seeing.

The experimenter also must randomly assign participants to the treatment and control conditions. For example, you would not want to end up in an experiment on concentration with lots of people with ADD—Attention Deficit Disorder—in your experimental group, but no such people in your control group. If those requisites for the experimental method are fulfilled, the experimenter may be able to infer probable causality. This inference is of the effects of the independent variable or variables (the treatment) on the dependent variable (the outcome) for the given population.

Many different dependent variables are used in cognitive-psychological research. Two common variables are percent correct (or its additive inverse, error rate) and reaction time. These measures are popular because they can tell the investigator, respectively, the accuracy and speed of mental processing. Independent and dependent variables must be chosen with great care, because no matter what processes one is observing, what is learned from an experiment will depend almost exclusively on the variables one chooses to isolate from the often complex behavior one is observing.
Table 1.2 Research Methods

Cognitive psychologists use controlled experiments, psychobiological research, self-reports, case studies, naturalistic observation, and computer simulations and artificial intelligence when studying cognitive phenomena.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Controlled Laboratory Experiments</th>
<th>Psychobiological Research</th>
<th>Self-Reports, such as Verbal Protocols, Self-Rating, Diaries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description of method</td>
<td>Obtain samples of performance at a particular time and place</td>
<td>Study animal brains and human brains, using postmortem studies and various psychobiological measures or imaging techniques (see Chapter 2)</td>
<td>Obtain participants’ reports of own cognition in progress or as recollected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Random assignment of subjects</td>
<td>Usually</td>
<td>Not usually</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Experimental control of independent variables</td>
<td>Usually</td>
<td>Varies widely, depending on the particular technique</td>
<td>Probably not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample size</td>
<td>May be any size</td>
<td>Often small</td>
<td>Probably small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample representativeness</td>
<td>May be representative</td>
<td>Often not representative</td>
<td>May be representative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecological validity</td>
<td>Not unlikely; depends on the task and the context to which it is being applied</td>
<td>Unlikely under some circumstances</td>
<td>Maybe; see strengths and weaknesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information about individual differences</td>
<td>Usually de-emphasized</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strengths</td>
<td>• Easy to administer, score, and do statistical analyses</td>
<td>• “Hard” evidence of cognitive functions through physiological activity</td>
<td>• Access to introspective insights from participants’ point of view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• High probability of drawing valid causal inferences</td>
<td>• Alternative view of cognitive processes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Possibility to develop treatments for cognitive deficits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weaknesses</td>
<td>• Difficulty in generalizing results beyond a specific place, time, and task setting</td>
<td>• Limited accessibility for most researchers (need appropriate subjects and expensive equipment)</td>
<td>• Inability to report on processes occurring outside conscious awareness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Discrepancies between behavior in real life and in the laboratory</td>
<td>• Small samples</td>
<td>• Verbal protocols &amp; self-ratings: May influence cognitive process being reported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Decreased generalizability when abnormal brains or animal brains are investigated</td>
<td>• Recollections: Discrepancies between actual cognition and recollected cognitive processes and products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examples</td>
<td>Karpicke (2009) developed a laboratory task in which participants had to learn and recall Swahili-English word pairs. After subjects first recalled the meaning of a word, that pair was either dropped, presented twice more in a study period, or presented twice more in test periods. Subjects took a final recall test one week later.</td>
<td>New and colleagues (New et al., 2009) have found that Borderline patients with Intermittent Explosive Disorder responded more aggressively to a provocation than did normal control subjects. The patients particularly showed an increase in glucose consumption in brain areas associated with emotion like the amygdala and less activity in dorsal brain regions that serve to control aggression.</td>
<td>In a study about the relation between cortisol levels (which are stress-dependent) and sleep, self-rated health, and stress, participants kept diaries and collected saliva samples over four weeks (Dahlgren et al., 2009).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Case Studies

Engage in intensive study of single individuals, drawing general conclusions about behavior

### Naturalistic Observations

Observe real-life situations, as in classrooms, work settings, or homes

### Computer Simulations and Artificial Intelligence

Simulations: Attempt to make computers simulate human cognitive performance on various tasks

AI: Attempt to make computers demonstrate intelligent cognitive performance, regardless of whether the process resembles human cognitive processing

**Highly unlikely**
- Not applicable
- Not applicable

**Highly unlikely**
- No
- Full control of variables of interest

**Almost certain to be small**
- Probably small
- Not applicable

**Not likely to be representative**
- May be representative
- Not applicable

**High ecological validity for individual cases; lower generalizability to others**
- Yes
- Not applicable

**Yes; richly detailed information regarding individuals**
- Possible, but emphasis is on environmental distinctions, not on individual differences
- Not applicable

- **Access to detailed information about individuals, including historical and current contexts**
- **Access to rich contextual information**
- **Exploration of possibilities for modeling cognitive processes**
- **Allows clear hypothesis testing**
- **Wide range of practical applications (e.g., robotics for performing dangerous tasks)**
- **Lack of experimental control**
- **Possible influence on behavior due to presence of observer**
- **Limitations imposed by the hardware (i.e., the computer circuitry) and the software (i.e., the programs written by the researchers)**
- **Simulations may imperfectly model the way that the human brain thinks**

### A case study with a breast cancer patient

A study using questionnaires and observation found that Mexicans on average consider themselves less sociable than U.S. Americans consider themselves; however, Mexicans behave much more sociably than U.S. Americans in their everyday lives (Ramirez-Esparza et al., 2009).

Simulations: Through detailed computations, David Marr (1982) attempted to simulate human visual perception and proposed a theory of visual perception based on his computer models.

AI: Various AI programs have been written that can demonstrate expertise (e.g., playing chess), but they probably do so via different processes than those used by human experts.
Psychologists who study cognitive processes with reaction time often use the subtraction method, which involves estimating the time a cognitive process takes by subtracting the amount of time information processing takes with the process from the time it takes without the process (Donders, 1868/1869). If you are asked to scan the words dog, cat, mouse, hamster, chipmunk and to say whether the word chipmunk appears in it, and then are asked to scan dog, cat, mouse, hamster, chipmunk, lion and to say whether lion appears, the difference in the reaction times might be taken, by some models of mental processing, roughly to indicate the amount of time it takes to process each stimulus.

Suppose the outcomes in the treatment condition show a statistically significant difference from the outcomes in the control condition. The experimenter then can infer the likelihood of a causal link between the independent variable(s) and the dependent variable. Because the researcher can establish a likely causal link between the given independent variables and the dependent variables, controlled laboratory experiments offer an excellent means of testing hypotheses.

Suppose that we wanted to see whether loud, distracting noises influence the ability to perform well on a particular cognitive task (e.g., reading a passage from a textbook and responding to comprehension questions). Ideally, we first would select a random sample of participants from within our total population of interest. We then would randomly assign each participant to a treatment condition or a control condition. Then we would introduce some distracting loud noises to the participants in our treatment condition. The participants in our control condition would not receive this treatment. We would present the cognitive task to participants in both the treatment condition and the control condition and then measure their performance by some means (e.g., speed and accuracy of responses to comprehension questions). Finally, we would analyze our results statistically. We thereby would examine whether the difference between the two groups reached statistical significance.

Suppose the participants in the treatment condition showed poorer performance at a statistically significant level than the participants in the control condition. We might infer that loud, distracting noises influenced the ability to perform well on this particular cognitive task.

In cognitive-psychological research, though the dependent variables may be quite diverse, they often involve various outcome measures of accuracy (e.g., frequency of errors), of response times, or of both. Among the myriad possibilities for independent variables are characteristics of the situation, of the task, or of the participants. For example, characteristics of the situation may involve the presence versus the absence of particular stimuli or hints during a problem-solving task. Characteristics of the task may involve reading versus listening to a series of words and then responding to comprehension questions. Characteristics of the participants may include age differences, differences in educational status, or differences based on test scores.

On the one hand, characteristics of the situation or task may be manipulated through random assignment of participants to either the treatment or the control group. On the other hand, characteristics of the participant are not easily manipulated experimentally. For example, suppose the experimenter wants to study the effects of aging on speed and accuracy of problem solving. The researcher cannot randomly assign participants to various age groups because people’s ages cannot be manipulated (although participants of various age groups can be assigned at random to various experimental conditions). In such situations, researchers often use other kinds of studies, for example, studies involving correlation (a statistical relationship
between two or more attributes, such as characteristics of the participants or of a situation). Correlations are usually expressed through a correlation coefficient known as Pearson’s $r$. Pearson’s $r$ is a number that can range from $-1.00$ (a negative correlation) to $0$ (no correlation) to $1.00$ (a positive correlation).

A correlation is a description of a relationship. The correlation coefficient describes the strength of the relationship. The closer the coefficient is to 1 (either positive or negative), the stronger the relationship between the variables is. The sign (positive or negative) of the coefficient describes the direction of the relationship. A positive relationship indicates that as one variable increases (e.g., vocabulary size), another variable also increases (e.g., reading comprehension). A negative relationship indicates that as the measure of one variable increases (e.g., fatigue), the measure of another decreases (e.g., alertness). No correlation—that is, when the coefficient is 0—indicates that there is no pattern or relationship in the change of two variables (e.g., intelligence and earlobe length). In this final case, both variables may change, but the variables do not vary together in a consistent pattern.

Correlational studies are often the method of choice when researchers do not want to deceive their subjects by using manipulations in an experiment or when they are interested in factors that cannot be manipulated ethically (e.g., lesions in specific parts of the human brain). However, because researchers do not have any control over the experimental conditions, causality cannot be inferred from correlational studies.

Findings of statistical relationships are highly informative. Their value should not be underrated. Also, because correlational studies do not require the random assignment of participants to treatment and control conditions, these methods may
be applied flexibly. However, correlational studies generally do not permit unequivocal inferences regarding causality. As a result, many cognitive psychologists strongly prefer experimental data to correlational data.

**Psychobiological Research**

Through *psychobiological research*, investigators study the relationship between cognitive performance and cerebral events and structures. Chapter 2 describes various specific techniques used in psychobiological research. These techniques generally fall into three categories:

- techniques for studying an individual’s brain *postmortem* (after the death of an individual), relating the individual’s cognitive function prior to death to observable features of the brain;
- techniques for studying images showing structures of or activities in the brain of an individual who is known to have a particular cognitive deficit;
- techniques for obtaining information about cerebral processes during the normal performance of a cognitive activity.

Postmortem studies offered some of the first insights into how specific *lesions* (areas of injury in the brain) may be associated with particular cognitive deficits. Such studies continue to provide useful insights into how the brain influences cognitive function. Recent technological developments also increasingly enable researchers to study individuals with known cognitive deficits *in vivo* (while the individual is alive). The study of individuals with abnormal cognitive functions linked to cerebral damage often enhances our understanding of normal cognitive functions.

Psychobiological researchers also study normal cognitive functioning by studying cerebral activity in animal participants. Researchers often use animals for experiments involving neurosurgical procedures that cannot be performed on humans because such procedures would be difficult, unethical, or impractical. For example, studies mapping neural activity in the cortex have been conducted on cats and monkeys (e.g., psychobiological research on how the brain responds to visual stimuli; see Chapter 3).

Can cognitive and cerebral functioning of animals and of abnormal humans be generalized to apply to the cognitive and cerebral functioning of normal humans? Psychobiologists have responded to these questions in various ways. For some kinds of cognitive activity, the available technology permits researchers to study the dynamic cerebral activity of normal human participants during cognitive processing (see the brain-imaging techniques described in Chapter 2).

**Self-Reports, Case Studies, and Naturalistic Observation**

Individual experiments and psychobiological studies often focus on precise specification of discrete aspects of cognition across individuals. To obtain richly textured information about how particular individuals think in a broad range of contexts, researchers may use other methods. These methods include:

- *self-reports* (an individual’s own account of cognitive processes);
- *case studies* (in-depth studies of individuals); and
- *naturalistic observation* (detailed studies of cognitive performance in everyday situations and nonlaboratory contexts).
Experimental research is most useful for testing hypotheses; however, research based on self-reports, case studies, and naturalistic observation is often particularly useful for the formulation of hypotheses. These methods are also useful to generate descriptions of rare events or processes that we have no other way to measure.

In very specific circumstances, these methods may provide the only way to gather information. An example is the case of Genie, a girl who was locked in a room until the age of 13 and thus provided with severely limited social and sensory experiences. As a result of her imprisonment, Genie had severe physical impairments and no language skills. Through case-study methods, information was collected about how she later began to learn language (Fromkin et al., 1974; Jones, 1995; La-Pointe, 2005). It would have been unethical experimentally to deny a person any language experience for the first 13 years of life. Therefore, case-study methods are the only reasonable way to examine the results of someone being denied language and social exposure.

Similarly, traumatic brain injury cannot be manipulated in humans in the laboratory. Therefore, when traumatic brain injury occurs, case studies are the only way to gather information. For example, consider the case of Phineas Gage, a railroad worker who, in 1848, had a large metal spike driven through his frontal lobes in a freak accident (Torregrossa, Quinn, & Taylor, 2008; see also Figure 1.4). Surprisingly, Mr. Gage survived. His behavior and mental processes were drastically changed by the accident, however. Obviously, we cannot insert large metal rods into the brains of experimental participants. Therefore, in the case of traumatic brain injury, we must rely on case-study methods to gather information.

The reliability of data based on self-reports depends on the candor of the participants. A participant may misreport information about his or her cognitive processes for a variety of reasons. These reasons can be intentional or unintentional. Intentional misreports can include trying to edit out unflattering information.

Figure 1.4 When an explosion forced an iron rod through his head, Phineas Gage sustained frontal lobe damage. Gage was the subject of case studies both during his life and after his death.
Unintentional misreports may involve not understanding the question or not remembering the information accurately. For example, when a participant is asked about the problem-solving strategies he or she used in high school, the participant may not remember. The participant may try to be completely truthful in his or her reports. But reports involving recollected information (e.g., diaries, retrospective accounts, questionnaires, and surveys) are notably less reliable than reports provided during the cognitive processing under investigation. The reason is that participants sometimes forget what they did.

In studying complex cognitive processes, such as problem solving or decision making, researchers often use a verbal protocol. In a verbal protocol, the participants describe aloud all their thoughts and ideas during the performance of a given cognitive task (e.g., “I like the apartment with the swimming pool better, but I can’t really afford it, so I might have to choose the one without the swimming pool.”).

An alternative to a verbal protocol is for participants to report specific information regarding a particular aspect of their cognitive processing. For example, consider a study of insightful problem solving (see Chapter 11). Participants were asked at 15-second intervals to report numerical ratings indicating how close they felt they were to reaching a solution to a given problem. Unfortunately, even these methods of self-reporting have their limitations. What kind of limitations? Cognitive processes may be altered by the act of giving the report (e.g., processes involving brief forms of memory; see Chapter 5). Or, cognitive processes may occur outside of conscious awareness (e.g., processes that do not require conscious attention or that take place so rapidly that we fail to notice them; see Chapter 4). To get an idea of some of the difficulties with self-reports, carry out the following Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Self-Reports tasks. Reflect on your experiences with self-reports.

Case studies (e.g., an in-depth study of individuals who are exceptionally gifted) and naturalistic observations (such as detailed observations of the performance of employees operating in nuclear power plants) may be used to complement findings from laboratory experiments. These two methods of cognitive research offer high ecological validity, the degree to which particular findings in one environmental

---

**INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY**

**Self-Reports**

1. Without looking at your shoes, try reporting aloud the various steps involved in tying your shoe.
2. Recall aloud what you did on your last birthday.
3. Now, actually tie your shoe (or something else, such as a string tied around a table leg), reporting aloud the steps you take. Do you notice any differences between task 1 and task 3?
4. Report aloud how you pulled into consciousness the steps involved in tying your shoe or your memories of your last birthday. Can you report exactly how you pulled the information into conscious awareness? Can you report which part of your brain was most active during each of these tasks?
context may be considered relevant outside of that context. As you probably know, ecology is the study of the interactive relationship between an organism (or organisms) and its environment. Many cognitive psychologists seek to understand the interactive relationship between human thought processes and the environments in which humans are thinking. Sometimes, cognitive processes that are commonly observed in one setting (e.g., in a laboratory) are not identical to those observed in another setting (e.g., in an air-traffic control tower or a classroom).

**Computer Simulations and Artificial Intelligence**

Digital computers played a fundamental role in the emergence of the study of cognitive psychology. One kind of influence is indirect—through models of human cognition based on models of how computers process information. Another kind is direct—through computer simulations and artificial intelligence.

In computer simulations, researchers program computers to imitate a given human function or process. Examples are performance on particular cognitive tasks (e.g., manipulating objects within three-dimensional space) and performance of particular cognitive processes (e.g., pattern recognition). Some researchers have attempted to create computer models of the entire cognitive architecture of the human mind. Their models have stimulated heated discussions regarding how the human mind may function as a whole (see Chapter 8). Sometimes the distinction between simulation and artificial intelligence is blurred. For example, certain programs are designed to simulate human performance and to maximize functioning simultaneously.

Consider a computer program that plays chess. There are two entirely different ways to conceptualize how to write such a program. One is known as brute force: A researcher constructs an algorithm that considers extremely large numbers of moves in a very short time, potentially beating human players simply by virtue of the number of moves it considers and the future potential consequences of these moves. The program would be viewed as successful to the extent that it beat the best humans. This kind of artificial intelligence does not seek to represent how humans function, but done well, it can produce a program that plays chess at the highest possible level.

An alternative approach, simulation, looks at how chess grand masters solve chess problems and then seeks to function the way they do. The program would be successful if it chose, in a sequence of moves in a game, the same moves that the grand master would choose. It is also possible to combine the two approaches, producing a program that generally simulates human performance but can use brute force as necessary to win games.

**Putting It All Together**

Cognitive psychologists often broaden and deepen their understanding of cognition through research in cognitive science. Cognitive science is a cross-disciplinary field that uses ideas and methods from cognitive psychology, psychobiology, artificial intelligence, philosophy, linguistics, and anthropology (Nickerson, 2005; Von Eckardt, 2005). Cognitive scientists use these ideas and methods to focus on the study of how humans acquire and use knowledge.

Cognitive psychologists also profit from collaborations with other kinds of psychologists. Examples are social psychologists (e.g., in the cross-disciplinary field of social cognition), psychologists who study motivation and emotion, and engineering psychologists (i.e., psychologists who study human-machine interactions), but also
clinical psychologists who are interested in psychological disorders. There is also
close exchange and collaboration with a number of other related fields. Psychiatrists
are interested in how the brain works and how it influences our thinking, feeling,
and reasoning. Anthropologists in turn may explore how reasoning and perception
processes differ from one culture to the next. Computer specialists try to develop
computer interfaces that are highly efficient, given the way humans perceive and
process information. Traffic planners can use information from cognitive psychology
to plan and construct traffic situations that result in a maximal overview for traffic
participants and therefore, hopefully, fewer accidents.

**Concept Check**

1. What is the meaning of “statistical significance”?
2. How do independent and dependent variables differ?
3. Why is the experimental method uniquely suited to drawing causal inferences?
4. What are some of the advantages and disadvantages of the case-study method?
5. How does a theory differ from a hypothesis?

**Fundamental Ideas in Cognitive Psychology**

Certain fundamental ideas keep emerging in cognitive psychology, regardless of the
particular phenomenon one studies. Here are what might be considered five funda-
mental ideas. These ideas crosscut some of the Key Themes listed at the end of this
chapter.

1. **Empirical data and theories are both important**—data in cognitive psychology can be
   fully understood only in the context of an explanatory theory, and theories are empty
   without empirical data.

   Theories give meaning to data. Suppose that we know that people’s ability to
   recognize information that they have seen is better than their ability to recall
   such information. As an example, they are better at recognizing whether they
   heard a word said on a list than they are at recalling the word without the
   word being given. This is an interesting empirical generalization, but it does
   not, in the absence of an underlying theory, provide explanation. Another
   important goal of science is also prediction. Theory can suggest under which
   circumstances limitations to the generalization should occur. Theory thus assists
   both in explanation and in prediction.

   At the same time, theory without data is empty. Almost anyone can sit in an
   armchair and propose a theory—even a plausible-sounding one. Science, how-
   ever, requires empirical testing of such theories. Thus, theories and data depend
   on each other. Theories generate data collections, which help correct theories,
   which then lead to further data collections, and so forth.

2. **Cognition is generally adaptive, but not in all specific instances.**

   We can perceive, learn, remember, reason, and solve problems with great accu-
   racy. And we do so even though we are constantly distracted by a plethora of
   stimuli. The same processes, however, that lead us to perceive, remember, and
reason accurately in most situations also can lead us astray. Our memories and reasoning processes, for example, are susceptible to certain well-identified, systematic errors. For example, we tend to overvalue information that is easily available to us. While this tendency generally helps us to make cognitive processes more efficient, we do this even when this information is not optimally relevant to the problem at hand.

3. **Cognitive processes interact with each other and with noncognitive processes.** Although cognitive psychologists try to study and often to isolate the functioning of specific cognitive processes, they know that these processes work together. For example, memory processes depend on perceptual processes. What you remember depends in part on what you perceive. But noncognitive processes also interact with cognitive ones. For example, you learn better when you are motivated to learn. Cognitive psychologists therefore seek to study cognitive processes not only in isolation but also in their interactions with each other and with noncognitive processes.

   One of the most exciting areas of cognitive psychology today is at the interface between cognitive and biological levels of analysis. In recent years, it has become possible to localize activity in the brain associated with various kinds of cognitive processes. However, one has to be careful about assuming that the biological activity is causal of the cognitive activity. Research shows that learning that causes changes in the brain—in other words, cognitive processes—can affect biological structures just as biological structures can affect cognitive processes. The cognitive system does not operate in isolation. It works in interaction with other systems.

4. **Cognition needs to be studied through a variety of scientific methods.** There is no one right way to study cognition. All cognitive processes need to be studied through a variety of methods. The more different kinds of techniques that lead to the same conclusion, the higher the confidence one can have in that conclusion. For example, suppose studies of reaction times, error rates, and patterns of individual differences all lead to the same conclusion. Then one can have much more confidence in the conclusion than if only one method led to that conclusion.

   All these methods, however, must be scientific. They enable us to disconfirm our expectations when those expectations are wrong. Nonscientific methods do not have this feature. For example, methods of inquiry that simply rely on faith or authority to determine truth may have value in our lives, but they are not scientific.

5. **All basic research in cognitive psychology may lead to applications, and all applied research may lead to basic understandings.** But the truth is, the distinction between basic and applied research often is not clear at all. Research that seems like it will be basic often leads to immediate applications. Similarly, research that seems like it will be applied sometimes leads quickly to basic understandings. For example, a basic finding from research on memory is that learning is superior when it is spaced out over time rather than crammed into a short time interval. This basic finding has an immediate application to study strategies. At the same time, research on eyewitness testimony, which seems on its face to be very applied, has enhanced our basic understanding of memory systems and of the extent to which humans construct their own memories.
In this book, we emphasize the underlying common ideas and organizing themes across cognitive psychology, rather than simply to state the facts. We follow this path to help you perceive large, meaningful patterns within the domain of cognitive psychology. We also try to give you some idea of how cognitive psychologists think and how they structure their field in their day-to-day work. We hope that this approach will help you to contemplate problems in cognitive psychology at a deeper level than might otherwise be possible. Ultimately, the goal of cognitive psychologists is to understand not only how people may think in their laboratories but also how they think in their everyday lives.

Key Themes in Cognitive Psychology

If we review the important ideas in this chapter, we discover some of the major themes that underlie cognitive psychology, such as nature vs. nurture and rationalism vs. empiricism. These, and the other key themes listed here, address the core of the nature of the human mind. These themes appear again and again in the study of cognitive psychology.

As you read each chapter, think of the topics in terms of how they relate to the major themes in cognitive psychology. You will be encountering these themes throughout this text and can review them in each chapter’s Key Themes section.

Note that these questions can be posed in the “either/or” form of thesis/antithesis or in the “both/and” form of a synthesis of views or methods. The synthesis view often proves more useful than one extreme position or another. For example, our nature may provide an inherited framework for our distinctive characteristics and patterns of thinking and acting. But our nurture may shape the specific ways in which we flesh out that framework.

We may use empirical methods for gathering data and for testing hypotheses. But we may use rationalist methods for interpreting data, constructing theories, and formulating hypotheses based on theories. Our understanding of cognition deepens when we consider both basic research into fundamental cognitive processes and applied research regarding effective uses of cognition in real-world settings. Syntheses are constantly evolving. What today may be viewed as a synthesis may be viewed tomorrow as an extreme position or vice versa.

Remember, each of the topics in this text (perception, memory, and so on) can be examined using these seven major themes in cognitive psychology:

1. **Nature versus nurture**
   - **Thesis/Antithesis:** Which is more influential in human cognition—nature or nurture? If we believe that innate characteristics of human cognition are more important, we might focus our research on studying innate characteristics of cognition. If we believe that the environment plays an important role in cognition, we might conduct research exploring how distinctive characteristics of the environment seem to influence cognition.
   - **Synthesis:** We can explore how covariations and interactions in the environment (e.g., an impoverished environment) adversely affect someone whose genes otherwise might have led to success in a variety of tasks.

2. **Rationalism versus empiricism**
   - **Thesis/Antithesis:** How should we discover the truth about ourselves and about the world around us? Should we do so by trying to reason logically, based on
what we already know? Or should we do so by observing and testing our observations of what we can perceive through our senses?

**Synthesis:** We can combine theory with empirical methods to learn the most we can about cognitive phenomena.

3. **Structures versus processes**
   **Thesis/Antithesis:** Should we study the structures (contents, attributes, and products) of the human mind? Or should we focus on the processes of human thinking?
   **Synthesis:** We can explore how mental processes operate on mental structures.

4. **Domain generality versus domain specificity**
   **Thesis/Antithesis:** Are the processes we observe limited to single domains, or are they general across a variety of domains? Do observations in one domain apply also to all domains, or do they apply only to the specific domains observed?
   **Synthesis:** We can explore which processes might be domain-general and which might be domain-specific.

5. **Validity of causal inferences versus ecological validity**
   **Thesis/Antithesis:** Should we study cognition by using highly controlled experiments that increase the probability of valid inferences regarding causality? Or
should we use more naturalistic techniques, which increase the likelihood of obtaining ecologically valid findings but possibly at the expense of experimental control?

Synthesis: We can combine a variety of methods, including laboratory methods and more naturalistic ones, so as to converge on findings that hold up, regardless of the method of study.

6. Applied versus basic research

Thesis/Antithesis: Should we conduct research into fundamental cognitive processes? Or should we study ways in which to help people use cognition effectively in practical situations?

Synthesis: We can combine the two kinds of research dialectically so that basic research leads to applied research, which leads to further basic research, and so on.

7. Biological versus behavioral methods

Thesis/Antithesis: Should we study the brain and its functioning directly, perhaps even scanning the brain while people are performing cognitive tasks? Or should we study people’s behavior in cognitive tasks, looking at measures such as percent correct and reaction time?

Synthesis: We can try to synthesize biological and behavioral methods so that we understand cognitive phenomena at multiple levels of analysis.

Summary

1. What is cognitive psychology? Cognitive psychology is the study of how people perceive, learn, remember, and think about information.

2. How did psychology develop as a science? Beginning with Plato and Aristotle, people have contemplated how to gain understanding of the truth. Plato held that rationalism offers the clear path to truth, whereas Aristotle espoused empiricism as the route to knowledge. Centuries later, Descartes extended Plato’s rationalism, whereas Locke elaborated on Aristotle’s empiricism. Kant offered a synthesis of these apparent opposites. Decades after Kant proposed his synthesis, Hegel observed how the history of ideas seems to progress through a dialectical process.

3. How did cognitive psychology develop from psychology? By the twentieth century, psychology had emerged as a distinct field of study. Wundt focused on the structures of the mind (leading to structuralism), whereas James and Dewey focused on the processes of the mind (functionalism).

Emerging from this dialectic was associationism, espoused by Ebbinghaus and Thorndike. It paved the way for behaviorism by underscoring the importance of mental associations. Another step toward behaviorism was Pavlov’s discovery of the principles of classical conditioning. Watson, and later Skinner, were the chief proponents of behaviorism. It focused entirely on observable links between an organism’s behavior and particular environmental contingencies that strengthen or weaken the likelihood that particular behaviors will be repeated. Most behaviorists dismissed entirely the notion that there is merit in psychologists trying to understand what is going on in the mind of the individual engaging in the behavior.

However, Tolman and subsequent behaviorist researchers noted the role of cognitive processes in influencing behavior. A convergence of developments across many fields led to the emergence of cognitive psychology as a discrete discipline, spearheaded by such notables as Neisser.

4. How have other disciplines contributed to the development of theory and research in cognitive psychology? Cognitive psychology has
roots in philosophy and physiology. They merged
to form the mainstream of psychology. As a dis-
crete field of psychological study, cognitive psy-
chology also profited from cross-disciplinary
investigations.

Relevant fields include linguistics (e.g., How
do language and thought interact?), biological
psychology (e.g., What are the physiological
bases for cognition?), anthropology (e.g.,
What is the importance of the cultural context
for cognition?), and technological advances like
artificial intelligence (e.g., How do computers
process information?).

5. **What methods do cognitive psychologists use to
study how people think?** Cognitive psychologists
use a broad range of methods, including experi-
ments, psychobiological techniques, self-reports,
case studies, naturalistic observation, and com-
puter simulations and artificial intelligence.

6. **What are the current issues and various fields
of study within cognitive psychology?** Some of
the major issues in the field have centered on
how to pursue knowledge. Psychological work
can be done:

- by using both rationalism (which is the basis
  for theory development) and empiricism
  (which is the basis for gathering data);
- by underscoring the importance of cognitive
  structures and of cognitive processes;
- by emphasizing the study of domain-general
  and of domain-specific processing;
- by striving for a high degree of experimental
  control (which better permits causal infer-
  ences) and for a high degree of ecological
  validity (which better allows generalization
  of findings to settings outside of the
  laboratory);
- by conducting basic research seeking funda-
  mental insights about cognition and applied
  research seeking effective uses of cognition
  in real-world settings.

Although positions on these issues may appear to
be diametrical opposites, often apparently antithet-
ical views may be synthesized into a form that offers
the best of each of the opposing viewpoints.

Cognitive psychologists study biological bases
of cognition as well as attention, consciousness,
perception, memory, mental imagery, language,
problem solving, creativity, decision making,
reasoning, developmental changes in cognition
across the life span, human intelligence, artifi-
cial intelligence, and various other aspects of
human thinking.

---

**Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative,
and Practical Questions**

1. Describe the major historical schools of psy-
chological thought leading up to the develop-
ment of cognitive psychology.
2. Describe some of the ways in which philosophy,
linguistics, and artificial intelligence have con-
tributed to the development of cognitive
psychology.
3. Compare and contrast the influences of Plato
and Aristotle on psychology.
4. Analyze how various research methods in cog-
nitive psychology reflect empiricist and ratio-
nalist approaches to gaining knowledge.
5. Design a rough sketch of a cognitive-
psychological investigation involving one of the
research methods described in this chapter.
Highlight both the advantages and the disad-
vantages of using this particular method for your
investigation.
6. This chapter describes cognitive psychology as
the field is at present. How might you speculate
that the field will change in the next 50 years?
7. How might an insight gained from basic
research lead to practical uses in an everyday
setting?
8. How might an insight gained from applied
research lead to a deepened understanding of
the fundamental features of cognition?
**Key Terms**

artificial intelligence (AI), p. 14  
associationism, p. 9  
behaviorism, p. 11  
cognitive psychology, p. 3  
cognitive science, p. 33  
cognitivism, p. 13  
dependent variables, p. 25  
ecological validity, p. 32  
empiricist, p. 6  
functionalism, p. 8  
Gestalt psychology, p. 13  
hypotheses, p. 23  
independent variables, p. 24  
intelligence, p. 17  
introspection, p. 8  
pragmatists, p. 9  
rationalist, p. 6  
statistical significance, p. 23  
structuralism, p. 7  
theory, p. 23  
theory of multiple intelligences, p. 19  
three-stratum model of intelligence, p. 19  
triarchic theory of human intelligence, p. 20

**Media Resources**

Visit the companion website—www.cengagebrain.com—for quizzes, research articles, chapter outlines and, more.
Cognitive Neuroscience

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Cognition in the Brain: The Anatomy and Mechanisms of the Brain
  Gross Anatomy of the Brain: Forebrain, Midbrain, Hindbrain
    The Forebrain
    The Midbrain
    The Hindbrain
  Cerebral Cortex and Localization of Function
    Hemispheric Specialization
    Lobes of the Cerebral Hemispheres
  Neuronal Structure and Function
    Receptors and Drugs

Viewing the Structures and Functions of the Brain
  Postmortem Studies
  Studying Live Nonhuman Animals
  Studying Live Humans
    Electrical Recordings
    Static Imaging Techniques
    Metabolic Imaging

Brain Disorders
  Stroke
  Brain Tumors
  Head Injuries

Intelligence and Neuroscience
  Intelligence and Brain Size
  Intelligence and Neurons
  Intelligence and Brain Metabolism
  Biological Bases of Intelligence Testing
  The P-FIT Theory of Intelligence

Key Themes
Summary
Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

Key Terms
Media Resources
Here are some of the questions we will explore in this chapter:
1. What are the fundamental structures and processes within the brain?
2. How do researchers study the major structures and processes of the brain?
3. What have researchers found as a result of studying the brain?

Our brains are a central processing unit for everything we do. But how do our brains relate to our bodies? Are they connected or separate? Do our brains define who we are? An ancient legend from India (Rosenzweig & Leiman, 1989) tells of Sita. She marries one man but is attracted to another. These two frustrated men behead themselves. Sita, bereft of them both, desperately prays to the goddess Kali to bring the men back to life. Sita is granted her wish. She is allowed to reattach the heads to the bodies. In her rush to bring the two men back to life, Sita mistakenly switches their heads. She attaches them to the wrong bodies. Now, to whom is she married? Who is who?

The mind–body issue has long interested philosophers and scientists. Where is the mind located in the body, if at all? How do the mind and body interact? How are we able to think, speak, plan, reason, learn, and remember? What are the physical bases for our cognitive abilities? These questions all probe the relationship between cognitive psychology and neurobiology. Some cognitive psychologists seek to answer such questions by studying the biological bases of cognition. Cognitive psychologists are especially concerned with how the anatomy (physical structures of the body) and the physiology (functions and processes of the body) of the nervous system affect and are affected by human cognition.

Cognitive neuroscience is the field of study linking the brain and other aspects of the nervous system to cognitive processing and, ultimately, to behavior. The brain is the organ in our bodies that most directly controls our thoughts, emotions, and motivations (Gloor, 1997; Rockland, 2000; Shepherd, 1998). Figure 2.1 shows photos of what the brain actually looks like. We usually think of the brain as being at the top of the body's hierarchy—as the boss, with various other organs responding to it. Like any good boss, however, it listens to and is influenced by its subordinates, the other organs of the body. Thus, the brain is reactive as well as directive.

Believe It or Not

Does Your Brain Use Less Power Than Your Desk Lamp?
The brain is one of the premier users of energy in the human body. As much as 20% of the energy in your body is consumed by your brain, although it accounts only for about 2% of your body mass. This may come as no surprise, given that you need your brain for almost anything you do, from moving your legs to walk to reading this book, to talking to your friend on the phone. Even seeing what is right in front of your eyes takes a huge amount of processing by the brain, as you will see in Chapter 3. And yet, for all the amazing things your brain achieves, it does not use much more energy than your computer and monitor when they are “asleep.” It is estimated that your brain uses about 12–20 watts of power. Your sleeping computer consumes about 10 watts when it’s on, and 150 watts together with its monitor or even more. Even the lamp on your desk uses more power than your brain. Your brain performs many more tasks than your desk lamp or computer. Just think about all you’d have to eat if your brain consumed as much energy as those devices (Drubach, 1999). You’ll learn more about how your brain works in this chapter.

Our brains are a central processing unit for everything we do. But how do our brains relate to our bodies? Are they connected or separate? Do our brains define who we are? An ancient legend from India (Rosenzweig & Leiman, 1989) tells of Sita. She marries one man but is attracted to another. These two frustrated men behead themselves. Sita, bereft of them both, desperately prays to the goddess Kali to bring the men back to life. Sita is granted her wish. She is allowed to reattach the heads to the bodies. In her rush to bring the two men back to life, Sita mistakenly switches their heads. She attaches them to the wrong bodies. Now, to whom is she married? Who is who?

The mind–body issue has long interested philosophers and scientists. Where is the mind located in the body, if at all? How do the mind and body interact? How are we able to think, speak, plan, reason, learn, and remember? What are the physical bases for our cognitive abilities? These questions all probe the relationship between cognitive psychology and neurobiology. Some cognitive psychologists seek to answer such questions by studying the biological bases of cognition. Cognitive psychologists are especially concerned with how the anatomy (physical structures of the body) and the physiology (functions and processes of the body) of the nervous system affect and are affected by human cognition.

Cognitive neuroscience is the field of study linking the brain and other aspects of the nervous system to cognitive processing and, ultimately, to behavior. The brain is the organ in our bodies that most directly controls our thoughts, emotions, and motivations (Gloor, 1997; Rockland, 2000; Shepherd, 1998). Figure 2.1 shows photos of what the brain actually looks like. We usually think of the brain as being at the top of the body's hierarchy—as the boss, with various other organs responding to it. Like any good boss, however, it listens to and is influenced by its subordinates, the other organs of the body. Thus, the brain is reactive as well as directive.
A major goal of present research on the brain is to study localization of function. Localization of function refers to the specific areas of the brain that control specific skills or behaviors. Facts about particular brain areas and their function are interspersed throughout this chapter and also throughout the whole book.

Our exploration of the brain starts with the anatomy of the brain. We will look at the gross anatomy of the brain as well as at neurons and the ways in which information is transmitted in the brain. Then we will explore the methods scientists use to examine the brain, its structures, and functions. And finally, we will learn about brain disorders and how they inform cognitive psychology.

**Gross Anatomy of the Brain: Forebrain, Midbrain, Hindbrain**

What have scientists discovered about the human brain? The brain has three major regions: forebrain, midbrain, and hindbrain. These labels do not correspond exactly to locations of regions in an adult or even a child’s head. Rather, the terms come
from the front-to-back physical arrangement of these parts in the nervous system of a developing embryo. Initially, the forebrain is generally the farthest forward, toward what becomes the face. The midbrain is next in line. And the hindbrain is generally farthest from the forebrain, near the back of the neck [Figure 2.2 (a)]. In development, the relative orientations change so that the forebrain is almost a cap on top of the midbrain and hindbrain. Nonetheless, the terms still are used to designate areas

Figure 2.2  Fetal Brain Development.
Over the course of embryonic and fetal development, the brain becomes more highly specialized and the locations and relative positions of the hindbrain, the midbrain, and the forebrain change from conception to term.
of the fully developed brain. Figures 2.2 (b) and (c) show the changing locations and relationships of the forebrain, the midbrain, and the hindbrain over the course of development of the brain. You can see how they develop, from an embryo a few weeks after conception to a fetus of seven months of age.

**The Forebrain**

The forebrain is the region of the brain located toward the top and front of the brain. It comprises the cerebral cortex, the basal ganglia, the limbic system, the thalamus, and the hypothalamus (Figure 2.3). The cerebral cortex is the outer layer of the cerebral hemispheres. It plays a vital role in our thinking and other mental processes. It therefore merits a special section in this chapter, which follows the present

---

**Figure 2.3  Structures of the Brain.**

The forebrain, the midbrain, and the hindbrain contain structures that perform essential functions for survival and for high-level thinking and feeling.

discussion of the major structures and functions of the brain. The basal ganglia (singular: ganglion) are collections of neurons crucial to motor function. Dysfunction of the basal ganglia can result in motor deficits. These deficits include tremors, involuntary movements, changes in posture and muscle tone, and slowness of movement. Deficits are observed in Parkinson’s disease and Huntington’s disease. Both these diseases entail severe motor symptoms (Rockland, 2000; Lerner & Riley, 2008; Lewis & Barker, 2009).

The limbic system is important to emotion, motivation, memory, and learning. Animals such as fish and reptiles, which have relatively undeveloped limbic systems, respond to the environment almost exclusively by instinct. Mammals and especially humans have relatively more developed limbic systems. Our limbic system allows us to suppress instinctive responses (e.g., the impulse to strike someone who accidentally causes us pain). Our limbic systems help us to adapt our behaviors flexibly in response to our changing environment. The limbic system comprises three central interconnected cerebral structures: the septum, the amygdala, and the hippocampus.

The septum is involved in anger and fear. The amygdala plays an important role in emotion as well, especially in anger and aggression (Adolphs, 2003; Derntl et al., 2009). Stimulation of the amygdala commonly results in fear. It can be evidenced in various ways, such as through palpitations, fearful hallucinations, or frightening flashbacks in memory (Engin & Treit, 2008; Gloor, 1997; Rockland, 2000).

Damage to (lesions in) or removal of the amygdala can result in maladaptive lack of fear. In the case of lesions to the animal brain, the animal approaches potentially dangerous objects without hesitation or fear (Adolphs et al., 1994; Frackowiak et al., 1997). The amygdala also has an enhancing effect for the perception of emotional stimuli. In humans, lesions to the amygdala prevent this enhancement (Anderson & Phelps, 2001; Tottenham, Hare, & Casey, 2009). Additionally, persons with autism display limited activation in the amygdala. A well-known theory of autism suggests that the disorder involves dysfunction of the amygdala, which leads to the social impairment that is typical of persons with autism, for example, difficulties in evaluating people’s trustworthiness or recognizing emotions in faces (Adolphs, Sears, & Piven, 2001; Baron-Cohen et al., 2000; Howard et al., 2000; Kleinhans et al., 2009) Two other effects of lesions to the amygdala can be visual agnosia (inability to recognize objects) and hypersexuality (Steffanaci, 1999).

The hippocampus plays an essential role in memory formation (Eichenbaum, 1999, 2002; Gluck, 1996; Manns & Eichenbaum, 2006; O’Keefe, 2003). It gets its name from the Greek word for “seahorse,” its approximate shape. The hippocampus is essential for flexible learning and for seeing the relations among items learned as well as for spatial memory (Eichenbaum, 1997; Squire, 1992). The hippocampus also appears to keep track of where things are and how these things are spatially related to each other. In other words, it monitors what is where (Cain, Boon, & Corcoran, 2006; Howland et al., 2008; McClelland et al., 1995; Tulving & Schacter, 1994). We return to the role of the hippocampus in Chapter 5.

People who have suffered damage to or removal of the hippocampus still can recall existing memories—for example, they can recognize old friends and places—but they are unable to form new memories (relative to the time of the brain damage). New information—new situations, people, and places—remain forever new. A disease that produces loss of memory function is Korsakoff’s syndrome. Other symptoms include apathy, paralysis of muscles controlling the eye, and tremor.
IN THE LAB OF MARTHA FARAH

Cognitive Neuroscience and Childhood Poverty

Around the time I had my daughter, I shifted my research focus to developmental cognitive neuroscience. People naturally assumed that these two life changes were related, and they were—but not in the way people thought. What captured my interest in brain development was not principally watching my daughter grow, as wondrous a process as that was. Rather, it was getting to know the babysitters who entered our lives, and learning about theirs.

These babysitters were young women of low socioeconomic status (SES), who grew up in families dependent on welfare and supported their own young children with a combination of state assistance supplemented with cash wages from babysitting. As caregivers for my child, they were not merely hired help; they were people I liked, trusted, and grew to care about. And as we became closer, and I spent more time with their families, I learned about a world very different from my own.

The children of these inner-city families started life with the same evident potential as my own child, learning words, playing games, asking questions, and grappling with the challenges of cooperation, discipline, and self-control. But they soon found their way onto the same dispiriting life trajectories as their parents, with limited skills, options, hope. As a mother, I found it heart-breaking. As a scientist, I wanted to understand.

This led to a series of studies in which my collaborators and I tried first to simply document the effects of childhood poverty in terms of cognitive neuroscience’s description of the mind, and then to explain the effects of poverty in terms of more specific, mechanistic causes. With Kim Noble, then a graduate student in my lab, we assessed the functioning of five different neurocognitive systems in kindergarteners of low and middle SES. We found the most pronounced effects in language and executive function systems. These results were replicated and expanded upon in additional studies with Noble and with Hallam Hurt, a pediatrician collaborator. In first graders and in middle-school students, we again found striking SES disparities in language and executive function, as well as in declarative memory. Assuming that these disparities are the result of different early life experiences, what is it about growing up poor that would interfere with the development of these specific systems?

In one study, we made use of data collected earlier on the middle-school children just mentioned. We found that their language ability in middle school was predicted by the amount of cognitive stimulation they experienced as four-year olds—being read to, taken on trips, and so on. In contrast, we found that their declarative memory ability in middle school was predicted by the quality of parental nurturance that they received as young children—being held close, being paid attention to, and so on. The latter finding might seem an odd association. Why would affectionate parenting have anything to do with memory? Yet research with animals shows that when a young animal is stressed, the resulting stress hormones can damage the hippocampus, a brain area important for both stress regulation and memory. This research has also shown that more nurturing maternal behavior can buffer the young animal’s hippocampus against the effects of stress. It would appear that children living in the stressful environment of poverty benefit in a similar way from attentive and affectionate parenting.

Our most recent work, with graduate student Daniel Hackman and radiology colleague Hengyi Rao, has tested these hypothesized mechanisms more directly. Brain imaging has confirmed that hippocampal size is affected by early life parental nurturance in low SES individuals, and direct measures of hormonal responses to stress indicate that both SES and parenting in early childhood program later life stress response. Our ultimate goal is to understand the complex web of social, psychological and physiological influences that act upon children in low SES families and to use that understanding to help them achieve their true potential.
This loss is believed to be associated with deterioration of the hippocampus and is caused by a lack of thiamine (Vitamin B-1) in the brain. The syndrome can result from excessive alcohol use, dietary deficiencies, or eating disorders.

There is a renowned case of a patient known as H.M., who after brain surgery retained his memory for events that transpired before the surgery but had no memory for events after the surgery. This case is another illustration of the resulting problems with memory formation due to hippocampus damage (see Chapter 5 for more on H.M.). Disruption in the hippocampus appears to result in deficits in declarative memory (i.e., memory for pieces of information), but it does not result in deficits in procedural memory (i.e., memory for courses of action) (Rockland, 2000).

The thalamus relays incoming sensory information through groups of neurons that project to the appropriate region in the cortex. Most of the sensory input into the brain passes through the thalamus, which is approximately in the center of the brain, at about eye level. To accommodate all the types of information that must be sorted out, the thalamus is divided into a number of nuclei (groups of neurons of similar function). Each nucleus receives information from specific senses. The information is then relayed to corresponding specific areas in the cerebral cortex. The thalamus also helps in the control of sleep and waking. When the thalamus malfunctions, the result can be pain, tremor, amnesia, impairment of language, and disruptions in waking and sleeping (Rockland, 2000; Steriade, Jones, & McCormick, 1997). In cases of schizophrenia, imaging and in vivo studies reveal abnormal changes in the thalamus (Clinton & Meador-Woodruff, 2004). These abnormalities result in difficulties in filtering stimuli and focusing attention, which in turn can explain why people suffering from schizophrenia experience symptoms such as hallucinations and delusions.

The hypothalamus regulates behavior related to species survival: fighting, feeding, fleeing, and mating. The hypothalamus also is active in regulating emotions and reactions to stress (Malsbury, 2003). It interacts with the limbic system. The small size of the hypothalamus (from Greek hypo-, “under”; located at the base of the forebrain, beneath the thalamus) belies its importance in controlling many bodily functions (Table 2.1). The hypothalamus plays a role in sleep: Dysfunction and neural loss within the hypothalamus are noted in cases of narcolepsy, whereby a person falls asleep often and at unpredictable times (Lodi et al., 2004; Mignot, Taheri, & Nishino, 2002). The hypothalamus also is important for the functioning of the endocrine system. It is involved in the stimulation of the pituitary glands, through which a range of hormones are produced and released. These hormones include growth hormones and oxytocin (which is involved in bonding processes and sexual arousal; Gazzaniga, Ivry, & Mangun, 2009).

The forebrain, midbrain, and hindbrain contain structures that perform essential functions for survival as well as for high-level thinking and feeling. For a summary of the major structures and functions of the brain, as discussed in this section, see Table 2.1.

The Midbrain

The midbrain helps to control eye movement and coordination. The midbrain is more important in nonmammals where it is the main source of control for visual and auditory information. In mammals these functions are dominated by the forebrain. Table 2.1 lists several structures and corresponding functions of the midbrain. By far the most indispensable of these structures is the reticular activating system (RAS; also called the “reticular formation”), a network of neurons essential to the
Table 2.1  Major Structures and Functions of the Brain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region of the Brain</th>
<th>Major Structures within the Regions</th>
<th>Functions of the Structures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forebrain</td>
<td>Cerebral cortex (outer layer of the cerebral hemispheres)</td>
<td>Involved in receiving and processing sensory information, thinking, other cognitive processing, and planning and sending motor information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Basal ganglia (collections of nuclei and neural fibers)</td>
<td>Crucial to the function of the motor system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Limbic systems (hippocampus, amygdala, and septum)</td>
<td>Involved in learning, emotions, and motivation (in particular, the hippocampus influences learning and memory, the amygdala influences anger and aggression, and the septum influences anger and fear)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thalamus</td>
<td>Thalamus (on top)</td>
<td>Primary relay station for sensory information coming into the brain; transmits information to the correct regions of the cerebral cortex through projection fibers that extend from the thalamus to specific regions of the cortex; comprises several nuclei (groups of neurons) that receive specific kinds of sensory information and project that information to specific regions of the cerebral cortex, including four key nuclei for sensory information: (1) from the visual receptors, via optic nerves, to the visual cortex, permitting us to see; (2) from the auditory receptors, via auditory nerves, to the auditory cortex, permitting us to hear; (3) from sensory receptors in the somatic nervous system, to the primary somatosensory cortex, permitting us to sense pressure and pain; and (4) from the cerebellum (in the hindbrain) to the primary motor cortex, permitting us to sense physical balance and equilibrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypothalamus</td>
<td>Controls the endocrine system; controls the autonomic nervous system, such as internal temperature regulation, appetite and thirst regulation, and other key functions; involved in regulation of behavior related to species survival (in particular, fighting, feeding, fleeing, and mating); plays a role in controlling consciousness (see reticular activating system); involved in emotions, pleasure, pain, and stress reactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midbrain</td>
<td>Superior colliculi (on top)</td>
<td>Involved in vision (especially visual reflexes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inferior colliculi (below)</td>
<td>Involved in hearing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
regulation of consciousness (sleep; wakefulness; arousal; attention to some extent; and vital functions such as heartbeat and breathing; Sarter, Bruno, & Berntson, 2003).

The RAS also extends into the hindbrain. Both the RAS and the thalamus are essential to our having any conscious awareness of or control over our existence. The brainstem connects the forebrain to the spinal cord. It comprises the hypothalamus, the thalamus, the midbrain, and the hindbrain. A structure called the peri-aqueductal gray (PAG) is in the brainstem. This region seems to be essential for certain kinds of adaptive behaviors. Injections of small amounts of excitatory amino acids or, alternatively, electrical stimulation of this area results in any of several responses: an aggressive, confrontational response; avoidance or flight response; heightened defensive reactivity; or reduced reactivity as is experienced after a defeat, when one feels hopeless (Bandler & Shipley, 1994; Rockland, 2000).

Physicians make a determination of brain death based on the function of the brainstem. Specifically, a physician must determine that the brainstem has been damaged so severely that various reflexes of the head (e.g., the pupillary reflex) are absent for more than 12 hours, or the brain must show no electrical activity or cerebral circulation of blood (Berkow, 1992).

The Hindbrain

The hindbrain comprises the medulla oblongata, the pons, and the cerebellum.

The medulla oblongata controls heart activity and largely controls breathing, swallowing, and digestion. The medulla is also the place at which nerves from the right side of the body cross over to the left side of the brain and nerves from the left side of the body cross over to the right side of the brain. The medulla oblongata is an elongated interior structure located at the point where the spinal cord enters the

---

Table 2.1  
Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region of the Brain</th>
<th>Major Structures within the Regions</th>
<th>Functions of the Structures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reticular activating system (also extends into the hindbrain)</td>
<td>Important in controlling consciousness (sleep arousal), attention, cardiorespiratory function, and movement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray matter, red nucleus, substantia nigra, ventral region</td>
<td>Important in controlling movement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hindbrain</td>
<td>Cerebellum</td>
<td>Essential to balance, coordination, and muscle tone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pons (also contains part of the RAS)</td>
<td>Involved in consciousness (sleep and arousal); bridges neural transmissions from one part of the brain to another; involved with facial nerves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medulla oblongata</td>
<td>Serves as juncture at which nerves cross from one side of the body to opposite side of the brain; involved in cardiorespiratory function, digestion, and swallowing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
skull and joins with the brain. The medulla oblongata, which contains part of the RAS, helps to keep us alive.

The pons serves as a kind of relay station because it contains neural fibers that pass signals from one part of the brain to another. Its name derives from the Latin for “bridge,” as it serves a bridging function. The pons also contains a portion of the RAS and nerves serving parts of the head and face. The cerebellum (from Latin, “little brain”) controls bodily coordination, balance, and muscle tone, as well as some aspects of memory involving procedure-related movements (see Chapters 7 and 8) (Middleton & Helms Tillery, 2003). The prenatal development of the human brain within each individual roughly corresponds to the evolutionary development of the human brain within the species as a whole. Specifically, the hindbrain is evolutionarily the oldest and most primitive part of the brain. It also is the first part of the brain to develop prenatally. The midbrain is a relatively newer addition to the brain in evolutionary terms. It is the next part of the brain to develop prenatally. Finally, the forebrain is the most recent evolutionary addition to the brain. It is the last of the three portions of the brain to develop prenatally.

Additionally, across the evolutionary development of our species, humans have shown an increasingly greater proportion of brain weight in relation to body weight. However, across the span of development after birth, the proportion of brain weight to body weight declines. For cognitive psychologists, the most important of these evolutionary trends is the increasing neural complexity of the brain. The evolution of the human brain has offered us the enhanced ability to exercise voluntary control over behavior. It has also strengthened our ability to plan and to contemplate alternative courses of action. These ideas are discussed in the next section with respect to the cerebral cortex.

**Cerebral Cortex and Localization of Function**

The cerebral cortex plays an extremely important role in human cognition. It forms a 1- to 3-millimeter layer that wraps the surface of the brain somewhat like the bark of a tree wraps around the trunk. In human beings, the many convolutions, or creases, of the cerebral cortex comprise three elements. Sulci (singular, sulcus) are small grooves. Fissures are large grooves. And gyri (singular, gyrus) are bulges between adjacent sulci or fissures. These folds greatly increase the surface area of the cortex. If the wrinkly human cortex were smoothed out, it would take up about 2 square feet. The cortex comprises 80% of the human brain (Kolb & Whishaw, 1990).

The volume of the human skull has more than doubled over the past 2 million years, allowing for the expansion of the brain, and especially the cortex (Toro et al., 2008). The complexity of brain function increases with the cortical area. The human cerebral cortex enables us to think. Because of it, we can plan, coordinate thoughts and actions, perceive visual and sound patterns, and use language. Without it, we would not be human. The surface of the cerebral cortex is grayish. It is sometimes referred to as gray matter. This is because it primarily comprises the grayish neural-cell bodies that process the information that the brain receives and sends. In contrast, the underlying white matter of the brain’s interior comprises mostly white, myelinated axons.

The cerebral cortex forms the outer layer of the two halves of the brain—the left and right cerebral hemispheres (Davidson & Hugdahl, 1995; Galaburda & Rosen, 2003; Gazzaniga & Hutsler, 1999; Levy, 2000). Although the two hemispheres appear to be quite similar, they function differently. The left cerebral
Hemispheric Specialization

How did psychologists find out that the two hemispheres have different responsibilities? The study of hemispheric specialization in the human brain can be traced back to Marc Dax, a country doctor in France. By 1836, Dax had treated more than 40 patients suffering from aphasia—loss of speech—as a result of brain damage. Dax noticed a relationship between the loss of speech and the side of the brain in which damage had occurred. In studying his patients’ brains after death, Dax saw that in every case there had been damage to the left hemisphere of the brain. He was not able to find even one case of speech loss resulting from damage to the right hemisphere only.

In 1861, French scientist Paul Broca claimed that an autopsy revealed that an aphasic stroke patient had a lesion in the left cerebral hemisphere of the brain. By 1864, Broca was convinced that the left hemisphere of the brain is critical in speech, a view that has held up over time. The specific part of the brain that Broca identified, now called Broca’s area, contributes to speech (Figure 2.4).

Another important early researcher, German neurologist Carl Wernicke, studied language-deficient patients who could speak but whose speech made no sense. Like Broca, he traced language ability to the left hemisphere. He studied a different precise location, now known as Wernicke’s area, which contributes to language comprehension (Figure 2.4).

Karl Spencer Lashley, often described as the father of neuropsychology, started studying localization in 1915. He found that implantations of crudely built electrodes in apparently identical locations in the brain yielded different results. Different locations sometimes paradoxically yielded the same results (e.g., see Lashley, 1950). Subsequent researchers, using more sophisticated electrodes and measurement procedures, have found that specific locations do correlate with specific motor
responses across many test sessions. Apparently, Lashley’s research was limited by the technology available to him at the time.

Despite the valuable early contributions by Broca, Wernicke, and others, the individual most responsible for modern theory and research on hemispheric specialization was Nobel Prize–winning psychologist Roger Sperry. Sperry (1964) argued that each hemisphere behaves in many respects like a separate brain. In a classic experiment that supports this contention, Sperry and his colleagues severed the corpus callosum connecting the two hemispheres of a cat’s brain. They then proved that information presented visually to one cerebral hemisphere of the cat was not recognizable to the other hemisphere. Similar work on monkeys indicated the same discrete performance of each hemisphere (Sperry, 1964).

Figure 2.4  Functional Areas of the Cortex.
Strangely, although people with lesions in Broca’s area cannot speak fluently, they can use their voices to sing or shout. 
Some of the most interesting information about how the human brain works, and especially about the respective roles of the hemispheres, has emerged from studies of humans with epilepsy in whom the corpus callosum has been severed. Surgically severing this neurological bridge prevents epileptic seizures from spreading from one hemisphere to another. This procedure thereby drastically reduces the severity of the seizures. However, this procedure also results in a loss of communication between the two hemispheres. It is as if the person has two separate specialized brains processing different information and performing separate functions.

**Split-brain patients** are people who have undergone operations severing the corpus callosum. Split-brain research reveals fascinating possibilities regarding the ways we think. Many in the field have argued that language is localized in the left hemisphere. Spatial visualization ability appears to be largely localized in the right hemisphere (Farah, 1988a, 1988b; Gazzaniga, 1985). Spatial-orientation tasks also seem to be localized in the right hemisphere (Vogel, Bowers, & Vogel, 2003). It appears that roughly 90% of the adult population has language functions that are predominantly localized within the left hemisphere. There are indications, however, that the lateralization of left-handers differs from that of right-handers, and that for females, the lateralization may not be as pronounced as for males (Vogel, Bowers, & Vogel, 2003). More than 95% of right-handers and about 70% of left-handers have left-hemisphere dominance for language. In people who lack left-hemisphere processing, language development in the right hemisphere retains phonemic and semantic abilities, but it is deficient in syntactic competence (Gazzaniga & Hutsler, 1999).

The left hemisphere is important not only in language but also in movement. People with apraxia—disorders of skilled movements—often have had damage to the left hemisphere. Such people have lost the ability to carry out familiar purposeful movements like forming letters when writing by hand (Gazzaniga & Hutsler, 1999; Heilman, Coenen, & Kluger, 2008). Another role of the left hemisphere is to examine past experiences to find patterns. Finding patterns is an important step in the generation of hypotheses (Wolford, Miller, & Gazzaniga, 2000). For example, while observing an airport, you may notice that planes often approach the landing strip from different directions. However, you may soon find that at any given time, all planes approach from the same direction. You then might hypothesize that the direction of their approach may have to do with the wind direction and speed. Thus, you have observed a pattern and generated ideas about what causes this pattern with the help of your left hemisphere.

The right hemisphere is largely “mute” (Levy, 2000). It has little grammatical or phonetic understanding. But it does have very good semantic knowledge. It also is involved in practical language use. People with right-hemisphere damage tend to have deficits in following conversations or stories. They also have difficulties in making inferences from context and in understanding metaphorical or humorous speech (Levy, 2000). The right hemisphere also plays a primary role in self-recognition. In particular, the right hemisphere seems to be responsible for the identification of one’s own face (Platek et al., 2004).

In studies of split-brain patients, the patient is presented with a composite photograph that shows a face that is made up of the left and right side of the faces of two different persons (Figure 2.5). They are typically unaware that they saw conflicting information in the two halves of the picture. When asked to give an answer about what they saw in words, they report that they saw the image in the right half of the picture. When they are asked to use the fingers of the left hand (which contralaterally sends and receives information to and from the right hemisphere) to point to what they saw, participants choose the image from the left half of the
picture. Recall the contralateral association between hemisphere and side of the body. Given this, it seems that the left hemisphere is controlling their verbal processing (speaking) of visual information. The right hemisphere appears to control spatial processing (pointing) of visual information. Thus, the task that the participants are asked to perform is crucial in determining what image the participant thinks was shown.
Gazzaniga (Gazzaniga & LeDoux, 1978) does not believe that the two hemispheres function completely independently but rather that they serve complementary roles. For instance, there is no language processing in the right hemisphere (except in rare cases of early brain damage to the left hemisphere). Rather, only visuospatial processing occurs in the right hemisphere. As an example, Gazzaniga has found that before split-brain surgery, people can draw three-dimensional representations of cubes with each hand (Gazzaniga & LeDoux, 1978). After surgery, however, they can draw a reasonable-looking cube only with the left hand. In each patient, the right hand draws pictures unrecognizable either as cubes or as three-dimensional objects. This finding is important because of the contralateral association between each side of the body and the opposite hemisphere of the brain. Recall that the right hemisphere controls the left hand. The left hand is the only one that a split-brain patient can use for drawing recognizable figures. This experiment thus supports the contention that the right hemisphere is dominant in our comprehension and exploration of spatial relations.

Gazzaniga (1985) argues that the brain, and especially the right hemisphere of the brain, is organized into relatively independent functioning units that work in parallel. According to Gazzaniga, each of the many discrete units of the mind operates relatively independently of the others. These operations are often outside of conscious awareness. While these various independent and often subconscious operations are taking place, the left hemisphere tries to assign interpretations to these operations. Sometimes the left hemisphere perceives that the individual is behaving in a way that does not intrinsically make any particular sense. For example, if you see an adult staggering along a sidewalk at night in a way that does not initially make sense, you may conclude he is drunk or otherwise not in full control of his senses. The brain thus finds a way to assign some meaning to that behavior.

In addition to studying hemispheric differences in language and spatial relations, researchers have tried to determine whether the two hemispheres think in ways that differ from one another. Levy (1974) has found some evidence that the left hemisphere tends to process information analytically (piece-by-piece, usually in a sequence). She argues that the right hemisphere tends to process it holistically (as a whole).

**Lobes of the Cerebral Hemispheres**

For practical purposes, four lobes divide the cerebral hemispheres and cortex into four parts. They are not distinct units. Rather, they are largely arbitrary anatomical regions divided by fissures. Particular functions have been identified with each lobe, but the lobes also interact. The four lobes, named after the bones of the skull lying directly over them (Figure 2.6), are the frontal, parietal, temporal, and occipital lobes. The lobes are involved in numerous functions. Our discussion of them here describes only part of what they do.

The **frontal lobe**, toward the front of the brain, is associated with motor processing and higher thought processes, such as abstract reasoning, problem solving, planning, and judgment (Stuss & Floden, 2003). It tends to be involved when sequences of thoughts or actions are called for. It is critical in producing speech. The **prefrontal cortex**, the region toward the front of the frontal lobe, is involved in complex motor control and tasks that require integration of information over time (Gazzaniga, Ivry, & Mangun, 2002).

The **parietal lobe**, at the upper back portion of the brain, is associated with somatosensory processing. It receives inputs from the neurons regarding touch, pain, temperature sense, and limb position when you are perceiving space and your
relationship to it—how you are situated relative to the space you are occupying (Culham, 2003; Gazzaniga, Ivry, & Mangun, 2002). The parietal lobe is also involved in consciousness and paying attention. If you are paying attention to what you are reading, your parietal lobe is activated.

The **temporal lobe**, directly under your temples, is associated with auditory processing (Murray, 2003) and comprehending language. It is also involved in your retention of visual memories. For example, if you are trying to keep in memory Figure 2.6, then your temporal lobe is involved. The temporal lobe also matches new things you see to what you have retained in visual memory.

The **occipital lobe** is associated with visual processing (De Weerd, 2003b). The occipital lobe contains numerous visual areas, each specialized to analyze specific aspects of a scene, including color, motion, location, and form (Gazzaniga, Ivry, & Mangun, 2002). When you go to pick strawberries, your occipital lobe is involved in helping you find the red strawberries in between the green leaves.

**Projection areas** are the areas in the lobes in which sensory processing occurs. These areas are referred to as projection areas because the nerves contain sensory information going to (projecting to) the thalamus. It is from here that the sensory information is communicated to the appropriate area in the relevant lobe. Similarly, the projection areas communicate motor information downward through the spinal cord to the appropriate muscles via the peripheral nervous system (PNS). Now let us consider the lobes, and especially the frontal lobe in more detail.

The frontal lobe, located toward the front of the head (the face), plays a role in judgment, problem solving, personality, and intentional movement. It contains the **primary motor cortex**, which specializes in the planning, control, and execution of...
movement, particularly of movement involving any kind of delayed response. If your motor cortex were electrically stimulated, you would react by moving a corresponding body part. The nature of the movement would depend on where in the motor cortex your brain had been stimulated. Control of the various kinds of body movements is located contralaterally on the primary motor cortex. A similar inverse mapping occurs from top to bottom. The lower extremities of the body are represented on the upper (toward the top of the head) side of the motor cortex, and the upper part of the body is represented on the lower side of the motor cortex.

Information going to neighboring parts of the body also comes from neighboring parts of the motor cortex. Thus, the motor cortex can be mapped to show where and in what proportions different parts of the body are represented in the brain (Figure 2.7). Maps of this kind are called “homunculi” (homunculus is Latin for “little person”) because they depict the body parts of a person mapped on the brain.

The three other lobes are located farther away from the front of the head. These lobes specialize in sensory and perceptual activity. For example, in the parietal lobe, the primary somatosensory cortex receives information from the senses about pressure, texture, temperature, and pain. It is located right behind the frontal lobe’s primary motor cortex. If your somatosensory cortex were electrically stimulated, you probably would report feeling as if you had been touched.

**Figure 2.7 (part 1) Homunculus of the Primary Motor Cortex.**

This map of the primary motor cortex is often termed a homunculus (from Latin, “little person”) because it is drawn as a cross section of the cortex surrounded by the figure of a small upside-down person whose body parts map out a proportionate correspondence to the parts of the cortex.
From looking at the homunculus (see Figure 2.7), you can see that the relationship of function to form applies in the development of the motor cortex. The same holds true for the somatosensory cortex regions. The more need we have for use, sensitivity, and fine control in a particular body part, the larger the area of cortex generally devoted to that part. For example, we humans are tremendously reliant on our hands and faces in our interactions with the world. We show correspondingly large proportions of the cerebral cortex devoted to sensation in, and motor response by, our hands and face. Conversely, we rely relatively little on our toes for both movement and information gathering. As a result, the toes represent a relatively small area on both the primary motor and somatosensory cortices.

The region of the cerebral cortex pertaining to hearing is located in the temporal lobe, below the parietal lobe. This lobe performs complex auditory analysis. This kind of analysis is needed in understanding human speech or listening to a symphony. The lobe also is specialized—some parts are more sensitive to sounds of higher pitch, others to sounds of lower pitch. The auditory region is primarily contralateral, although both sides of the auditory area have at least some representation from each ear. If your auditory cortex were stimulated electrically, you would report having heard some sort of sound.

**Figure 2.7 (part 2)  Homunculus of the Somatosensory Cortex.**

As with the primary motor cortex in the frontal lobe, a homunculus of the somatosensory cortex maps, in inverted form, the parts of the body from which the cortex receives information.

The **visual cortex** is primarily in the occipital lobe. Some neural fibers carrying visual information travel ipsilaterally from the left eye to the left cerebral hemisphere and from the right eye to the right cerebral hemisphere. Other fibers cross over the **optic chiasma** (from Greek, “visual X” or “visual intersection”) and go contralaterally to the opposite hemisphere (Figure 2.8). In particular, neural fibers go from the left side of the visual field for each eye to the right side of the visual cortex. Complementarily, the nerves from the right side of each eye’s visual field send information to the left side of the visual cortex.

The brain is a very complex structure, and researchers use a variety of expressions to describe which part of the brain they are speaking of. Figure 2.6 explains some other words that are frequently used to describe different brain regions. These

![Figure 2.8 The Optic Tract and Pathways to the Primary Visual Cortex.](image)

are the words *rostral*, *ventral*, *caudal*, and *dorsal*. They are all derived from Latin words and indicate the part of the brain with respect to other body parts.

- *Rostral* refers to the front part of the brain (literally the “nasal region”).
- *Ventral* refers to the bottom surface of the body/brain (the side of the stomach).
- *Caudal* literally means “tail” and refers to the back part of the body/brain.
- *Dorsal* refers to the upside of the brain (it literally means “back,” and in animals the back is on the upside of the body).

The brain typically makes up only one fortieth of the weight of an adult human body. Nevertheless, it uses about one fifth of the circulating blood, one fifth of the available glucose, and one fifth of the available oxygen. It is, however, the supreme organ of cognition. Understanding both its structure and function, from the neural to the cerebral levels of organization, is vital to an understanding of cognitive psychology. The recent development of the field of cognitive neuroscience, with its focus on localization of function, reconceptualizes the mind–body question discussed in the beginning of this chapter. The question has changed from “Where is the mind located in the body?” to “Where are particular cognitive operations located in the nervous system?” Throughout the text, we return to these questions in reference to particular cognitive operations and discuss these operations in more detail.

**Neuronal Structure and Function**

To understand how the entire nervous system processes information, we need to examine the structure and function of the cells that constitute the nervous system. Individual neural cells, called *neurons*, transmit electrical signals from one location to another in the nervous system (Carlson, 2006; Shepherd, 2004). The greatest concentration of neurons is in the neocortex of the brain. The neocortex is the part of the brain associated with complex cognition. This tissue can contain as many as 100,000 neurons per cubic millimeter (Churchland & Sejnowski, 2004). The neurons tend to be arranged in the form of networks, which provide information and feedback to each other within various kinds of information processing (Vogels, Rajan, & Abbott, 2005).

Neurons vary in their structure, but almost all neurons have four basic parts, as illustrated in Figure 2.9. These include a soma (cell body), dendrites, an axon, and terminal buttons.

The *soma*, which contains the nucleus of the cell (the center portion that performs metabolic and reproductive functions for the cell), is responsible for the life of the neuron and connects the dendrites to the axon. The many *dendrites* are branch-like structures that receive information from other neurons, and the soma integrates the information. Learning is associated with the formation of new neuronal connections. Hence, it occurs in conjunction with increased complexity or ramification in the branching structure of dendrites in the brain. The single *axon* is a long, thin tube that extends (and sometimes splits) from the soma and responds to the information, when appropriate, by transmitting an electrochemical signal, which travels to the terminus (end), where the signal can be transmitted to other neurons.

Axons are of two basic, roughly equally occurring kinds, distinguished by the presence or absence of myelin. *Myelin* is a white, fatty substance that surrounds some of the axons of the nervous system, which accounts for some of the whiteness of the white matter of the brain. Some axons are myelinated (in that they are surrounded by a myelin sheath). This sheath, which insulates and protects longer axons from electrical interference by other neurons in the area, also speeds up the
conduction of information. In fact, transmission in myelinated axons can reach 100 meters per second (equal to about 224 miles per hour). Moreover, myelin is not distributed continuously along the axon. It is distributed in segments broken up by nodes of Ranvier. **Nodes of Ranvier** are small gaps in the myelin coating along the axon, which serve to increase conduction speed even more by helping to create electrical signals, also called action potentials, which are then conducted down the axon. The degeneration of myelin sheaths along axons in certain nerves is associated with multiple sclerosis, an autoimmune disease. It results in impairments of coordination and balance. In severe cases this disease is fatal. The second kind of axon lacks the myelin coat altogether. Typically, these unmyelinated axons are smaller and shorter (as well as slower) than the myelinated axons. As a result, they do not need the increased conduction velocity myelin provides for longer axons (Giuliodori & DiCarlo, 2004).

The **terminal buttons** are small knobs found at the ends of the branches of an axon that do not directly touch the dendrites of the next neuron. Rather, there is a very small gap, the synapse. The **synapse** serves as a juncture between the terminal buttons of one or more neurons and the dendrites (or sometimes the soma) of one or more other neurons (Carlson, 2006). Synapses are important in cognition. Rats show increases in both the size and the number of synapses in the brain as a result of learning (Federmeier, Kleim & Greenough, 2002). Decreased cognitive functioning, as in Alzheimer’s disease, is associated with reduced efficiency of synaptic transmission of nerve impulses (Selkoe, 2002). Signal transmission between neurons occurs when the terminal buttons release one or more neurotransmitters at the synapse. These **neurotransmitters** are chemical messengers for transmission of information across the synaptic gap to the receiving dendrites of the next neuron (von Bohlen und Halbach & Dermietzel, 2006).

Although scientists have identified more than 100 transmitter substances, it seems likely that more remain to be discovered. Medical and psychological researchers are working to discover and understand neurotransmitters. In particular, they wish to
understand how the neurotransmitters interact with drugs, moods, abilities, and perceptions. We know much about the mechanics of impulse transmission in nerves. But we know relatively little about how the nervous system’s chemical activity relates to psychological states. Despite the limits on present knowledge, we have gained some insight into how several of these substances affect our psychological functioning.

At present, it appears that three types of chemical substances are involved in neurotransmission:

- **monoamine neurotransmitters** are synthesized by the nervous system through enzymatic actions on one of the amino acids (constituents of proteins, such as choline, tyrosine, and tryptophan) in our diet (e.g., acetylcholine, dopamine, and serotonin);
- **amino-acid neurotransmitters** are obtained directly from the amino acids in our diet without further synthesis (e.g., gamma-aminobutyric acid, or GABA);
- **neuropeptides** are peptide chains (molecules made from the parts of two or more amino acids).

Table 2.2 lists some examples of neurotransmitters, together with their typical functions in the nervous system and their associations with cognitive processing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neurotransmitters</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>General Function</th>
<th>Specific Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acetylcholine (Ach)</td>
<td>Monoamine neurotransmitter synthesized from choline</td>
<td>Excitatory in brain and either excitatory (at skeletal muscles) or inhibitory (at heart muscles) elsewhere in the body</td>
<td>Believed to be involved in memory because of high concentration found in the hippocampus (McIntyre et al., 2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dopamine (DA)</td>
<td>Monoamine neurotransmitter synthesized from tyrosine</td>
<td>Influences movement, attention, and learning; mostly inhibitory but some excitatory effects</td>
<td>Parkinson’s disease, characterized by tremors and limb rigidity, results from too little DA; some schizophrenia symptoms are associated with too much DA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epinephrine and norepinephrine</td>
<td>Monoamine neurotransmitter synthesized from tyrosine</td>
<td>Hormones (also known as adrenaline and noradrenaline) involved in regulation of alertness</td>
<td>Involved in diverse effects on body related to fight-or-flight reactions, anger, and fear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serotonin</td>
<td>Monoamine neurotransmitter synthesized from tryptophan</td>
<td>Involved in arousal, sleep and dreaming, and mood; usually inhibitory but some excitatory effects</td>
<td>Normally inhibits dreaming; defects in serotonin system are linked to severe depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GABA (gamma-aminobutyric acid)</td>
<td>Amino acid neurotransmitter</td>
<td>General neuromodulatory effects resulting from inhibitory influences on presynaptic axons</td>
<td>Currently believed to influence certain mechanisms for learning and memory (Izquierdo &amp; Medina, 1997)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutamate</td>
<td>Amino acid neurotransmitter</td>
<td>General neuromodulatory effects resulting from excitatory influences on presynaptic axons</td>
<td>Currently believed to influence certain mechanisms for learning and memory (Riedel, Platt, &amp; Micheau, 2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuropeptides</td>
<td>Peptide chains serving as neurotransmitters</td>
<td>General neuromodulatory effects resulting from influences on postsynaptic membranes</td>
<td>Endorphins play a role in pain relief. Neuromodulating neuropeptides sometimes are released to enhance the effects of Ach</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Acetylcholine is associated with memory functions, and the loss of acetylcholine through Alzheimer’s disease has been linked to impaired memory functioning in Alzheimer’s patients (Hasselmo, 2006). Acetylcholine also plays an important role in sleep and arousal. When someone awakens, there is an increase in the activity of so-called cholinergic neurons in the basal forebrain and the brainstem (Rockland, 2000).

Dopamine is associated with attention, learning, and movement coordination. Dopamine also is involved in motivational processes, such as reward and reinforcement. Schizophrenics show very high levels of dopamine. This fact has led to the “dopamine theory of schizophrenia” which suggests that high levels of dopamine may be partially responsible for schizophrenic conditions. Drugs used to combat schizophrenia often inhibit dopamine activity (von Bohlen und Halbach & Dermietzel, 2006).

In contrast, patients with Parkinson’s disease show very low dopamine levels, which leads to the typical trembling and movement problems associated with Parkinson’s. When patients receive medication that increases their dopamine level, they (as well as healthy people who receive dopamine) sometimes show an increase in pathological gambling. Gambling is a compulsive disorder that results from impaired impulse control. When dopamine treatment is suspended, these patients no longer exhibit this behavior (Drapier et al., 2006; Voon et al., 2007; Abler et al., 2009). These findings support the role of dopamine in motivational processes and impulse control.

Serotonin plays an important role in eating behavior and body-weight regulation. High serotonin levels play a role in some types of anorexia. Specifically, serotonin seems to play a role in the types of anorexia resulting from illness or treatment of illness. For example, patients suffering from cancer or undergoing dialysis often experience a severe loss of appetite (Agulera et al., 2000; Davis et al., 2004). This loss of appetite is related, in both cases, to high serotonin levels. Serotonin is also involved in aggression and regulation of impulsivity (Rockland, 2000). Drugs that block serotonin tend to result in an increase in aggressive behavior.

The preceding description drastically oversimplifies the intricacies of constant neuronal communication. Such complexities make it difficult to understand what is happening in the normal brain when we are thinking, feeling, and interacting with our environment. Many researchers seek to understand the normal information processes of the brain by investigating what is going wrong in the brains of people affected by neurological and psychological disorders. In the case of depression, for example, in the early 1950s a drug (iproniazid, a monoamine oxidase inhibitor) intended to treat tuberculosis was found to have a mood-improving effect. This finding led to some early research on the chemical causes of depression. Perhaps if we can understand what has gone awry—what chemicals are out of balance—we can figure out how processes normally work and how to put things back into balance. One way of doing so might be by providing needed neurotransmitters or by inhibiting the effects of overabundant neurotransmitters.

Receptors and Drugs

Receptors in the brain that normally are occupied by the standard neurotransmitters can be hijacked by psychopharmacologically active drugs, legal or illegal. In such cases, the molecules of the drugs enter into receptors that normally would be for neurotransmitter substances endogenous in (originating in) the body.

When people stop using the drugs, withdrawal symptoms arise. Once a user has formed narcotic dependence, for example, the form of treatment differs for acute toxicity (the damage done from a particular overdose) versus chronic toxicity (the damage done by long-term drug addiction). Acute toxicity is often treated with naloxone or
related drugs. Naloxone (as well as a related drug, naltrexone) occupies opiate receptors in the brain better than the opiates themselves occupy those sites; thus, it blocks all effects of narcotics. In fact, naloxone has such a strong affinity for the endorphin receptors in the brain that it actually displaces molecules of narcotics already in these receptors and then moves into the receptors. Naloxone is not addictive, however. Even though it binds to receptors, it does not activate them. Although naloxone can be a life-saving drug for someone who has overdosed on opiates, its effects are short-lived. Thus, it is a poor long-term treatment for drug addiction.

In narcotic detoxification, methadone often is substituted for the narcotic (typically, heroin). Methadone binds to endorphin receptor sites in a similar way to naloxone and reduces the heroin cravings and withdrawal symptoms of addicted persons. After the substitution, gradually decreasing dosages are administered to the patient until he or she is drug-free. Unfortunately, the usefulness of methadone is limited by the fact that it is addictive.

**Viewing the Structures and Functions of the Brain**

Scientists can use many methods for studying the human brain. These methods include both postmortem (from Latin, “after death”) studies and *in vivo* (from Latin, “living”) techniques on both humans and animals. Each technique provides important information about the structure and function of the human brain. Even some of the earliest postmortem studies still influence our thinking about how the brain performs certain functions. However, the recent trend is to focus on techniques that provide information about human mental functioning as it is occurring. This trend is in contrast to the earlier trend of waiting to find people with disorders and then studying their brains after they died. Because postmortem studies are the foundation for later work, we discuss them first. We then move on to the more modern in vivo techniques.

**Postmortem Studies**

Postmortem studies and the dissection of brains have been done for centuries. Even today, researchers often use dissection to study the relation between the brain and behavior. In the ideal case, studies start during the lifetime of a person. Researchers observe and document the behavior of people who show signs of brain damage while they are alive (Wilson, 2003). Later, after the patients die, the researchers examine the patients’ brains for lesions—areas where body tissue has been damaged, such as from injury or disease. Then the researchers infer that the lesioned locations may be related to the behavior that was affected. The case of Phineas Gage, discussed in Chapter 1, was explored through these methods.
Through such investigations, researchers may be able to trace a link between an observed type of behavior and anomalies in a particular location in the brain. An early example is Paul Broca’s (1824–1880) famous patient, Tan (so named because that was the only syllable he was capable of uttering). Tan had severe speech problems. These problems were linked to lesions in an area of the frontal lobe (Broca’s area). This area is involved in certain functions of speech production. In more recent times, postmortem examinations of victims of Alzheimer’s disease (an illness that causes devastating losses of memory; see Chapter 5) have led researchers to identify some of the brain structures involved in memory (e.g., the hippocampus, described earlier in this chapter). These examinations also have identified some of the microscopic aberrations associated with the disease process (e.g., distinctive tangled fibers in the brain tissue). Although lesioning techniques provide the basic foundation for understanding the relation of the brain to behavior, they are limited in that they cannot be performed on the living brain. As a result, they do not offer insights into more specific physiological processes of the brain. For this kind of information, we need to study live nonhuman animals.

**Studying Live Nonhuman Animals**

Scientists also want to understand the physiological processes and functions of the living brain. To study the changing activity of the living brain, scientists must use in vivo research. Many early in vivo techniques were performed exclusively on animals. For example, Nobel Prize–winning research on visual perception arose from in vivo studies investigating the electrical activity of individual cells in particular regions of the brains of animals (Hubel & Wiesel, 1963, 1968, 1979; see Chapter 3).

To obtain single-cell recordings, researchers insert a very thin electrode next to a single neuron in the brain of an animal (usually a monkey or a cat). They then record the changes in electrical activity that occur in the cell when the animal is exposed to a stimulus. In this way, scientists can measure the effects of certain kinds of stimuli, such as visually presented lines, on the activity of individual neurons. Neurons fire constantly, even if no stimuli are present, so the task of the researcher is to find stimuli that produce a consistent change in the activity of the neuron. This technique can be used only in laboratory animals, not in humans, because no safe way has yet been devised to perform such recordings in humans.

A second group of animal studies includes selective lesioning—surgically removing or damaging part of the brain—to observe resulting functional deficits (Al’bertin, Mulder, & Wiener, 2003; Mohammed, Jonsson, & Archer, 1986). In recent years, researchers have found neurochemical ways to induce lesions in animals’ brains by administering drugs that destroy only cells that use a particular neurotransmitter. Some drugs’ effects are reversible, so that conductivity in the brain is disrupted only for a limited amount of time (Gazzaniga, Ivry, & Mangun, 2009).

A third way of doing research with animals is by employing genetic knockout procedures. By using genetic manipulations, animals can be created that lack certain kinds of cells or receptors in the brain. Comparisons with normal animals then indicate what the function of the missing receptors or cells may be.

**Studying Live Humans**

Obviously, many of the techniques used to study live animals cannot be used on human participants. Generalizations to humans based on these studies are therefore
somewhat limited. However, an “array of less invasive imaging techniques for use with humans has been developed. These techniques—electrical recordings, static imaging, and metabolic imaging—are described in this section.

**Electrical Recordings**

The transmission of signals in the brain occurs through electrical potentials. When recorded, this activity appears as waves of various widths (frequencies) and heights (intensities). **Electroencephalograms (EEGs)** are recordings of the electrical frequencies and intensities of the living brain, typically recorded over relatively long periods (Picton & Mazaheri, 2003). Through EEGs, it is possible to study brain-wave activity indicative of changing mental states such as deep sleep or dreaming. To obtain EEG recordings, electrodes are placed at various points along the surface of the scalp. The electrical activity of underlying brain areas is then recorded. Therefore, the information is not localized to specific cells. However, the EEG is very sensitive to changes over time. For example, EEG recordings taken during sleep reveal changing patterns of electrical activity involving the whole brain. Different patterns emerge during dreaming versus deep sleep. EEGs are also used as a tool in the diagnosis of epilepsy because they can indicate whether seizures appear in both sides of the brain at the same time, or whether they originate in one part of the brain and then spread.

To relate electrical activity to a particular event or task (e.g., seeing a flash of light or listening to sentences), EEG waves can be measured when participants are exposed to a particular stimulus. An **event-related potential (ERP)** is the record of a small change in the brain’s electrical activity in response to a stimulating event. The fluctuation typically lasts a mere fraction of a second. ERPs provide very good information about the time-course of task-related brain activity. In any one EEG recording, there is a great deal of “noise”—that is, irrelevant electrical activity going on in the brain. ERPs cancel out the effects of noise by averaging out activity that is not task-related. Therefore, the EEG waves are averaged over a large number (e.g., 100) of trials to reveal the event-related potentials (ERPs). The resulting wave forms show characteristic spikes related to the timing of electrical activity, but they reveal only very general information about the location of that activity (because of low spatial resolution as a result of the placement of scalp electrodes).

The ERP technique has been used in a wide variety of studies. Some studies of mental abilities like selective attention have investigated individual differences by using event-related potentials (e.g., Troche et al., 2009). ERP methods are also used to examine language processing. One study examined children who suffered from developmental language impairment and compared them with those who did not. The children were presented with pictures and a sound or word, and then had to decide whether the picture, on the one hand, and the sound or word, on the other, matched. For example, in a matching pair, a picture of a rooster would be presented with either the sound “cockadoodledoo” or the spoken word “crowing.” A mismatch would be the picture of the rooster presented with the sound “ding dong” or the spoken word “chiming.” There was no difference between the two groups when they had to match the picture with the sound. The children with language impairment had greater difficulty matching the picture with the spoken word and exhibited a delayed N400 effect (the N400 is a component of ERPs that occurs especially when people are presented with meaningful stimuli). The results confirmed the hypothesis that the language networks of the children with language impairment may be weakened (Cummings & Ceponiene, 2010).
ERP can be used to examine developmental changes in cognitive abilities. These experiments provide a more complete understanding of the relationship between brain and cognitive development (Taylor & Balodeweg, 2002).

The high degree of temporal resolution afforded by ERPs can be used to complement other techniques. For example, ERPs and positron emission tomography (PET) were used to pinpoint areas involved in word association (Posner & Raichle, 1994). Using ERPs, the investigators found that participants showed increased activity in certain parts of the brain (left lateral frontal cortex, left posterior cortex, and right insular cortex) when they made rapid associations to given words. Another study showed that decreases in electrical potentials are twice as great for tones that are attended to as for tones that are ignored (see Phelps, 1999). As with any technique, EEGs and ERPs provide only a glimpse of brain activity. They are most helpful when used in conjunction with other techniques to identify particular brain areas involved in cognition.

**Static Imaging Techniques**

Psychologists use still images to reveal the structures of the brain (see Figure 2.10 and Table 2.3). The techniques include angiograms, computed tomography (CT) scans, and magnetic resonance imaging scans (MRI). The X-ray–based techniques (angiogram and CT scan) allow for the observation of large abnormalities of the brain, such as damage resulting from strokes or tumors. However, they are limited...
in their resolution and cannot provide much information about smaller lesions and aberrations.

**Computed tomography** (CT or CAT). Unlike conventional X-ray methods that only allow a two-dimensional view of an object, a CT scan consists of several X-ray images of the brain taken from different vantage points that, when combined, result in a three-dimensional image.

The aim of an angiography is not to look at the structures in the brain, but rather to examine the blood flow. When the brain is active, it needs energy, which is transported to the brain in the form of oxygen and glucose by means of the blood. In angiography, a dye is injected into an artery that leads to the brain, and then an X-ray image is taken. The image shows the circulatory system, and it is possible
to detect strokes (disruption of the blood flow often caused by the blockage of the arteries through a foreign substance) or aneurysms (abnormal ballooning of an artery), or arteriosclerosis (a hardening of arteries that makes them inflexible and narrow).

The magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scan is of great interest to cognitive psychologists (Figure 2.11). The MRI reveals high-resolution images of the structure of the living brain by computing and analyzing magnetic changes in the energy of the orbits of nuclear particles in the molecules of the body. There are two kinds of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Suitable for Humans?</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single-cell recording</td>
<td>Very thin electrode is inserted next to a single neuron. Changes in electrical activity occurring in the cell are then recorded.</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Rather precise recording of electrical activity</td>
<td>Cannot be used with humans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEG</td>
<td>Changes in electrical potentials are recorded via electrodes attached to scalp.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Relatively noninvasive</td>
<td>Imprecise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERP</td>
<td>Changes in electrical potentials are recorded via electrodes attached to scalp.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Relatively noninvasive</td>
<td>Does not show actual brain images</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PET</td>
<td>Participants ingest a mildly radioactive form of oxygen that emits positrons as it is metabolized. Changes in concentration of positrons in targeted areas of the brain are then measured.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Shows images of the brain in action</td>
<td>Less useful for fast processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fMRI</td>
<td>Creates magnetic field that induces changes in the particles of oxygen atoms. More active areas draw more oxygenated blood than do less active areas in the brain. The differences in the amounts of oxygen consumed form the basis for fMRI measurements.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Shows images of the brain in action; more precise than PET</td>
<td>Requires individual to be placed in uncomfortable scanner for some time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMS</td>
<td>Involves placing a coil on a person’s head and then allowing an electrical current to pass through it. The current generates a magnetic field. This field disrupts the small area (usually no more than a cubic centimeter) beneath it. The researcher can then look at cognitive functioning when the particular area is disrupted.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Enables researcher to pinpoint how disruption of a particular area of brain affects cognitive functioning</td>
<td>Potentially dangerous if misused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEG</td>
<td>Involves measuring brain activity through detection of magnetic fields by placing a device over the head.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Extremely precise spatial and temporal resolution</td>
<td>Requires expensive machine not readily available to researchers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MRIs—structural MRIs and functional MRIs. Structural MRIs provide images of the brain’s size and shape whereas functional MRIs visualize the parts of the brain that are activated when a person is engaged in a particular task. MRIs allow for a much clearer picture of the brain than CT scans. A strong magnetic field is passed through the brain of a patient. A scanner detects various patterns of electromagnetic changes in the atoms of the brain. These molecular changes are analyzed by a computer to produce a three-dimensional picture of the brain. This picture includes detailed information about brain structures. For example, MRI has been used to show that musicians who play string instruments such as the violin or the cello tend to have an expansion of the brain in an area of the right hemisphere that controls left-hand movement (because control of hands is contralateral, with the right side of the brain controlling the left hand, and vice versa; Münte, Altenmüller, & Jäncke, 2002). We tend to view the brain as controlling what we can do. This study is a good example of how what we do—our experience—can affect the development of the brain. MRI also facilitates the detection of lesions, such as lesions associated with particular disorders of language use, but does not provide much information about physiological processes. However, the two techniques discussed in the following section do provide such information.
Metabolic Imaging

Metabolic imaging techniques rely on changes that take place within the brain as a result of increased consumption of glucose and oxygen in active areas of the brain. The basic idea is that active areas in the brain consume more glucose and oxygen than do inactive areas during some tasks. An area specifically required by one task ought to be more active during that task than during more generalized processing and thus should require more glucose and oxygen. Scientists attempt to pinpoint specialized areas for a task by using the subtraction method. This method uses two different measurements: one that was taken while the subject was involved in a more general or control activity, and one that was taken when the subject was engaged in the task of interest. The difference between these two measurements equals the additional activation recorded while the subject is engaged in the target task as opposed to the control task. The subtraction method thus involves subtracting activity during the control task from activity during the task of interest. The resulting difference in activity is analyzed statistically. This analysis determines which areas are responsible for performance of a particular task above and beyond the more general activity. For example, suppose the experimenter wishes to determine which area of the brain is most important for retrieval of word meanings. The experimenter might subtract activity during a task involving reading of words from activity during a task involving the physical recognition of the letters of the words. The difference in activity would be presumed to reflect the additional resources used in retrieval of meaning.

There is one important caveat to remember about these techniques: Scientists have no way of determining whether the net effect of this difference in activity is excitatory or inhibitory (because some neurons are activated by, and some are inhibited by, other neurons’ neurotransmitters). Therefore, the subtraction technique reveals net brain activity for particular areas. It cannot show whether the area’s effect is positive or negative. Moreover, the method assumes that activation is purely additive—that it can be discovered through a subtraction method without taking into account interactions among elements.

This description greatly oversimplifies the subtraction method. But it shows at a general level how scientists assess physiological functioning of particular areas using imaging techniques.

Positron emission tomography (PET) scans measure increases in oxygen consumption in active brain areas during particular kinds of information processing (O’Leary et al., 2007; Raichle, 1998, 1999). To track their use of oxygen, participants are given a mildly radioactive form of oxygen that emits positrons as it is metabolized (positrons are particles that have roughly the same size and mass as electrons, but that are positively rather than negatively charged). Next, the brain is scanned to detect positrons. A computer analyzes the data to produce images of the physiological functioning of the brain in action.

PET scans can assist in the diagnosis of disorders of cognitive decline like Alzheimer’s by searching for abnormalities in the brain (Patterson et al., 2009). PET scans have been used to show that blood flow increases to the occipital lobe of the brain during visual processing (Posner et al., 1988). PET scans also are used for comparatively studying the brains of people who score high versus low on intelligence tests. When high-scoring people are engaged in cognitively demanding tasks, their brains seem to use glucose more efficiently—in highly
task-specific areas of the brain. The brains of people with lower scores appear to use glucose more diffusely, across larger regions of the brain (Haier et al., 1992). Likewise, a study has shown that Broca’s area as well as the left anterior temporal area and the cerebellum are involved in the learning of new words (Groenholm et al., 2005).

PET scans have been used to illustrate the integration of information from various parts of the cortex (Castelli et al, 2005; Posner et al., 1988). Specifically, PET scans were used to study regional cerebral blood flow during several activities involving the reading of single words. When participants looked at a word on a screen, areas of their visual cortex showed high levels of activity. When they spoke a word, their motor cortex was highly active. When they heard a word spoken, their auditory cortex was activated. When they produced words related to the words they saw (requiring high-level integration of visual, auditory, and motor information), the relevant areas of the cortex showed the greatest amount of activity.

PET scans are not highly precise because they require a minimum of about half a minute to produce data regarding glucose consumption. If an area of the brain shows different amounts of activity over the course of time measurement, the activity levels are averaged, potentially leading to conclusions that are less than precise.

Functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) is a neuroimaging technique that uses magnetic fields to construct a detailed representation in three dimensions of levels of activity in various parts of the brain at a given moment in time. This technique builds on MRI, but it uses increases in oxygen consumption to construct images of brain activity. The basic idea is the same as in PET scans. However, the fMRI technique does not require the use of radioactive particles. Rather, the participant performs a task while placed inside an MRI machine. This machine typically looks like a tunnel. When someone is wholly or partially inserted in the tunnel, he or she is surrounded by a donut-shaped magnet. Functional MRI creates a magnetic field that induces changes in the particles of oxygen atoms. More active areas draw more oxygenated blood than do less active areas in the brain. So shortly after a brain area has been active, a reduced amount of oxygen should be detectable in this area. This observation forms the basis for fMRI measurements. These measurements then are computer analyzed to provide the most precise information currently available about the physiological functioning of the brain’s activity during task performance.

This technique is less invasive than PET. It also has higher temporal resolution—measurements can be taken for activity lasting fractions of a second, rather than only for activity lasting minutes to hours. One major drawback is the expense of fMRI. Relatively few researchers have access to the required machinery and testing of participants is very time consuming.

The fMRI technique can identify regions of the brain active in many areas, such as vision (Engel et al., 1994; Kitada et al., 2010), attention (Cohen et al.; 1994; Samanez-Larkin et al., 2009), language (Gaillard et al., 2003; Stein et al., 2009), and memory (Gabrieli et al., 1996; Wolf, 2009). For example, fMRI has shown that the lateral prefrontal cortex is essential for working memory. This is a part of memory that processes information that is actively in use at a given time (McCarthy et al., 1994). Also, fMRI methods have been applied to the examination of brain...
changes in patient populations, including persons with schizophrenia and epilepsy (Dettre, 2004; Weinberger et al., 1996).

A related procedure is pharmacological MRI (phMRI). The phMRI combines fMRI methods with the study of psychopharmacological agents. These studies examine the influence and role of particular psychopharmacological agents on the brain. They have allowed the examination of the role of agonists (which strengthen responses) and antagonists (which weaken responses) on the same receptor cells. These studies have allowed for the examination of drugs used for treatment. The investigators can predict the responses of patients to neurochemical treatments through examination of the person’s brain makeup. Overall, these methods aid in the understanding of brain areas and the effects of psychopharmacological agents on brain functioning (Baliki et al., 2005; Easton et al., 2007; Honey & Bullmore, 2004; Kalisch et al., 2004).

Another procedure related to fMRI is diffusion tensor imaging (DTI). Diffusion tensor imaging examines the restricted dispersion of water in tissue and, of special interest, in axons. Water in the brain cannot move freely, but rather, its movement is restricted by the axons and their myelin sheaths. DTI measures how far protons have moved in a particular direction within a specific time interval. This technique has been useful in the mapping of the white matter of the brain and in examining neural circuits. Some applications of this technique include examination of traumatic brain injury, schizophrenia, brain maturation, and multiple sclerosis (Ardekani et al., 2003; Beyer, Ranga, & Krishnan, 2002; Ramachandra et al., 2003; Sotak, 2002; Sundgren et al., 2004).

A recently developed technique for studying brain activity bypasses some of the problems with other techniques (Walsh & Pascual-Leone, 2005). Transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS) temporarily disrupts the normal activity of the brain in a limited area. Therefore, it can imitate lesions in the brain or stimulate brain regions. TMS requires placing a coil on a person’s head and then allowing an electrical current to pass through it (Figure 2.10). The current generates a magnetic field. This field disrupts the small area (usually no more than a cubic centimeter) beneath it. The researcher can then look at cognitive functioning when the particular area is disrupted. This method is restricted to brain regions that lie close to the surface of the head. An advantage to TMS is that it is possible to examine causal relationships with this method because the brain activity in a particular area is disrupted and then its influence on task-performance is observed; most other methods allow the investigator to examine only correlational relationships by the observation of brain function (Gazzaniga, Ivry, & Mangun, 2009). TMS has been used, for example, to produce “virtual lesions” and investigate which areas of the brain are involved when people grasp or reach for an object (Koch & Rothwell, 2009). It is even hypothesized that repeated magnetic impulses (rTMS) can serve as a therapeutic means in the treatment of neuropsychological disorders like depression or anxiety disorders (Pallanti & Bernardi, 2009).

Magnetoencephalography (MEG) measures activity of the brain from outside the head (similar to EEG) by picking up magnetic fields emitted by changes in brain activity. This technique allows localization of brain signals so that it is possible to know what different parts of the brain are doing at different times. It is one of the most precise of the measuring methods. MEG is used to help surgeons locate pathological structures in the brain (Baumgartner, 2000). A recent application of
MEG involved patients who reported phantom limb pain. In cases of phantom limb pain, a patient reports pain in a body part that has been removed, for example, a missing foot. When certain areas of the brain are stimulated, phantom limb pain is reduced. MEG has been used to examine the changes in brain activity before, during, and after electrical stimulation. These changes in brain activity corresponded with changes in the experience of phantom limb pain (Kringelbach et al., 2007).

Current techniques still do not provide unambiguous mappings of particular functions to particular brain structures, regions, or even processes. Rather, some discrete structures, regions, or processes of the brain appear to be involved in particular cognitive functions. Our current understanding of how particular cognitive functions are linked to particular brain structures or processes allows us only to infer suggestive indications of some kind of relationship. Through sophisticated analyses, we can infer increasingly precise relationships. But we are not yet at a point where we can determine the specific cause–effect relationship between a given brain structure or process and a particular cognitive function because particular functions may be influenced by multiple structures, regions, or processes of the brain. Finally, these techniques provide the best information only in conjunction with other experimental techniques for understanding the complexities of cognitive functioning. These combinations generally are completed with human participants, although some researchers have combined in vivo studies in animals with brain-imaging techniques (Dedeogle et al., 2004; Kornblum et al., 2000; Logothetis, 2004).

Brain Disorders

A number of brain disorders can impair cognitive functioning. Brain disorders can give us valuable insight into the functioning of the brain. As mentioned above, scientists often write detailed notes about the condition of a patient and analyze the brain of a patient once the patient has died to see which areas in the brain may have caused the symptoms the patient experienced. Furthermore, with the in vivo techniques that have been developed over the past decades, many tests and diagnostic procedures can be executed during the lifetime of a patient to help ease patient symptoms and to gain new insight into how the brain works.

Stroke

Vascular disorder is a brain disorder caused by a stroke. Strokes occur when the flow of blood to the brain undergoes a sudden disruption. People who experience stroke
typically show marked loss of cognitive functioning. The nature of the loss depends on the area of the brain that is affected by the stroke. There may be paralysis, pain, numbness, a loss of speech, a loss of language comprehension, impairments in thought processes, a loss of movement in parts of the body, or other symptoms.

Two kinds of stroke may occur (NINDS stroke information page, 2009). An ischemic stroke usually occurs when a buildup of fatty tissue occurs in blood vessels over a period of years, and a piece of this tissue breaks off and gets lodged in arteries of the brain. Ischemic strokes can be treated by clot-busting drugs. The second kind of stroke, a hemorrhagic stroke, occurs when a blood vessel in the brain suddenly breaks. Blood then spills into surrounding tissue. As the blood spills over, brain cells in the affected areas begin to die. This death is either from the lack of oxygen and nutrients or from the rupture of the vessel and the sudden spilling of blood. The prognosis for stroke victims depends on the type and severity of damage. Symptoms of stroke appear immediately on the occurrence of stroke.

Typical symptoms include (NINDS stroke information page, 2009):

- numbness or weakness in the face, arms, or legs (especially on one side of the body)
- confusion, difficulty speaking or understanding speech
- vision disturbances in one or both eyes
- dizziness, trouble walking, loss of balance or coordination
- severe headache with no known cause

**Brain Tumors**

Brain tumors, also called neoplasms, can affect cognitive functioning in very serious ways. Tumors can occur in either the gray or the white matter of the brain. Tumors of the white matter are more common (Gazzaniga, Ivry, & Mangun, 2009).

Two types of brain tumors can occur. Primary brain tumors start in the brain. Most childhood brain tumors are of this type. Secondary brain tumors start as tumors somewhere else in the body, such as in the lungs. Brain tumors can be either benign or malignant. Benign tumors do not contain cancer cells. They typically can be removed and will not grow back. Cells from benign tumors do not invade surrounding cells or spread to other parts of the body. However, if they press against sensitive areas of the brain, they can result in serious cognitive impairments. They also can be life-threatening, unlike benign tumors in most other parts of the body. Malignant brain tumors, unlike benign ones, contain cancer cells. They are more serious and usually threaten the victim’s life. They often grow quickly. They also tend to invade surrounding healthy brain tissue. In rare instances, malignant cells may break away and cause cancer in other parts of the body. Following are the most common symptoms of brain tumors (What you need to know about brain tumors, 2009):

- headaches (usually worse in the morning)
- nausea or vomiting
- changes in speech, vision, or hearing
- problems balancing or walking
- changes in mood, personality, or ability to concentrate
- problems with memory
- muscle jerking or twitching (seizures or convulsions)
- numbness or tingling in the arms or legs
The diagnosis of brain tumor is typically made through neurological examination, CT scan, and/or MRI. The most common form of treatment is a combination of surgery, radiation, and chemotherapy.

**Head Injuries**

Head injuries result from many causes, such as a car accident, contact with a hard object, or a bullet wound. Head injuries are of two types. In *closed-head injuries*, the skull remains intact but there is damage to the brain, typically from the mechanical force of a blow to the head. Slamming one’s head against a windshield in a car accident might result in such an injury. In *open-head injuries*, the skull does not remain intact but rather is penetrated, for example, by a bullet.

Head injuries are surprisingly common. Roughly 1.4 million North Americans suffer such injuries each year. About 50,000 of them die, and 235,000 need to be hospitalized. About 2% of the American population needs long-term assistance in their daily living due to head injuries (What is traumatic brain injury, 2009).

Loss of consciousness is a sign that there has been some degree of damage to the brain as a result of the injury. Damage resulting from head injury can include spastic movements, difficulty in swallowing, and slurring of speech, among many other cognitive problems. Immediate symptoms of a head injury include (Signs and symptoms, 2009):

- unconsciousness
- abnormal breathing
- obvious serious wound or fracture
- bleeding or clear fluid from the nose, ear, or mouth
- disturbance of speech or vision
- pupils of unequal size
- weakness or paralysis
- dizziness
- neck pain or stiffness
- seizure
- vomiting more than two to three times
- loss of bladder or bowel control

---

**BELIEVE IT OR NOT**

**Brain Surgery Can Be Performed While You Are Awake!**

Can you imagine having major surgery performed on you while you are awake? It’s possible, and indeed sometimes it is done. When patients who have brain tumors or who suffer from epilepsy receive brain surgery, they are often woken up from the anesthesia after the surgeon has opened their skull and exposed the brain. This way the surgeons can talk to the patient and perform tests by stimulating the patient’s brain in order to map the different areas of the brain that control important functions like vision or memory. The brain itself does not contain any pain receptors, and when doctors stimulate a patient’s brain during open-brain surgery while the patient is awake, the patient does not feel any pain. You can nevertheless get a headache, but that is because the tissue and nerves that surround the brain are sensitive to pain, not the brain itself. The communication with the patient enhances the safety and precision of the procedure as compared with brain surgery that is performed solely on the basis of brain scans that were performed using imaging technologies discussed in this chapter.
Generally, brain damage can result from many causes. When brain damage occurs, it always should be treated by a medical specialist at the earliest possible time. A neuropsychologist may be called in to assist in diagnosis, and rehabilitation psychologists can be helpful in bringing the patient to the optimal level of psychological functioning possible under the circumstances.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. Why is the study of brain disorders useful for cognitive psychologists?
2. What are brain tumors, and how are they diagnosed?
3. What are the causes of strokes?
4. What are the symptoms of head injuries?

**Intelligence and Neuroscience**

The human brain is clearly the organ that serves as a biological basis for human intelligence. Early studies, such as those of Karl Lashley, studied the brain to find biological indices of intelligence and other aspects of mental processes. They were a resounding failure, despite great efforts. As tools for studying the brain have become more sophisticated, however, we are beginning to see the possibility of finding physiological indicators of intelligence. Some investigators believe that at some point we will have clinically useful psychophysiological indices of intelligence (e.g., Matarazzo, 1992). But widely applicable indices will be much longer in coming. In the meantime, the biological studies we now have are largely correlational. They show statistical associations between biological and psychometric or other measures of intelligence. They do not establish causal relations.

**Intelligence and Brain Size**

One line of research looks at the relationship of brain size or volume to intelligence (see Jerison, 2000; Vernon et al., 2000; Witelson, Beresh, & Kiga, 2006). The evidence suggests that, for humans, there is a modest but significant statistical relationship between brain size and intelligence (Gignac, Vernon, & Wickett, 2003; McDaniel, 2005). The amount of gray matter in the brain is strongly correlated with IQ in many areas of the frontal and temporal lobes (Haier, Jung, Yeo, Head, & Alkire, 2004). However, the brain areas that are correlated with IQ appear to differ in men versus women. Frontal areas are of relatively more importance in women, whereas posterior areas are of relatively more importance in men, even if both genders are matched for intelligence (Haier, Jung, Yeo, Head, & Alkire, 2005). This finding opens the question of whether there are two different brain architectures in men versus women that both result in roughly equal levels of intelligence (Haier, 2010). It is important to note that the relationship between brain size and intelligence does not hold across species (Jerison, 2000). Rather, what holds seems to be a relationship between intelligence and brain size, relative to the rough general size of the organism.
**Intelligence and Neurons**

The development of electrical recording and imaging techniques offers some appealing possibilities. For example, complex patterns of electrical activity in the brain, which are prompted by specific stimuli, appear to correlate with scores on IQ tests (Barrett & Eysenck, 1992). Several studies initially suggested that speed of conduction of neural impulses may correlate with intelligence, as measured by IQ tests (McGarry-Roberts, Stelmack, & Campbell, 1992; Vernon & Mori, 1992). A follow-up study, however, failed to find a strong relation between neural-conduction velocity and intelligence (Wickett & Vernon, 1994). In this study, conduction velocity was measured by neural-conduction speeds in a main nerve of the arm. Intelligence was measured by a Multidimensional Aptitude Battery. Surprisingly, neural-conduction velocity appears to be a more powerful predictor of IQ scores for men than for women. So gender differences may account for some of the differences in the data (Wickett & Vernon, 1994). As of now, the results are inconsistent (Haier, 2010).

**Intelligence and Brain Metabolism**

More recent work suggests that the flexibility of neural circuitry, rather than speed of conduction, is key (Newman & Just, 2005). Hence, we would want to study not just speed but neural circuitry. An alternative approach to studying the brain suggests that neural efficiency may be related to intelligence. Such an approach is based on studies of how the brain metabolizes glucose (a simple sugar required for brain activity) during mental activities. Higher intelligence correlates with reduced levels of glucose metabolism during problem-solving tasks (Haier et al., 1992; Haier & Jung, 2007). That is, smarter brains consume less sugar and therefore expend less effort than less smart brains doing the same task. Furthermore, cerebral efficiency increases as a result of learning on a relatively complex task involving visuospatial manipulations, for example, the computer game Tetris (Haier et al., 1992). As a result of practice, more intelligent participants not only show lower cerebral glucose metabolism overall but also show more specifically localized metabolism of glucose. In most areas of their brains, smarter participants show less glucose metabolism. But in selected areas of their brains, believed to be important to the task at hand, they show higher levels of glucose metabolism. Thus, more intelligent participants may have learned how to use their brains more efficiently. They carefully focus their thought processes on a given task.

Other research, however, suggests that the relationship between glucose metabolism and intelligence may be more complex (Haier et al., 1995; Larson et al., 1995). On the one hand, one study confirmed the earlier findings of increased glucose metabolism in less smart participants, in this case, participants who had mild mental retardation (Haier et al., 1995). On the other hand, another study found, contrary to the earlier findings, that smarter participants had increased glucose metabolism relative to their average comparison group (Larson et al., 1995).

There was a problem with earlier studies—the tasks participants received were not matched for difficulty level across groups of smart and average individuals. The study by Larson and colleagues used tasks that were matched to the ability levels of the smarter and average participants. They found that the smarter participants used more glucose. Moreover, the glucose metabolism was highest in the right hemisphere.
of the more intelligent participants performing the hard task. These results again suggest selectivity of brain areas. What could be driving the increases in glucose metabolism? Currently, the key factor appears to be subjective task difficulty. In earlier studies, smarter participants simply found the tasks to be too easy. Matching task difficulty to participants’ abilities seems to indicate that smarter participants increase glucose metabolism when the task demands it. The preliminary findings in this area will need to be investigated further before any conclusive answers arise.

**Biological Bases of Intelligence Testing**

Some neuropsychological research suggests that performance on intelligence tests may not indicate a crucial aspect of intelligence—the ability to set goals, to plan how to meet them, and to execute those plans (Dempster, 1991). Specifically, people with lesions on the frontal lobe of the brain frequently perform quite well on standardized IQ tests. These tests require responses to questions within a highly structured situation. But they do not require much in the way of goal setting or planning. These tests frequently use what could be classified as crystallized intelligence. Damage to the posterior regions of the brain seems to have negative effects on measures of crystallized intelligence (Gray & Thompson, 2004; Kolb & Whishaw, 1996; Piercy, 1964). In patients with frontal lobe damage, impairments in fluid intelligence are observed (Duncan, Burgess, & Emslie, 1995; Gray, Chabris, & Braver, 2003; Gray & Thompson, 2004). This result should come as no surprise, given that the frontal lobes are involved in reasoning, decision making, and problem solving (see Chapters 11 and 12). Other research highlights the importance of the parietal regions for performance on general and fluid intelligence tasks (Lee et al., 2006; see also Glaescher et al., 2009). Intelligence involves the ability to learn from experience and to adapt to the surrounding environment. Thus, the ability to set goals and to design and implement plans cannot be ignored. An essential aspect of goal setting and planning is the ability to attend appropriately to relevant stimuli. Another related ability is that of ignoring or discounting irrelevant stimuli.

**The P-FIT Theory of Intelligence**

The discovered importance of the frontal and parietal regions in intelligence tasks has led to the development of an integrated theory of intelligence that highlights the importance of these areas. This theory, called the parietal-frontal integration theory (P-FIT), stresses the importance of interconnected brain regions in determining differences in intelligence. The regions this theory focuses on are the prefrontal cortex, the inferior and superior parietal lobe, the anterior cingulated cortex, and portions of the temporal and occipital lobes (Colom et al., 2009; Jung & Haier, 2007). P-FIT theory describes patterns of brain activity in people with different levels of intelligence; it cannot, however, explain what makes a person intelligent or what intelligence is.

We cannot realistically study a brain or its contents and processes in isolation without also considering the entire human being. We must consider the interactions of that human being with the entire environmental context within which the person acts intelligently. Many researchers and theorists urge us to take a more contextual view of intelligence. Furthermore, some alternative views of intelligence attempt to broaden the definition of intelligence to be more inclusive of people’s varied abilities.
Key Themes

In Chapter 1, we reviewed seven key themes that pervade cognitive psychology. Several of them are relevant here.

Biological versus behavioral methods. The mechanisms and methods described in this chapter are primarily biological. And yet, a major goal of biological researchers is to discover how cognition and behavior relate to these biological mechanisms. For example, they study how the hippocampus enables learning. Thus, biology, cognition, and behavior work together. They are not in any way mutually exclusive.

Nature versus nurture. One comes into the world with many biological structures and mechanisms in place. But nurture acts to develop them and enable them to reach their potential. The existence of the cerebral cortex is a result of nature, but the memories stored in it derive from nurture. As stated in Chapter 1, nature does not act alone. Rather, its marvels unfold through the interventions of nurture.

Applied versus basic research. Much of the research in biological approaches to cognition is basic. But this basic research later enables us, as cognitive psychologists, to make applied discoveries. For example, to understand how to treat and, hopefully, help individuals with brain damage, cognitive neuropsychologists first must understand the nature of the damage and its pervasiveness. Many modern antidepressants, for example, affect the reuptake of serotonin in the nervous system. By inhibiting reuptake, they increase serotonin concentrations and ultimately increase feelings of well-being. Interestingly, applied research can help basic research as much as basic research can help applied research. In the case of antidepressants, scientists knew the drugs worked before they knew exactly how they worked. Applied research in creating the drugs helped the scientists understand the biological mechanisms underlying the success of the drugs in relieving symptoms of depression.

Summary

1. What are the fundamental structures and processes within the brain? The nervous system, governed by the brain, is divided into two main parts: the central nervous system, consisting of the brain and the spinal cord, and the peripheral nervous system, consisting of the rest of the nervous system (e.g., the nerves in the face, legs, arms, and viscera).

2. How do researchers study the major structures and processes of the brain? For centuries scientists have viewed the brain by dissecting it. Modern dissection techniques include the use of electron microscopes and sophisticated chemical analyses to probe the mysteries of individual cells of the brain. Additionally, surgical techniques on animals (e.g., the use of selective lesioning and single-cell recording) often are used. On humans, studies have included electrical analyses (e.g., electroencephalograms and event-related potentials), studies based on the use of X-ray techniques (e.g., angiograms and computed tomograms), studies based on computer analyses of magnetic fields within the brain (magnetic resonance imaging), and

CONCEPT CHECK

1. Is there a relationship between brain size and intelligence?
2. Why does higher intelligence in many instances correlate with reduced levels of glucose metabolism during problem-solving tasks?
3. What is the P-FIT theory of intelligence?
studies based on computer analyses of blood flow and metabolism within the brain (positron emission tomography and functional magnetic resonance imaging).

3. What have researchers found as a result of studying the brain? The major structures of the brain may be categorized as those in the forebrain (e.g., the all-important cerebral cortex and the thalamus, the hypothalamus, and the limbic system, including the hippocampus), the midbrain (including a portion of the brainstem), and the hindbrain (including the medulla oblongata, the pons, and the cerebellum). The highly convoluted cerebral cortex surrounds the interior of the brain and is the basis for much of human cognition. The cortex covers the left and right hemispheres of the brain. They are connected by the corpus callosum. In general, each hemisphere contralaterally controls the opposite side of the body. Based on extensive split-brain research, many investigators believe that the two hemispheres are specialized: In most people, the left hemisphere primarily controls language. The right hemisphere primarily controls visuospatial processing. The two hemispheres also may process information differently.

Another way to view the cortex is to identify differences among four lobes. Roughly speaking, higher thought and motor processing occur in the frontal lobe. Somatosensory processing occurs in the parietal lobe. Auditory processing occurs in the temporal lobe, and visual processing occurs in the occipital lobe. Within the frontal lobe, the primary motor cortex controls the planning, control, and execution of movement. Within the parietal lobe, the primary somatosensory cortex is responsible for sensations in our muscles and skin. Specific regions of these two cortices can be mapped to particular regions of the body.

Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

1. How have views of the nature of the relation between brain and cognition changed over time?
2. Briefly summarize the main structures and functions of the brain.
3. What are some of the reasons that researchers are interested in finding out the localization of function in the human brain?
4. In your opinion, why have the hindbrain, the midbrain, and the forebrain evolved (across the human species) and developed (across human prenatal development) in the sequence mentioned in this chapter? Include the main functions of each in your comments.
5. Researchers already are aware that a deficit of a neurotransmitter, acetylcholine, in the hippocampus is linked to Alzheimer’s disease. Given the difficulty of reaching the hippocampus without causing other kinds of brain damage, how might researchers try to treat Alzheimer’s disease?
6. In your opinion, why is it that some discoveries, such as that of Marc Dax, go unnoticed? What can be done to maximize the possibility that key discoveries will be noticed?
7. Given the functions of each of the cortical lobes, how might a lesion in one of the lobes be discovered?
8. What is an area of cognition that could be studied effectively by viewing the structure or function of the human brain? Describe how a researcher might use one of the techniques mentioned in this chapter to study that area of cognition.

Key Terms

amygdala, p. 46
axon, p. 61
brain, p. 42
brainstem, p. 50
cerebellum, p. 51
cerebral cortex, p. 51
cerebral hemispheres, p. 52
cognitive neuroscience, p. 42
cortical, p. 52
corpus callosum, p. 52
dendrites, p. 61
electroencephalograms (EEGs), p. 67
event-related potential (ERP), p. 67
frontal lobe, p. 56
functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI), p. 73
hippocampus, p. 46
hypothalamus, p. 48
ipsilateral, p. 52
Korsakoff’s syndrome, p. 46
limbic system, p. 46
lobes, p. 56
localization of function, p. 43
magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), p. 70
magnetoencephalography (MEG), p. 74
medulla oblongata, p. 50
myelin, p. 61
nervous system, p. 43
neurons, p. 61
neurotransmitters, p. 62
nodes of Ranvier, p. 62
occipital lobe, p. 57
parietal lobe, p. 56
pons, p. 51
positron emission tomography (PET), p. 72
primary motor cortex, p. 57
primary somatosensory cortex, p. 58
reticular activating system (RAS), p. 48
septum, p. 46
soma, p. 61
split-brain patients, p. 54
synapse, p. 62
temporal lobe, p. 57
terminal buttons, p. 62
thalamus, p. 48
transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS), p. 74
visual cortex, p. 60

Media Resources
Visit the companion website—www.cengagebrain.com—for quizzes, research articles, chapter outlines, and more.

CogLab
Explore CogLab by going to http://coglab.wadsworth.com. To learn more, examine the following experiments:
Brain Asymmetry
CHAPTER 3

Visual Perception

CHAPTER OUTLINE

From Sensation to Representation
  Some Basic Concepts of Perception
  Seeing Things That Aren’t There, or Are They?
  How Does Our Visual System Work?
  Pathways to Perceive the What and the Where

Approaches to Perception: How Do We Make Sense of What We See?
  Bottom-Up Theories
    - Direct Perception
    - Template Theories
    - Feature-Matching Theories
    - Recognition-by-Components Theory
  Top-Down Theories
  How Do Bottom-Up Theories and Top-Down Theories Go Together?

Perception of Objects and Forms
  Viewer-Centered vs. Object-Centered Perception
  The Perception of Groups—Gestalt Laws
  Recognizing Patterns and Faces
    - Two Different Pattern Recognition Systems
    - The Neuroscience of Recognizing Faces and Patterns

The Environment Helps You See
  Perceptual Constancies
  Depth Perception
    - Depth Cues
    - The Neuroscience of Depth Perception

Deficits in Perception
  Agnosias and Ataxias
    - Difficulties Perceiving the “What”
    - Difficulties in Knowing the “How”
    - Are Perceptual Processes Independent of Each Other?
  Anomalies in Color Perception

Why Does It Matter? Perception in Practice

Key Themes

Summary

Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

Key Terms

Media Resources
Here are some of the questions we will explore in this chapter:

1. How can we perceive an object like a chair as having a stable form, given that the image of the chair on our retina changes as we look at it from different directions?
2. What are two fundamental approaches to explaining perception?
3. What happens when people with normal visual sensations cannot perceive visual stimuli?

BELIEVE IT OR NOT

If You Encountered Tyrannosaurus Rex, Would Standing Still Save You?

Have you seen the movie *Jurassic Park*? In this movie, one protagonist tells another while facing a Tyrannosaurus Rex that they will be safe as long as they don’t move, because the T. Rex can detect his prey only when it is moving. Well, he could not have been more wrong. As it now turns out, T. Rex had excellent binocular vision (i.e., the vision fields of both eyes are combined to achieve depth perception). Researchers had the heads of several dinosaur species reconstructed and found that T. Rex probably could see 13 times better than humans (for comparison, eagles can only see 3.6 times better than humans). Its excellent vision is due to the big binocular range, which is the area that can be seen by both eyes at the same time. In addition, over time T. Rex’s snout became longer, its cheeks grew thinner so as not to obstruct the view, and its eyeballs became bigger. These changes all helped T. Rex to have excellent three-dimensional (3-D) vision (Jaffe, 2006; Stevens, 2006). This chapter will introduce you to the basics of visual perception for humans—and sometimes for other species as well.

As we are writing this chapter, we can look out of the window onto the city of Boston. The high-rise buildings that are less than a mile away look about as small as our computer screen. Yet we know that they are actually much bigger than our screen—they only appear to be small. Try it out yourself. Look out of your window. Can you see how things that are farther away seem much smaller than you know they are? This is just one example of the complex process of perception.

Have you ever been told that you “can’t see something that’s right under your nose”? How about that you “can’t see the forest for the trees”? Have you ever listened to your favorite song over and over, trying to decipher the lyrics? In each of these situations, we call on the complex construct of perception. Perception is the set of processes by which we recognize, organize, and make sense of the sensations we receive from environmental stimuli (Goodale, 2000a, 2000b; Kosslyn & Osherson, 1995; Marr, 1982; Pomerantz, 2003). Perception encompasses many psychological phenomena. In this chapter, we focus primarily on visual perception. It is the most widely recognized and the most widely studied perceptual modality (i.e., system for a particular sense, such as touch or smell). First, we will get to know a few basic terms and concepts of perception. We will then consider optical illusions that illustrate some of the intricacies of human perception. Next, we will have a look at the biology of the visual system. We will consider some approaches to explain perception, and afterward have a closer look at some details of the perceptual process, namely the perception of objects and forms, and how the environment provides cues to help you perceive your surroundings. We will also explore what happens when people have difficulties in perception.
From Sensation to Representation

We do not perceive the world exactly as our eyes see it. Instead, our brain actively tries to make sense of the many stimuli that enter our eyes and fall on our retina. Take a look at Figure 3.1. You can see two high-rise buildings in the city of Boston. (We live in one of them!) In the right photo, the right tower seems to be substantially higher than the left one. The left picture, however, shows that the towers actually are in fact exactly the same height. Depending on your viewpoint, objects can look quite different, revealing different details. Thus, perception does not consist of

INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY

Perception

Stand at one end of a room and hold your thumb up to your eye so that it is the same size as the door on the opposite side of the room. Do you really think that your thumb is as large as a door? No. You know that your thumb is close to you, so it just looks as large as the door. There are numerous cues in the room to tell you that the door is farther away from you than your thumb is. In your mind, you make the door much larger to compensate for the distance away from you. Knowledge is a key to perception. You know that your thumb and the door are not the same size, so you are able to use this knowledge to correct for what you know is not so.

Figure 3.1 Objects Look Different Depending on the Perspective.
The pictures show the same two high-rise buildings in Boston from two different perspectives. In (a) they look about the same size, as they in fact are. In (b), their image on the retina makes them seem to be of different heights, and it is only through further processing that we can pinpoint they are the same size.
just seeing what is being projected onto your retina; the process is much more complex. Your brain processes the visual stimuli, giving the stimuli meaning and interpreting them.

How difficult it is to interpret what we see has become clear in recent years as researchers have tried to teach computers to “see”; but computers are still lagging behind humans in object recognition. Can you recognize what is shown in Figure 3.2? The picture shows a church that is reflected in a high-rise building. It might have taken you a few moments to figure out what is depicted in the photo, but for computers, this is an extremely difficult task. It is not immediately clear in this picture what is reflection, what is the building, and what is surrounding. Furthermore, the borders of the church are blurred so that it becomes very challenging to see where the object ends and what it really is. So, while it may not take you a lot of effort to identify the objects in this photo, it does take a lot of processing to perceive them, as the stimuli are very ambiguous.

This chapter focuses on the processes of visual perception and the processes we use to make sense of the visual stimuli that are focused on our retina. We start our exploration by familiarizing ourselves with some basic concepts. To illustrate the intricacies of perception, we then look at some optical illusions. And finally we learn how the eye receives impressions of stimuli and sends signals to the brain.

Figure 3.2  Reality or Reflection?
This picture shows the reflection of a church in a skyscraper. What is easy for us to perceive constitutes a big problem for computers. Where does one building end and the next one start? Which part of the percept belongs to which object? What distinguishes the real person on the street from his or her reflection in the building so that a computer can recognize which one is the reflection?
Some Basic Concepts of Perception

In his influential and controversial work, James Gibson (1966, 1979) provided a useful framework for studying perception. He introduced the concepts of distal (external) object, informational medium, proximal stimulation, and perceptual object. Let’s examine each of these.

The distal (far) object is the object in the external world (e.g., a falling tree). The event of the tree falling creates a pattern on an informational medium. The informational medium could be sound waves, as in the sound of the falling tree. The informational medium might also be reflected light, chemical molecules, or tactile information coming from the environment. For example, when the information from light waves come into contact with the appropriate sensory receptors of the eyes, proximal (near) stimulation occurs (i.e., the cells in your retina absorb the light waves). Perception occurs when a perceptual object (i.e., what you see) is created in you that reflects the properties of the external world. That is, an image of a falling tree is created on your retina that reflects the falling tree that is in front of you.

Table 3.1 lists the various properties of distal objects, informational media, proximal stimuli, and perceptual objects for five different senses (sight, sound, smell, taste, and touch). The processes of perception vary tremendously across the different senses.

Table 3.1  Perceptual Continuum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modality</th>
<th>Distal Object</th>
<th>Informational Medium</th>
<th>Proximal Stimulation</th>
<th>Perceptual Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vision—sight</td>
<td>Grandma’s face</td>
<td>Reflected light from Grandma’s face (visible electromagnetic waves)</td>
<td>Photon absorption in the rod and cone cells of the retina, the receptor surface in the back of the eye</td>
<td>Grandma’s face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audition—sound</td>
<td>A falling tree</td>
<td>Sound waves generated by the tree’s fall</td>
<td>Sound-wave conduction to the basilar membrane, the receptor surface within the cochlea of the inner ear</td>
<td>A falling tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olfaction—smell</td>
<td>Bacon being fried</td>
<td>Molecules released by frying bacon</td>
<td>Molecular absorption in the cells of the olfactory epithelium, the receptor surface in the nasal cavity</td>
<td>Bacon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gustation—taste</td>
<td>Ice cream</td>
<td>Molecules of ice cream both released into the air and dissolved in water</td>
<td>Molecular contact with taste buds, the receptor cells on the tongue and soft palate, combined with olfactory stimulation</td>
<td>Ice cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Touch</td>
<td>A computer keyboard</td>
<td>Mechanical pressure and vibration at the point of contact between the surface of the skin and the keyboard</td>
<td>Stimulation of various receptor cells within the dermis, the innermost layer of skin</td>
<td>Computer keys</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
So, if a tree falls in the forest and no one is around to hear it, does it make a sound? It makes no perceived sound. But it does make a sound by creating sound waves. So the answer is “yes” or “no,” depending on how you look at the question. “Yes” if you believe that the existence of sound waves is all that’s needed to confirm the existence of a sound. But you would answer “no” if you believe the sound needs to be perceived (for the sound waves to have landed on the receptors in someone’s ears).

The question of where to draw the line between perception and cognition, or even between sensation and perception, arouses much debate with no ready resolution. Instead, to be more productive in moving toward answerable questions, we should view these processes as part of a continuum. Information flows through the system. Different processes address different questions. Questions of sensation focus on qualities of stimulation. Is that shade of red brighter than the red of an apple? Is the sound of that falling tree louder than the sound of thunder? How well do one person’s impressions of colors or sounds match someone else’s impressions of those same colors or sounds?

This same color or sound information answers different questions for perception. These are typically questions of identity and of form, pattern, and movement. Is that red thing an apple? Did I just hear a tree falling? Finally, cognition occurs as this information is used to serve further goals. Is that apple edible? Should I get out of this forest?

We never can experience through vision, hearing, taste, smell, or touch exactly the same set of stimulus properties we have experienced before. Every apple casts a somewhat different image on our retina; no falling tree sounds exactly like another; and even the faces of our relatives and friends look quite different, depending on whether they are smiling, enraged, or sad. Likewise, the voice of any person sounds somewhat different, depending on whether he or she is sick, out of breath, tired, happy, or sad. Therefore, one fundamental question for perception is “How do we achieve perceptual stability in the face of this utter instability at the level of sensory receptors?” Actually, given the nature of our sensory receptors, variation seems even necessary for perception! In the phenomenon of sensory adaptation, receptor cells adapt to constant stimulation by ceasing to fire until there is a change in stimulation. Through sensory adaptation, we may stop detecting the presence of a stimulus.

To study visual perception, scientists devised a way to create stabilized images. Such images do not move across the retina because they actually follow the eye movements. The use of this technique has confirmed the hypothesis that constant stimulation of the cells of the retina gives the impression that the image disappears (Ditchburn, 1980; Martinez-Conde, Macknik, & Hybel, 2004; Riggs et al., 1953).

The word “Ganzfeld” is German and means “complete field.” It refers to an unstructured visual field (Metzger, 1930). When your eyes are exposed to a uniform field of stimulation (e.g., a red surface area without any shades, a clear blue sky, or dense fog), you will stop perceiving that stimulus after a few minutes and see just a gray field instead. This is because your eyes have adapted to the stimulus.

The mechanism of sensory adaptation ensures that sensory information is changing constantly. Because of the dulling effect of sensory adaptation in the retina (the receptor surface of the eye), our eyes constantly are making tiny rapid movements. These movements create constant changes in the location of the projected image inside the eye. Thus, stimulus variation is an essential attribute for perception. It paradoxically makes the task of explaining perception more difficult.
Seeing Things That Aren’t There, or Are They?

To find out about some of the phenomena of perception, psychologists often study situations that pose problems in making sense of our sensations. Consider, for example, the image displayed in Figure 3.3. To most people, the figure initially looks like a blur of meaningless shadings. A recognizable creature is staring them in the face, but they may not see it. When people finally realize what is in the figure, they rightfully feel “cowed.” The figure of the cow is hidden within the continuous gradations of shading that constitute the picture. Before you recognized the figure as a cow, you correctly sensed all aspects of the figure. But you had not yet organized those sensations to form a mental percept—that is, a mental representation of a stimulus that is perceived. Without such a percept of the cow, you could not meaningfully grasp what you previously had sensed.

The preceding examples show that sometimes we cannot perceive what does exist. At other times, however, we perceive things that do not exist. For example, notice the black triangle in the center of the left panel of Figure 3.4. Also note the white triangle in the center of the right panel of Figure 3.4. They jump right out at

**Figure 3.3  Dallenbach’s Cow.**
What do you learn about your own perception by trying to identify the object staring at you from this photo?

Figure 3.4  Elusive Triangles: Real or Illusions?
You easily can see the triangles in this figure—or are the triangles just an illusion?

Figure 3.5  The Parthenon.
The columns of the Parthenon in Greece actually bulge slightly in the middle (b) to compensate for the visual tendency to perceive that straight parallel lines (a) seem to curve inward. Similarly, the horizontal lines of the beams crossing the top of the columns and the top step of the porch bulge slightly upward to counteract the tendency to perceive that they curve slightly downward. In addition, the columns lean ever so slightly inward at the top to compensate for the tendency to perceive them as spreading out as we gaze upward at them. Architects consider these distortions of visual perception in their designs today.
you. Now look very closely at each of the panels. You will see that the triangles are
not really all there. The black that constitutes the center triangle in the left panel
looks darker, or blacker, than the surrounding black. But it is not. Nor is the white
central triangle in the right panel any brighter, or whiter, than the surrounding
white. Both central triangles are optical illusions. They involve the perception of
visual information not physically present in the visual sensory stimulus.

So, sometimes we perceive what is not there. Other times, we do not perceive
what is there. And at still other times, we perceive what cannot be there.

The existence of perceptual illusions suggests that what we sense (in our sensory
organs) is not necessarily what we perceive (in our minds). Our minds must be tak-
ing the available sensory information and manipulating that information somehow
to create mental representations of objects, properties, and spatial relationships
within our environments (Peterson, 1999). The way we represent these objects will
depend in part on our viewpoint in perceiving the objects (Edelman & Weinshall,
in architecture is the use of optical illusions in the construction of the Parthenon
(Figure 3.5). Were the Parthenon actually constructed the way it appears to us per-
ceptually (with strictly rectilinear form), its appearance would be bizarre.

Architects are not the only ones to have recognized some fundamental prin-ci-
ples of perception. For centuries, artists have known how to lead us to perceive
3-D percepts when viewing two-dimensional (2-D) images. What are some of the
principles that guide our perceptions of both real and illusory percepts? We will ex-
plore the answer to this question as we move through the chapter. We begin with
examining our visual system.

![Figure 3.6 The Electromagnetic Spectrum.](image)

This image shows the different wavelengths that light comes in, and the small array of
wavelengths that is actually visible to humans.
How Does Our Visual System Work?

The precondition for vision is the existence of light. Light is electromagnetic radiation that can be described in terms of wavelength. Humans can perceive only a small range of the wavelengths that exist; the visible wavelengths are from 380 to 750 nanometers (Figure 3.6; Starr, Evers, & Starr, 2007).

Vision begins when light passes through the protective covering of the eye (Figure 3.7). This covering, the cornea, is a clear dome that protects the eye. The light then passes through the pupil, the opening in the center of the iris. It continues through the crystalline lens and the vitreous humor. The vitreous humor is a gel-like substance that comprises the majority of the eye.

Eventually, the light focuses on the retina where electromagnetic light energy is transduced—that is, converted—into neural electrochemical impulses (Blake, 2000). Vision is most acute in the fovea, which is a small, thin region of the retina, the size of the head of a pin. When you look straight at an object, your eyes rotate so that the image falls directly onto the fovea. Although the retina is only about as thick as a single page in this book, it consists of three main layers of neuronal tissue (Figure 3.8).

The first layer of neuronal tissue—closest to the front, outward-facing surface of the eye—is the layer of ganglion cells, whose axons constitute the optic nerve. The second layer consists of three kinds of interneuron cells. Amacrine cells and horizontal cells
make single lateral (i.e., horizontal) connections among adjacent areas of the retina in the middle layer of cells. **Bipolar cells** make dual connections forward and outward to the ganglion cells, as well as backward and inward to the third layer of retinal cells.

The third layer of the retina contains the **photoreceptors**, which convert light energy into electrochemical energy that is transmitted by neurons to the brain. There are two kinds of photoreceptors—rods and cones. Each eye contains roughly 120 million rods and 8 million cones. Rods and cones differ not only in shape but also in their compositions, locations, and responses to light. Within the rods and cones are **photopigments**, chemical substances that react to light and transform physical electromagnetic energy into an electrochemical neural impulse that can be understood by the brain. The **rods** are long and thin photoreceptors. They are more highly concentrated in the periphery of the retina than in the foveal region. The rods are responsible for night vision and are sensitive to light and dark stimuli.
The cones are short and thick photoreceptors and allow for the perception of color. They are more highly concentrated in the foveal region than in the periphery of the retina (Durgin, 2000).

The rods, cones, and photopigments could not do their work were they not somehow hooked up to the brain. The neurochemical messages processed by the rods and cones of the retina travel via the bipolar cells to the ganglion cells (see Goodale, 2000a, 2000b). The axons of the ganglion cells in the eye collectively form the optic nerve for that eye. The optic nerves of the two eyes join at the base of the brain to form the optic chiasma (see Figure 2.8 in Chapter 2). At this point, the ganglion cells from the inward, or nasal, part of the retina—the part closer to your nose—cross through the optic chiasma and extend to the opposite hemisphere of the brain. The ganglion cells from the outward, or temporal area of the retina closer to your temple go to the hemisphere on the same side of the body. The lens of each eye naturally inverts the image of the world as it projects the image onto the retina. In this way, the message sent to your brain is literally upside-down and backward.

After being routed via the optic chiasma, about 90% of the ganglion cells then go to the lateral geniculate nucleus of the thalamus. From the thalamus, neurons carry information to the primary visual cortex (V1 or striate cortex) in the occipital lobe of the brain. The visual cortex contains several processing areas. Each area handles different kinds of visual information relating to intensity and quality, including color, location, depth, pattern, and form.

Pathways to Perceive the What and the Where

What are the visual pathways in the brain? A pathway in general is the path the visual information takes from its entering the human perceptual system through the eyes to its being completely processed. Generally, researchers agree that there are two pathways. Work on visual perception has identified separate neural pathways in the cerebral cortex for processing different aspects of the same stimuli (De Yoe & Van Essen, 1988; Köhler et al., 1995). Perception deficits like ataxia and agnosia that are covered later in this chapter also point toward the existence of different pathways.

Why are there two pathways? It is because the information from the primary visual cortex in the occipital lobe is forwarded through two fasciculi (fiber bundles): One ascends toward the parietal lobe (along the dorsal pathway), and one descends to the temporal lobe (along the ventral pathway). The dorsal pathway is also called the where pathway and is responsible for processing location and motion information; the ventral pathway is called the what pathway because it is mainly responsible for processing the color, shape, and identity of visual stimuli (Ungerleider & Haxby, 1994; Ungerleider & Mishkin, 1982).

This general view is referred to as the what/where hypothesis. Most of the research in this area has been carried out with monkeys. In particular, a group of monkeys with lesions in the temporal lobe were able to indicate where things were but seemed unable to recognize what they were. In contrast, monkeys with lesions in the parietal lobe were able to recognize what things were but not where they were.

An alternative interpretation of the visual pathways has been suggested. This interpretation is that the two pathways refer not to what things are and to where they are, but rather, to what they are and to how they function. This view is known as the what/how hypothesis (Goodale & Milner, 2004; Goodale & Westwood, 2004). This hypothesis argues that spatial information about where something is located in
space is always present in visual information processing. What differs between the two pathways is whether the emphasis is on identifying what an object is or, instead, on how we can situate ourselves so as to grasp the object.

The **what pathway** can be found in the ventral stream and is responsible for the identification of objects. The **how pathway** is located in the dorsal stream and controls movements in relation to the objects that have been identified through the “what” pathway. Ventral and dorsal streams both arise from the same early visual areas (Milner & Goodale, 2008).

The what/how hypothesis is best supported by evidence of processing deficits: There are deficits that impair people’s ability to recognize what they see and there are distinct deficits that impair people’s ability to reach for what they see (how).

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What is the difference between sensation and perception?
2. What is the difference between the distal and the perceptual object?
3. How are rods and cones both similar to and different from each other?
4. What are some of the major parts of the eye and what are their functions?
5. What is the “what/where” hypothesis?

**Approaches to Perception: How Do We Make Sense of What We See?**

Now that we know how a light stimulus that enters our eye is processed and routed to the brain, the question still remains as to how we actually perceive what we see. Do we just perceive whatever is being projected on our retina, or is there more to perception? Does our knowledge, and other rules we have learned throughout our life, maybe influence our perception of the world? Going back to our view out of the window, the image on our retina suggests that the buildings we see in the distance are very small. However, we do see other buildings, trees, and streets in front of them that suggest that those buildings are in fact quite large and just appear small because they are far away from our office. In this case, our experience and knowledge about perception and the world allows us to perceive those buildings as tall ones even though they do not look larger than does our hand in front of us on our desk.

There are different views on how we perceive the world. These views can be summarized as bottom-up theories and top-down theories. **Bottom-up theories** describe approaches where perception starts with the stimuli whose appearance you take in through your eye. You look out onto the cityscape, and perception happens when the light information is transported to your brain. Therefore, they are data-driven (i.e., stimulus-driven) theories.

Not all theorists focus on the sensory data of the perceptual stimulus. Many theorists prefer **top-down theories**, according to which perception is driven by high-level cognitive processes, existing knowledge, and the prior expectations that influence perception (Clark, 2003). These theories then work their way down to considering the sensory data, such as the perceptual stimulus. You perceive buildings as big in the background of the city scene because you know these buildings are far
away and therefore must be bigger than they appear. From this viewpoint, expectations are important. When people expect to see something, they may see it even if it is not there or is no longer there. For example, suppose people expect to see a certain person in a certain location. They may think they see that person, even if they are actually seeing someone else who looks only vaguely similar (Simons, 1996).

Top-down and bottom-up approaches have been applied to virtually every aspect of cognition. Bottom-up and top-down approaches usually are presented as being in opposition to each other. But to some extent, they deal with different aspects of the same phenomenon. Ultimately, a complete theory of perception will need to encompass both bottom-up and top-down processes.

**Bottom-Up Theories**

The four main bottom-up theories of form and pattern perception are direct perception, template theories, feature theories, and recognition-by-components theory.

**Direct Perception**

How do you know the letter A when you see it? Easy to ask, hard to answer. Of course, it’s an A because it looks like an A. What makes it look like an A, though, instead of like an H? Just how difficult it is to answer this question becomes apparent when you look at Figure 3.9. You probably will see the image in Figure 3.9 as the words “THE CAT.” Yet the H of “THE” is identical to the A of “CAT.” What subjectively feels like a simple process of pattern recognition is almost certainly quite complex.

**Gibson’s Theory of Direct Perception**

How do we connect what we perceive to what we have stored in our minds? Gestalt psychologists referred to this problem as the Hoffding function (Köhler, 1940). It was named after 19th-century Danish psychologist Harald Hoffding. He questioned whether perception is such a simple process that all it takes is to associate what is seen with what is remembered (associationism). An influential and controversial theorist who questioned associationism is James J. Gibson (1904–1980).

According to Gibson’s theory of direct perception, the information in our sensory receptors, including the sensory context, is all we need to perceive anything. As the environment supplies us with all the information we need for perception, this view is sometimes also called ecological perception. In other words, we do not need higher cognitive processes or anything else to mediate between our sensory experiences and our perceptions. Existing beliefs or higher-level inferential thought processes are not necessary for perception.

![Figure 3.9 Can You Read These Words?](image-url)

When you read these words, you probably have no difficulty differentiating the A from the H. Look more closely at each of these two letters. What features differentiate them?
Gibson believed that, in the real world, sufficient contextual information usually exists to make perceptual judgments. He claimed that we need not appeal to higher-level intelligent processes to explain perception. Gibson (1979) believed that we use this contextual information directly. In essence, we are biologically tuned to respond to it. According to Gibson, we use texture gradients as cues for depth and distance. Those cues aid us to perceive directly the relative proximity or distance of objects and of parts of objects.

In Figure 3.10, you can see different rock formations at the sea coast. For the rocks that are closest to the photographer, you can see many details, like notches, holes, and variations in color. The farther away the objects on the picture are, the fewer the details you can see. You are using texture gradients as an indicator of how far away the rocks are. And because some of the rocks cover up parts of other rocks, you infer from that information that the rocks that are partly covered must be farther away than the rocks that cover them. Based on our analysis of the stable relationships among features of objects and settings in the real world, we directly perceive our environment (Gibson, 1950, 1954/1994; Mace, 1986). We do not need the aid of complex thought processes.

Such contextual information might not be readily controlled in a laboratory experiment. But such information is likely to be available in a real-world setting.

Figure 3.10  Cues Used in Depth Perception.
The farther away an object is, the fewer details you can see. You can see small holes and the rough texture of the rock in the foreground whereas the rocks in the background look much smoother. The rock that is partly obscured is located behind the rock that obscures it. We use these cues to aid us in depth perception.
Therefore, as noted above, Gibson’s model sometimes is referred to as an ecological model (Turvey, 2003). This reference is a result of Gibson’s concern with perception as it occurs in the everyday world (the ecological environment) rather than in laboratory situations, where less contextual information is available.

Ecological constraints apply not only to initial perceptions but also to the ultimate internal representations (such as concepts) that are formed from those perceptions (Hubbard, 1995; Shepard, 1984). Continuing to wave the Gibsonian banner was Eleanor Gibson (1991, 1992), James’ wife. She conducted landmark research in infant perception. She observed that infants (who certainly lack much prior knowledge and experience) quickly develop many aspects of perceptual awareness, including depth perception.

Direct perception may also play a role in interpersonal situations when we try to make sense of others’ emotions and intentions (Gallagher, 2008). After all, we can recognize emotion in faces as such; we do not see facial expressions that we then try to piece together to result in the perception of an emotion (Wittgenstein, 1980).

Neuroscience and Direct Perception

Neuroscience also indicates that direct perception may be involved in person perception. About 30 to 100 milliseconds after a visual stimulus, mirror neurons start firing. Mirror neurons are active both when a person acts and when he or she observes that same act performed by somebody else. So before we even have time to form hypotheses about what we are perceiving, we may already be able to understand the expressions, emotions, and movements of the person we observe (Gallagher, 2008).

Furthermore, studies indicate that there are separate neural pathways (what pathways) in the lateral occipital area for the processing of form, color, and texture in objects. When asked to judge the length of an object, for example, people cannot ignore the width. However, they can judge the color, form, and texture of an object independently of the other qualities (Cant & Goodale, 2007; Cant, Large, McCall, & Goodale, 2008).

Template Theories

Template theories suggest that we have stored in our minds myriad sets of templates. Templates are highly detailed models for patterns we potentially might recognize. We recognize a pattern by comparing it with our set of templates. We then choose the exact template that perfectly matches what we observe (Selfridge & Neisser, 1960). We see examples of template matching in our everyday lives. Fingerprints are matched in this way. Machines rapidly process imprinted numerals on checks by comparing them to templates. Increasingly, products of all kinds are identified with universal product codes (UPCs or “bar codes”). They can be scanned and identified by computers at the time of purchase. Chess players who have knowledge of many games use a matching strategy in line with template theory to recall previous games (Gobet & Jackson, 2002). Template matching theories belong to the group of chunk-based theories that suggest that expertise is attained by acquiring chunks of knowledge in long-term memory that can later be accessed for fast recognition. Studies with chess players have shown that the temporal lobe is indeed activated when the players access the stored chunks in their long-term memory (Campitelli, Gobet, Head, Buckley, & Parker, 2007).

In each of the aforementioned instances, the goal of finding one perfect match and disregarding imperfect matches suits the task. You would be alarmed to find that your bank’s numeral-recognition system failed to register a deposit to your account.
Such failure might occur because it was programmed to accept an ambiguous character according to what seemed to be a best guess. For template matching, only an exact match will do. This is exactly what you want from a bank computer. However, consider your perceptual system at work in everyday situations. It rarely would work if you required exact matches for every stimulus you were to recognize. Imagine, for example, needing mental templates for every possible percept of the face of someone you love. Imagine one for each facial expression, each angle of viewing, each addition or removal of makeup, each hairdo, and so on.

Template-matching theories fail to explain some aspects of the perception of letters. For one thing, such theories cannot easily account for our perception of the letters and words in Figure 3.9. We identify two different letters (A and H) from only one physical form. Hoffding (1891) noted other problems. We can recognize an A as an A despite variations in the size, orientation, and form in which the letter is written. Are we to believe that we have mental templates for each possible size, orientation, and form of a letter? Storing, organizing, and retrieving so many templates in memory would be unwieldy. How could we possibly anticipate and create so many templates for every conceivable object of perception (Figure 3.11)?

**Neuroscience and Template Theories**  Letters of the alphabet are simpler than faces and other complex stimuli. But how do we recognize letters? And does it make a difference to our brain whether we perceive letters or digits? Experiments suggest that there is indeed a difference between letters and digits. There is an area on or near the left fusiform gyrus that is activated significantly more when a person is presented with letters than with digits. It is not clear if this “letter area” only processes letters or if it also plays a more minor role in the processing of digits (Polk et al., 2002). The notion of the visual cortex specializing in different stimuli is not new; other areas have been found that specialize in faces, for example (see Kanwisher et al., 1997; McCarthy et al., 1997). Later in this chapter we will consider in more detail the structures of the brain that enable us to recognize faces.

**Why Computers Have Trouble Reading Handwriting**  Think about how easy it is for you to perceive and understand someone’s handwriting. In handwriting, everybody’s numbers and letters look a bit different. You can still distinguish them without any problems (at least in most cases). This is something computers do not do very well at all. For computers, the reading of handwriting is an incredibly difficult process that’s prone to mistakes. When you deposit a check at an ATM machine, it “reads” your check automatically. In fact, the numbers at the bottom of your check that are written in a strange-looking font are so distinct that a machine cannot mistake them for one another. However, it is much harder for a machine to decipher handwriting. Similarly, a machine also will have trouble determining that all the letters in the right of Figure 3.11 are As (unless it has a template for each one of the As). Therefore, some computers work with algorithms that consider the context in which the word is presented, the angular positions of the written letters (e.g., upright or tilted), and other factors.

Given the sophistication of current-day robots, what is the source of human superiority? There may be several, but one is certainly knowledge. We simply know much more about the environment and sources of regularity in the environment than do robots. Our knowledge gives us a great advantage that robots, at least of the current day, are still unable to bridge.
Yet another alternative explanation of pattern and form perception may be found in feature-matching theories. According to these theories, we attempt to match features of a pattern to features stored in memory, rather than to match a whole pattern to a template or a prototype (Stankiewicz, 2003).

The Pandemonium Model

One such feature-matching model has been called Pandemonium ("pandemonium" refers to a very noisy, chaotic place and hell). In it, metaphorical "demons" with specific duties receive and analyze the features of a stimulus (Selfridge, 1959).

In Oliver Selfridge’s Pandemonium Model, there are four kinds of demons: image demons, feature demons, cognitive demons, and decision demons. Figure 3.12 shows

**Figure 3.11 Template Matching in Barcodes and Letters.**

A particular barcode will always look exactly the same way, making it easy for computers to read. Letters, to the contrary, can look very differently although they depict the same letter. Template matching will distinguish between different bar codes but will not recognize that different versions of the letter A written in different scripts are indeed both As.
According to Oliver Selfridge’s feature-matching model, we recognize patterns by matching observed features to features already stored in memory. We recognize the patterns for which we have found the greatest number of matches.

This model. The “image demons” receive a retinal image and pass it on to “feature demons.” Each feature demon calls out when there are matches between the stimulus and the given feature. These matches are yelled out at demons at the next level of the hierarchy, the “cognitive (thinking) demons.” The cognitive demons in turn shout out possible patterns stored in memory that conform to one or
more of the features noticed by the feature demons. A “decision demon” listens to the pandemonium of the cognitive demons. It decides on what has been seen, based on which cognitive demon is shouting the most frequently (i.e., which has the most matching features).

Although Selfridge’s model is one of the most widely known, other feature models have been proposed. Most also distinguish not only different features but also different kinds of features, such as global versus local features. Local features constitute the small-scale or detailed aspects of a given pattern. There is no consensus as to what exactly constitutes a local feature. Nevertheless, we generally can distinguish such features from global features, the features that give a form its overall shape. Consider, for example, the stimuli depicted in Figure 3.13 (a) and (b). These are of the type used in some research on pattern perception (see for example Navon, 1977, or Olesen et al., 2007). Globally, the stimuli in panels (a) and (b) form the letter $H$. In panel (a), the local features (small $H$s) correspond to the global ones. In panel (b), comprising many local letter $S$s, they do not.

In one study, participants were asked to identify the stimuli at either the global or the local level (Navon, 1977). When the local letters were small and positioned close together, participants could identify stimuli at the global level (the “big” letter) more quickly than at the local level. When participants were required to identify stimuli at the global level, whether the local features (small letters) matched the global one (big letter) did not matter. They responded equally rapidly whether the global $H$ was made up of local $H$s or of local $S$s. However, when the participants were asked to identify the “small” local letters, they responded more quickly if the global features agreed with the local ones. In other words, they were slowed down if they had to identify local (small) $S$s combining to form a global (big) $H$ instead of identifying local (small) $H$s combining to form a global (big) $H$. This pattern of results is called the global precedence effect (see also Kimchi, 1992). Experiments have showed that global information dominates over local information even in infants (Cassia, Simion, Milani, & Umiltà, 2002).

In contrast, when letters are more widely spaced, as in panels (a) and (b) of Figure 3.14, the effect is reversed. Then a local precedence effect appears. That is,

**Figure 3.13** The Global Precedence Effect.
Compare panel (a) (a global $H$ made of local $H$s) with panel (b) (a global $H$ made of local $S$s). All the local letters are tightly spaced.

the participants more quickly identify the local features of the individual letters than the global ones, and the local features interfere with the global recognition in cases of contradictory stimuli (Martin, 1979). So when the letters are close together at the local level, people have problems identifying the local stimuli (small letters) if they are not concordant with the global stimulus (big letter). When the letters on the local level are relatively far apart from each other, it is harder for people to identify the global stimulus (big letter) if it is not concordant with the local stimuli (small letters). Other limitations (e.g., the size of the stimuli) besides special proximity of the local stimuli hold as well, and other kinds of features also influence perception.

Neuroscience and Feature-Matching Theories Some support for feature theories comes from neurological and physiological research. Researchers used single-cell recording techniques with animals (Hubel & Wiesel, 1963, 1968, 1979). They carefully measured the responses of individual neurons to visual stimuli in the visual cortex. Then they mapped those neurons to corresponding visual stimuli for particular locations in the visual field (see Chapter 2). Their research showed that the visual cortex contains specific neurons that respond only to a particular kind of stimulus (e.g., a horizontal line), and only if that stimulus fell onto a specific region of the retina. Each individual cortical neuron, therefore, can be mapped to a specific receptive field on the retina. A disproportionately large amount of the visual cortex is devoted to neurons mapped to receptive fields in the foveal region of the retina, which is the area of the most acute vision.

Most of the cells in the cortex do not respond simply to spots of light. Rather, they respond to “specifically oriented line segments” (Hubel & Wiesel, 1979, p. 9). What’s more, these cells seem to show a hierarchical structure in the degree of complexity of the stimuli to which they respond, somewhat in line with the ideas behind the Pandemonium Model. That means that the outputs of the cells are combined to create higher-order detectors that can identify increasingly more complex features. At the lowest level, cells respond to lines, at a higher level they respond to corners

Figure 3.14  The Local Precedence Effect.
Compare panels (a) and (b), in which the local letters are widely spaced. Why does Figure 3.13 show the global precedence effect, and why does Figure 3.14 show the local precedence effect?

and edges, then to shapes, and so forth. Neurons that can recognize a complex object are called gnostic units or “grandmother cells” because they imply that there is a neuron that is capable of recognizing your grandmother. None of those neurons are quite so specific, however, that they respond to just one person’s head. Even at such a high level there is still some selectivity involved that allows cells to generally fire when a human face comes into view.

Consider what happens as the stimulus proceeds through the visual system to higher levels in the cortex. In general, the size of the receptive field increases, as does the complexity of the stimulus required to prompt a response. As evidence of this hierarchy, there were once believed to be just two kinds of visual cortex neurons (Figure 3.15), simple cells and complex cells (Hubel & Wiesel, 1979), which were believed to differ in the complexity of the information about stimuli they processed. This view proved to be oversimplified.

Based on Hubel and Wiesel’s work, other investigators have found feature detectors that respond to corners, angles, stars, or triangles (DeValois & DeValois, 1980; Shapley & Lennie, 1985; Tanaka, 1993). In some areas of the cortex, highly sophisticated complex cells fire maximally only in response to very specific shapes, regardless of the size of the given stimulus. Examples would be a hand or a face. As the stimulus increasingly resembles the optimal shape, these cells are decreasingly likely to fire.

We now know the picture is more complex than Hubel and Wiesel imagined. Cells can serve multiple functions. These cells operate partially in parallel, although we are not conscious of their operation. For example, spatial information about locations of perceived objects was found to be processed simultaneously with information about the contours of the object. Quite complex judgments about what is perceived are made quite early in information processing, and in parallel (Dakin & Hess, 1999).

But once discrete features have been analyzed according to their orientations, how are they integrated into a form we can recognize as particular objects? The recognition-by-components theory we will consider next sheds some light on this question.

---

**Figure 3.15** Line Orientation and Cell Activation.

David Hubel and Torsten Wiesel discovered that cells in our visual cortex become activated only when they detect the sensation of line segments of particular orientations. As you can see, there is hardly any activation when the cell is presented with a horizontal line segment. There is more activation when the line is diagonally oriented, and when the line is vertical, the cell reacts with even more activation.

Recognition-by-Components Theory
How do we form stable 3-D mental representations of objects? The recognition-by-components theory explains our ability to perceive 3-D objects with the help of simple geometric shapes.

Seeing with the Help of Geons  Irving Biederman (1987) suggested that we achieve this by manipulating a number of simple 3-D geometric shapes called geons (for geometrical ions). They include objects such as bricks, cylinders, wedges, cones, and their curved axis counterparts (Biederman, 1990/1993b). According to Biederman’s recognition-by-components (RBC) theory, we quickly recognize objects by observing the edges of them and then decomposing the objects into geons. The geons also can be recomposed into alternative arrangements. You know that a small set of letters can be manipulated to compose countless words and sentences. Similarly, a small number of geons can be used to build up many basic shapes and then myriad basic objects (Figure 3.16).

The geons are simple and are viewpoint-invariant (i.e., distinct from various viewpoints). The objects constructed from geons thus are recognized easily from many perspectives, despite visual noise. According to Biederman (1993a, 2001), his RBC theory parsimoniously explains how we recognize the general classification for multitudinous objects quickly, automatically, and accurately. This recognition occurs despite changes in viewpoint. It occurs even under many situations in which the stimulus object is degraded in some way. For example, if you see a car, you perceive it as being made up of a number of different geons. You can recognize the car even if you can’t see all of the geons because the car is partly obscured by another object in front of it. Because the geons are viewpoint-invariant, you will also recognize the car even if you look at it from the side or from behind. Cells in the inferior temporal cortex (i.e., the lower part of the temporal cortex) react stronger to changes in geons (which are viewpoint-invariant) than to changes in other geometrical properties (e.g., changes in the size or diameter of a cylinder; Vogels, Biederman, Bar, & Lorincz, 2001).

Biederman’s RBC theory explains how we may recognize general instances of chairs, lamps, and faces, but it does not adequately explain how we recognize particular chairs or particular faces. An example would be your own face or your best friend’s face. They are both made up of geons that constitute your mouth, eyes, nose, eyebrows, and so forth. But these geons are the same for both your and your friend’s faces. So RBC theory cannot explain how we can distinguish one face from the next.

Biederman recognized that aspects of his theory require further work, such as how the relations among the parts of an object can be described (Biederman, 1990/1993b). Another problem with Biederman’s approach, and the bottom-up approach in general, is how to account for the effects of prior expectations and environmental context on some phenomena of pattern perception.

Neuroscience and Recognition-by-Components Theory  What results would we expect if we were to confirm Biederman’s theory? Geons are viewpoint-invariant, so studies should show that neurons exist that react to properties of an object that stay the same, no matter whether you look at them from the front or the side. And indeed, there are studies that have found neurons in the inferior temporal cortex that are sensitive to just those viewpoint-invariant properties (Vogels et al., 2001). However, many neurons respond primarily to one view of an object and decrease their response gradually the more the object is rotated (Logothetis, Pauls, & Poggio,
This finding contradicts the notion of Biederman’s theory that we recognize objects by means of viewpoint-invariant geons. As a result, it is not clear at this point whether Biederman’s theory is correct.

**Top-Down Theories**

In contrast to the bottom-up approach to perception is the top-down, constructive approach (Bruner, 1957; Gregory, 1980; Rock, 1983; von Helmholtz, 1909/1962). In **constructive perception**, the perceiver builds (constructs) a cognitive understanding (perception) of a stimulus. The concepts of the perceiver and his or her cognitive processes influence what he or she sees. The perceiver uses sensory information as
the foundation for the structure but also uses other sources of information to build the perception. This viewpoint also is known as intelligent perception because it states that higher-order thinking plays an important role in perception. It also emphasizes the role of learning in perception (Fahle, 2003). Some investigators have pointed out that not only does the world affect our perception but also the world we experience is actually formed by our perception (Goldstone, 2003). In other words, perception is reciprocal with the world we experience. Perception both affects and is affected by the world as we experience it.

An interesting feature of the theory of constructive perception is that it links human intelligence even to fairly basic processes of perception. According to this theory, perception comprises not merely a low-level set of cognitive processes, but actually a quite sophisticated set of processes that interact with and are guided by human intelligence. When you look out your window, you “see” many things, but what you recognize as seeing is highly processed by your intelligence. Interestingly, Titchener’s structuralist approach (described in Chapter 1) ultimately failed because despite the efforts of Titchener and his followers to engage in introspection independently of their prior knowledge, they and others found this, in the end, to be impossible. What you perceive is shaped, at some level, by what you know and what you think.

For example, picture yourself driving down a road you have never traveled before. As you approach a blind intersection, you see an octagonal red sign with white lettering. It bears the letters “ST_P.” An overgrown vine cuts between the T and the P. Chances are, you will construct from your sensations a perception of a stop sign. You thus will respond appropriately. Perceptual constancies are another example (see below). When you see a car approaching you on the street, its image on your retina gets bigger as the car comes closer. And yet, you perceive the car to stay the same size. This suggests that high-level constructive processes are at work during perception. In color constancy, we perceive that the color of an object remains the same despite changes in lighting that alter the hue. Even in lighting that becomes so dim that color sensations are virtually absent, we still perceive bananas as yellow, plums as purple, and so on.

According to constructivists, during perception we quickly form and test various hypotheses regarding percepts. The percepts are based on three things:

- what we sense (the sensory data),
- what we know (knowledge stored in memory), and
- what we can infer (using high-level cognitive processes).

In perception, we consider prior expectations. You’ll be fast to recognize your friend from far away on the street when you have arranged a meeting. We also use what we know about the context. When you see something approaching on rail tracks you infer that it must be a train. And we also may use what we reasonably can infer, based both on what the data are and on what we know about the data. According to constructivists, we usually make the correct attributions regarding our visual sensations. The reason is that we perform unconscious inference, the process by which we unconsciously assimilate information from a number of sources to create a perception (Snow & Mattingley, 2003). In other words, using more than one source of information, we make judgments that we are not even aware of making.

In the stop-sign example, sensory information implies that the sign is a meaningless assortment of oddly spaced consonants. However, your prior learning tells you something important—that a sign of this shape and color posted at an intersection of roadways and containing these three letters in this sequence probably means that
you should stop thinking about the odd letters. Instead, you should start slamming on the brakes. Successful constructive perception requires intelligence and thought in combining sensory information with knowledge gained from previous experience.

One reason for favoring the constructive approach is that bottom-up (data-driven) theories of perception do not fully explain context effects. **Context effects** are the influences of the surrounding environment on perception (e.g., our perception of “THE CAT” in Figure 3.9). Fairly dramatic context effects can be demonstrated experimentally (Biederman, 1972; Biederman et al., 1974; Biederman, Glass, & Stacy, 1973; De Graef, Christiaens, & D’Ydewalle, 1990). In one study, people were asked to identify objects after they had viewed the objects in either an appropriate or an inappropriate context for the items (Palmer, 1975). For example, participants might see a scene of a kitchen followed by stimuli such as a loaf of bread, a mailbox, and a drum. Objects that were appropriate to the established context, such as the loaf of bread in this example, were recognized more rapidly than were objects that were inappropriate to the established context. The strength of the context also plays a role in object recognition (Bar, 2004).

Perhaps even more striking is a context effect known as the **configural-superiority effect** (Bar, 2004; Pomerantz, 1981), by which objects presented in certain configurations are easier to recognize than the objects presented in isolation, even if the objects in the configurations are more complex than those in isolation. Suppose you show a participant four stimuli, all of them diagonal lines [see Figure 3.17 (a)]. Three of the lines are slanting one way, and one line is slanting the other way. The participant’s task is to identify which stimulus is unlike the others. Now suppose that you show participants four stimuli that are comprised of three lines each [Figure 3.17 (c)]. Three of the stimuli are shaped like triangles, and one is not. In each case, the stimulus is a diagonal line [Figure 3.17 (a)] plus other lines [Figure 3.17 (b)]. Thus, the stimuli in this second condition are more complex variations of the stimuli in the first condition. However, participants can more quickly spot which of the three-sided, more complicated figures is different from the others than they can spot which of the lines is different from the others.

![Figure 3.17](image-url) **Figure 3.17** The Configural-Superiority Effect.
Subjects more readily perceive differences among integrated configurations comprising multiple lines (c) than they do solitary lines (a). In this figure, the lines in panel (b) are added to the lines in panel (a) to form shapes in panel (c), thereby making panel (c) more complex than panel (a).
In a similar vein, there is an object-superiority effect, in which a target line that forms a part of a drawing of a 3-D object is identified more accurately than a target that forms a part of a disconnected 2-D pattern (Lanze, Weisstein, & Harris, 1982; Weisstein & Harris, 1974). These findings parallel findings in the study of letter and word recognition: The word-superiority effect indicates that when people are presented with strings of letters, it is easier for them to identify a single letter if the string makes sense and forms a word instead of being just a nonsense sequel of letters. For example, it is easier to recognize the letter “o” in the word “house” than in the word “huseo” (Reicher, 1969).

The viewpoint of constructive or intelligent perception shows the central relation between perception and intelligence. According to this viewpoint, intelligence is an integral part of our perceptual processing. We do not perceive simply in terms of what is “out there in the world.” Rather, we perceive in terms of the expectations and other cognitions we bring to our interaction with the world. In this view, intelligence and perceptual processes interact in the formation of our beliefs about what it is that we are encountering in our everyday contacts with the world at large.

An extreme top-down position would drastically underestimate the importance of sensory data. If it were correct, we would be susceptible to gross inaccuracies of perception. We frequently would form hypotheses and expectancies that inadequately evaluated the sensory data available. For example, if we expected to see a friend and someone else came into view, we might inadequately consider the perceptible differences between the friend and a stranger and mistake the stranger for the friend. Thus, an extreme constructivist view of perception would be highly error-prone and inefficient. However, an extreme bottom-up position would not allow for any influence of past experience or knowledge on perception. Why store knowledge that has no use for the perceiver? Neither extreme is ideal for explaining perception. It is more fruitful to consider ways in which bottom-up and top-down processes interact to form meaningful percepts.

**How Do Bottom-Up Theories and Top-Down Theories Go Together?**

Both theoretical approaches have garnered empirical support (cf. Cutting & Kozlowski, 1977, vs. Palmer, 1975). So how do we decide between the two? On one level, the constructive-perception theory, which is more top-down, seems to contradict direct-perception theory, which is more bottom-up. Constructivists emphasize the importance of prior knowledge in combination with relatively simple and ambiguous information from the sensory receptors. In contrast, direct-perception theorists emphasize the completeness of the information in the receptors themselves. They suggest that perception occurs simply and directly. Thus, there is little need for complex information processing.

Instead of viewing these theoretical approaches as incompatible, we may gain deeper insight into perception by considering the approaches to be complementary. Sensory information may be more richly informative and less ambiguous in interpreting experiences than the constructivists would suggest. But it may be less informative than the direct-perception theorists would assert. Similarly, perceptual processes may be more complex than hypothesized by Gibsonian theorists. This would be particularly true under conditions in which the sensory stimuli appear only briefly or are degraded. Degraded stimuli are less informative for various reasons. For example, the stimuli may be partially obscured or weakened by poor lighting. Or they may be incomplete, or distorted by illusory cues or other visual “noise” (distracting visual
stimulation analogous to audible noise). We likely use a combination of information from the sensory receptors and our past knowledge to make sense of what we perceive. Some experimental evidence supports this integrated view (Treue, 2003; van Zoest & Donk, 2004; Wolfe et al., 2003).

Recent work suggests that, whereas the very first stage of the visual pathway represents only what is in the retinal image of an object, very soon, color, orientation, motion, depth, spatial frequency, and temporal frequency are represented. Later-stage representations emphasize the viewer’s current interest or attention. In other words, the later-stage representations are not independent of our attentional focus. On the contrary, they are directly affected by it (Maunsell, 1995). Moreover, vision for different things can take different forms. Visual control of action is mediated by cortical pathways that are different from those involved in visual control of perception (Ganel & Goodale, 2003). In other words, when we merely see an object, such as a cell phone, we process it differently than if we intend also to pick up the object. In general, according to Ganel and Goodale (2003), we perceive objects holistically. But if we plan to act on them, we perceive them more analytically so that we can act in an effective way.

To summarize, current theories concerning the ways we perceive patterns explain some, but not all, of the phenomena we encounter in the study of form and pattern perception. Given the complexity of the process, it is impressive that we understand as much as we do. At the same time, clearly a comprehensive theory is still forthcoming. Such a theory would need to account fully for the kinds of context effects, such as the configural-superiority effect, described in this section.

**Perception of Objects and Forms**

Do we perceive objects in a viewer-centered or in an object-centered way? When we gaze at any object in the space around us, do we perceive it in relation to us rather than its actual structure, or do we perceive it in a more objective way that is independent of how it appears to us right this moment? We’ll examine this question in the next section. Then, we look at Gestalt principles for perception, which explain why we perceive some objects as in groups but others as not so grouped (what is it that makes some birds flying in the afternoon sky appear to be in a group whereas others do not?). Finally, we will consider the question of how we perceive patterns, for example faces.

**Viewer-Centered vs. Object-Centered Perception**

Right now one of your authors is looking at the computer on which he is typing this text. He depicts the results of what he sees as a mental representation. What form does this mental representation take? There are two common positions regarding the answer to this question.

One position, **viewer-centered representation**, is that the individual stores the way the object looks to him or her. Thus, what matters is the appearance of the object to the viewer (in this case, the appearance of the computer to the author), not the actual structure of the object. The shape of the object changes, depending on the angle from which we look at it. A number of views of the object are stored, and when we try to recognize an object, we have to rotate that object in our mind until it fits one of the stored images.

The second position, **object-centered representation**, is that the individual stores a representation of the object, independent of its appearance to the viewer. In this case, the shape of the object will stay stable across different orientations
This stability can be achieved by means of establishing the major and minor axes of the object, which then serve as a basis for defining further properties of the object.

Both positions can account for how the author represents a given object and its parts. The key difference is in whether he represents the object and its parts in relation to him (viewer-centered) or in relation to the entirety of the object itself, independent of his own position (object-centered).

Consider, for example, the computer on which this text is being written. It has different parts: a screen, a keyboard, a mouse, and so forth. Suppose the author represents the computer in terms of viewer-centered representation. Then its various parts are stored in terms of their relation to him. He sees the screen as facing him at perhaps a 20-degree angle. He sees the keyboard facing him horizontally. He sees the mouse off to the right side and in front of him. Suppose, instead, that he uses an object-centered representation. Then he would see the screen at a 70-degree angle relative to the keyboard. And the mouse is directly to the right side of the keyboard, neither in front of it nor in back of it.

One potential reconciliation of these two approaches to mental representation suggests that people may use both kinds of representations. According to this approach, recognition of objects occurs on a continuum (Burgund & Marsolek, 2000; Tarr, 2000; Tarr & Bülthoff, 1995). At one end of this continuum are cognitive mechanisms that are more viewpoint-centered. At the other end of the continuum are cognitive mechanisms that are more object-centered. For example, suppose you see a picture of a car that is inverted. How do you know it is a car? Object-centered mechanisms would recognize the object as a car, but viewpoint-centered mechanisms would recognize the car as inverted.

A third orientation in representation is landmark-centered. In landmark-centered representation, information is characterized by its relation to a well-known or prominent item. Imagine visiting a new city. Each day you leave your hotel and go on short trips. It is easy to imagine that you would represent the area you explore in relation to your hotel.
Evidence indicates that, in the laboratory, participants can switch between these three strategies. There are, however, differences in brain activation among these strategies (Committeri et al., 2004).

**The Perception of Groups—Gestalt Laws**

Perception helps us make sense of the confusing stimuli that we perceive in the world. One way to bring order and coherence into our perception is our ability to group similar things. This way, we can reduce the number of things that need to be processed. We can also better decide which things belong together or to the same object. In other words, we organize objects in a visual array into coherent groups.

The Gestalt approach to form perception that was developed in Germany in the early 20th century is useful particularly for understanding how we perceive groups of objects or even parts of objects to form integral wholes (Palmer, 1999a, 1999b, 2000; Palmer & Rock, 1994; Prinzmetal, 1995). It was founded by Kurt Koffka (1886–1941), Wolfgang Köhler (1887–1968), and Max Wertheimer (1880–1943) and was based on the notion that the whole differs from the sum of its individual parts (see Chapter 1).

The overarching law is the **law of Prägnanz**. We tend to perceive any given visual array in a way that most simply organizes the different elements into a stable and coherent form. Thus, we do not merely experience a jumble of unintelligible, disorganized sensations. For example, we tend to perceive a focal figure and other sensations as forming a background for the figure on which we focus.

Other Gestalt principles include **figure-ground perception**, **proximity**, **similarity**, **continuity**, **closure**, and **symmetry** (Figure 3.18; see also Table 3.2). Each of these principles supports the overarching law of Prägnanz. Each illustrates how we tend to

![Figure 3.18](image_url)

**Figure 3.18  The Gestalt Principles of Form Perception.**

The Gestalt principles of form perception include perception of figure-ground, (a) proximity, (b) similarity, (c) continuity, (d) closure, and (e) symmetry. Each principle demonstrates the fundamental law of law of Prägnanz, which suggests that through perception, we unify disparate visual stimuli into a coherent and stable whole.
perceive visual arrays in ways that most simply organize the disparate elements into a stable and coherent form. Stop for a moment and look at your environment. You will perceive a coherent, complete, and continuous array of figures and background. You do not perceive holes in objects where your textbook covers up your view of them. If your book obscures part of the edge of a table, you still perceive the table as a continuous entity. In viewing the environment, we tend to perceive groupings. We see groupings of nearby objects (proximity) or of like objects (similarity). We also perceive objects as complete even though we may only see a part of them (closure), continuous lines rather than broken ones (continuity), and symmetrical patterns rather than asymmetrical ones.

Let’s have a closer look at some of the Gestalt principles. Consider what happens when you walk into a familiar room. You perceive that some things stand out (e.g., faces in photographs or posters). Others fade into the background (e.g., undecorated walls and floors). A figure is any object perceived as being highlighted. It is almost always perceived against or in contrast to some kind of receding, unhighlighted (back)ground. Figure 3.19 (a) illustrates the concept of figure-ground—

![Figure 3.19](image_url)

**Figure 3.19** The Figure-Ground Effect.
In these two Gestalt images, (a) and (b), find which is the figure and which is the ground.
what stands out from, versus what recedes into, the background. You probably first will notice the light-colored lettering of the word *figure*. We perceive this light-colored lettering as the figure against the darker ground. But if you take a closer look, you can see that the darker surrounding actually depicts the word “ground.”

Similarly, in Figure 3.19 (b), you can see either a white vase against a black background or two silhouetted faces peering at each other against a white ground. It is virtually impossible to see both sets of objects simultaneously. Although you may switch rapidly back and forth between the vase and the faces, you cannot see them both at the same time. One of the reasons suggested as to why each figure makes sense is that both figures conform to the Gestalt principle of *symmetry*. Symmetry requires that features appear to have balanced proportions around a central axis or a central point.

People tend to use Gestalt principles even when they are confronted with novel stimuli. Palmer (1977) showed participants novel geometric shapes that served as targets. He then showed them fragments of the shapes. For each fragment, the participants had to say whether it was part of the original novel geometric shape. Participants were quicker to recognize the fragments as part of the original target if they conformed to Gestalt principles. For example, a triangle exhibits *closure*, in that its three sides form a complete, closed object. A triangle was recognized more quickly as part of the original novel figure than were three line segments that were comparable to the triangle except that they were not closed. They thus did not conform to the Gestalt principle. In sum, we seem to use Gestalt principles in our everyday perception. We use them, whether the figures to which we apply the principles are familiar or not.

### Table 3.2  Gestalt Principles of Visual Perception

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gestalt Principles</th>
<th>Principle</th>
<th>Figure Illustrating the Principle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Figure-ground</td>
<td>When perceiving a visual field, some objects (figures) seem prominent, and other aspects of the field recede into the background (ground).</td>
<td>Figure 3.19 shows a figure-ground vase, in which one way of perceiving the figures brings one perspective or object to the fore, and another way of perceiving the figures brings a different object or perspective to the fore and relegates the former foreground to the background.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proximity</td>
<td>When we perceive an assortment of objects, we tend to see objects that are close to each other as forming a group.</td>
<td>In Figure 3.18 (a), we tend to see the middle four circles as two pairs of circles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Similarity</td>
<td>We tend to group objects on the basis of their similarity.</td>
<td>In Figure 3.18 (b), we tend to see four columns of x's and o's, not four rows of alternating letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuity</td>
<td>We tend to perceive smoothly flowing or continuous forms rather than disrupted or discontinuous ones.</td>
<td>Figure 3.18 (c) shows two fragmented curves bisecting, which we perceive as two smooth curves, rather than as disjointed curves.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closure</td>
<td>We tend to perceptually close up, or complete, objects that are not, in fact, complete.</td>
<td>Figure 3.18 (d) shows only disjointed, jumbled line segments, which you close up to see a triangle and a circle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symmetry</td>
<td>We tend to perceive objects as forming mirror images about their center.</td>
<td>For example, when viewing Figure 3.18 (e), a configuration of assorted brackets, we see the assortment as forming four sets of brackets, rather than eight individual items, because we integrate the symmetrical elements into coherent objects.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Gestalt principles of form perception are remarkably simple. Yet they characterize much of our perceptual organization (Palmer, 1992). Even young infants organize visual stimuli by means of the Gestalt law of proximity (Quinn, Bhatt, & Hayden, 2008). Interestingly, the Gestalt principles appear to apply only to humans and not to other primates. An experiment by Parron and Fagot (2007) showed that only humans misjudged the size of the central circle in the Ebbinghaus illusion (Figure 3.20), whereas baboons did not. Maybe this difference is because of humans’ paying more attention to the surrounding stimuli, whereas baboons concentrated their attention on the central circle.

The Gestalt principles provide valuable descriptive insights into form and pattern perception. But they offer few or no explanations of these phenomena. To understand how or why we perceive forms and patterns, we need to consider explanatory theories of perception.

**Recognizing Patterns and Faces**

How do we recognize patterns when we look at objects? And are faces a special form of pattern, or is there a special mechanism just for faces? In the next section we explore these and other questions.

**Two Different Pattern Recognition Systems**

Martha Farah suggests that humans have two systems for recognizing patterns (Farah, 1992, 1995; Farah et al., 1998). The first system specializes in recognition of parts of objects and in assembling those parts into distinctive wholes (feature analysis system). For example, when you are in a biology class and notice the elements of a tulip—the stamen, the pistil, and so forth—you look at the flower through this first system. The second system (configurational system) specializes in recognizing larger configurations. It is not well equipped to analyze parts of objects or the construction of the objects. But it is especially well equipped to recognize configurations. For example, if you look at a tulip in a garden and admire its distinctive beauty and form, you look at the flower through the second system.
The second system is most relevant to the recognition of faces. When you spot a friend whom you see on a daily basis, you recognize him or her using the configurational system. So dependent are you on this system in everyday life that you might not even notice some major change in your friend’s appearance, such as his or her having longer hair or having put on new glasses.

The feature analysis system can also be used in face recognition. Suppose you see someone whose face looks vaguely familiar, but you are not sure who it is. You start analyzing features and then realize it is a friend you have not seen for 10 years. In this case, you were able to make the facial recognition only after you analyzed the face by its features. In the end, both configurational and feature analysis may help in making difficult recognitions and discriminations.

Face recognition occurs, at least in part, in the fusiform gyrus of the temporal lobe (Gauthier et al., 2003; Kanwisher, McDermott, & Chun, 1997; Tarr & Cheng, 2003). This brain area responds intensely when we look at faces but not when we look at other objects. There is good evidence that there is something special about recognition of faces, even from an early age. For example, infants track movements of a photograph of a human face more rapidly than they track movements of stimuli of similar complexity that are not, however, faces (Farah, 2000a). In one study, experimental participants were shown sketches of two kinds of objects, faces, and houses (Farah et al., 1998). In each case, the face was paired with the name of the person whom the face represented and the house was paired with the name of the house owner. There were six pairings per trial. After learning the six pairings,
participants were asked to recognize parts of either the faces or the houses or to recognize the faces or houses as a whole. For example, they might see just a nose or ear, or just a window or a doorway. Or they might see a whole face or house.

If face recognition is somehow special and especially dependent on the second, configurational system, then people should have more difficulty recognizing parts of faces than parts of houses. And this is what the data showed (Figure 3.21): People generally were better at recognizing houses, whether they were presented in parts or in wholes. But more importantly, people had relatively more difficulty in recognizing parts of faces than they had in recognizing whole faces. In contrast, they recognized parts of houses just as well as whole houses. Face recognition, therefore, appears to be special. Presumably, it is especially dependent on the configurational system.

An interesting example of a configurational effect in face recognition occurs when people stare at distorted faces. If you stare at a distorted face for a while and then stare at a normal face, the normal face will look distorted in the opposite direction.

When you look at the faces in Figure 3.22, you will notice that the face in the middle looks normal, whereas the faces to the right and left are gradually more distorted. If you stare at the face to the very left, where the eyes are too close together, for example, and then look back to the normal face in the middle, the eyes in that face will appear too far apart (Leopold et al., 2001; Webster et al., 2004; Zhao & Chubb, 2001). Your knowledge of faces normally tells you what is a normal face and what is a distorted one, but in this case, that knowledge is very briefly overridden by your having accustomed yourself to the distorted face.

Cognitive processing of faces and the emotions of the face can interact. Indeed, there is some evidence of an age-related “face positivity” effect. In one study, older but not younger adults were found to show a preference for looking at happy faces and away from sad or angry faces (Isaacowitz et al., 2006a, 2006b). Furthermore, happy faces are rated as more familiar than are either neutral or negative faces (Lander & Metcalfe, 2007). But can you choose to ignore the emotion that another person is displaying? Studies indicate that, at least in the case of some negative emotions, like fear, your amygdala processes the emotion automatically, at least when you do not have to pay much attention to anything else. It is also possible that there is a difference between highly anxious and less anxious individuals: Highly anxious people’s amygdalas always process fear automatically, but less anxious people’s do not (Palermo & Rhodes, 2007).

Figure 3.22 Normal and Distorted Faces.
Normal (center) and distorted faces.
The Neuroscience of Recognizing Faces and Patterns

There is evidence that emotion increases activation within the fusiform gyrus when people are processing faces. In one study, participants were shown a face and asked either to name the person or to name the expression. When asked to name the
expression, participants show increased activation of the fusiform gyrus compared with when the participants were asked to name the person (Ganel et al., 2005). Examination of patients with autism provides additional evidence for the processing of emotion within the fusiform gyrus. Patients with autism have impaired emotional recognition. Scanning the brains of persons with autism reveals that the fusiform gyrus is less active than in nonautistic populations.

Patients with autism can learn to identify emotions through an effortful process. However, this training does not allow identification of emotion to become an automatic process in this population, nor does it increase the activation within the fusiform gyrus (Bolte et al., 2006; Hall, Szechtman, & Nahmias, 2003).

Researchers do not all agree that the fusiform gyrus is specialized for face perception, in contrast to other forms of perception. Another point of view is that this area is that of greatest activation in face perception, but that other areas also show activation, but at lower levels. Similarly, this or other brain areas that respond maximally to faces or anything else may still show some activation when perceiving other objects. In this view, areas of the brain are not all-or-none in what they perceive, but rather, may be differentially activated, in greater or lesser degrees, depending on what is perceived (Haxby et al., 2001; Haxby, Gobbini, & Montgomery, 2004; O’Toole et al., 2005).

Another theory concerning the role of the fusiform gyrus is called the expert-individuation hypothesis. According to this theory, the fusiform gyrus is activated when one examines items with which one has visual expertise. Imagine that you are an expert on birds and spend much of your time studying birds. It is expected that you could differentiate among very similar birds and would have much practice at such differentiation. As a result, if you are shown five robins, you would likely be able to tell birds apart. It is unlikely that a person without this expertise could discern among these birds. If your brain were scanned during this activity, activation in the fusiform gyrus, specifically the right one, would be seen. Such activation is seen in persons who are experts concerning cars and birds. Even when people are taught to differentiate among very similar abstract figures, activation of the fusiform gyrus is observed (Gauthier et al., 1999, 2000; Rhodes et al., 2004; Xu, 2005). This theory is able to account for the activation of the fusiform gyrus when people view faces because we are, in effect, experts at identifying and examining faces.

**BELIEVE IT OR NOT**

**Do Two Different Faces Ever Look the Same to You?**

Have you ever noticed that it is easier to recognize faces of people that belong to your own ethnic group? For example, if you are of African-American descent, it is likely easier for you to recognize and differentiate between black faces than between white or Asian faces. Maybe you thought that this is just because you are more familiar with the faces you happen to see most often around you and that it is this familiarity that makes it easier for you to discriminate faces that are similar to your own. But now imagine being told you have a “red” personality. Do you think knowing this would make it easier for you to recognize people who also have a “red” personality as opposed to a “green” personality (even if they all are of the same race)? Studies have shown that indeed social categorization plays a role in how easy it is for you to recognize faces. As soon as you perceive somebody as an out-group member, it will be harder for you to recognize that person’s face. This effect is so stable that it can be elicited by imaginary differences like “red” or “green” personalities, or just by adding an African-American or Latino hairdo to a white face (Bernstein et al., 2007; MacLin & Malpass, 2001, 2003; Ge et al., 2009).
Prosopagnosia—the inability to recognize faces—would imply damage of some kind to the configurational system (Damasio, Tranel, & Damasio, 1990; De Renzi Faglioni, Grossi, & Nichelli, 1991; Farah, 2004). Somebody with prosopagnosia can see the face of another person and even recognize if that person is sad, happy, or angry. But what he fails to recognize is whether that person being observed is a stranger, his friend, or his own mother. The ability to recognize faces is especially influenced by lesions of the right fusiform gyrus, either unilateral or bilateral. Facial memories are affected, in particular, when the bilateral lesions include the right anterior temporal lobe (Barton, 2008).

Other disabilities, such as an early reading disability in which a beginning reader has difficulty in recognizing the features that comprise unique words, might stem from damage to the first, element-based system. Moreover, processing can move from one system to another. A typical reader may learn the appearances of words through the first system—element by element—and then come to recognize the words as wholes. Indeed, some forms of reading disability might stem from the inability of the second system to take over from the first.

**Concept Check**

1. What are the major Gestalt principles?
2. What is the “recognition by components” theory?
3. What is the difference between top-down and bottom-up theories of perception?
4. What is the difference between viewer-centered and object-centered perception?
5. What is prosopagnosia?

### The Environment Helps You See

As we have seen, perceptual processes are not so easily completed that the image on your retina can be taken as is without further interpretation. Our brain needs to interpret the stimuli it receives and make sense of them. The environment provides cues that aid in the analysis of the retinal image and facilitate the construction of a perception that is as close as possible to what is out there in the world—at least, to the extent we can ascertain what is out there! The following part of this chapter explains how we use environmental cues to perceive the world.

### Perceptual Constancies

Picture yourself walking to your cognitive psychology class. Two students are standing outside the classroom door. They are chatting as you approach. As you get closer to the door, the amount of space on your retina devoted to images of those students becomes increasingly large. On the one hand, this proximal sensory evidence suggests that the students are becoming larger. On the other hand, you perceive that the students have remained the same size. Why?

The perceptual system deals with variability by performing a rather remarkable analysis regarding the objects in the perceptual field. Your classmates’ perceived constancy in size is an example of perceptual constancy. **Perceptual constancy** occurs when our perception of an object remains the same even when our proximal
sensation of the distal object changes (Gillam, 2000). The physical characteristics of the external distal object are probably not changing. But because we must be able to deal effectively with the external world, our perceptual system has mechanisms that adjust our perception of the proximal stimulus. Thus, the perception remains constant although the proximal sensation changes. Here we consider two of the main constancies: size and shape constancies.

Size constancy is the perception that an object maintains the same size despite changes in the size of the proximal stimulus. The size of an image on the retina depends directly on the distance of that object from the eye. The same object at two different distances projects different-sized images on the retina. Some striking illusions can be achieved when our sensory and perceptual systems are misled by the very same information that usually helps us to achieve size constancy.

An example of size constancy is the Müller-Lyer illusion (Figure 3.23). Here, two line segments that are of the same length appear to be of different lengths. We use shapes and angles from our everyday experience to draw conclusions about the relative sizes of objects. Equivalent image sizes at different depths usually indicate different-sized objects.

Studies indicate that the right posterior parietal cortex (involved in the manipulation of mental images) and the right temporo-occipital cortex are activated when people are asked to judge the length of the lines in the Müller-Lyer illusion. The strength of the illusion can be changed by adjusting the angles of the arrows that delimit the horizontal line—the sharper the angles, the more pronounced the illusion. The strength of the illusion is associated with bilateral (on both sides) activation in the lateral (i.e., located on the side of) occipital cortex and the right superior parietal cortex. As the right intraparietal sulcus (furrow) is activated as well, it seems like there is an interaction of the illusory information with the top-down processes in the right parietal cortex that are responsible for visuo-spatial judgments (Weidner & Fink, 2007).

Figure 3.23  The Müller-Lyer Illusion.
In this illusion, we tend to view two equally long line segments as being of different lengths. The vertical line segments in panels (a) and (c) appear shorter than the line segments in panels (b) and (d), although they are the same size. Oddly enough, we are not certain why such a simple illusion occurs. Sometimes, the illusion we see in the abstract line segments (panels (a) and (b)) is explained in terms of the diagonal lines at the ends of the vertical segments which may be implicit depth cues similar to the ones we would see in our perceptions of the exterior and interior of a building (panels (c) and (d)) (Coren & Girgus, 1978).
Finally, compare the two center circles in the pair of circle patterns in Figure 3.20. Both center circles are actually the same size. But the size of the center circle relative to the surrounding circles affects perception of the center circle’s size.

Like size constancy, shape constancy relates to the perception of distances but in a different way. Shape constancy is the perception that an object maintains the same shape despite changes in the shape of the proximal stimulus (Figure 3.24). An object’s perceived shape remains the same despite changes in its orientation and hence

![Figure 3.24 Shape Constancy.](image)

Here, you see a rectangular door and door frame, showing the door as closed, slightly opened, more fully opened, or wide open. Of course, the door does not appear to be a different shape in each panel. Indeed, it would be odd if you perceived a door to be changing shapes as you opened it. Yet, the shape of the image of the door sensed by your retinas does change as you open the door. If you look at the figure, you will see that the drawn shape of the door is different in each panel.
in the shape of its retinal image. As the actual shape of the pictured door changes, some parts of the door seem to be changing differentially in their distance from us. It is possible to use neuropsychological imaging to localize parts of the brain that are used in this shape analysis. They are in the extrastriate cortex (Kanwisher et al., 1996, 1997). Points near the outer edge of the door seem to move more quickly toward us than do points near the inner edge. Nonetheless, we perceive that the door remains the same shape.

**Depth Perception**

Consider what happens when you reach for a cup of tea, or throw a baseball. You must use information regarding depth. **Depth** is the distance from a surface, usually using your own body as a reference surface when speaking in terms of depth perception. This use of depth information extends beyond the range of your body’s reach. When you drive, you use depth to assess the distance of an approaching automobile. When you decide to call out to a friend walking down the street, you determine how loudly to call. Your decision is based on how far away you perceive your friend to be. How do you manage to perceive 3-D space when the proximal stimuli on your retinas comprise only a 2-D projection of what you see? You have to rely on depth cues. The next section explores what depth cues are and how we use them.

**Depth Cues**

Look at the impossible configurations in Figure 3.25. They are confusing because there is contradictory depth information in different sections of the picture. Small segments of these impossible figures look reasonable to us because there is no inconsistency in their individual depth cues (Hochberg, 1978). However, it is difficult to make sense of the figure as a whole. The reason is that the cues providing depth information in various segments of the picture are in conflict.

Generally, depth cues are either monocular (mon-, “one”; ocular, “related to the eyes”) or binocular (bin-, “both,” “two”). **Monocular depth cues** can be represented in just two dimensions and observed with just one eye. Figure 3.26 illustrates several of the monocular depth cues defined in Table 3.3. They include texture gradients, relative size, interposition, linear perspective, aerial perspective, location in the picture plane, and motion parallax. Before you read about the cues in either the table or the figure caption, look just at the figure. See how many depth cues you can decipher simply by observing the figure carefully.

Table 3.3 also describes motion parallax, the only monocular depth cue not shown in the figure. Motion parallax requires movement. It thus cannot be used...
to judge depth within a stationary image, such as a picture. Another means of judging depth involves **binocular depth cues**, based on the receipt of sensory information in three dimensions from both eyes (Parker, Cumming, & Dodd, 2000). Table 3.3 also summarizes some of the binocular cues used in perceiving depth.

Binocular depth cues use the relative positioning of your eyes. Your two eyes are positioned far enough apart to provide two kinds of information to your brain: binocular disparity and binocular convergence. In **binocular disparity**, your two eyes send increasingly disparate (differing) images to your brain as objects approach you. Your brain interprets the degree of disparity as an indication of distance from you. In addition, for objects we view at relatively close locations, we use depth cues based on binocular convergence. In **binocular convergence**, your two eyes increasingly turn...
inward as objects approach you. Your brain interprets these muscular movements as indications of distance from you.

In about 8% of people whose eyes are not aligned properly (strabismic eyes), depth perception can occur even with just one eye. Usually people with strabismic eyes have a sensitive zone in their retina other than the fovea that captures a part of the space that should have been captured were the eyes properly aligned. This capacity normally goes along with a partial inhibition of signals from the fovea. If the fovea stays sensitive, however, those people produce double images, which can be fused and result in stereoscopic vision with just one eye (Rychkova & Ninio, 2009).

Depth perception may depend upon more than just the distance or depth at which an object is located relative to oneself. The perceived distance to a target is influenced by the effort required to walk to the location of the target (Proffitt et al., 2003, 2006). People with a heavy backpack perceive the distance to a target location as farther than those not wearing a heavy backpack. In other words, there can be an interaction between the perceptual result and the perceived effort required to reach the object perceived (Wilt, Proffitt, & Epstein, 2004). The more effort one requires to reach something, the farther away it is perceived to be.

Depth perception is a good example of how cues facilitate our perception. When we see an object that appears small, there is no automatic reason to believe it is

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3.3</th>
<th>Monocular and Binocular Cues for Depth Perception</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Various perceptual cues aid in our perception of the 3-D world. Some of these cues can be observed by one eye alone; other cues require the use of both eyes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cues for Depth Perception</strong></td>
<td><strong>Appears Closer</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monocular Depth Cues</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Texture gradients</td>
<td>Larger grains, farther apart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative size</td>
<td>Bigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interposition</td>
<td>Partially obscures other object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linear perspective</td>
<td>Apparently parallel lines seem to diverge as they move away from the horizon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerial perspective</td>
<td>Images seem crisper, more clearly delineated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location in the picture plane</td>
<td>Above the horizon, objects are higher in the picture plane; below the horizon, objects are lower in the picture plane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motion parallax</td>
<td>Objects approaching get larger at an ever-increasing speed (i.e., big and moving quickly closer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Binocular Depth Cues</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binocular convergence</td>
<td>Eyes feel tug inward toward nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binocular disparity</td>
<td>Huge discrepancy between image seen by left eye and image seen by right eye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
farther away. Rather, the brain uses this contextual information to conclude that the smaller object is farther away.

**The Neuroscience of Depth Perception**

Figure 3.27 illustrates how binocular disparity and binocular convergence work. The brain contains neurons that specialize in the perception of depth. These neurons are, as one might expect, referred to as **binocular neurons**. The neurons integrate incoming information from both eyes to form information about depth. The binocular neurons are found in the visual cortex (Parker, 2007).

Research on both nonhuman animals and humans has shown that visual shape is processed in the ventral visual stream as well as important visual areas such as the lateral occipital cortex and the ventral temporal cortex. After the initial processing in the primary visual cortex, moving 3-D shapes are processed in the human motion complex (hMT), an area that is concerned with motion processing. Next to be processed are depth and shape information. This processing occurs mainly in the V5 region of the visual cortex; the medial parietal cortex may also participate in the processing to some extent. In the next step, different features of the stimulus are analyzed in the lateral occipital cortex in order to infer the shape from the moving object. The shape that was inferred is then compared with the shape representation in the ventral occipital and ventral temporal areas of the cortex. The process ends with activation in the parietal cortex and primary visual cortex which suggests that the parietal cortex is involved in top-down processes that influence the areas in the primary visual cortex where the visual stimuli are being processed in the beginning (Jiang et al., 2008; Orban et al., 2003).

**Deficits in Perception**

Clearly, cognitive psychologists learn a great deal about normal perceptual processes by studying perception in normal participants. However, we also often gain understanding of perception by studying people whose perceptual processes differ from the norm (Farah, 1990; Weiskrantz, 1994).

**Agnosias and Ataxias**

Perceptual deficits provide an excellent way to test hypotheses with regard to how the perceptual system works. Remember that there are two distinct visual pathways,
one for identifying objects (“what”), the other for pinpointing where objects are located in space and how to manipulate them (“where” or “how”).

The what/how hypothesis is best supported by evidence of processing deficits: There are both deficits that impair people’s ability to recognize what they see, and deficits that impair people’s ability to reach for what they see (how).

**Difficulties Perceiving the “What”**

Consider first the “what.” People who suffer from an agnosia have trouble to perceive sensory information (Moscovitch, Winocur, & Behrmann, 1997). Agnosias
often are caused by damage to the border of the temporal and occipital lobes (Farah, 1990, 1999) or restricted oxygen flow to areas of the brain, sometimes as a result of traumatic brain injury (Zoltan, 1996). There are many kinds of agnosias. Not all of them are visual. Here we focus on a few specific inabilities to see forms and patterns in space.

Generally, people with agnosia have normal sensations of what is in front of them. They can perceive the colors and shapes of objects and persons but they cannot recognize what the objects are—they have trouble with the “what” pathway.

People who suffer from visual-object agnosia can see all parts of the visual field, but the objects they see do not mean anything to them (Kolb & Whishaw, 1985). For example, one agnostic patient, on seeing a pair of eyeglasses, noted first that there was a circle, then that there was another circle, then that there was a crossbar, and finally guessed that he was looking at a bicycle. A bicycle does, indeed, comprise two circles and a crossbar (Luria, 1973).

Disturbance in the temporal region of the cortex can lead to simultagnosia. In simultagnosia, an individual is unable to pay attention to more than one object at a time. A person with simultagnosia would not see each of the objects depicted in Figure 3.28. Rather, the person might report seeing the hammer but not the other objects (Williams, 1970).

Prosopagnosia results in a severely impaired ability to recognize human faces (Farah et al., 1995; Feinberg et al., 1994; McNeil & Warrington, 1993; Young, 2003). A person with prosopagnosia might not recognize her or his own face in the mirror. This fascinating disorder has spawned much research on face identification, a “hot topic” in visual perception (Damasio, 1985; Farah et al., 1995; Farah, Levinson, & Klein, 1995; Haxby et al., 1996). The functioning of the right-hemisphere fusiform gyrus is strongly implicated in prosopagnosia. In particular, the disorder is associated with damage to the right temporal lobe of the brain. Prosopagnosia, in particular, and agnosia, in general, are obstacles that persist over time. In one particular case, a woman who sustained carbon-monoxide toxicity began to suffer from agnosia, including prosopagnosia. After 40 years, this woman was reevaluated.
and still demonstrated these deficits. These findings reveal the lasting nature of agnosia (Sparr et al., 1991).

**Difficulties in Knowing the “How”**

A different kind of perceptual deficit is associated with damage to the “how” pathway. This deficit is **optic ataxia**, which is an impairment in the ability to use the visual system to guide movement (Himmelbach & Karnath, 2005). People with this deficit have trouble reaching for things. All of us have had the experience of coming home at night and trying to find the keyhole in the front door. It’s too dark to see, and we have to grope with our key for the keyhole, often taking quite a while to find it. Someone with optic ataxia has this problem even with a fully lit visual field. The “how” pathway is impaired.

Ataxia results from a processing failure in the posterior parietal cortex, where sensorimotor information is processed. It is assumed that higher order processes are involved because most patients’ disorders are complex and they can indeed grasp objects under certain circumstances (Jackson et al., 2009). People with ataxia can improve their movements toward a visible aim when they hold off with their movements for a few seconds. Immediate movements are executed through dorsal-stream processing, while delayed movements make use of the ventral system, comprising the occipito-temporal and temporo-parietal areas (Milner et al., 2003; Milner & Goodale, 2008; Himmelbach et al., 2009).

**Are Perceptual Processes Independent of Each Other?**

When we consider the different kinds of perceptual deficits, it is stunning to see how specific they are. Some people cannot name colors; others cannot recognize movement or faces. Others can see a mug on the table in front of them, yet cannot grasp the mug. This kind of extreme specificity of deficits leads to questions about specialization (modular processes). Specifically, are there distinct processing centers or modules for particular perceptual tasks, such as for color or face recognition? This question goes beyond the separation of perceptual processes along different sensory modalities (e.g., the differences between visual and auditory perception). Modular processes are those that are specialized for particular tasks. They may involve only visual processes (as in color perception), or they may involve an integration of visual and auditory processes (as in certain aspects of speech perception that are discussed in Chapter 10). For face perception (or any perceptual process) to be considered a truly modular process, we would need to have further evidence that the process is domain-specific and therefore only uses specific kinds of information, and that information does not freely flow across different modules. That is, other perceptual processes should not contribute to, interfere with, or share information with face perception.

**Anomalies in Color Perception**

Color perception deficits are much more common in men than in women, and they are genetically linked. However, they can also result from lesions to the ventromedial occipital and temporal lobes.

There are several kinds of color deficiency, which are sometimes referred to as kinds of “color blindness.” Least common is **rod monochromacy**, also called achromacy. People with this condition have no color vision at all. It is thus the only
true form of pure color blindness. People with this condition have cones that are nonfunctional. They see only shades of gray, as a function of their vision through the rods of the eye.

Most people who suffer from deficits in color perception can still see some color, despite the name “color blindness.” In dichromacy, only two of the mechanisms for color perception work, and one is malfunctioning. The result of this malfunction is one of three types of color blindness (color-perception deficits). The most common is red-green color blindness. People with this form of color-blindness have difficulty in distinguishing red from green, although they may be able to distinguish, for example, dark red from light green (Visual disabilities: Color-blindness, 2004). The extreme form of red-green color blindness is called protanopia. The other types of color blindness are: deuteranopia (trouble seeing greens), and tritanopia (blues and greens can be confused, but yellows also can seem to disappear or to appear as light shades of reds).

See the companion website for a picture showing a rainbow as seen by a person with normal color vision and by persons suffering from the three kinds of dichromacy.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What is shape constancy?
2. What are the main cues for depth perception?
3. What is visual agnosia?
4. To what does “modularity” refer?
5. What is the difference between monochromacy and dichromacy?

**Why Does It Matter? Perception in Practice**

Perceptual processes and change blindness play a significant role in accidents and efforts at accident prevention. About 50% of all collision accidents are a result of missing or delayed perception (Nakayama, 1978). Especially two-wheeled vehicles are often involved in “looked-but-failed-to-see” accidents, where the driver of the involved car states that he did indeed look in the direction of the cyclist, but failed to see the approaching motorcycle. It is possible that drivers develop a certain “scanning” strategy that they use in complex situations, such as at crossroads. The scanning strategy concentrates on the most common and dangerous threats but fails to recognize small deviations, or more uncommon objects like two-wheeled vehicles. In addition, people tend to fail to recognize new objects after blinking and saccades (fast movements of both eyes in one direction).

Generally, people are not aware of the danger of change blindness and believe that they will be able to see all obstacles when looking in a particular direction (“change blindness blindness”, Simons & Rensink, 2005; Davis et al., 2008). This tendency has implications for the education of drivers with regard to their perceptual abilities. It also has implications for the design of traffic environments, which should be laid out in a way that facilitates complex traffic flow and makes drivers aware of unexpected obstacles, like bicycles (Galpin et al., 2009; Koustanai, Boloix, Van Elslande, & Bastien, 2008).
Key Themes

Several key themes, as outlined in Chapter 1, emerge in our study of perception.

**Rationalism versus empiricism.** How much of the way we perceive can be understood as due to some kind of order in the environment that is relatively independent of our perceptual mechanisms? In the Gibsonian view, much of what we perceive derives from the structure of the stimulus, independent of our experience with it. In contrast, in the view of constructive perception, we construct what we perceive. We build up mechanisms for perceiving based on our experience with the environment. As a result, our perception is influenced at least as much by our intelligence (rationalism) as it is by the structure of the stimuli we perceive (empiricism).

**Basic versus applied research.** Research on perception has many applications, such as in understanding how we can construct machines that perceive. The U.S. Postal Service relies heavily on machines that read zip codes. To the extent that the machines are inaccurate, mail risks going astray. These machines cannot rely on strict template matching because people write numbers in different ways. So the machines must do at least some feature analysis.

Another application of perception research is in human factors. Human-factors researchers design machines and user interfaces to be user-friendly. An automobile driver or airplane pilot sometimes needs to make split-second decisions. The cockpits thus must have instrument panels that are well-lit, easy to read, and accessible for quick action. Basic research on human perception can inform developers what user-friendly means.

**Domain generality versus domain specificity.** Perhaps nowhere is this theme better illustrated than in research on face recognition. Is there something special about face recognition? It appears so. Yet many of the mechanisms that are used for face recognition are used for other kinds of perception as well. Thus, it appears that perceptual mechanisms may be mixed—some general across domains, others specific to domains such as face recognition.

Summary

1. How can we perceive an object like a chair as having a stable form, given that the image of the chair on our retina changes as we look at it from different directions? Perceptual experience involves four elements: distal object, informational medium, proximal stimulation, and perceptual object. Proximal stimulation is constantly changing because of the variable nature of the environment and physiological processes designed to overcome sensory adaptation. Perception therefore must address the fundamental question of constancy.

   Perceptual constancies (e.g., size and shape constancy) result when our perceptions of objects tend to remain constant. That is, we see constancies even as the stimuli registered by our senses change. Some perceptual constancies may be governed by what we know about the world. For example, we have expectations regarding how rectilinear structures usually appear. But constancies also are influenced by invariant relationships among objects in their environmental context.

   One reason we can perceive 3-D space is the use of binocular depth cues. Two such cues are binocular disparity and binocular convergence. Binocular disparity is based on the fact that each of two eyes receives a slightly different image of the same object as it is being viewed. Binocular convergence is based on the degree...
to which our two eyes must turn inward toward each other as objects get closer to us. We also are aided in perceiving depth by monocular depth cues. These cues include texture gradients, relative size, interposition, linear perspective, aerial perspective, height in the picture plane, and motion parallax. One of the earliest approaches to form and pattern perception is the Gestalt approach to form perception. The Gestalt law of Prägnanz has led to the explanation of several principles of form perception. These principles include figure-ground, proximity, similarity, closure, continuity, and symmetry. They characterize how we perceptually group together various objects and parts of objects.

2. **What are two fundamental approaches to explaining perception?** Perception is the set of processes by which we recognize, organize, and make sense of stimuli in our environment. It may be viewed from either of two basic theoretical approaches: constructive or direct-perception. The viewpoint of constructive (or intelligent) perception asserts that the perceiver essentially constructs or builds up the stimulus that is perceived. He or she does so by using prior knowledge, contextual information, and sensory information. In contrast, the viewpoint of direct perception asserts that all the information we need to perceive is in the sensory input (such as from the retina) that we receive.

An alternative to both these approaches integrates features of each. It suggests that perception may be more complex than direct-perception theorists have suggested, yet perception also may involve more efficient use of sensory data than constructive-perception theorists have suggested. Specifically, a computational approach to perception suggests that our brains compute 3-D perceptual models of the environment based on information from the 2-D sensory receptors in our retinas.

The main bottom-up theoretical approaches to pattern perception include template-matching theories and feature-matching theories. Some support for feature-matching theories comes from neurophysiological studies identifying what are called “feature detectors” in the brain. It appears that various cortical neurons can be mapped to specific receptive fields on the retina. Differing cortical neurons respond to different features. Examples of such features are line segments or edges in various spatial orientations. Visual perception seems to depend on three levels of complexity in the cortical neurons. Each level of complexity seems to be further removed from the incoming information from the sensory receptors. Another bottom-up approach, the recognition-by-components (RBC) theory, more specifically delineates a set of features involved in form and pattern perception.

Bottom-up approaches explain some aspects of form and pattern perception. Other aspects require approaches that suggest at least some degree of top-down processing of perceptual information. For example, top-down approaches better but incompletely explain such phenomena as context effects, including the object-superiority effect and the word-superiority effect.

3. **What happens when people with normal visual sensations cannot perceive visual stimuli?** Agnosias, which are usually associated with brain lesions, are deficits of form and pattern perception. They cause afflicted people to be insufficiently able to recognize objects that are in their visual fields, despite normal sensory abilities. People who suffer from visual-object agnosia can sense all parts of the visual field. But the objects they see do not mean anything to them. Individuals with simultagnosia are unable to pay attention to more than one object at a time. People with spatial agnosia have severe difficulty in comprehending and handling the relationship between their bodies and the spatial configurations of the world around them. People with prosopagnosia have severe impairment in their ability to recognize human faces, including their own. These deficits lead to the question of whether specific perceptual processes are modular—specialized for particular tasks. Color blindness is another type of perceptual deficit.
Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

1. Briefly describe each of the monocular and binocular depth cues listed in this chapter.
2. Describe bottom-up and top-down approaches to perception.
3. How might deficits of perception, such as agnosia, offer insight into normal perceptual processes?
4. Compare and contrast the Gestalt approach to form perception and the theory of direct perception.

5. Design a demonstration that would illustrate the phenomenon of perceptual constancy.
6. Design an experiment to test the feature-matching theory.
7. To what extent does perception involve learning? Why?

Key Terms

- agnosia, p. 128
- amacrine cells, p. 93
- binocular depth cues, p. 125
- bipolar cells, p. 94
- bottom-up theories, p. 96
- cones, p. 95
- constructive perception, p. 107
- context effects, p. 109
- depth, p. 124
- direct perception, p. 97
- feature-matching theories, p. 101
- figure-ground, p. 114
- fovea, p. 93
- ganglion cells, p. 93
- Gestalt approach to form perception, p. 113
- horizontal cells, p. 93
- landmark-centered, p. 112
- law of Prägnanz, p. 113
- monocular depth cues, p. 124
- object-centered representation, p. 111
- optic ataxia, p. 130
- optic nerve, p. 93
- percept, p. 90
- perception, p. 85
- perceptual constancy, p. 121
- photopigments, p. 94
- photoreceptors, p. 94
- recognition-by-components (RBC) theory, p. 106
- retina, p. 93
- rods, p. 94
- templates, p. 99
- top-down theories, p. 96
- viewer-centered representation, p. 111

Media Resources

Visit the companion website—www.cengagebrain.com—for quizzes, research articles, chapter outlines, and more.

CogLab

Explore CogLab by going to http://coglab.wadsworth.com. To learn more, examine the following experiments:
- Mapping the Blind Spot
- Receptive Fields
- Apparent Motion
- Metacontrast Masking
- Müller-Lyer Illusion
- Signal Detection
- Visual Search
- Lexical Decision
Attention and Consciousness

CHAPTER OUTLINE

The Nature of Attention and Consciousness

Attention
- Attending to Signals over the Short and Long Terms
- Signal Detection: Finding Important Stimuli in a Crowd
- Vigilance: Waiting to Detect a Signal
- Search: Actively Looking
  - Feature-Integration Theory
  - Similarity Theory
  - Guided Search Theory
  - Neuroscience: Aging and Visual Search

Selective Attention
- What Is Selective Attention?
- Theories of Selective Attention
- Neuroscience and Selective Attention

Divided Attention
- Investigating Divided Attention in the Lab
- Theories of Divided Attention
- Divided Attention in Everyday Life

Factors That Influence Our Ability to Pay Attention
- Neuroscience and Attention: A Network Model
- Intelligence and Attention
  - Inspection Time
  - Reaction Time

When Our Attention Fails Us
- Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder (ADHD)

Change Blindness and Inattentional Blindness
- Spatial Neglect—One Half of the World Goes Amiss

Dealing with an Overwhelming World—Habituation and Adaptation

Automatic and Controlled Processes in Attention
- Automatic and Controlled Processes
- How Does Automatization Occur?
- Automatization in Everyday Life
- Mistakes We Make in Automatic Processes

Consciousness
- The Consciousness of Mental Processes
- Preconscious Processing
  - Studying the Preconscious—Priming
  - What’s That Word Again? The Tip-of-the-Tongue Phenomenon
  - When Blind People Can See

Key Themes

Summary

Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

Key Terms

Media Resources
Here are some of the questions we will explore in this chapter:

1. Can we actively process information even if we are not aware of doing so? If so, what do we do, and how do we do it?
2. What are some of the functions of attention?
3. What are some theories cognitive psychologists have developed to explain attentional processes?
4. What have cognitive psychologists learned about attention by studying the human brain?

BELIEVE IT OR NOT

**Does Paying Attention Enable You to Make Better Decisions?**

So you’ve got an important decision to make? People are usually taught to deliberate carefully upon the more complex decisions in their lives. Sometimes, however, unconsciously made decisions can be better than carefully deliberated ones.

Ap Dijksterhuis and colleagues (2006) conducted experiments in which participants had to choose the best from four cars and other objects like toothpaste. The complexity of the decision depended on the number of important attributes that described the object. Participants were best able to make a simple decision, like the one for toothpaste (which was based on two attributes), when they deliberated about their choices. However, when participants had to choose the best of four cars (described by 12 attributes each), they fared much better when they were not given the chance consciously to think about their choices.

Conscious choices can be flawed because we do not have unlimited mental capacity. At some point, we have to cut down on the amount of information we will consider. Also, when consciously thinking about alternatives, we sometimes attach more importance to less relevant attributes, which can lead to suboptimal choices. So next time you have a complex decision to make, it may be best to just sit back, relax, and let the decision come to you. This chapter introduces you to attention and consciousness and how cognitive psychologists approach them (See also the description of the work of Gerd Gigerenzer on fast and frugal heuristics in Chapter 12).

Let’s examine what it means to pay attention in an everyday situation. Imagine driving in rush hour, near a major sports stadium where an event is about to start. The streets are filled with cars, some of them honking. At some intersections the police are regulating the traffic, but not quite in synchrony with the traffic lights. This asynchronicity—with the traffic light signaling one thing and the police signaling another—divides your attention. Some cars are stranded in the middle of an intersection. Also, there are thousands of people streaming through the streets to attend the sports event. You need to pay close attention to the traffic light as well as the officer on the road, the cars passing by, and the pedestrians that might unexpectedly cross the street. What is it that lets us pay attention to so many different moving parts in traffic? What lets us shift attention if a pedestrian suddenly walks out into the street without notice? And why does our attention sometimes fail us, occasionally with drastic consequences such as a car accident? This chapter will explore our amazing capability to pay attention, divide our attention, and select stimuli to which to pay attention in detail.
The Nature of Attention and Consciousness

[Attention] is the taking possession of the mind, in clear and vivid form, of one out of what seem several simultaneously possible objects or trains of thoughts. … It implies withdrawal from some things in order to deal effectively with others.

—William James, Principles of Psychology

It can be difficult to clearly describe in words what we mean when we talk about attention (or any other psychological phenomenon). So what do we refer to exactly, when we talk about attention in this chapter? **Attention** is the means by which we actively process a limited amount of information from the enormous amount of information available through our senses, our stored memories, and our other cognitive processes (De Weerd, 2003a; Rao, 2003). It includes both conscious and unconscious processes. In many cases, conscious processes are relatively easy to study. Unconscious processes are harder to study, simply because you are not conscious of them (Jacoby, Lindsay, & Toth, 1992; Merikle, 2000). For example, you always have a wealth of information available to you that you are not even aware of until you retrieve that information from your memory or shift your attention toward it. You probably can remember where you slept when you were ten years old or where you ate your breakfasts when you were 12. At any given time, you also have available a dazzling array of sensory information to which you just do not attend. After all, if you attended to each and every detail of your environment, you would feel overwhelmed pretty fast (Figure 4.1). You also have very little reliable information about what happens when you sleep. Therefore, it is hard to study processes that are hidden somewhere in your unconsciousness, and of which you are not aware.

Attention allows us to use our limited mental resources judiciously. By dimming the lights on many stimuli from outside (sensations) and inside (thoughts and memories), we can highlight the stimuli that interest us. This heightened focus increases the likelihood that we can respond speedily and accurately to interesting stimuli.

---

**Figure 4.1** How Does Attention Work?

At any point in time, we perceive a lot of sensory information. Through attentional processes (which can be automatic or controlled), we filter out the information that is relevant to us and that we want to attend to. Eventually, this leads to our taking action on the basis of the information we attended to.
Heightened attention also paves the way for memory processes. We are more likely to remember information to which we paid attention than information we ignored.

At one time, psychologists believed that attention was the same thing as consciousness. Now, however, they acknowledge that some active attentional processing of sensory and of remembered information proceeds without our conscious awareness (Bahrami et al., 2008; Shear, 1997). For example, writing your name requires little conscious awareness. You may write it while consciously engaged in other activities. In contrast, writing a name that you have never encountered requires attention to the sequence of letters.

Consciousness includes both the feeling of awareness and the content of awareness, some of which may be under the focus of attention (Bourguignon, 2000; Farthing, 1992, 2000; Taylor, 2002). Therefore, attention and consciousness form two partially overlapping sets (Srinivasan, 2008; DiGirolamo & Griffin, 2003).

Conscious attention serves three purposes in playing a causal role for cognition. First, it helps in monitoring our interactions with the environment. Through such monitoring, we maintain our awareness of how well we are adapting to the situation in which we find ourselves. Second, it assists us in linking our past (memories) and our present (sensations) to give us a sense of continuity of experience. Such continuity may even serve as the basis for personal identity. Third, it helps us in controlling and planning for our future actions. We can do so based on the information from monitoring and from the links between past memories and present sensations.

In this chapter, we will first explore different kinds of attention like vigilance, search, selective attention, and divided attention. Afterward, we will consider what happens when our attention does not work properly, and what strategies we use in order not to get overwhelmed in a world that is full of sensory stimuli. Then, we will explore the nature of automatic processes, which help humans to make the best use of their attentional resources. Last but not least, we will consider the topic of consciousness in more detail.

Attention

In this section, we will explore the four main functions of attention as well as theories to explain them (see also Table 4.1):

Here are the four main functions of attention:

1. **Signal detection and vigilance:** We try to detect the appearance of a particular stimulus. Air traffic controllers, for example, keep an eye on all traffic near and over the airport.
2. **Search:** We try to find a signal amidst distracters, for example, when we are looking for our lost cell phone on an autumn leaf-filled hiking path.
3. **Selective attention:** We choose to attend to some stimuli and ignore others, as when we are involved in a conversation at a party.
4. **Divided attention:** We prudently allocate our available attentional resources to coordinate our performance of more than one task at a time, as when we are cooking and engaged in a phone conversation at the same time.

We will also have a look at a number of neuroscientific studies and explanatory models. Lastly, we will turn our attention to situations and conditions when our attention fails us.
### Table 4.1  Four Main Functions of Attention

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Signal detection and vigilance</td>
<td>On many occasions, we vigilantly try to detect whether we did or did not sense a signal—a particular target stimulus of interest. Through vigilant attention to detecting signals, we are primed to take speedy action when we do detect signal stimuli.</td>
<td>In a research submarine, we may watch for unusual sonar blips; on a dark street, we may try to detect unwelcome sights or sounds; or following an earthquake, we may be wary of the smell of leaking gas or of smoke.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>We often engage in an active search for particular stimuli.</td>
<td>If we detect smoke (as a result of our vigilance), we may engage in an active search for the source of the smoke. In addition, some of us are often in search of missing keys, sunglasses, and other objects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective attention</td>
<td>We constantly are making choices regarding the stimuli to which we will pay attention and the stimuli that we will ignore. By ignoring or at least deemphasizing some stimuli, we thereby highlight particularly salient stimuli. The concentrated focus of attention on particular informational stimuli enhances our ability to manipulate those stimuli for other cognitive processes, such as verbal comprehension or problem solving.</td>
<td>We may pay attention to reading a textbook or to listening to a lecture while ignoring such stimuli as a nearby radio or television or late-comers to the lecture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Divided attention</td>
<td>We often manage to engage in more than one task at a time, and we shift our attentional resources to allocate them prudently, as needed.</td>
<td>Experienced drivers easily can talk while driving under most circumstances, but if another vehicle seems to be swerving toward their car, they quickly switch all their attention away from talking and toward driving.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Attending to Signals over the Short and Long Terms**

Have you ever spent a hot summer day at an overcrowded beach? People are lying side by side on the sand, lined up like sardines in a tin. And though a trip to the water might bring some relief from the heat, it does not provide any relief from the crowding on the beach—people are standing thronged in the water with little space to move unless you move out considerably further into the water. The lifeguards on duty have to be constantly monitoring the crowds in the water to detect anything that seems unusual. In this way, they can act fast enough in case there is an emergency. In the short term, they have to detect a crucial stimulus among the mass of stimuli on the beach (signal detection), for example, making sure no one is drowning; but they also have to maintain their attention over a long period of time (vigilance) to make sure nothing is amiss during their entire working period. What factors contribute to their ability to detect events that might be emergencies? How do they search the beaches and shorelines to detect important stimuli? Understanding this function of attention has immediate practical importance. Occupations requiring vigilance include those involving communications and warning systems and quality control, as well as the work of police detectives, physicians. Also, research psychologists must search out from among a diverse array of items those that are
more important. In each of these settings, people must remain alert to detect the appearance of a stimulus. But each setting also involves the presence of distracters, as well as prolonged periods during which the stimulus is absent. In the following sections, we will first explore how people detect a target stimulus out of a wealth of stimuli (i.e., how they detect signals). Once we know how people discriminate between target signals and distracters, we will turn to the maintenance of attention over a prolonged period of time (vigilance) in order to detect important stimuli.

**Signal Detection: Finding Important Stimuli in a Crowd**

*Signal-detection theory* (SDT) is a framework to explain how people pick out the few important stimuli when they are embedded in a wealth of irrelevant, distracting stimuli. SDT often is used to measure sensitivity to a target’s presence. When we try to detect a target stimulus (signal), there are four possible outcomes (Table 4.2). Let’s stay with our example of the lifeguard. First, in *hits* (also called “true positives”), the lifeguard correctly identifies the presence of a target (i.e., somebody drowning). Second, in *false alarms* (also called “false positives”), he or she incorrectly identifies the presence of a target that is actually absent (i.e., the lifeguard thinks somebody is drowning who actually isn’t). Third, in *misses* (also called “false negatives”), the lifeguard fails to observe the presence of a target (i.e., the lifeguard does not see the drowning person). Fourth, in *correct rejections* (also called “true negatives”), the lifeguard correctly identifies the absence of a target (i.e., nobody is drowning, and he or she knows that nobody is in trouble).
Usually, the presence of a target is difficult to detect. Thus, we make detection judgments based on inconclusive information with some criteria for target detections. The number of hits is influenced by where you place your criteria for considering something a hit. In other words, how willing are you to make false alarms? For example, in the case of the lifeguard, the consequences of a miss are so grave that the lifeguard lowers the criteria for considering something as a hit. In this way, he or she increases the number of false alarms to boost hits (correct detections).

This trade-off often occurs with medical diagnoses as well. For example, it might occur with highly sensitive screening tests where positive results lead to further tests. Thus, overall sensitivity to targets must reflect a flexible criterion for declaring the detection of a signal. If the criterion for detection is too high, then the doctor will miss illnesses (misses). If the criterion is too low, the doctor will falsely detect illnesses that do not exist (false alarms). Sensitivity is measured in terms of hits minus false alarms.

Signal-detection theory can be discussed in the context of attention, perception, or memory:

- attention—paying enough attention to perceive objects that are there;
- perception—perceiving faint signals that may or may not be beyond your perceptual range (such as a very high-pitched tone);
- memory—indicating whether you have/have not been exposed to a stimulus before, such as whether the word “champagne” appeared on a list that was to be memorized.

Disturbingly, on September 11, 2001, when terrorists crashed two airliners into the Twin Towers in New York City, the 9/11 hijackers were screened at airports as they prepared to board their flights. Several of them were pulled aside because they set off metal detectors. After further screening, they were allowed onto their planes anyway, even though they were carrying box cutters. The results of what constituted a “miss” for the screeners were disastrous. As a result of this fiasco, the rules for screening were tightened up considerably. But the tightening of rules created many false alarms. Babies, grandmothers, and other relatively low-risk passengers started to get second and sometimes even third screenings. So the rules were modified to profile passengers by computer. For example, those who bought one-way tickets or changed their flight plans at the last moment became more likely to be subjected to extra screening. This procedure, in turn, has inconvenienced those travelers who

---

**Table 4.2  Signal Detection Matrix Used in Signal-Detection Theory**

Signal-detection theory was one of the first theories to suggest an interaction between the physical sensation of a stimulus and cognitive processes such as decision making. Think about the work of airport screeners. They need to be capable of perceiving objects like a box cutter in hand-carried luggage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Detect a Signal</th>
<th>Do Not Detect a Signal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Hit</td>
<td>Miss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The screener recognizes a box cutter in the luggage.</td>
<td>The screener fails to see the box cutter in the luggage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absent</td>
<td>False alarm</td>
<td>Correct rejection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The screener thinks there is a box cutter in the luggage when there is none.</td>
<td>The screener recognizes that there is no box cutter in the luggage, and there is indeed none.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
need to change their travel plans frequently, such as business travelers. The system for screening passengers is constantly evolving in order to minimize both misses and false alarms.

**Vigilance: Waiting to Detect a Signal**

When you have to pay attention in order to detect a stimulus that can occur at any time over a long period of time, you need to be vigilant.

**What is Vigilance?** Vigilance refers to a person’s ability to attend to a field of stimulation over a prolonged period, during which the person seeks to detect the appearance of a particular target stimulus of interest. When being vigilant, the individual watchfully waits to detect a signal stimulus that may appear at an unknown time. Typically, vigilance is needed in settings where a given stimulus occurs only rarely but requires immediate attention as soon as it does occur. Military officers watching for a sneak attack are engaged in a high-stakes vigilance task.

In an early study, participants watched a visual display that looked like the face of a clock (Mackworth, 1948). A clock hand moved in continuous steps except that sometimes it would take a double step, which needed to be detected by the participants. Participants’ performance began to deteriorate substantially after just half an hour of observation (see MacLean et al., 2009, for a more recent study). To relate these findings to SDT, over time it appears that participants become less willing to risk reporting false alarms. They err instead by failing to report the presence of the signal stimulus when they are not sure they detect it, showing higher rates of misses. Training can help to increase vigilance, but to counteract fatigue, nothing but taking a break really helps much (Fisk & Schneider, 1981).

In vigilance tasks, expectations regarding stimulus location strongly affect response efficiency (LaBerge, Carter, & Brown, 1992; Motter, 1999). Thus, a busy lifeguard or air-traffic controller may respond quickly to a signal within a narrow radius of where a signal is expected to appear. But signals appearing outside the concentrated range of vigilant attention may not be detected as quickly or as accurately. However, the abrupt onset of a stimulus (i.e., the sudden appearance of a stimulus) captures our attention (Yantis, 1993). Thus, we seem to be predisposed to notice the sudden appearance of stimuli in our visual field. We might speculate about the adaptive advantage this feature of attention may have offered to our ancestral hunter-gatherer forebears. They presumably needed to avoid predators and had to catch prey.

Vigilance is extremely important during scans at airports in detecting abandoned bags or suspect items that may pose a security risk. Medical workers interpreting results like MRI scans or X-rays need to be vigilant as well, watching for any abnormalities in the results they are interpreting, even if they are very small. The costs of failure of vigilance, in today’s world, can be great loss of life as well as of property.

**Neuroscience and Vigilance** Increased vigilance is seen in cases where emotional stimuli are used (e.g., when somebody is confronted with a threatening stimulus). The amygdala plays a pivotal role in the recognition of emotional stimuli. Thus, the amygdala appears to be an important brain structure in the regulation of vigilance (Phelps, 2004, 2006; van Marle et al., 2009). The thalamus is involved in vigilance as well. Two specific activation states play a role in vigilance: bursts and the tonic state. A burst is the result of relative hyperpolarization of the resting membrane potential (i.e., polarity of the membrane increases relative to its surrounding), and a tonic state results from relative depolarization. During sleep, when people are less
responsive to stimuli, the neurons are hyperpolarized and in burst mode higher levels of vigilance are associated with tonic discharges. Also, the less vigilance a person displays, the more low-frequency activity and smaller event-related potentials can be detected through EEG measurement (Llinas & Steriade, 2006; Oken et al., 2006).

**Search: Actively Looking**

Have you ever picked up your parents or friends at a crowded airport and tried to locate them among the masses of people streaming out of the terminals? Search involves actively and often skillfully seeking out a target (Cisler et al., 2007; Posner & DiGirolamo, 1998). Specifically, *search* refers to a scan of the environment for particular features—actively looking for something when you are not sure where it will appear. As with vigilance, when we are searching for something, we may respond by making false alarms. The police actively search an area where a crime like a bank robbery has occurred, trying to find the robbers before they can escape. Search is made more difficult by *distracters*, nontarget stimuli that divert our attention away from the target stimulus. In the case of search, false alarms usually arise when we encounter such distracters while searching for the target stimulus. For instance, consider searching for a product in the grocery store. We often see several distracting items that look something like the item we hope to find. Package designers take advantage of the effectiveness of distracters when creating packaging for products. For example, if a container looks like a box of Cheerios, you may pick it up without realizing that it's really Tastee-O’s.

The number of targets and distracters affects the difficulty of the task. This is illustrated in Figure 4.2. Try to find the T in panel (a). Then try to find the T in panel (b) of Figure 4.2. *Display size* is the number of items in a given visual array. (It does not refer to the size of the items or even the size of the field on which the array is displayed.) The display-size effect is the degree to which the number of items in

**Figure 4.2 Display Size.**

Compare the relative difficulty in finding the T in panels (a) and (b). The display size affects your ease of performing the task.
a display hinders (slows down) the search process. When studying visual-search phenomena, investigators often manipulate the display size. They then observe how various contributing factors increase or decrease the display-size effect.

Distracters cause more trouble under some conditions than under others. Suppose we look for an item with a distinct feature like color or shape. We conduct a **feature search**, in which we simply scan the environment for that feature (Treisman, 1993; Weidner & Mueller, 2009). Distracters play little role in slowing our search in that case. For example, try to find the O in panel (c) of Figure 4.3. The O has a distinctive form as compared with the L distracters in the display. The O thus seems to pop out of the display. Featural singletons, which are items with distinctive features, stand out in the display (Yantis, 1993). When featural singletons are targets, they seem to grab our attention. Unfortunately, any featural singletons grab our attention. This includes featural singletons that are distracters that can distract us from finding the target (Navalpakkam & Itti, 2007). For example, find the T in panel (d) of Figure 4.3. The T is a featural singleton. But the presence of the black (filled) circle probably slows you down in your search.

A problem arises, however, when the target stimulus has no unique or even distinctive features, like a particular boxed or canned item in a grocery aisle. In these situations, the only way we can find it is to conduct a conjunction search (Treisman, 1991). In a **conjunction search**, we look for a particular combination (conjunction—joining together) of features. For example, the only difference between a T and an L is the particular integration (conjunction) of the line segments. The difference is not a property of any single distinctive feature of either letter. Both letters comprise a horizontal line and a vertical line. So a search looking for either of these features would provide no distinguishing information. In panels (a) and (b), you had to perform a conjunction search to find the T. So it probably took you longer to find it than to find the O in panel (c). The dorsolateral prefrontal cortex as well as both

![Figure 4.3](image-url) **Figure 4.3 Feature Search.**

In panel (c), find the O, and in panel (d), find the T.
frontal eye fields and the posterior parietal cortex play a role only in conjunction searches, but not so in feature searches (Kalla et al., 2009).

In the following section, we explore three theories that try to explain search processes. These theories have developed in a dialectical way as responses to each other: feature-integration theory, similarity theory, and guided search theory.

**Feature-Integration Theory**

*Feature-integration theory* explains the relative ease of conducting feature searches and the relative difficulty of conducting conjunction searches. Consider Treisman's (1986) model of how our minds conduct visual searches. For each possible feature of a stimulus, each of us has a mental map for representing the given feature across the visual field. For example, there is a map for every color, size, shape, or orientation (e.g., p, q, b, d) of each stimulus in our visual field. For every stimulus, the features are represented in the feature maps immediately. There is no added time required for additional cognitive processing. Thus, during feature searches, we monitor the relevant feature map for the presence of any activation anywhere in the visual field. This monitoring process can be done in parallel (all at once). It therefore shows no display-size effects. However, during conjunction searches, an additional stage of processing is needed. During this stage, we must use our attentional resources as a sort of mental “glue.” This additional stage conjoins two or more features into an object representation at a particular location. In this stage, we can conjoin the features only one object at a time. This stage must be carried out sequentially, conjoining each object one by one. Effects of display size (i.e., a larger number of objects with features to be conjoined) therefore appear.

There is some neuropsychological support for Treisman's model. For example, Nobel laureates David Hubel and Torsten Wiesel (1979) identified specific neural feature detectors. These are cortical neurons that respond differentially to visual stimuli of particular orientations (e.g., vertical, horizontal, or diagonal). More recent research has indicated that the best search strategy is not for the brain to increase the activity of neurons that respond to the particular target stimuli; in fact, the brain seems to use the more nearly optimal strategy of activating neurons that best distinguish between the target and distracters while at the same time ignoring the neurons that are tuned best to the target (Navalpakkam & Itti, 2007; Pouget & Bavelier, 2007).

**Similarity Theory**

Not everyone agrees with Treisman's model, however. According to *similarity theory*, Treisman's data can be reinterpreted. In this view, the data are a result of the fact that as the similarity between target and distracter stimuli increases, so does the difficulty in detecting the target stimuli (Duncan & Humphreys, 1992; Watson et al., 2007). Thus, targets that are highly similar to distracters are relatively hard to detect. Targets that are highly disparate from distracters are relatively easy to detect. For example, try to find the black (filled) circle in Figure 4.4, panel (e). The target is highly similar to the distracters (black squares or white circles). Therefore it is very difficult to find. Furthermore, the difficulty of search tasks depends on the degree of disparity among the distracters. But it does not depend on the number of features to be integrated. For instance, one reason that it is easier to read long strings of text written in lowercase letters than text written in capital letters is that capital letters tend to be more similar to one another in appearance. Lowercase letters, in contrast, have more
distinguishing features. Try to find the capital letter R in panels (f) and (g) of Figure 4.5 to get an idea of how highly dissimilar distracters impede visual search.

**Guided Search Theory**

In response to these and other findings, investigators have proposed an alternative to Treisman’s model. They call it **guided search** (Cave & Wolfe, 1990; Wolfe, 2007). The guided-search model suggests that all searches, whether feature searches or...
conjunction searches, involve two consecutive stages. The first is a parallel stage: the individual simultaneously activates a mental representation of all the potential targets. The representation is based on the simultaneous activation of each of the features of the target. In a subsequent serial stage, the individual sequentially evaluates each of the activated elements, according to the degree of activation. Then, the person chooses the true targets from the activated elements. According to this model, the activation process of the parallel initial stage helps to guide the evaluation and selection process of the serial second stage of the search.

Let’s see how guided search might work. Look at panel (h) of Figure 4.6. Try to find the black circle. The parallel stage will activate a mental map that contains all the features of the target (circle, black). Thus, black circles, white circles, and black squares will be activated. During the serial stage, you first will evaluate the black circle, which was highly activated. But then you will evaluate the black squares and the white circles, which were less highly activated. You then will dismiss them as distracters.

**Neuroscience: Aging and Visual Search**

An interesting study investigated the effect of aging on visual search capabilities (Madden et al., 2002; Madden, 2007). The researchers had two groups of participants—one in their 20s and one between 60 and 77 years of age—conduct a variety of visual searches of various difficulties for a black upright L: a feature search, where participants had to find the black upright L between white, partly rotated Ls; a guided search, where the target had to be found in between white Ls as well as three black Ls of various rotation; and a conjunction search where the black L had to be found in between a variety of rotated Ls that were either black or white (Figure 4.7).

Younger adults’ searches were more accurate and faster than the searches of the older adults. Also, participants were slower by approximately 300 milliseconds when doing guided searches as compared with feature searches. Older adults’ cortical
volume was lower than that of the younger adults, which is consistent with an approximate decline in volume of 2% per decade. The most difficult search (conjunction search) led to activation in the dorsal and ventral visual pathways as well as the prefrontal cortex in both young and older adults. Although there was less activation in the right occipital cortex in older adults, the activation was about the same in both age groups in the prefrontal and superior parietal regions. The more difficult a search task was, the more the occipito-temporal cortex was activated in younger adults but not in older adults. The older adults seem to have this brain region activated at a higher level even during easier search tasks, apparently trying to compensate for the age-related decline; but they did not recruit other brain regions outside the visual pathways to compensate for age-related decline.

**Selective Attention**

We explored the first two functions of attention—signal detection and search. Now, let’s examine another function of attention—selective attention.

**What Is Selective Attention?**

Suppose you are at a dinner party. It is just your luck that you are sitting next to a salesman. He sells 110 brands of vacuum cleaners. He describes to you in excruciating detail the relative merits of each brand. As you are listening to this blatherer, who happens to be on your right, you become aware of the conversation of the two diners sitting on your left. Their exchange is much more interesting. It contains juicy information you had not known about one of your acquaintances. You find yourself trying to keep up the semblance of a conversation with the blabbermouth on your right, but you are also tuning in to the dialogue on your left.

Colin Cherry (1953, see also Bee & Micheyl, 2008) referred to this phenomenon as the **cocktail party problem**, the process of tracking one conversation in the face of the distraction of other conversations. He observed that cocktail parties are often settings in which selective attention is salient. Cherry did not actually hang out at numerous cocktail parties to study conversations. He studied selective attention in a more carefully controlled experimental setting. He devised a task known as shadowing.
In shadowing, you listen to two different messages. Cherry presented a separate message to each ear, known as dichotic presentation. Figure 4.8 illustrates how these listening tasks might be presented. You are required to repeat back only one of the messages as soon as possible after you hear it. In other words, you are to follow one message (think of a detective “shadowing” a suspect) but ignore the other.

Cherry’s participants were quite successful in shadowing distinct messages in dichotic-listening tasks, although such shadowing required a significant amount of concentration. The participants were also able to notice physical, sensory changes in the unattended message—for example, when the message was changed to a tone or the voice changed from a male to a female speaker. However, they did not notice semantic changes in the unattended message. They failed to notice even when the unattended message shifted from English to German or was played backward. Conversely, about one third of people, when their name is presented during these situations, will switch their attention to their name. Some researchers have noted that those who hear their name in the unattended message tend to have limited working-memory capacity. As a result, they are easily distracted (Conway, Cowan, & Bunting, 2001). Infants will also shift their attention to one of two messages if their name is said (Newman, 2005).

Think of being in a noisy restaurant. Three factors help you to selectively attend only to the message of the target speaker to whom you wish to listen:

1. Distinctive sensory characteristics of the target’s speech. Examples of such characteristics are high versus low pitch, pacing, and rhythmicity.
2. Sound intensity (loudness).
3. Location of the sound source (Brungard & Simpson, 2007).

Attending to the physical properties of the target speaker’s voice has its advantages. You can avoid being distracted by the semantic content of messages from non-target speakers in the area. Clearly, the sound intensity of the target also helps. In addition, you probably turn one ear toward and the other ear away from the target speaker. Note that this method offers no greater total sound intensity. The reason is that with one ear closer to the speaker, the other is farther away. The key advantage

**Figure 4.8  Dichotic Presentation.**
In dichotic presentation, each ear is presented a separate message.
is the difference in volume. It allows you to locate the source of the target sound. Recent psychophysical studies have found, however, that spatial cues are less important than factors like how harmonious and rhythmic the target sounds (Darwin, 2008; Muente et al., 2010).

Theories of Selective Attention

In the following section, we will discuss several theories of selective attention. Note how dialectical processes influenced the development of subsequent theories. The theories described here belong to the group of filter and bottleneck theories. A filter blocks some of the information going through and thereby selects only a part of the total of information to pass through to the next stage. A bottleneck slows down information passing through. The models differ in two ways. First, do they have a distinct “filter” for incoming information? Second, if they do, where in the processing of information does the filter occur (early or late)?

Broadbent’s Model  According to one of the earliest theories of attention, we filter information right after we notice it at the sensory level (Broadbent, 1958; Figure 4.9). Multiple channels of sensory input reach an attentional filter. Those channels can be distinguished by their characteristics like loudness, pitch, or accent. The filter permits only one channel of sensory information to proceed and reach the processes of perception. We thereby assign meaning to our sensations. Other stimuli

![Diagram of Broadbent and Treisman’s Models of Attention](image-url)

**Figure 4.9** Broadbent and Treisman’s Models of Attention.

Various mechanisms have been proposed suggesting a means by which incoming sensory information passes through the attentional system to reach high-level perceptual processes.
will be filtered out at the sensory level and may never reach the level of perception. Broadbent’s theory was supported by Colin Cherry’s findings that sensory information sometimes may be noticed by an unattended ear if it does not have to be processed elaborately (e.g., you may notice that the voice in your unattended ear switches to a tone). But information requiring higher perceptual processes is not noticed if not attended to (e.g., you would likely not notice that the language in your unattended ear switches from English to German).

**Selective Filter Model** Not long after Broadbent’s theory, evidence began to suggest that Broadbent’s model must be wrong (e.g., Gray & Wedderburn, 1960). Moray found that even when participants ignore most other high-level (e.g., semantic) aspects of an unattended message, they frequently still recognize their names in an unattended ear (Moray, 1959; Wood & Cowan, 1995). He suggested that the reason for this effect is that messages that are of high importance to a person may break through the filter of selective attention (e.g., Koivisto & Revonsuo, 2007; Marsh et al., 2007). But other messages may not. To modify Broadbent’s metaphor, one could say that, according to Moray, the selective filter blocks out most information at the sensory level. But some personally important messages are so powerful that they burst through the filtering mechanism.

**Attenuation Model** To explore why some unattended messages pass through the filter, Anne Treisman conducted some experiments. She had participants shadowing coherent messages, and at some point switched the remainder of the coherent message from the attended to the unattended ear. Participants picked up the first few words of the message they had been shadowing in the unattended ear (Treisman, 1960), so they must have been somehow processing the content of the unattended message. Moreover, if the unattended message was identical to the attended one, all participants noticed it. They noticed even if one of the messages was slightly out of temporal synchronization with the other (Treisman, 1964a, 1964b). Treisman also observed that some fluently bilingual participants noticed the identity of messages if the unattended message was a translated version of the attended one.

Moray’s modification of Broadbent’s filtering mechanism was clearly not sufficient to explain Treisman’s (1960, 1964a, 1964b) findings. Her findings suggested that at least some information about unattended signals is being analyzed. Treisman proposed a theory of selective attention that involves a later filtering mechanism (Figure 4.9). Instead of blocking stimuli out, the filter merely weakens (attenuates) the strength of

---

**INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY**

**Attenuation Model**

Get two friends to help you with this experiment. Ask one friend to read something very softly into your other friend’s ear (it can be anything—a joke, a greeting card, or a cognitive psychology textbook), and have your other friend try to “shadow” what the other friend is saying. (Shadowing is repeating all the words that another person is saying.) In your friend’s other ear, say “animal” very softly. Later, ask your friend what you said. Is your friend able to identify what you said? Probably not. Try this again, but this time say your friend’s name. Your friend will most likely be able to recall that you said his or her name. This finding demonstrates Treisman’s attenuation model.
stimuli other than the target stimulus. So when the stimuli reach us, we analyze them at a low level for target properties like loudness and pitch. You may listen for the voice of the person you are talking to in a noisy bar, for example. If the stimuli possess those target properties, we pass the signal on to the next stage; if they do not possess those target properties, we pass on a weakened version of the stimulus. In a next step, we perceptually analyze the meaning of the stimuli and their relevance to us, so that even a message from the unattended ear that is supposedly irrelevant can come into consciousness and influence our subsequent actions if it has some meaning for us.

Late-Filter Model Deutsch and Deutsch (1963; Norman, 1968) developed a model in which the location of the filter is even later (Figure 4.10). They suggested that stimuli are filtered out only after they have been analyzed for both their physical properties and their meaning. This later filtering would allow people to recognize information entering the unattended ear. For example, they might recognize the sound of their own names or a translation of attended input (for bilinguals). Note that proponents of both the early and the late-filtering mechanisms propose that there is an attentional bottleneck through which only a single source of information can pass. The two models differ only in terms of where they hypothesize the bottleneck to be positioned.

A Synthesis of Early-Filter and Late-Filter Models Both early and late selection theories have data to support them. So what is a researcher to do? In 1967, Ulric Neisser synthesized the early-filter and the late-filter models and proposed that there are two processes governing attention:

- **Preattentive processes**: These automatic processes are rapid and occur in parallel. They can be used to notice only physical sensory characteristics of the unattended message. But they do not discern meaning or relationships.
- **Attentive, controlled processes**: These processes occur later. They are executed serially and consume time and attentional resources, such as working memory. They also can be used to observe relationships among features. They serve to synthesize fragments into a mental representation of an object.
A two-step model could account for Cherry's, Moray's, and Treisman's data. The model also nicely incorporates aspects of Treisman's signal-attenuation theory and of her subsequent feature-integration theory. According to Treisman's theory, discrete processes for feature detection and for feature integration occur during searches. The feature-detection process may be linked to the former of the two processes (i.e., speedy, automatic processing). Her feature-integration process may be linked to the latter of the two processes (i.e., slower, controlled processing). Unfortunately, however, the two-step model does not do a good job of explaining the continuum of processes from fully automatic ones to fully controlled ones. Recall, for example, that fully controlled processes appear to be at least partially automatized (Spelke, Hirst, & Neisser, 1976). How does the two-process model explain the automatization of processes in divided-attention phenomena? For example, how can one read for comprehension while writing dictated, categorized words? We will discuss this in the section on divided attention.

Neuroscience and Selective Attention

As early as in the 1970s, researchers employed event-related potentials (ERPs) to study attention. A groundbreaking study was conducted by Hillyard and his colleagues (1973), when they exposed their participants to two streams of tones, one in each ear (the streams differed in pitch). The participants had to detect occasionally occurring target stimuli. When the target stimuli occurred in the attended ear, the first negative component of the ERP was larger than when the target occurred in the unattended ear. N1 is a negative wave that appears about 90 milliseconds after the onset of the target stimulus. The researchers hypothesized that the N1 wave was a result of the enhancement of the target stimulus. At the same time, there was a suppression of the other stimuli. This result is consistent with filter theories. Later studies (Woldorff & Hillyard, 1991) found an even earlier reaction to the target stimulus in the form of a positive wave that occurs about 20–50 milliseconds after the onset of a target. The wave originates in the Heschl's gyri, which are located in the auditory cortex (Woldorff et al., 1993). Studies still use these methods today to explore topics as diverse as the influence of mothers' socio-economic status on children's selective attention (Stevens et al., 2009). They have found that children of mothers with lower levels of education show reduced effects of selective attention on neural processing.

Similar effects also have been found for visual attention. If a target stimulus appears in an attended region of the visual field, the occipital P1 (a wave of positive polarity) is larger than when the target appears in an unattended region (Eason et al., 1969; Van Voorhis & Hillyard, 1977). The P1 effect also occurs when participants' attention is drawn to a particular location by a sensory cue, and the target subsequently appears in just that location. If the interval between the appearance of the cue and the target is very small, the P1 wave is enlarged and the reaction time is faster than for targets that appear with a significant delay after the cue. In fact, a delay between cue and target can even lead to a delay in reaction time and decreased size of P1 wave (Hopfinger & Mangun, 1998, 2001).

Divided Attention

Have you ever been driving with a friend and the two of you were engaged in an exciting conversation? Or have made dinner while on the phone with a friend? Anytime you are engaged in two or more tasks at the same time, your attention is divided between those tasks.
Investigating Divided Attention in the Lab

Early work in the area of divided attention had participants view a videotape in which the display of a basketball game was superimposed on the display of a hand-slapping game. Participants could successfully monitor one activity and ignore the other. However, they had great difficulty in monitoring both activities at once, even if the basketball game was viewed by one eye and the hand-slapping game was watched separately by the other eye (Neisser & Becklen, 1975).

Neisser and Becklen hypothesized that improvements in performance eventually would have occurred as a result of practice. They also hypothesized that the performance of multiple tasks was based on skill resulting from practice. They believed it not to be based on special cognitive mechanisms.

The following year, investigators used a dual-task paradigm to study divided attention during the simultaneous performance of two activities: reading short stories and writing down dictated words (Spelke, Hirst, & Neisser, 1976). The researchers would compare and contrast the response time (latency) and accuracy of performance in each of the three conditions. Of course, higher latencies mean slower responses. As expected, initial performance was quite poor for the two tasks when the tasks had to be performed at the same time. However, Spelke and her colleagues had their participants practice to perform these two tasks 5 days a week for many weeks (85 sessions in all). To the surprise of many, given enough practice, the participants’ performance improved on both tasks. They showed improvements in their speed of reading and accuracy of reading comprehension, as measured by comprehension tests. They also showed increases in their recognition memory for words they had written during dictation. Eventually, participants’ performance on both tasks reached the same levels that the participants previously had shown for each task alone.

When the dictated words were related in some way (e.g., they rhymed or formed a sentence), participants first did not notice the relationship. After repeated practice, however, the participants started to notice that the words were related to

*Failure of Divided Attention*
each other in various ways. They soon could perform both tasks at the same time without a loss in performance. Spelke and her colleagues suggested that these findings showed that controlled tasks can be automatized so that they consume fewer attentional resources. Furthermore, two discrete controlled tasks may be automatized to function together as a unit. The tasks do not, however, become fully automatic. For one thing, they continue to be intentional and conscious. For another, they involve relatively high levels of cognitive processing.

An entirely different approach to studying divided attention has focused on extremely simple tasks that require speedy responses. When people try to perform two overlapping speeded tasks, the responses for one or both tasks are almost always slower (Pashler, 1994). When a second task begins soon after the first task has started, speed of performance usually suffers. The slowing resulting from simultaneous engagement in speeded tasks, as mentioned earlier in the chapter, is the PRP (psychological refractory period) effect, also called attentional blink. Findings from PRP studies indicate that people can accommodate fairly easily perceptual processing of the physical properties of sensory stimuli while engaged in a second speeded task (Miller et al., 2009; Pashler, 1994). However, they cannot readily accomplish more than one cognitive task requiring them to choose a response, retrieve information from memory, or engage in various other cognitive operations. When both tasks require performance of any of these cognitive operations, one or both tasks will show the PRP effect.

How well people can divide their attention also has to do with their intelligence (Hunt & Lansman, 1982). For example, suppose that participants are asked to solve mathematical problems and simultaneously to listen for a tone and press a button as soon as they hear it. We can expect that they both would solve the math problems effectively and respond quickly to hearing the tone. According to Hunt and Lansman, more intelligent people are better able to timeshare between two tasks and to perform both effectively.

**Theories of Divided Attention**

In order to understand our ability to divide our attention, researchers have developed capacity models of attention. These models help to explain how we can perform more than one attention-demanding task at a time. They posit that people
have a fixed amount of attention that they can choose to allocate according to what
the task requires. There are two different kinds: One kind of model suggests that
there is one single pool of attentional resources that can be divided freely, and the
other model suggests that there are multiple sources of attention (McDowd, 2007).
Figure 4.11 shows examples of the two kinds of models. In panel (a), the system has
a single pool of resources that can be divided up, say, among multiple tasks (Kahne-
man, 1973).

It now appears that such a model represents an oversimplification. People are
much better at dividing their attention when competing tasks are in different
modalities. At least some attentional resources may be specific to the modality
(e.g., verbal or visual) in which a task is presented. For example, most people easily
can listen to music and concentrate on writing simultaneously. But it is harder to
listen to the news station and concentrate on writing at the same time. The reason
is that both are verbal tasks. The words from the news interfere with the words you
are thinking about. Similarly, two visual tasks are more likely to interfere with each
other than are a visual task coupled with an auditory one. Panel (b) of Figure 4.11
shows a model that allows for attentional resources to be specific to a given modality
(Navon & Gopher, 1979).

Attentional-resources theory has been criticized severely as overly broad and
vague (e.g., Navon, 1984; S. Yantis, personal communication, December 1994). In-
deed, it may not stand alone in explaining all aspects of attention, but it comple-
ments filter theories quite well. Filter and bottleneck theories of attention seem to
be more suitable metaphors for competing tasks that appear to be attentionally in-
compatible, like selective-attention tasks or simple divided-attention tasks.

Consider the psychological refractory period (PRP) effect, for example. To ob-
tain this effect, participants are asked to respond to stimuli once they appear, and if
a second stimulus follows a first one immediately, the second response is delayed. For
these kinds of tasks, it appears that processes requiring attention must be handled
Resource theory seems to be a better metaphor for explaining phenomena of divided attention (see Belief It or Not) on complex tasks. In these tasks, practice effects may be observed. According to this metaphor, as each of the complex tasks becomes increasingly automatized, performance of each task makes fewer demands on limited-capacity attentional resources. Additionally, for explaining search-related phenomena, theories specific to visual search (e.g., models proposing guided search [Cave & Wolfe, 1990; Wolfe, 2007] or similarity [Duncan & Humphreys, 1989]) seem to have stronger explanatory power than do filter or resource theories. However, these two kinds of theories are not altogether incompatible. Although the findings from research on visual search do not conflict with filter or resource theories, the task-specific theories more specifically describe the processes at work during visual search.

Divided Attention in Everyday Life
Divided attention plays an important role in our lives. How often are you engaged in more than one task at a time? Consider driving a car, for example. You need to be constantly aware of threats to your safety. Suppose you fail to select one such threat, such as a car that runs a red light and is headed directly toward you as you enter an intersection. The result is that you may become an innocent victim of a horrible car accident. Moreover, if you are unsuccessful in dividing your attention, you may cause an accident. Most automobile accidents are caused by failures in divided attention.

Some intriguing studies are based on our own set of everyday experiences. One widely used paradigm makes use of a simulation of the driving situation (Strayer & Johnston, 2001, see also Fisher & Pollatsek, 2007). Researchers had participants perform a tracking task. The participants had control of a joystick, which moved a cursor on a computer screen. The participants needed to keep the cursor in position on a moving target. At various times, the target would flash either green or red. If the color was green, the participants were to ignore the signal. If the color was red, however, the participants were to push a simulated brake. The simulated brake was a sequentially, as if passing one-by-one through an attentional bottleneck (Olivers & Meeter, 2008).

Believe It or Not
Are You Productive When You’re Multitasking?
You’re working on your term paper, you’re texting with your best friend, and are having a little snack while listening to some music in the background. And you think you’re productive? Researcher David Meyer and colleagues (2007) have found that working on more than one task at the same time not only makes you slower but also increases your chances of making mistakes. Your reaction time goes down by up to one second when you do two things at once. While this may not be so crucially important while you sit at your desk working, it can save or risk lives when you drive your car and text or make a call at the same time. However, even your learning capabilities are impaired. A study by Foerde and colleagues (2006) found that the formation of declarative memory (which is essential for successful learning) is hampered even by little distractions like a sound in the background. This is because when we perform complex tasks, we keep a lot of information activated in our memory. The required concentration can easily be broken by external disturbances. If you want to try out how well you can text and drive at the same time, here’s a little game for you:
button on the joystick. In one condition, participants only had to accomplish this one task. In another condition, participants were involved in a second task. This procedure created a dual-task situation. The participants either listened to a radio broadcast while doing the task or talked on a cell phone to an experimental confederate (a collaborator of the experimenter). Participants talked roughly half the time and also listened roughly half the time. Two different topics were used to ensure that the results were not a result of the topic of conversation.

As shown in Figure 4.12, the probability of a miss in the face of the red signal increased substantially in the cell-phone dual-task condition relative to the

![Figure 4.12](image-url)

**Figure 4.12** Dual-Task Performance During Driving.
Top panel: Dual-task performance significantly increased the probability of a miss in the cell-phone condition but not in the radio-control condition.
Bottom panel: Reaction time increased significantly for a dual task in the cell-phone condition but not in the radio-control condition.

single-task condition. Reaction times were also substantially slower in this condition than in the single-task condition. In contrast, there was no significant difference between probabilities of a miss in the single-task and radio dual-task condition, nor was there a significant difference in reaction time in this condition. Thus, use of cell phones appears to be substantially more risky than listening to the radio while driving (see also Charltona, 2009; Drews, 2008). So when you are driving, you are better off not using your cell phone.

There are also studies that analyze data from real-world incidents. A study of 2700 crashes in the state of Virginia between June and November of 2002 investigated causes of accidents (Warner, 2004). Here are some of the main factors that resulted in accidents, with the percentage of accidents for which each was responsible:

- rubbernecking (viewing accidents that have already occurred), 16%;
- driver fatigue, 12%;
- looking at scenery or landmarks, 10%;
- distractions caused by passengers or children, 9%;
- adjusting a radio, tape, or CD player, 7%; and
- cell phone use, 5%.

On an average, distractions occurring inside the vehicle accounted for 62% of the distractions reported. Distractions outside the vehicle accounted for 35%. The other 3% were of undetermined cause. The causes of accidents differed somewhat for rural versus urban areas. Accidents in rural areas were more likely to be due to driver fatigue, insects entering or striking the vehicle, or pet distractions. In urban areas, crashes were more likely to result from rubbernecking, traffic, or cell-phone use (Cohen & Graham, 2003; Figure 4.13).

As many as 21% of accidents and near-accidents involve at least one driver talking on a cell phone, although the conversation may or may not have been the cause of the accident (Seo & Torabi, 2004). Other research has indicated that, when time on task and driving conditions are controlled for, the effects of talking on a cell phone can be as detrimental as driving while intoxicated (Strayer, Drews, & Crouch, 2006). Still other research has found that, compared with people not on a cell phone, people talking on a cell phone exhibit more anger, through honking and facial expressions, when presented with a frustrating situation (McGarva, Ramsey, & Shear, 2006). Increased aggression has been linked with increased accidents (Deffenbacher et al., 2003). Therefore, it is likely that people who talk on the phone while driving are more prone to anger and, as a result, more accidents. These findings, combined with those on the effects of divided attention, help to explain why an increase in accidents is seen when cell phones are involved.

Factors That Influence Our Ability to Pay Attention

The existing theoretical models of attention may be too simplistic and mechanistic to explain the complexities of attention. There are many other variables that have an impact on our ability to concentrate and pay attention. Here are some of them:

- **Anxiety:** Being anxious, either by nature (trait-based anxiety) or by situation (state-based anxiety), places constraints on attention (Eysenck & Byrne, 1992; Reinholdt-Dunne et al., 2009).
Arousal: Your overall state of arousal affects attention as well. You may be tired, drowsy, or drugged, which may limit attention. Being excited sometimes enhances attention (MacLean et al., 2009).

Task difficulty: If you are working on a task that is very difficult or novel for you, you'll need more attentional resources than when you work on an easy or highly familiar task. Task difficulty particularly influences performance during divided attention.

Skills: The more practiced and skilled you are in performing a task, the more your attention is enhanced (Spelke, Hirst, & Neisser, 1976).

In sum, certain attentional processes occur outside our conscious awareness. Others are subject to conscious control. The psychological study of attention has included diverse phenomena, such as vigilance, search, selective attention, and divided attention during the simultaneous performance of multiple tasks. To explain this diversity of attentional phenomena, current theories emphasize that a filtering mechanism appears to govern some aspects of attention. Limited modality-specific attentional resources appear to influence other aspects of attention. Clearly, findings from cognitive research have yielded many insights into attention, but additional understanding also has been gained through the study of attentional processes in the brain.

**Neuroscience and Attention: A Network Model**

Imagine how hard it is to synthesize all those diverse studies investigating the full range of attentional processes in the brain. Is attention a function of the entire
brain, or is it a function of discrete attention-governing modules in the brain? According to Michael Posner, the attentional system in the brain “is neither a property of a single brain area nor of the entire brain” (Posner & Dehaene, 1994, p. 75). In 2007, Posner teamed up with Mary Rothbart and they conducted a review of neuroimaging studies in the area of attention to investigate whether the many diverse results of studies conducted pointed to a common direction. They found that what at first seemed like an unclear pattern of activation could be effectively organized into areas associated with the three subfunctions of attention: alerting, orienting, and executive attention. The researchers organized the findings to describe each of these functions in terms of the brain areas involved, the neurotransmitters that modulate the changes, and the results of dysfunction within this system.

**Alerting:** Alerting is defined as being prepared to attend to some incoming event, and maintaining this attention. Alerting also includes the process of getting to this state of preparedness. The brain areas involved in alerting are the right frontal and parietal cortices as well as the locus coeruleus. The neurotransmitter norepinephrine is involved in the maintenance of alertness. If the alerting system does not work properly, people develop symptoms of ADHD; in the process of regular aging, dysfunctions of the alerting system may develop as well.

**Orienting:** Orienting is defined as the selection of stimuli to attend to. This kind of attention is needed when we perform a visual search. You may be able to observe this process by means of a person’s eye movements, but sometimes attention is covert and cannot be observed from the outside. The orienting network develops during the first year of life. The brain areas involved in the orienting function are the superior parietal lobe, the temporal parietal junction, the frontal eye fields, and the superior colliculus. The modulating neurotransmitter for orienting is acetylcholine. Dysfunction within this system can be associated with autism.

**Executive Attention:** Executive attention includes processes for monitoring and resolving conflicts that arise among internal processes. These processes include thoughts, feelings, and responses. The brain areas involved in this final and highest order of attentional process are the anterior cingulate, lateral ventral, and prefrontal cortex as well as the basal ganglia. The neurotransmitter most involved in the executive attention process is dopamine. Dysfunction within this system is associated with Alzheimer’s disease, borderline personality disorder, and schizophrenia.

### Intelligence and Attention

Attention also plays a role in intelligence (Hunt, 2005; Stankov, 2005). One model of intelligence that takes attention into account is the Planning, Attention, and Simultaneous–Successive Process Model of Human Cognition (PASS; Das, Naglieri, & Kirby, 1994; see also Davidson & Kemp, 2010). Based on Luria’s (1973) theory of intelligence, it assumes that intelligence consists of an assortment of functional units that are the basis for specific actions (Naglieri & Kaufman, 2001). According to the PASS model, there are three distinct processing units and each is associated with specific areas of the brain: arousal and attention, simultaneous and successive processing, and planning (Das et al., 1994; Naglieri & Kaufman, 2001). The first unit, arousal and attention, is primarily attributed to the brainstem, diencephalon, and medial cortical regions of the brain. The researchers suggest that arousal is an essential antecedent to selective and divided attention.
Researchers have considered both the speed and the accuracy of information processing to be important factors in intelligence. Attention always plays a role because people must pay attention to a stimulus and then decide how to react to it. Let’s look at how attention influences processing time and accuracy of responses.

**Inspection Time**

*Inspection time* is the amount of time it takes you to inspect items and make a decision about them (Gregory, Nettelbeck & Wilson, 2009; Neubauer & Fink, 2005). Essentially, the task requires concentrated bursts of focused attention. Here is a typical way researchers measure inspection time: For each of a number of trials, a computer monitor displays a fixation cue (a dot in the area where a target figure will appear) for half a second. Then there is a short pause. Afterward, the computer presents the target stimulus—two lines of differing lengths joined by a vertical bar at the top—for a particular interval of time. Finally, the computer presents a visual mask (a stimulus that erases the trace in iconic memory). The task of the participant is to decide which of the two lines is longer. The answer is indicated by pressing a left-hand or right-hand button on a keypad. The key variable here is actually the length of time for the presentation of the target stimulus, not the speed of responding by pressing the button. The inspection time is the length of time for presentation of the target stimulus after which the participant still responds with at least 90% accuracy. Nettelbeck found that shorter inspection times correlate with higher scores on intelligence tests (e.g., various subscales of the Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale) among differing populations of participants (Nettelbeck, 1987; Williams et al., 2009).

**Reaction Time**

Some investigators have proposed that intelligence can be understood in terms of speed of neuronal conduction (e.g., Jensen, 1979, 1998). In other words, the smart person is someone whose neural circuits conduct information rapidly. When Arthur Jensen proposed this notion, direct measures of neural-conduction velocity were not readily available. So Jensen primarily studied a proposed proxy for measuring neural-processing speed. The proxy was *choice reaction time*—the time it takes to select one answer from among several possibilities. In such a task, one needs to attend in a focused and concentrated way on visual displays. Consider a typical choice-reaction-time paradigm.

The participant is seated in front of a set of lights on a board. When one of the lights flashes, he or she extinguishes it by pressing as rapidly as possible a button beneath the correct light. The experimenter would then measure the participant’s speed in performing this task.

Participants with higher IQs are faster than participants with lower IQs in their choice reaction time (CRT) (Jensen, 1982; Schmiedek et al., 2007). These findings may be a function of increased central nerve-conduction velocity, although at present this proposal remains speculative (Budak et al., 2005; Reed & Jensen, 1991, 1993; see also Rostad et al., 2007). Interestingly, a study has found even the speed of the patellar reflex (knee-jerk response) to be significantly correlated with intelligence, although this reflex does not necessitate any conscious thought (McRorie & Cooper, 2001).
When Our Attention Fails Us

The real importance of attention becomes clear in situations in which we cannot concentrate. Many studies involve normal participants. But cognitive neuropsychologists also have learned a great deal about attentional processes in the brain by studying people who do not show normal attentional processes, such as people who show specific attentional deficits and who are found to have either lesions or inadequate blood flow in key areas of the brain. Overall, attention deficits have been linked to lesions in the frontal lobe and in the basal ganglia (Lou, Henrichsen, & Bruhn, 1984); visual attentional deficits have been linked to the posterior parietal cortex and the thalamus, as well as to areas of the midbrain related to eye movements (Posner & Petersen, 1990; Posner et al., 1988). Work with split-brain patients (e.g., Ladavas et al., 1994; Luck et al., 1989) also has led to some interesting findings regarding attention and brain function, such as the observation that the right hemisphere seems to be dominant for maintaining alertness and that the attentional systems involved in visual search seem to be distinct from other aspects of visual attention.

In the following sections, we will consider two examples of failing attention: attention deficit hyperactivity disorder and change/inattentional blindness.

Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder (ADHD)

Most of us take for granted our ability to pay attention and to divide our attention in adaptive ways. But not everyone can do so. People with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) have difficulties in focusing their attention in ways that enable them to adapt in optimal ways to their environment (Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, 2009; see also Swanson et al., 2003).

The condition was first described by Dr. Heinrich Hoffman in 1845. Today, it has been widely investigated. No one knows for sure the cause of ADHD. It may be a partially heritable condition. There is some evidence of a link to maternal smoking and drinking of alcohol during pregnancy (Hausknecht et al., 2005; Obel et al., 2009; Rodriguez & Bohlin, 2005). Lead exposure on the part of the child may also be associated with ADHD. Brain injury is another possible cause, as are food additives—in particular, sugar and certain dyes (Cruz & Bahna, 2006; Nigg et al., 2008). There are noted differences in the frontal-subcortical cerebellar catecholaminergic circuits and in dopamine regulation in people with ADHD (Biederman & Faraone, 2005).

The three primary symptoms of ADHD are inattention, hyperactivity (i.e., levels of activity that exceed what is normally shown by children of a given age), and impulsiveness. There are three main types of ADHD, depending on which symptoms are predominant: (a) hyperactive-impulsive, (b) inattentive, and (c) a combination of hyperactive-impulsive and inattentive behavior. We will focus on the inattentive type here because it is most relevant to the topic of this chapter.

Children with the inattentive type of ADHD show several distinctive symptoms:

- They are easily distracted by irrelevant sights and sounds.
- They often fail to pay attention to details.
- They are susceptible to making careless mistakes in their work.
- They often fail to read instructions completely or carefully.
- They are susceptible to forgetting or losing things they need for tasks, such as pencils or books.
- They tend to jump from one incomplete task to another.
Studies have shown that children with ADHD exhibit slower and more variable reaction times than their siblings who are not affected by the disorder (Andreou, 2007). ADHD typically first displays itself during the preschool or early school years. It is estimated that about 5% of children worldwide have the disorder, though estimates range widely from less than 3% to more than 20% (Polanczyk & Jensen, 2008). The disorder does not typically end in adulthood, although it may vary in its severity, becoming either more or less severe. There is some evidence that the incidence of ADHD has increased in recent years. During the period from 2000 to 2005, the prevalence of medicinal treatment increased by more than 11% each year (Castle et al., 2007). The reasons for this increase are not clear. Various hypotheses have been put forward, including increased watching of fast-paced television shows, use of fast-paced video games, additives in foods, and increases in unknown toxins in the environment.

ADHD is most often treated with a combination of psychotherapy and drugs. Some of the drugs currently used to treat ADHD are Ritalin (methylphenidate), Metadate (methylphenidate), and Strattera (atomoxetine). This last drug differs from other drugs used to treat ADHD in that it is not a stimulant. Rather, it affects the neurotransmitter norepinephrine. The stimulants, in contrast, affect the neurotransmitter dopamine. Interestingly, in children, the rate of boys who are given medication for treatment of ADHD is more than double that of girls. However, in adults, the use of ADHD medication is approximately equal for both sexes (Castle et al., 2007). A number of studies have noted that, although medication is a useful tool in the treatment of ADHD, it is best used in combination with behavioral interventions (Corcoran & Dattalo, 2006; Rostain & Tamsay, 2006).
The theory of multiple intelligences (Gardner, 1985) has proven to be especially helpful in the treatment and support of children with ADHD. Gardner has suggested that intelligence comprises multiple independent constructs, not just a single, unitary construct. However, instead of speaking of multiple abilities that together constitute intelligence (e.g., Thurstone, 1938), this theory distinguishes eight distinct intelligences that are relatively independent of each other: linguistic, logical-mathematical, naturalist, interpersonal, intrapersonal, spatial, musical, and bodily-kinesthetic intelligences. Each intelligence is alleged to form a separate system of functioning, although these systems can interact to produce what we see as intelligent performance. By concentrating on the students’ abilities (or predominant intelligences) in educational interventions, the achievements of students with ADHD can be increased and their strengths can be emphasized (Davidson & Kemp, 2010; Schirduan & Case, 2004).

**Change Blindness and Inattentional Blindness**

Evolutionarily, our ability to spot predators as well as to detect food sources has been a great advantage for our survival. Adaptive behavior requires us to be attentive to changes in our environment because changes cue us to both opportunities and dangers. It thus may be surprising to discover that people can show remarkable levels of **change blindness**, an inability to detect changes in objects or scenes that are being viewed (Galpin et al., 2009; O’Regan, 2003). Closely related to change blindness is inattentional blindness, which is a phenomenon in which people are not able to see things that are actually there (Bressan & Pizzighello, 2008). You can find some examples for change blindness and inattentional blindness in Believe It or Not at the very beginning of Chapter 1. Change and inattentional blindness are of major importance in traffic situations or during medical screenings, for example, where an overlooked motorcycle or a mass in the body can have potentially fatal consequences. For more on change blindness, see Chapter 3.

**Spatial Neglect—One Half of the World Goes Amiss**

Imagine you are in a zoo with an acquaintance and you both look at the cages containing animals. Meanwhile, you are making comments to each other about the animals’ behavior. However, you soon notice that your friend is not aware of anything that is occurring in the left side of your visual fields. It is not only that he does not see the animals there; he is not even aware of their being there.

This condition is called **spatial neglect** or hemi-neglect. It is an attentional dysfunction in which participants ignore the half of their visual field that is contralateral to (on the opposite side of) the hemisphere of the brain that has a lesion. It is a result mainly of unilateral lesions in the parietal and frontal lobes, most often in the right hemisphere. One way to test for neglect is to give patients who are suspected of suffering from neglect a sheet of paper with a number of horizontal lines. Patients are then asked to bisect the lines precisely in the middle of each. Patients with lesions in the right hemisphere tend to bisect the lines to the right of the midline. Patients with lesions in the left hemisphere tend to bisect the lines to the left of the midline. The reason is that the former group of patients does not see all of the lines to the left, whereas the latter group does not see all of the lines to the right. Sometimes patients miss the lines altogether (i.e., patients who neglect the entire visual field). If patients are asked to copy little pictures they are presented with, they often draw only one side of the picture (Figure 4.14).
Interestingly, when patients are presented with stimuli only to their right or their left side, they often can perceive the stimuli, no matter which side they are on. This means that they have no major visual-field defects. However, when stimuli are present in both sides of the visual field, people with hemi-neglect suddenly ignore the stimuli that are contralateral to their lesion (i.e., if the lesion is in the right hemisphere, they neglect stimuli in the left visual field). This phenomenon is called “extinction.” The reason for extinction may be that patients are not able to disengage their attention from the stimulus in the ipsilateral field (the part of the visual field where the lesion is) in order then to shift their attention to the contralateral visual field. Their attention gets “stuck” on the ipsilateral object so that they cannot shift attention to stimuli that appear on the contralateral side. Fascinatingly, this finding holds true not only for people’s perceptions in the external world, but also for their memories.

In a 1977 study conducted by Bisiach and Luzzatti, participants with neglect were asked to describe the main square in their town. They described only one side of the square, although when asked to describe it from opposite ends they demonstrated that they knew how both sides of the square looked.

There is no full consensus regarding which part of the brain is responsible for the symptoms of neglect. Recent studies indicate that the posterior superior temporal gyrus, insula, and basal ganglia, as well as the superior longitudinal fasciculus in the parietal lobe are most likely connected with spatial neglect (Hillis, 2005, 2006; Karnath et al., 2004; Shinoura et al., 2009).

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. Why is attention important for humans?
2. What are the mistakes we can make when trying to detect a signal?
3. What is vigilance?
4. What is a feature search, and how does it differ from a conjunction search?
5. What is the difference between divided and selective attention?
6. What are filter theories of attention?
Dealing with an Overwhelming World—Habituation and Adaptation

Crossing a street, we need to see that suddenly there is a car racing around the corner and in our direction. When we interact with our family and friends, we want to be aware of changes in their emotions and behavior so we can respond to them adequately. And yet, if we responded to every little change and stimulus in our environment, we would be quickly and completely overwhelmed.

The authors live close to a major hospital in Boston, and our ability to filter out the noise of the many ambulances that are coming in, day and night, helps us preserve our good night’s sleep. So in a way, it is sometimes a blessing if there are stimuli to which we habituate (i.e., to which we get accustomed) so that we do not notice them anymore.

Habituation involves our becoming accustomed to a stimulus so that we gradually pay less and less attention to it. The counterpart to habituation is dishabituation. In dishabituation, a change in a familiar stimulus prompts us to start noticing the stimulus again. Both processes occur automatically. The processes involve no conscious effort. The relative stability and familiarity of the stimulus govern these processes. Any aspects of the stimulus that seem different or novel (unfamiliar)

PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS OF COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY

OVERCOMING BOREDOM

Habituation is not without faults. Becoming bored during a lecture or while reading a textbook is a sign of habituation. Your attention may start to wander to the background noises, or you may find that you have read a paragraph or two with no recollection of the content. Fortunately, you can dishabituate yourself with very little effort. Here are a few tips on how to overcome the negative effects of boredom.

1. Take a break or alternate between different tasks. If you do not remember the last few paragraphs you read in your text, it is time to stop for a few minutes. Go back and mark the last place in the text you do remember and put the book down. If you feel like a break is a waste of valuable time, do some other work for a while.

2. Take notes while reading or listening. Note-taking focuses attention on the material more than simply listening or reading. If necessary, try switching from script to printed handwriting to make the task more interesting.

3. Adjust your attentional focus to increase stimulus variability. Is the instructor’s voice droning on endlessly so that you cannot take a break during lecture? Try noticing other aspects of your instructor, like hand gestures or body movements, while still paying attention to the content. Create a break in the flow by asking a question—even just raising your hand can make a change in a lecturer’s speaking pattern. If all else fails, you may have to force yourself to be interested in the material. Think about how you can use the material in your everyday life. Also, sometimes just taking a few deep breaths or closing your eyes for a few seconds can change your internal arousal levels.

What other tasks in your life tend to be boring? How can you use the tips above to benefit more from these tasks?
either prompt dishabituation or make habituation less likely to occur in the first place. For example, suppose that a radio is playing instrumental music while you study your cognitive psychology textbook. At first the sound might distract you. But after a while you become habituated to the sound and scarcely notice it. If the loudness of the noise were suddenly to change drastically, however, immediately you would dishabituate to it. The once familiar sound to which you had been habituated would become unfamiliar. It thus would enter your awareness. Habituation is not limited to humans. It is found in organisms as simple as the mollusk *Aplysia* (Castellucci & Kandel, 1976).

We usually exert no effort to become habituated to our sensations of stimuli in the environment. Nonetheless, although we usually do not consciously control habituation, we can do so. In this way, habituation is an attentional phenomenon that differs from the physiological phenomenon of sensory adaptation. **Sensory adaptation** is a lessening of attention to a stimulus that is not subject to conscious control. It occurs directly in the sense organ, not in the brain. We can exert some conscious control over whether we notice something to which we have become habituated, but we have no conscious control over sensory adaptation. For example, we cannot consciously force ourselves to smell an odor to which our senses have become adapted. Nor can we consciously force our pupils to adapt—or not adapt—to differing degrees of brightness or darkness. In contrast, if someone asked us, “Who’s the lead guitarist in that song?” we can once again notice background music.

Table 4.3 provides some of the other distinctions between sensory adaptation and habituation.

Two factors that influence habituation are internal variation within a stimulus and subjective arousal. Some stimuli involve more internal variation than do others. For example, background music contains more internal variation (changing melodies, harmonies, and rhythms) than does the steady drone of an air conditioner. The relative complexity of the stimulus (e.g., an ornate, intricate oriental rug versus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adaptation</th>
<th>Habituation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Not accessible to conscious control</strong>&lt;br&gt;Example: You cannot decide how quickly to adapt to a particular smell or a particular change in light intensity.</td>
<td><strong>Accessible to conscious control</strong>&lt;br&gt;Example: You can decide to become aware of background conversations to which you had become habituated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tied closely to stimulus intensity</strong>&lt;br&gt;Example: The more the intensity of a bright light increases, the more strongly your senses will adapt to the light.</td>
<td><strong>Not tied very closely to stimulus intensity</strong>&lt;br&gt;Example: Your level of habituation will not differ much in your response to the sound of a loud fan and to that of a quiet air conditioner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unrelated to the number, length, and recency of prior exposures</strong>&lt;br&gt;Example: The sense receptors in your skin will respond to changes in temperature in basically the same way no matter how many times you have been exposed to such changes and no matter how recently you have experienced such changes.</td>
<td><strong>Tied very closely to the number, length, and recency of prior exposures</strong>&lt;br&gt;Example: You will become more quickly habituated to the sound of a chiming clock when you have been exposed to the sound more often, for longer times, and on more recent occasions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
a gray carpet) does not seem to be important to habituation. Rather, what matters is the amount of change within the stimulus over time. For example, a mobile involves more change than does an ornate but rigid sculpture. Thus, it is also relatively difficult to remain continually habituated to the frequently changing noises coming from a television. But it is relatively easy to become habituated to a constantly running fan. The reason is that the voices typically speak animatedly and with great inflectional expression. They are constantly changing, whereas the sound a fan makes remains constant with little to no variation.

Psychologists can observe habituation occurring at the physiological level by measuring our degree of arousal. Arousal is a degree of physiological excitation, responsivity, and readiness for action, relative to a baseline. Arousal often is measured in terms of heart rate, blood pressure, electroencephalograph (EEG) patterns, and other physiological signs. Consider what happens, for example, when an unchanging visual stimulus remains in our visual field for a long time. Our neural activity (as shown on an EEG) in response to that stimulus decreases. Both neural activity and other physiological responses (e.g., heart rate) can be measured. These measurements detect heightened arousal in response to perceived novelty or diminished arousal in response to perceived familiarity.

Psychologists in many fields use physiological indications of habituation to study a wide array of psychological phenomena in people (e.g., infants, or comatose patients) who cannot provide verbal reports of their responses. Physiological indicators of habituation tell the researcher whether the person notices changes in the stimulus. Such changes might occur in the color, pattern, size, or form of a stimulus. These indicators signal whether the person notices the changes at all, as well as what specific changes the person notices in the stimulus.

Without habituation, our attentional system would be much more greatly taxed. How easily would we function in our highly stimulating environments if we could not habituate to familiar stimuli? Imagine trying to listen to a lecture if you could not habituate to the sounds of your own breathing, the rustling of papers and books, or the faint buzzing of fluorescent lights.

An example of the failure to habituate can be seen in persons who suffer from tinnitus (ringing in the ears). People who complain of having tinnitus seem to have problems habituating to auditory stimuli. Many people have ringing in their ears, and if they are placed in a quiet room, will report a buzzing or other sounds. However, people who chronically suffer from tinnitus have difficulty adapting to the noise (Bessman et al., 2009; Walpurger et al., 2003). Evidence also indicates that people with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) have difficulty habituating to many types of stimuli. This difficulty helps to explain why ordinary stimuli, such as the buzzing of fluorescent lights, can be distracting to a person with ADHD (Jansiewicz et al., 2004).

**Automatic and Controlled Processes in Attention**

As we have seen, our attention is capable of processing only so many things at once. There are attentional filters that filter out irrelevant stimuli to enable us to process in depth what is important to us. To help us navigate our environment more successfully, we automatize many processes so that we can execute them without using up resources that then can be spent on other processes. Therefore, it is useful to
differentiate cognitive processes in terms of whether they do or do not require conscious control (Schneider & Shiffrin, 1977; Shiffrin & Schneider, 1977).

**Automatic and Controlled Processes**

**Automatic processes** like writing your name involve no conscious control (Palmeri, 2003). For the most part, they are performed without conscious awareness. Nevertheless, you may be aware that you are performing them. They demand little or no effort or even intention. Multiple automatic processes may occur at once, or at least very quickly, and in no particular sequence. Thus, they are termed parallel processes. You are able to read this text while at the same time sharpening your pencil and scratching your leg with your foot.

In contrast, **controlled processes** are accessible to conscious control and even require it. Such processes are performed serially, for example, when you want to compute the total cost of a trip you are about to book online. In other words, controlled processes occur sequentially, one step at a time. They take a relatively long time to execute, at least as compared with automatic processes.

Three attributes characterize automatic processes (Posner & Snyder, 1975). First, they are concealed from consciousness. Second, they are unintentional. Third, they consume few attentional resources.

An alternative view of attention suggests a continuum of processes between fully automatic processes and fully controlled processes. For one thing, the range of controlled processes is so wide and diverse that it would be difficult to characterize all the controlled processes in the same way (Logan, 1988). Also, some automatic processes are easy to retrieve into consciousness and can be controlled intentionally, whereas others are not accessible to consciousness and/or cannot be controlled intentionally. Table 4.4 summarizes the characteristics of controlled versus automatic processes.

Many tasks that start off as controlled processes eventually become automatic ones as a result of practice (LaBerge, 1975, 1990; Raz, 2007). This process is called automatication (also termed proceduralization). For example, driving a car is initially a controlled process. Once we master driving, however, it becomes automatic under normal driving conditions. Such conditions involve familiar roads, fair weather, and little or no traffic. Similarly, when you first learn to speak a foreign language, you need to translate word-for-word from your native tongue. Eventually, however, you begin to think in the second language. This thinking enables you to bypass the intermediate-translation stage. It also allows the process of speaking to become automatic. Your conscious attention can revert to the content, rather than the process, of speaking. A similar shift from conscious control to automatic processing occurs when acquiring the skill of reading. However, when conditions change, the same activity may again require conscious control. In the driving example, if the roads become icy, you will likely need to pay attention to when you need to brake or accelerate. Both tasks usually are automatic when driving.

According to Sternberg’s theory of triarchic intelligence (1999), relatively novel tasks that have not been automatized—such as visiting a foreign country, mastering a new subject, or acquiring a foreign language—make more demands on intelligence than do tasks for which automatic procedures have been developed. A completely unfamiliar task may demand so much of the person as to be overwhelming.
IN THE LAB OF JOHN F. KIHLSTROM

Posthypnotic Amnesia

Hypnosis is a special state of consciousness in which subjects may see things that aren’t there, fail to see things that are there, and respond to posthypnotic suggestions without knowing what they are doing or why (Kihlstrom, 2007, 2008). Afterward, they may be unable to remember the things they did while they were hypnotized—a phenomenon known as posthypnotic amnesia, which has been a major focus of my work.

First, however, we have to find the right subjects. Unfortunately, there is no way to predict in advance who can experience hypnosis and who cannot. The only way to find out is to try hypnosis and see if it works. For this purpose, we rely on a set of standardized scales of hypnotic susceptibility. These are performance-based tests structured much like tests of intelligence. Each scale begins with an induction of hypnosis, followed by a series of suggestions for various hypnotic experiences. Response to each suggestion is evaluated according to standardized, behavioral criteria, yielding a total score representing the person’s ability to experience hypnosis.

From this point on, however, our experiments on cognition look just like anyone else’s—except that our subjects are hypnotized. In one study using a familiar verbal-learning paradigm (Kihlstrom, 1980), the subjects memorized a list of 15 familiar words, such as girl or chair, and then received a suggestion that “You will not be able to remember that you learned any words while you were hypnotized … until I say to you, ‘Now you can remember everything.’” After coming out of hypnosis, highly hypnotizable subjects remembered virtually none of the study list, whereas insusceptible subjects, who had gone through the same procedures, remembered it almost perfectly. This shows that the occurrence of posthypnotic amnesia is highly correlated with hypnotizability.

Then, we presented the subjects with a word association test, in which they were asked to report the first word that came to mind. Some of the cues were words like boy or chair, which were likely to elicit items from the study list. Others were equally likely to elicit control words that had not been studied. Despite their inability to remember the words they had just studied, the hypnotizable, amnesic subjects produced items from the study list at the same rate as the insusceptible, nonamnesic subjects. This shows that posthypnotic amnesia is a disruption of episodic, but not semantic, memory. Even more important, the subjects showed semantic priming, responding with items from the study list more often compared to other items that they had not previously studied. The magnitude of the priming effect was the same in the hypnotizable, amnesic subjects as it was in the insusceptible, nonamnesic subjects. In other words, posthypnotic amnesia entails a dissociation between explicit and implicit expressions of episodic memory (Schacter, 1987).

While explicit and implicit memory is dissociated in other forms of amnesia, the dissociation observed in posthypnotic amnesia has some features that make it special. Most studies of implicit memory in neurologically intact subjects employ highly degraded encoding conditions, such as shallow processing, to impair explicit memory. But in our experiments, the subjects deliberately memorized the list to a strict criterion of learning before the amnesia suggestion was given, and they remembered the list perfectly well after the amnesia suggestion was canceled. Thus, implicit memory can be dissociated from explicit memory even under deep processing conditions.

More important, most studies of implicit memory in amnesia focus on repetition priming, which can be mediated by a perception-based representation of the prime. Accordingly, some of the most popular theories of implicit memory focus on perceptual representation systems in the brain. But in our original study, the priming was semantic in nature and must have been mediated by a meaning-based representation of the prime. In this way, studies of hypnosis remind us that a comprehensive theory of implicit memory is going to have to go beyond repetition priming and beyond perceptual representation systems.
Suppose, for example, you were visiting a foreign country. You probably would not profit from enrolling in a course with unfamiliar abstract subject matter taught in a language you do not understand. The most intellectually stimulating tasks are those that are challenging and demanding but not overwhelming.

**How Does Automatization Occur?**

How do processes become automatized? A widely accepted view has been that during the course of practice, implementation of the various steps becomes more efficient. The individual gradually combines individual effortful steps into integrated components that are further integrated until the whole process is one single operation (Anderson, 1983; Raz, 2007). This operation requires few or no cognitive resources, such as attention. This view of automatization seems to be supported by one of the earliest studies of automatization (Bryan & Harter, 1899). This study investigated how telegraph operators gradually automatized the task of sending and receiving messages. Initially, new operators automatized the transmission of individual letters. However, once the operators had made the transmission of letters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Controlled Processes</th>
<th>Automatic Processes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amount of intentional effort</td>
<td>Require intentional effort</td>
<td>Require little or no intention or effort (and intentional effort may even be required to avoid automatic behaviors)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degree of conscious awareness</td>
<td>Require full conscious awareness</td>
<td>Generally occur outside of conscious awareness, although some automatic processes may be available to consciousness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of attentional resources</td>
<td>Consume many attentional resources</td>
<td>Consume negligible attentional resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of processing</td>
<td>Performed serially (one step at a time)</td>
<td>Performed by parallel processing (i.e., with many operations occurring simultaneously or at least in no particular sequential order)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed of processing</td>
<td>Relatively time-consuming execution, as compared with automatic processes</td>
<td>Relatively fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative novelty of tasks</td>
<td>Novel and unpracticed tasks or tasks with many variable features</td>
<td>Familiar and highly practiced tasks, with largely stable task characteristics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level of processing</td>
<td>Relatively high levels of cognitive processing (requiring analysis or synthesis)</td>
<td>Relatively low levels of cognitive processing (minimal analysis or synthesis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficulty of tasks</td>
<td>Usually difficult tasks</td>
<td>Usually relatively easy tasks, but even relatively complex tasks may be automatized, given sufficient practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process of acquisition</td>
<td>With sufficient practice, many routine and relatively stable procedures may become automatized, such that highly controlled processes may become partly or even wholly automatic; naturally, the amount of practice required for automatization increases dramatically for highly complex tasks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
automatic, they automatized the transmission of words, phrases, and then other groups of words.

An alternative explanation, called “instance theory,” has been proposed by Logan (1988). Logan suggested that automatization occurs because we gradually accumulate knowledge about specific responses to specific stimuli. For example, when a child first learns to add or subtract, he or she applies a general procedure—counting—for handling each pair of numbers. Following repeated practice, the child gradually stores knowledge about particular pairs of particular numbers. Eventually, the child can retrieve from memory the specific answers to specific combinations of numbers. Nevertheless, he or she still can fall back on the general procedure (counting) as needed. Similarly, when learning to drive, the person can draw on an accumulated wealth of specific experiences. These experiences form a knowledge base from which the person quickly can retrieve specific procedures for responding to specific stimuli, such as oncoming cars or stoplights. Preliminary findings suggest that Logan’s instance theory may better explain specific responses to specific stimuli, such as calculating arithmetic combinations (Logan, 1988).

The effects of practice on automatization show a negatively accelerated curve. In such a curve, early practice effects are great. Later practice effects make less and less difference in the degree of automatization. A graph of improvement in performance would show a steeply rising curve early on, and the curve would eventually level off (Figure 4.15). Clearly, automatic processes generally govern familiar, well-practiced as well as easy tasks. Controlled processes govern relatively novel as well as difficult tasks. Because highly automatized behaviors require little effort or conscious control, we often can engage in multiple automatic behaviors. But we rarely can engage in more than one labor-intensive controlled behavior.

**Figure 4.15** The Practice Effect.
The rate of improvement caused by practice effects shows a pattern of negative acceleration. The negative acceleration curve attributed to practice effects is similar to the curve shown here, indicating that the rate of learning slows down as the amount of learning increases, until eventually learning peaks at a stable level.
Automatization in Everyday Life

Automatization of tasks like reading is not guaranteed, even with practice. In the case of dyslexia, for example, automatization is impaired. Persons who have dyslexia frequently have difficulty completing tasks, in addition to reading, that are normally automated (Brambati et al., 2006; Ramus et al., 2003; van der Leij, de Jong, & Rijswijk-Prins, 2001).

Sometimes, automatization in reading can work against us, however. One demonstration of this is the Stroop effect, which is named after John Ridley Stroop (1935). The task works as follows: Quickly read aloud the following words: brown, blue, green, red, purple. Easy, isn’t it? Now quickly name aloud the colors shown in part (a) of the top figure on the back endpaper of this book. In this figure, the colored ink matches the name of the color word. This task, too, is easy. Now, look at part (c) of the same figure. Here, the colors of the inks differ from the color names that are printed with them. Again, name the ink colors you see, out loud, as quickly as possible.

You probably will find the task very difficult: Each of the written words interferes with your naming the color of the ink. The Stroop effect demonstrates the psychological difficulty in selectively attending to the color of the ink and trying to ignore the word that is printed with the ink of that color. One explanation of why the Stroop test may be particularly difficult is that, for you and most other adults, reading is now an automatic process. It is not readily subject to your conscious control (MacLeod, 1996, 2005). For that reason, you find it difficult intentionally to refrain from reading and instead to concentrate on identifying the color of the ink, disregarding the word printed in that ink color. An alternative explanation is that the output of a response occurs when the mental pathways for producing the response are activated sufficiently (MacLeod, 1991). In the Stroop test, the color word activates a cortical pathway for saying the word. In contrast, the ink-color name activates a pathway for naming the color. But the former pathway interferes with the latter. In this situation, it takes longer to gather sufficient strength of activation to produce the color-naming response and not the word-reading response.

A number of variations of the Stroop effect exist, including the number Stroop, the directional Stroop, the animal Stroop, and the emotional Stroop. Theses tasks are very similar to the standard Stroop. For example, in the number Stroop, number words are used. Thus, the word two might be written three times, two two two, and the participant asked to count the number of words. As with the standard Stroop task, reading sometimes interferes with the counting task (Girelli et al., 2001; Kaufmann & Nuerk, 2006). One of the most extensively used Stroop variations is the emotional Stroop. In this task, the standard task is modified so that the color words are replaced with either emotional or neutral words. Participants are asked to name the colors of the words. Researchers find that there is a longer delay in color naming for emotional words as compared with neutral words. These findings suggest that the automatic reading of emotional words causes more interference than reading of neutral words (Bertsch et al., 2009; Phaf & Kan, 2007; Thomas, Johnstone, & Gonsalvez, 2007).

In some situations, however, automatic processes may be life saving. Therefore, it is important to automate safety practices (Norman, 1976). This is particularly true for people engaging in high-risk occupations, such as pilots, undersea divers, and firefighters. For example, novice divers often complain about the frequent repetition of various safety procedures within the confines of a swimming pool, like releasing a
cumbersome weight belt. However, the practice is important so the divers can rely on automatic processes in the face of potential panic should they confront a life-threatening deep-sea emergency.

But there are other situations where automatization may result in “mindlessness” and may be life threatening (Kontogiannis & Malakis, 2009; Krieger, 2005; Langer, 1989, 1997): In 1982, a pilot and copilot went through a routine checklist prior to takeoff. They mindlessly noted that the anti-icer was “off,” as it should be under most circumstances. But it should not have been off under the icy conditions in which they were preparing to fly. The flight ended in a crash that killed 74 passengers. Typically, our absentminded implementation of automatic processes has far less lethal consequences. For example, when driving, we may end up routinely driving home instead of stopping by the store, as we had intended to do. Or we may pour a glass of milk and then start to put the carton of milk in the cupboard rather than in the refrigerator.

**Mistakes We Make in Automatic Processes**

An extensive analysis of human error shows that errors can be classified either as mistakes or as slips (Reason, 1990). **Mistakes** are errors in choosing an objective or in specifying a means of achieving it. **Slips** are errors in carrying out an intended means for reaching an objective. Suppose you decided that you did not need to study for an examination. Thus, you purposely left your textbook behind when leaving for a long weekend. But then you discovered at the time of the exam that you should have studied. In Reason’s terms, you made a mistake. However, suppose instead you fully intended to bring your textbook with you. You had planned to study extensively over the long weekend, but in your haste to leave, you accidentally left the textbook behind. That would be a slip. In sum, mistakes involve errors in intentional, controlled processes. Slips often involve errors in automatic processes (Reason, 1990).

There are several kinds of slips (Norman, 1988; Reason, 1990; see Table 4.5). In general, slips are most likely to occur when two circumstances occur. First, when we must deviate from a routine and automatic processes inappropriately override intentional, controlled processes. Second, when our automatic processes are interrupted. Such interruptions are usually a result of external events or data, but sometimes they are a result of internal events, such as highly distracting thoughts. Imagine that you are typing a paper after an argument with a friend. You may find yourself pausing in your typing as thoughts about what you should have said interrupt your normally automatic process of typing. Automatic processes are helpful to us under many circumstances. They save us from needlessly focusing attention on routine tasks, such as tying our shoes or dialing a familiar phone number. We are thus unlikely to forgo them just to avoid occasional slips. Instead, we should attempt to minimize the costs of these slips.

How can we minimize the potential for negative consequences of slips? In everyday situations, we are less likely to slip when we receive appropriate feedback from the environment. For example, the milk carton may be too tall for the cupboard shelf, or a passenger may say, “I thought you were stopping at the store before going home.” If we can find ways to obtain useful feedback, we may be able to reduce the likelihood that harmful consequences will result from slips. A particularly helpful kind of feedback involves forcing functions. These are physical constraints that make it difficult or impossible to carry out an automatic behavior that may lead to
Occasionally, when we are distracted or interrupted during implementation of an automatic process, slips occur. However, in proportion to the number of times we engage in automatic processes each day, slips are relatively rare events (Reason, 1990).

### Table 4.5  Slips Associated with Automatic Processes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Error</th>
<th>Description of Error</th>
<th>Example of Error</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capture errors</td>
<td>We intend to deviate from a routine activity we are implementing in familiar surroundings, but at a point where we should depart from the routine we fail to pay attention and to regain control of the process; hence, the automatic process captures our behavior, and we fail to deviate from the routine.</td>
<td>Psychologist William James (1890/1970, cited in Langer, 1989) gave an example in which he automatically followed his usual routine, undressing from his work clothes, then putting on his pajamas and climbing into bed—only to realize that he had intended to remove his work clothes to dress to go out to dinner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omissions*</td>
<td>An interruption of a routine activity may cause us to skip a step or two in implementing the remaining portion of the routine.</td>
<td>When going to another room to retrieve something, if a distraction (e.g., a phone call) interrupts you, you may return to the first room without having retrieved the item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perseverations*</td>
<td>After an automatic procedure has been completed, one or more steps of the procedure may be repeated.</td>
<td>If, after starting a car, you become distracted, you may turn the ignition switch again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description errors</td>
<td>An internal description of the intended behavior leads to performing the correct action on the wrong object.</td>
<td>When putting away groceries, you may end up putting the ice cream in the cupboard and a can of soup in the freezer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data-driven errors</td>
<td>Incoming sensory information may end up overriding the intended variables in an automatic action sequence.</td>
<td>While intending to dial a familiar phone number, if you overhear someone call out another series of numbers, you may end up dialing some of those numbers instead of the ones you intended to dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associative-activation errors</td>
<td>Strong associations may trigger the wrong automatic routine.</td>
<td>When expecting someone to arrive at the door, if the phone rings, you may call out, “Come in!”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss-of-activation errors</td>
<td>The activation of a routine may be insufficient to carry it through to completion.</td>
<td>All too often, each of us has experienced the feeling of going to another room to do something and getting there only to ask ourselves, “What am I doing here?” Perhaps even worse is the nagging feeling, “I know I should be doing something, but I can’t remember what.” Until something in the environment triggers our recollection, we may feel extremely frustrated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Omissions and perseverations may be considered examples of errors in the sequencing of automatic processes. Related errors include inappropriately sequencing the steps, as in trying to remove socks before taking off shoes.

a slip (Norman, 1988). For example, some modern cars make it difficult or impossible to drive the car without wearing a seatbelt. You can devise your own forcing functions. You may post a small sign on your steering wheel as a reminder to run an errand on the way home. Or you may put items in front of the door to block your exit so that you cannot leave without the items you want.
Over a lifetime, we automatize countless everyday tasks. However, one of the most helpful pairs of automatic processes first appears within hours after birth: habituation and its complementary opposite, dishabituation.

Consciousness

Not everything we do, reason, and perceive is necessarily conscious. We may be unaware of stimuli that alter our perceptions and judgments or unable to come up with the right word in a sentence even though we know that we know the right word. This section will explore the consciousness of mental processes and how preconscious processing can influence our mind.

The Consciousness of Mental Processes

No serious investigator of cognition believes that people have conscious access to very simple mental processes. For example, none of us has a good idea of the means by which we recognize whether a printed letter such as A is an uppercase or lowercase one. But now consider more complex processing. How conscious are we of our complex mental processes? Cognitive psychologists have differing views on how this question is best answered.

One view (Ericsson & Simon, 1984) is that people have quite good access to their complex mental processes. Simon and his colleagues, for example, have used protocol analysis in analyzing people’s solving of problems, such as chess problems and so-called cryptarithmetic problems, in which one has to figure out what numbers substitute for letters in a mathematical computation problem. These investigations have suggested to Simon and his colleagues that people have quite good conscious access to their complex information processes.

A second view is that people’s access to their complex mental processes is not very good (e.g., Nisbett & Wilson, 1977). In this view, people may think they know how they solve complex problems, but their thoughts are frequently erroneous. According to Nisbett and Wilson, we typically are conscious of the products of our thinking, but only vaguely conscious, if at all, of the processes of thinking. For example, suppose you decide to buy one model of bicycle over another. You certainly will know the product of the decision—which model you bought. But you may have only a vague idea of how you arrived at that decision. Indeed, according to this view, you may believe you know why you made the decision, but that belief is likely to be flawed. Advertisers depend on this second view. They try to manipulate your thoughts and feelings toward a product so that, whatever your conscious thoughts may be, your unconscious ones will lead you to buy their product over that of a competitor. The essence of the second view is that people’s conscious access to their thought processes, and even their control over their thought processes, is quite minimal (Levin, 2004; Wegner, 2002; Wilson, 2002). Consider the problem of getting over someone who has terminated an intimate relationship with you. One technique that is sometimes used to get over someone is thought suppression. As soon as you think of the person, you try to put the individual out of your mind. There is one problem with this technique, but it is a major one: It often does not work. Indeed, the more you try not to think about the person, the more you may end up thinking about him or her and having trouble getting the person off your mind. Research has
actually shown that trying not to think about something usually does not work (Tomlinson et al., 2009; Wegner, 1997a, 1997b). Ironically, the more you try not to think about someone or something, the more “obsessed” you may become with the person or object.

**Preconscious Processing**

Some information that currently is outside our conscious awareness still may be available to consciousness or at least to cognitive processes. For example, when you comb your hair while getting ready for a first date, you are still able to do the combing although your mind in all likelihood will be completely elsewhere, namely, on the date. The information about how to comb your hair is available to you even if you are not consciously combing. Information that is available for cognitive processing but that currently lies outside conscious awareness exists at the preconscious level of awareness. Preconscious information includes stored memories that we are not using at a given time but that we could summon when needed. For example, when prompted, you can remember what your bedroom looks like. But obviously you are not always consciously thinking about your bedroom (unless, perhaps, you are extremely tired). Sensations, too, may be pulled from preconscious to conscious awareness. For example, before you read this sentence, were you highly aware of the sensations in your right foot? Probably not. However, those sensations were available to you.

**Studying the Preconscious—Priming**

How can we study things that currently lie outside conscious awareness? Psychologists have solved this problem by studying a phenomenon known as priming. In priming, participants are presented with a first stimulus (the prime), followed by a break that can range from milliseconds to weeks or months. Then, the participants are presented with a second stimulus and make a judgment (e.g., are both the first and the second stimulus the same?) to see whether the presentation of the first stimulus affected the perception of the second (Neely, 2003). The thought behind this procedure is that the presentation of the first stimulus may activate related concepts in memory that are then more easily accessible. Suppose, for example, someone is talking to you about how much he has enjoyed watching television since buying a satellite dish. He speaks at length about the virtues of satellite dishes. Later, you hear the word *dish*. You are probably more likely to think of a satellite dish, as opposed to a dish served at dinner, than is someone who did not hear the prior conversation about satellite dishes. Most priming is positive in that the first stimulus facilitates later recognition. But priming on occasion may be negative and impede later recognition. For example, if you are asked to solve several algebra problems that can be solved by the same formula, and then you are asked to solve another problem that requires another formula, you may be negatively primed relative to someone who did not solve the first set of problems with the now-irrelevant formula.

Sometimes we are aware of the priming stimuli. However, priming occurs even when the priming stimulus is presented in a way that does not permit its entry into conscious awareness (e.g., it is presented too briefly to be registered consciously).

Let us look at some studies that have used priming. Marcel (1983a, 1983b), for example, observed processing of stimuli that were presented too briefly to be detected in conscious awareness (Marcel, 1983a, 1983b). In one study, Marcel presented participants with a prime that had two different meanings. One such prime could be the
word *palm* which can refer both to a body part and a plant. Afterward, participants were presented with another word that they were asked to classify into various categories. For participants who had *consciously* seen the prime, the mental pathway to one of the two meanings (e.g., plant) became activated and facilitated (speeded up) the classification of a subsequent *related* word. The pathway to the other meaning (e.g., body part) showed a negative priming effect in that it inhibited (slowed down) the classification of a subsequent *unrelated* word. For example, if the word *palm* was presented, the word either facilitated or inhibited the classification of the word *wrist*, depending on whether the participant associated *palm* with *hand* or with *tree*. In contrast, if the word *palm* was presented so briefly that the person was unaware of seeing the word, both meanings of the word appeared to be activated.

Another example of possible priming effects and preconscious processing can be found in a study described as a test of intuition. This study used a “dyad of triads” task (Bowers et al., 1990). Participants were presented with pairs (dyads) of three-word groups (triads). One of the triads in each dyad was a potentially coherent grouping. The other triad contained random and unrelated words. For example, the words in Group A, a coherent triad, might have been *playing, credit, and report*. The words in Group B, an incoherent triad, might have been *still, pages, and music*. (The words in Group A can be meaningfully paired with a fourth word—*card* [playing card, credit card, report card]; the words in Group B bear no such relationship.) After presentation of the dyad of triads, participants were shown various possible choices for a fourth word related to one of the two triads. The participants then were asked to identify which of the two triads was coherent and related to a fourth word, and which fourth word linked the coherent triad. Some participants could not figure out the unifying fourth word for a given pair of triads. They were nevertheless asked to indicate which of the two triads was coherent. When participants could not ascertain the unifying word, they still were able to identify the coherent triad at a level well above chance. They seemed to have some preconscious information available to them. This information led them to select one triad over the other. They did so even though they did not consciously know what word unified that triad.

The examples described here involve visual priming. Priming, however, does not have to be visual. Priming effects can be demonstrated using aural material as well. Experiments exploring auditory priming reveal the same behavioral effects as visual priming. Using neuroimaging methods, investigators have discovered that similar brain areas are involved in both types of priming (Badgaiyan, Schacter, & Alpert, 1999; Bergerbest, Ghahremani, & Gabrieli, 2004).

An interesting application of auditory priming was used with patients under anesthesia. While under anesthesia, these patients were presented lists of words. After awakening from anesthesia, the patients were asked yes/no questions and word-stem completion questions about the words they heard. The patients performed at chance on the yes/no questions. They reported no conscious knowledge of the words. However, on the word-stem completion task, patients showed evidence of priming. The patients frequently completed the word-stems with the items they were presented while they were under anesthesia. These findings reveal that, even when the patient has absolutely no recollection of an aural event, that event still can affect performance (Deeprose et al., 2005).

**What’s That Word Again? The Tip-of-the-Tongue Phenomenon**

Unfortunately, sometimes pulling preconscious information into conscious awareness is not easy. Most of you probably have experienced the tip-of-the-tongue
phenomenon, in which you try to remember something that is stored in memory but that cannot readily be retrieved. Psychologists have tried to generate experiments that measure this phenomenon (see Hanley & Chapman, 2008, for example). In one classic study (Brown & McNeill, 1966), participants were read a large number of dictionary definitions. For example, they might have been given the clue, “an instrument used by navigators to measure the angle between a heavenly body and a horizon.” The subjects then were asked to identify the corresponding words having these meanings. This procedure constituted a game similar to the television show Jeopardy. Some participants could not come up with the word but thought they knew it. Still, they often could identify the first letter, the number of syllables, or approximate the word’s sounds. For example, it begins with an s, has two syllables, and sounds like sextet. Eventually, some participants realized that the sought-after word was sextant. These results indicate that particular preconscious information, although not fully accessible to conscious thinking, is still available to attentional processes.

The tip-of-the-tongue phenomenon is apparently universal. It is seen in speakers of many different languages. Bilingual people experience more tip-of-the-tongues than monolingual speakers which may be because bilinguals use either one of their languages less frequently than do monolinguals (Pyers et al., 2009). It is also seen in people with limited or no ability to read (Brennen, Vikan, & Dybdahl, 2007). Older adults have more tip-of-the-tongue experiences compared with younger adults (Galdo-Alvarez et al., 2009; Gollan & Brown, 2006). The anterior cingulate-prefrontal cortices are involved when one is experiencing the tip-of-the-tongue phenomenon.

In the tip-of-the-tongue phenomenon, you cannot think of a word or phrase that is stored in your memory and usually easily accessible.
When Blind People Can See

Preconscious perception also has been observed in people who have lesions in some areas of the visual cortex (Rees, 2008; Ro & Rafal, 2006). Typically, the patients are blind in areas of the visual field that correspond to the lesioned areas of the cortex. Some of these patients, however, seem to show blindsight—traces of visual perceptive ability in blind areas (Kentridge, 2003). When forced to guess about a stimulus in the “blind” region, they correctly guess locations and orientations of objects at above-chance levels (Weiskrantz, 1994, 2009). Similarly, when forced to reach for objects in the blind area, “cortically blind participants … will nonetheless preadjust their hands appropriately to size, shape, orientation and 3-D location of that object in the blind field” (Marcel, 1986, p. 41). Yet they fail to show voluntary behavior, such as reaching for a glass of water in the blind region, even when they are thirsty. Some visual processing seems to occur even when participants have no conscious awareness of visual sensations.

An interesting example of blindsight can be found in a case study of a patient called D. B. (Weiskrantz, 2009). The patient was blind on the left side of his visual field as an unfortunate result of an operation. That is, each eye had a blind spot on the left side of its visual field. Consistent with this damage, D. B. reported no awareness of any objects placed on his left side or of any events that took place on this side. But despite his unawareness of vision on this side, there was evidence of vision. The investigator would present objects to the left side of the visual field and then present D. B. with a forced-choice test in which the patient had to indicate which of two objects had been presented to this side. D. B. performed at levels that were significantly better than chance. In other words, he “saw” despite his unawareness of seeing.

Another study paired presentations of a visual stimulus with electric shocks (Hamm et al., 2003). After multiple pairings, the patient began to experience fear when the visual stimulus was presented, even though he could not explain why he was afraid. Thus, the patient was processing visual information, although he could not see.

One explanation for blindsight is the following: The information from the retina is forwarded to the visual cortex which is damaged in cortically blind people. It seems, however, that a part of the visual information bypasses the visual cortex and is sent to other locations in the cortex. The information from these locations is unconsciously accessible, although it seems to be conscious only when it is processed in the visual cortex (Weiskrantz, 2007).

The preceding examples show that at least some cognitive functions can occur outside of conscious awareness. We appear able to sense, perceive, and even respond to many stimuli that never enter our conscious awareness (Marcel, 1983a). Just what kinds of processes do or do not require conscious awareness?

✓ CONCEPT CHECK

1. Why is habituation important?
2. How do we become habituated to stimuli?
3. How do mental processes become automated?
4. What is priming and how can it be studied?
5. What symptoms do patients have who exhibit blindsight?
Key Themes

The study of attention and consciousness highlights several key themes in cognitive psychology.

Structures versus processes. The brain contains various structures and systems of structures, such as the reticular activating system, that generate the processes that contribute to attention. Sometimes, the relationship between structure and process is not entirely clear, and it is the job of cognitive psychologists to better understand it. For example, blindsight is a phenomenon in which a process occurs—sight—in the absence of the structures in the brain that would seem to be necessary for the sight to take place.

Validity of causal inferences versus ecological validity. Should research on vigilance be conducted in a laboratory to achieve careful experimental control? Or should the research of high-stakes vigilance situations be studied ecologically? For example, a study in which military officers are examining radar screens for possible attacks against the country must have a high degree of ecological validity to ensure that the results apply to the actual situation in which the military officers find themselves. The stakes are too high to allow slippage. Yet, when vigilance in the actual-life situation is studied, one cannot and would not want to make attacks against the country happen. Therefore, it is necessary to use simulations that are as realistic as possible. In this way, the ecological validity of conclusions drawn can be ensured.

Biological versus behavioral methods. Blindsight is a case of a curious and as yet poorly understood link. The biology does not appear to be there to generate the behavior. Another interesting example is attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Physicians now have available a number of drugs that treat ADHD. These treatments enable children as well as adults to focus better on tasks that they need to get done. But the mechanisms by which the drugs work are still poorly understood. Indeed, somewhat paradoxically, most of the drugs used to treat ADHD are stimulants, which, when given to children with ADHD, appear to calm them down.

Summary

1. Can we actively process information even if we are not aware of doing so? If so, what do we do, and how do we do it? Whereas attention embraces all the information that an individual is manipulating (a portion of the information available from memory, sensation, and other cognitive processes), consciousness comprises only the narrower range of information that the individual is aware of manipulating. Attention allows us to use our limited active cognitive resources (e.g., because of the limits of working memory) judiciously, to respond quickly and accurately to interesting stimuli, and to remember salient information.

Conscious awareness allows us to monitor our interactions with the environment, to link our past and present experiences and thereby sense a continuous thread of experience, and to control and plan for future actions.

We actively can process information at the preconscious level without being aware of doing so. For example, researchers have studied the phenomenon of priming, in which a given stimulus increases the likelihood that a subsequent related (or identical) stimulus will be readily
processed (e.g., retrieval from long-term memory). In contrast, in the tip-of-the-tongue phenomenon, another example of preconscious processing, retrieval of desired information from memory does not occur, despite an ability to retrieve related information.

Cognitive psychologists also observe distinctions in conscious versus preconscious attention by distinguishing between controlled and automatic processing in task performance. Controlled processes are relatively slow, sequential in nature, intentional (requiring effort), and under conscious control. Automatic processes are relatively fast, parallel in nature, and for the most part outside of conscious awareness. Actually, a continuum of processing appears to exist, from fully automatic to fully controlled processes. Two automatic processes that support our attentional system are habituation and dis-habituation, which affect our responses to familiar versus novel stimuli.

2. **What are some of the functions of attention?**
One main function involved in attention is identifying important objects and events in the environment. Researchers use measures from signal-detection theory to determine an observer's sensitivity to targets in various tasks. For example, vigilance refers to a person's ability to attend to a field of stimulation over a prolonged period, usually with the stimulus to be detected occurring only infrequently. Whereas vigilance involves passively waiting for an event to occur, search involves actively seeking out a stimulus.

People use selective attention to track one message and simultaneously to ignore others. Auditory selective attention (such as in the cocktail party problem) may be observed by asking participants to shadow information presented dichotically. Visual selective attention may be observed in tasks involving the Stroop effect. Attentional processes also are involved during divided attention, when people attempt to handle more than one task at once; generally, the simultaneous performance of more than one automatized task is easier to handle than the simultaneous performance of more than one controlled task. However, with practice, individuals appear to be capable of handling more than one controlled task at a time, even engaging in tasks requiring comprehension and decision making.

3. **What are some theories cognitive psychologists have developed to explain attentional processes?**
Some theories of attention involve an attentional filter or bottleneck, according to which information is selectively blocked out or attenuated as it passes from one level of processing to the next. Of the bottleneck theories, some suggest that the signal-blocking or signal-attenuating mechanism occurs just after sensation and prior to any perceptual processing; others propose a later mechanism, after at least some perceptual processing has occurred.

Attentional-resource theories offer an alternative way of explaining attention; according to these theories, people have a fixed amount of attentional resources (perhaps modulated by sensory modalities) that they allocate according to the perceived task requirements. Resource theories and bottleneck theories actually may be complementary. In addition to these general theories of attention, some task-specific theories (e.g., feature-integration theory, guided-search theory, and similarity theory) have attempted to explain search phenomena in particular.

4. **What have cognitive psychologists learned about attention by studying the human brain?**
Early neuropsychological research led to the discovery of feature detectors, and subsequent work has explored other aspects of feature detection and integration processes that may be involved in visual search. In addition, extensive research on attentional processes in the brain seems to suggest that the attentional system primarily involves two regions of the cortex, as well as the thalamus and some other subcortical structures; the attentional system also governs various specific processes that occur in many areas of the brain, particularly in the cerebral cortex. Attentional processes may be a result of heightened activation in some areas of the brain, of inhibited activity in other areas of the brain, or perhaps of some combination of activation and inhibition. Studies of responsivity to particular stimuli show that even when an individual is focused on a primary task and is not consciously aware of processing other stimuli, the brain of the individual automatically
responds to infrequent, deviant stimuli (e.g., an odd tone). By using various approaches to the study of the brain (e.g., PET, ERP, lesion studies, and psychopharmacological studies), researchers are gaining insight into diverse aspects of the brain and also are able to use converging operations to begin to explain some of the phenomena they observe.

**Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions**

1. Describe some of the evidence regarding the phenomena of priming and preconscious perception.
2. Why are habituation and dishabituation of particular interest to cognitive psychologists?
3. Compare and contrast the theories of visual search described in this chapter. Choose one of the theories of attention and explain how the evidence from signal detection, selective attention, or divided attention supports or challenges the theory.
4. Design one task likely to activate the posterior attentional system and another task likely to activate the anterior attentional system.
5. Design an experiment for studying divided attention.
6. How could advertisers use some of the principles of visual search or selective attention to increase the likelihood that people will notice their messages?
7. Describe some practical ways in which you can use forcing functions and other strategies for lessening the likelihood that automatic processes will have negative consequences for you in some of the situations you face.

**Key Terms**

- arousal, p. 169
- attention, p. 137
- automatic processes, p. 170
- automatization, p. 170
- blindsight, p. 181
- change blindness, p. 165
- cocktail party problem, p. 148
- conjunction search, p. 144
- consciousness, p. 138
- controlled processes, p. 170
- dichotic presentation, p. 149
- dishabituation, p. 167
- distracters, p. 143
- divided attention, p. 138
- executive attention, p. 161
- feature-integration theory, p. 145
- feature search, p. 144
- habituation, p. 167
- priming, p. 178
- search, p. 143
- selective attention, p. 138
- sensory adaptation, p. 168
- signal, p. 140
- signal detection, p. 138
- signal-detection theory (SDT), p. 140
- Stroop effect, p. 174
- tip-of-the-tongue phenomenon, p. 179
- vigilance, p. 142

**Media Resources**

Visit the companion website—www.cengagebrain.com—for quizzes, research articles, chapter outlines, and more.

**CogLab**

Explore CogLab by going to http://coglab.wadsworth.com. To learn more, examine the following experiments:

- Prototypes
- Absolute Identification
- Implicit Learning
CHAPTER OUTLINE

Tasks Used for Measuring Memory
- Recall versus Recognition Tasks
- Implicit versus Explicit Memory Tasks
- Intelligence and the Importance of Culture in Testing

Models of Memory
- The Traditional Model of Memory
  - Sensory Store
  - Short-Term Store
  - Long-Term Store
- The Levels-of-Processing Model
- An Integrative Model: Working Memory
  - The Components of Working Memory
  - Neuroscience and Working Memory
  - Measuring Working Memory
  - Intelligence and Working Memory

Multiple Memory Systems
- A Connectionist Perspective

Exceptional Memory and Neuropsychology
- Outstanding Memory: Mnemonists
- Deficient Memory
  - Amnesia
  - Alzheimer’s Disease
- How Are Memories Stored?

Key Themes

Summary

Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

Key Terms

Media Resources
Here are some of the questions we will explore in this chapter:

1. What are some of the tasks used for studying memory, and what do various tasks indicate about the structure of memory?
2. What has been the prevailing traditional model for the structure of memory?
3. What are some of the main alternative models for the structure of memory?
4. What have psychologists learned about the structure of memory by studying exceptional memory and the physiology of the brain?

**BELIEVE IT OR NOT**

**Memory Problems? How about Flying Less?**

Travel across time zones can actually get you more than just an annoying jet lag. Researchers have found that people who are subjected to jet lag frequently with less than two weeks of recovering time perform worse on spatial memory tests than people who have more time to recover (Cho, 2001). Twenty flight attendants who serve on flights across more than seven time zones at a regular basis had MRI analyses to measure the size of their brain. It turned out that those flight attendants who had only 5 days to recover from jet lag, as opposed to 14 days, had a smaller temporal lobe, which is important to memory functions, and performed worse on the spatial memory tests. But why would the temporal lobe be smaller? Cho presumes that this is the result of elevated stress hormones: Flight attendants had significantly higher salivary cortisol levels after repeated long-distance flights than after short-distance flights, and cortisol is known to cause harm to the temporal lobe. You need not worry, however, unless you travel repeatedly across many time zones with few days to recover. People who may be affected, however, are shift workers like doctors or nurses, because their day and night rhythms are frequently disrupted.

In this chapter, we will explore how our memory works and what factors improve or impair our memory performance.

Here are some questions. Try and see if you can answer them:

- Who is the president of the United States?
- What is today’s date?
- What did you have for breakfast?
- What does your best friend look like, and what does your friend’s voice sound like?
- What were some of your experiences when you first started college?
- How do you tie your shoelaces?

Those questions were pretty easy, right? Although retrieving the answers to these questions seemed easy, it is actually quite amazing that we can remember so many different facts and procedures without problems. In this chapter, we will see how we store information and retrieve it from memory.

As you age, your memory changes. As the author’s grandmother got older, she gradually experienced a change in her memory. Memories from the grandmother’s childhood and other details from her early and middle life were as vividly present as they had always been (your experiences when you started college), but she had more and more problems remembering anything that had happened in the recent past (what she had for breakfast earlier in the day). She would ask her grandchildren several times during a visit how they were doing and where they were currently
working, but she was quick to recall events that had happened to her when she was a middle-aged adult.

Maybe you have seen symptoms like these in one of your older relatives? And what is memory exactly, anyway?

Memory is the means by which we retain and draw on our past experiences to use that information in the present (Tulving, 2000b; Tulving & Craik, 2000). As a process, memory refers to the dynamic mechanisms associated with storing, retaining, and retrieving information about past experience (Bjorklund, Schneider, & Hernández Blasi, 2003; Crowder, 1976). Specifically, cognitive psychologists have identified three common operations of memory: encoding, storage, and retrieval (Baddeley, 2002; Brebion, 2007; Brown & Craik, 2000). Each operation represents a stage in memory processing.

- In encoding, you transform sensory data into a form of mental representation.
- In storage, you keep encoded information in memory.
- In retrieval, you pull out or use information stored in memory. These memory processes are discussed at length in Chapter 6.

This chapter introduces some of the tasks that researchers use for studying memory. Then, we examine several models of how memory might work. First, we discuss the traditional model of memory. This model includes the sensory, short-term, and long-term storage systems. Although this model still influences current thinking about memory, we consider some interesting alternative perspectives and models of memory before moving on to discuss exceptional memory and insights provided by neuropsychology.

**Tasks Used for Measuring Memory**

In studying memory, researchers have devised various tasks that require participants to remember arbitrary information (e.g., numerals or letter strings) in different ways. Because this chapter includes many references to these tasks, we begin this section with a discussion of these tasks so that you will know how memory is studied. The tasks described fall into two major categories—recall versus recognition memory and implicit versus explicit memory.

**Recall versus Recognition Tasks**

In **recall**, you produce a fact, a word, or other item from memory. Fill-in-the-blank and most essay tests require that you recall items from memory. For example, suppose you want to measure people’s memory for late-night comedians. You could ask people to name a TV comedian. In **recognition**, you select or otherwise identify an item as being one that you have been exposed to previously. (See also Table 5.1 for examples and explanations of each type of task.) For example, you could ask people which of the following is a late-night comic: Jennifer Lopez, Jay Leno, Guy Ritchie, Cameron Diaz. Multiple-choice and true-false tests involve some degree of recognition.

Three main types of recall tasks are used in experiments (Lockhart, 2000): serial recall, free recall, and cued recall. In **serial recall**, you recall items in the exact order in which they were presented. For example, you could ask people to remember the following list of comedians in **order**: Stephen Colbert, Jon Stewart, David
### Table 5.1 Types of Tasks Used for Measuring Memory

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Memory Tasks</th>
<th>Description of What the Tasks Require</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Explicit-memory tasks</td>
<td>You must consciously recall particular information.</td>
<td>Who wrote <em>Hamlet</em>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declarative-knowledge tasks</td>
<td>You must recall facts.</td>
<td>What is your first name?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recall tasks</td>
<td>You must produce a fact, a word, or other item from memory.</td>
<td>Fill-in-the-blank tests require that you recall items from memory. For example, “The term for persons who suffer severe memory impairment is _______.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial-recall task</td>
<td>You must repeat the items in a list in the exact order in which you heard or read them.</td>
<td>If you were shown the digits 2-8-7-1-6-4, you would be expected to repeat “2-8-7-1-6-4,” in exactly that order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free-recall task</td>
<td>You must repeat the items in a list in any order in which you can recall them.</td>
<td>If you were presented with the word list “dog, pencil, time, hair, monkey, restaurant,” you would receive full credit if you repeated “monkey, restaurant, dog, pencil, time, hair.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cued-recall task</td>
<td>You must memorize a list of paired items; then when you are given one item in the pair, you must recall the mate for that item.</td>
<td>Suppose that you were given the following list of pairs: “time-city, mist-home, switch-paper, credit-day, fist-cloud, number-branch.” Later, when you were given the stimulus “switch,” you would be expected to say “paper,” and so on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recognition tasks</td>
<td>You must select or otherwise identify an item as being one that you learned previously.</td>
<td>Multiple-choice and true-false tests involve recognition. For example, “The term for people with outstanding memory ability is (1) amnesics, (2) semanticists, (3) mnemonists, or (4) retrograders.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implicit-memory tasks</td>
<td>You must draw on information in memory without consciously realizing that you are doing so.</td>
<td>Word-completion tasks tap implicit memory. You would be presented with a word fragment, such as the first three letters of a word; then you would be asked to complete the word fragment with the first word that comes to mind. For example, suppose that you were asked to supply the missing three letters to fill in these blanks and form a word: <em>e_or</em>. Because you had recently seen the word <em>memory</em>, you would be more likely to provide the three letters m-m-y for the blanks than would someone who had not recently been exposed to the word. (You have been “primed”; more on priming later in this chapter.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasks involving procedural knowledge</td>
<td>You must remember learned skills and automatic behaviors, rather than facts.</td>
<td>If you were asked to demonstrate a “knowing-how” skill, you might be given experience in solving puzzles or in reading mirror writing, and then you would be asked to show what you remember of how to use those skills. Or you might be asked to master or to show what you already remember about particular motor skills (e.g., riding a bicycle or ice skating).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Letterman, Conan O’Brien, Jay Leno—and ask them then to repeat the list back in that order.

The second kind of task is free recall, in which you recall items in any order you choose (Golomb et al., 2008). In this case, you would ask people to remember the list of comedians above, in any order.

The third kind of task is cued recall, in which you are first shown items in pairs, but during recall you are cued with only one member of each pair and are asked to recall each mate. Cued recall is also called “paired-associates recall” (Lockhart, 2000). For example, you could ask people to learn the following pairings: Colbert–apple, Stewart–grape, Letterman–lemon, O’Brien–peach, Leno–orange, and then ask them to produce the pairing for Stewart (grape).

Psychologists also can measure relearning, which is the number of trials it takes to learn once again items that were learned in the past. Relearning has also been referred to as savings and can be observed in adults, children, and animals (Bauer, 2005; Sasaki, 2008). The relearning effect was also observed in fetal rats, whose limb movements were restrained by yokes and who were given kinesthetic feedback to influence their motor performance. These rats demonstrated shorter learning times for motor movements they had previously learned (Robinson, 2005). This effect is clearly extensively generalizable to many situations and participants. For example, suppose you studied Spanish in high school and then did not study it again in college. You now need it to succeed on your job in communicating with customers. If you relearn Spanish, you will experience a savings in time relative to what you experienced the first time you learned it.

Recognition memory is usually much better than recall (although there are some exceptions, which are discussed in Chapter 6). You may have experienced the superiority of recognition memory when you answered an exam question requiring you to remember a fact. You were not able to produce all the facts that were asked for, but when you discussed that particular question with a fellow student after the exam and he pointed out the correct answer, you immediately recognized it as correct and were annoyed with yourself for not coming up with the answer while taking the test.

A study by Standing and colleagues (1970) demonstrated that participants could recognize close to 2,000 pictures in a recognition-memory task. It is difficult to imagine anyone recalling 2,000 items of any kind they were just asked to memorize. As you will see later in the section on exceptional memory, even with extensive training, the best measured recall performance is typically around 80 items.

Informing participants of the type of future test they will take can influence the amount of learning that occurs. Specifically, anticipation of recall tasks generally elicits deeper levels of information processing than anticipation of recognition tasks. For example, if you are going to have a French vocabulary test, you may study differently (and more intensively) if you need to recall English meanings of French words than if you merely have to say whether a set of English definitions of French words are correct or incorrect (recognition).

Some psychologists refer to recognition-memory tasks as tapping receptive knowledge. Receptive means “responsive to a stimulus.” In a recognition-memory task, you respond to stimuli presented to you and decide whether you have seen them before or not. Recall-memory tasks, in which you have to produce an answer, require expressive knowledge. Differences between receptive and expressive knowledge also are observed in areas other than that of simple memory tasks (e.g., language, intelligence, and cognitive development).
Implicit versus Explicit Memory Tasks

Memory theorists distinguish between explicit memory and implicit memory (Mulligan, 2003). Each of the tasks previously discussed involves explicit memory, in which participants engage in conscious recollection. For example, they might recall or recognize words, facts, or pictures from a particular prior set of items.

A related phenomenon is implicit memory, in which we use information from memory but are not consciously aware that we are doing so (Berry, 2008; McBride, 2007). You can read the word in the photo on the left without problems although a letter is missing.

Every day you engage in many tasks that involve your unconscious recollection of information. Even as you read this book, you unconsciously are remembering various things—the meanings of particular words, some of the cognitive-psychological concepts you read about in earlier chapters, and even how to read. These recollections are aided by implicit memory. There are differences in explicit memory over the life span; however, implicit memory does not show the same changes. Specifically, infants and older adults often tend to have relatively poor explicit memory but implicit memory that is comparable to that of young adults (Carver & Bauer, 2001; Murphy, McKone, & Slee, 2003). In certain patient groups, you also see deficiencies in explicit memory with spared implicit memory; these groups will be discussed later in the chapter.

In the following section, we will examine two tasks that involve implicit memory—priming tasks and tasks involving procedural knowledge. We will then have a look at the process-dissociation model, which postulates that only one task is needed to measure both implicit and explicit memory.

In the laboratory, implicit memory is sometimes examined by having people perform word-completion tasks that are based on the priming effect. In a word-completion task, participants receive a word fragment, such as the first three letters of a word. They then complete it with the first word that comes to mind. For example, suppose that you are asked to fill in the blanks with the five missing letters to form a word: imp_ _ _ _ _. Because you recently have seen the word implicit, you would be more likely to provide the five letters “l-i-c-i-t” for the blanks than would someone who had not recently been exposed to the word. You have been primed. Priming is the facilitation of your ability to utilize missing information. In general, participants perform better when they have seen the word on a recently presented list, although they have not been explicitly instructed to remember words from that list (Tulving, 2000a). Priming even works in situations where you are not aware
that you have seen the word before—that is, if the word was presented for a fraction of a second or in some other degraded form.

Procedural memory, or memory for processes, can be tested in implicit-memory tasks as well. Examples of procedural memory include the procedures involved in riding a bike or driving a car. Consider when you drive to the mall: You probably put the car into gear, use your blinkers, and stay in your lane without actively thinking about the task. Nor do you consciously need to remember what you should do at a red light. Many of the activities that we do every day fall under the purview of procedural memory; these can range from brushing your teeth to writing.

In the laboratory, procedural memory is sometimes examined with the rotary pursuit task (Gonzalez, 2008; see Figure 5.1). The rotary pursuit task requires participants to maintain contact between an L-shaped stylus and a small rotating disk (Costello, 1967). The disk is generally the size of a nickel, less than an inch in diameter. This disk is placed on a quickly rotating platform. The participant must track the small disk with the wand as it quickly spins around on a platform. After learning with a specific disk and speed of rotation, participants are asked to complete the task again, either with the same disk and the same speed or with a new disk or speed. Verdolini-Marston and Balota (1994) noted that when a new disk or speed is used, participants do relatively poorly. But with the same disk and speed, participants do as well as they had after learning the task, even if they do not remember previously completing the task.

Another task used to examine procedural memory is mirror tracing. In the mirror-tracing task, a plate with the outline of a shape drawn on it is put behind a barrier where it cannot be seen. Beyond the barrier in the participant’s line of sight is a mirror. When the participant reaches around the barrier, his or her hand and the plate with the shape are within view. Participants then take a stylus and trace the outline of the shape drawn on the plate. When first learning this task, participants have difficulty staying on the shape. Typically, there are many points at which

![Figure 5.1 The Rotary Pursuit Task.](image)

In the rotary pursuit task, subjects use an L-shaped stylus to track a small, rotating disk on a spinning platform.
the stylus leaves the outline. Moreover, it takes a relatively long time to trace the entire shape. With practice, however, participants become quite efficient and accurate with this task. Participants' retention of this skill gives us a way to study procedural memory (Rodrigue, Kennedy, & Raz, 2005).

The mirror-tracing task is also used to study the impact of sleep on procedural memory. Patients suffering from schizophrenia often have memory deficits as well as sleep problems. A study by Göder and colleagues (2008) found that when those patients received a medication that increased the duration of their slow-wave sleep, their procedural memory performance increased as well.

The methods for measuring both implicit and explicit memory described here and in Table 5.1 assume that implicit and explicit memory are separate and can be measured by different tasks. Some researchers have challenged this assumption. They assume that implicit and explicit memory both play a role in every response, even if the task at hand is intended to measure only one type of memory. Thus, cognitive psychologists have developed models that assume that both implicit and explicit memory influence almost all responses. One of the first and most widely recognized models in this area is the process-dissociation model (Daniels et al., 2006; Jacoby, 1991). The model assumes that implicit and explicit memory both have a role in virtually every response. Thus, only one task is needed to measure both these processes.

Although there are disagreements about exactly what the different measures show, there is agreement that both implicit and explicit memory are important in our everyday lives. Kaufman has also argued that implicit memory, like explicit memory, is an important part of human intelligence (Kaufman, 2010).

**Intelligence and the Importance of Culture in Testing**

In many cultures of the world, quickness is not at a premium. In these cultures, people may believe that more intelligent people do not rush into things. Even in our own culture, no one will view you as brilliant if you rush things that should not be rushed. For example, it generally is not smart to decide on a marital partner, a job, or a place to live in the 20 to 30 seconds you normally might have to solve an intelligence-test problem. Thus, there exist no perfectly culture-fair tests of intelligence, at least at present. How then should we consider context when assessing and understanding intelligence?

Several researchers have suggested that providing culture-relevant tests is possible (e.g., Baltes, Dittmann-Kohli, & Dixon, 1984; Jenkins, 1979; Keating, 1984). **Culture-relevant tests** measure skills and knowledge that relate to the cultural experiences of the test-takers. Baltes and his colleagues have designed tests measuring skill in dealing with the pragmatic aspects of everyday life. Designing culture-relevant tests requires creativity and effort, but it is probably not impossible. For example, one study investigated memory abilities—one aspect of intelligence as our culture defines it—in our culture versus the Moroccan culture (Wagner, 1978). The study found that the level of recall depended on the content that was being remembered. Culture-relevant content was remembered more effectively than non-relevant content. For example, when compared with Westerners, Moroccan rug merchants were better able to recall complex visual patterns on black-and-white photos of Oriental rugs. Sometimes tests are not designed to minimize the effects of cultural differences. In such cases, the key to culture-specific differences in memory may be the knowledge and use of metamemory strategies, rather than actual structural differences in memory (e.g., memory span and rates of forgetting) (Wagner, 1978).
Rural Kenyan school children have substantial knowledge about natural herbal medicines they believe fight illnesses. Western children, of course, would not be able to identify any of these medicines (Sternberg et al., 2001; Sternberg & Grigorenko, 1997). In short, making a test culturally relevant appears to involve much more than just removing specific linguistic barriers to understanding.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What is the difference between a recall task and a recognition task?
2. What is explicit memory?
3. What is implicit memory?
4. Why does it make sense to consider culture when doing research on memory in different countries?

---

**Models of Memory**

Researchers have developed several models to describe how our memory works. The traditional “three-store model” is not the only way to conceptualize memory. The following sections first present what we know about memory in terms of the three-store model. Then we examine the levels-of-processing model, and also consider an integrative model of working memory. Subsequently, we will explore some more conceptualizations of memory systems and lastly get to know a connectionist model. Let’s begin with the traditional model of memory.

**The Traditional Model of Memory**

There are several major models of memory (McAfoose & Baune, 2009; Murdock, 2003). In the mid-1960s, based on the data available at the time, researchers proposed a model of memory distinguishing two structures of memory first proposed by William James (1890, 1970): primary memory, which holds temporary information currently in use, and secondary memory, which holds information permanently or at least for a very long time (Waugh & Norman, 1965). Three years later, Richard Atkinson and Richard Shiffrin (1968) proposed an alternative model that conceptualized memory in terms of three memory stores:

- a **sensory store**, capable of storing relatively limited amounts of information for very brief periods;
- a **short-term store**, capable of storing information for somewhat longer periods but of relatively limited capacity as well; and
- a **long-term store**, of very large capacity, capable of storing information for very long periods, perhaps even indefinitely (Richardson-Klavehn & Bjork, 2003).

The model differentiates among structures for holding information, termed stores, and the information stored in the structures, termed memory. Today, cognitive psychologists commonly describe the three stores as sensory memory, short-term memory, and long-term memory. Also, Atkinson and Shiffrin were not suggesting that the three stores are distinct physiological structures. Rather, the stores are hypothetical constructs—concepts that are not themselves directly measurable or observable but that serve as mental models for understanding how a psychological phenomenon works. Figure 5.2
shows a simple information-processing model of these stores (Atkinson & Shiffrin, 1971). This Atkinson-Shiffrin model emphasizes the passive storage areas in which memories are stored; but it also alludes to some control processes that govern the transfer of information from one store to another. In the following sections, we take a closer look at the sensory store, the short-term store, and the long-term store.

Sensory Store
The sensory store is the initial repository of much information that eventually enters the short- and long-term stores. Strong (although not undisputed; see Haber, 1983) evidence argues in favor of the existence of an iconic store. The iconic store is a discrete visual sensory register that holds information for very short periods. Its name derives from the fact that information is stored in the form of icons. These in turn are visual images that represent something. Icons usually resemble whatever is being represented.

If you have ever “written” your name with a lighted sparkler (or stick of incense) against a dark background, you have experienced the persistence of a visual memory. You briefly “see” your name, although the sparkler leaves no physical trace. This visual persistence is an example of the type of information held in the iconic store.

Sperling’s Discovery
The initial discovery regarding the existence of the iconic store came from a doctoral dissertation by a graduate student at Harvard University named George Sperling (1960). He addressed the question of how much information we can encode in a single, brief glance at a set of stimuli. Sperling flashed an array of letters and numbers on a screen for a mere 50 milliseconds (thousandths of a second). Participants were asked to report the identity and location of as many of the symbols as they could recall. Sperling could be sure that participants got only one glance because previous research had shown that 0.050 seconds is long enough for only a single glance at the presented stimulus.

Sperling found that when participants were asked to report on what they saw, they remembered only about four symbols. The finding confirmed an earlier one
made by Brigden in 1933. The number of symbols recalled was pretty much the same, without regard to how many symbols had been in the visual display. Some of Sperling’s participants mentioned that they had seen all the stimuli clearly. But while reporting what they saw, they forgot the other stimuli. Sperling then conceived an ingenious idea for how to measure what the participants saw. The procedure used by Brigden and in the first set of studies by Sperling is a **whole-report procedure**. In this procedure, participants report every symbol they have seen. Sperling then introduced a **partial-report procedure**. Here, participants need to report only part of what they see.

Sperling found a way to obtain a sample of his participants’ knowledge. He then extrapolated from this sample to estimate their total knowledge. His logic was similar to that of school examinations, which also are used as samples of an individual’s total knowledge of course material. Sperling presented symbols in three rows of four symbols each. Figure 5.3 shows a display similar to one that Sperling’s participants might have seen. Sperling informed participants that they would have to recall only a single row of the display. The row to be recalled was signaled by a tone of high, medium, or low pitch. The pitches corresponded to the need to recall the top, middle, or bottom row, respectively.

To estimate the duration of iconic memory, Sperling manipulated the interval between the display and the tone. The range of the interval was from 0.10 seconds before the onset of the display to 1.0 second after the offset of the display. The partial-report procedure dramatically changed how much participants could recall. Sperling then multiplied the number of symbols recalled with this procedure by three. The reason was that participants had to recall only one third of the information presented but did not know beforehand which of the three lines they would be asked to report.

Using this partial-report procedure, Sperling found that participants had available roughly 9 of the 12 symbols if they were cued immediately before or immediately after the appearance of the display. However, when they were cued one second later, their recall was down to 4 or 5 of the 12 items. This level of recall was about the same as that obtained through the whole-report procedure. These data suggest that the iconic store can hold about 9 items. They also suggest that information in this store decays very rapidly (Figure 5.4). Indeed, the advantage of the partial-report procedure is

![Figure 5.3 Display from a Visual-Recall Task.](image)

This symbolic display is similar to the one used for George Sperling’s visual-recall task.

reduced drastically by 0.3 seconds of delay. It essentially is obliterated by 1 second of delay for onset of the tone.

Sperling’s results suggest that information fades rapidly from iconic storage. Why are we subjectively unaware of such a fading phenomenon? First, we rarely are subjected to stimuli such as the ones in his experiment. They appeared for only 50 milliseconds and then disappeared before participants needed to recall them. Second and more important, however, we are unable to distinguish what we see in iconic memory from what we actually see in the environment. What we see in iconic memory is what we take to be in the environment. Participants in Sperling’s experiment generally reported that they could still see the display up to 150 milliseconds after it actually had been terminated.

Elegant as it was, Sperling’s use of the partial-report procedure was imperfect. It still suffered, at least to some small extent, from the problem inherent in the full-report procedure: Participants had to report multiple symbols. They may have experienced fading of memory during the report. Indeed, a distinct possibility of output interference exists. In this case, the production of output interferes with the phenomenon being studied. That is, verbally reporting multiple symbols may interfere with reports of iconic memory.

**Subsequent Refinement** In subsequent work, participants were shown displays of two rows of eight randomly chosen letters for a duration of 50 milliseconds (Averbach & Coriell, 1961). In this investigation, a small mark appeared just above one of the positions where a letter had appeared (or was about to appear). Its appearance
was at varying time intervals before or after presentation of the letters. In this research, then, participants needed to report only a single letter at a time. The procedure thus minimized output interference. These investigators found that when the mark appeared immediately before or after the stimulus display, participants could report accurately on about 75% of the trials. Thus, they seemed to be holding about 12 items (75% of 16) in sensory memory. Sperling’s estimate of the capacity of iconic memory, therefore, may have been conservative. The evidence in this study suggests that when output interference is greatly reduced, the estimates of the capacity of iconic memory may greatly increase. Iconic memory may comprise as many as 12 items.

A second experiment (Averbach & Coriell, 1961) revealed an additional important characteristic of iconic memory: It can be erased. The erasable nature of iconic memory definitely makes our visual sensations more sensible. We would be in serious trouble if everything we saw in our visual environment persisted for too long. For example, if we are scanning the environment at a rapid pace, we need the visual information to disappear quickly so that our memory does not get overloaded.

The investigators found that when a stimulus was presented after a target letter in the same position that the target letter had occupied, it could erase the visual icon (Averbach & Coriell, 1961). This interference is called backward visual masking. Backward visual masking is mental erasure of a stimulus caused by the placement of one stimulus where another one had appeared previously. If the mask stimulus is presented in the same location as a letter and within 100 milliseconds of the presentation of the letter, the mask is superimposed on the letter. For example, *F* followed by *L* would be *E*. At longer intervals between the target and the mask, the mask erases the original stimulus. For example, only the *L* would remain if *F* and then *L* had been presented. At still longer intervals between the target and the mask, the mask no longer interferes. This non-interference is presumably because the target information already has been transferred to more durable memory storage.

To summarize, visual information appears to enter our memory system through an iconic store. This store holds visual information for very short periods. In the normal course of events, this information may be transferred to another store. Or it may be erased. Erasure occurs if other information is superimposed on it before there is sufficient time for the transfer of the information to another memory store. Erasure or movement into another store also occurs with auditory information that is in echoic memory.

**Short-Term Store**

Most of us have little or no introspective access to our sensory memory stores. Nevertheless, we all have access to our short-term memory store. It holds memories for a few seconds and occasionally up to a couple of minutes. For example, can you remember the name of the researcher who discovered the iconic store? What about the names of the researchers who subsequently refined this work? If you can recall those names, you used some memory-control processes for doing so. According to the Atkinson-Shiffrin model, the short-term store does more than hold onto a few items. It also has some control processes available that regulate the flow of information to and from the long-term store, where we may hold information for longer periods. Typically, material remains in the short-term store for about 30 seconds, unless it is rehearsed to retain it. Information is stored acoustically (by the way it sounds) rather than visually (by the way it looks).
How many items of information can we hold in short-term memory at any one time? In general, our immediate (short-term) memory capacity for a wide range of items appears to be about seven items, plus or minus two (Miller, 1956). An item can be something simple, such as a digit, or something more complex, such as a word. If we chunk together a string of, say, 20 letters or numbers into 7 meaningful items, we can remember them. We could not, however, remember 20 items and repeat them immediately. For example, most of us cannot hold in short-term memory this string of 21 numbers: 101001000100001000100. However, if we chunk this string of numbers into larger units, such as 10, 100, 1,000, 10,000, 1,000, and 100. We probably will be able to reproduce easily the 21 numerals as 6 items (Miller, 1956).

Other factors also influence the capacity for temporary storage in memory. For example, the number of syllables we pronounce with each item affects the number of items we can recall. When each item has a larger number of syllables, we can recall fewer items (Hulme et al., 2006). In addition, any delay or interference can cause our seven-item capacity to drop to about three items. In general, the capacity limit may be closer to three to five than it is to seven (Cowan, 2001).

Most studies have used verbal stimuli to test the capacity of the short-term store, but people can also hold visual information in short-term memory. For example, they can hold information about shapes as well as their colors and orientations. What is the capacity of the short-term store of visual information? Is it less, the same, or perhaps greater?

A team of investigators set out to discover the capacity of the short-term store for visual information (Luck & Vogel, 1997; Vogel, Woodman, & Luck, 2001). They presented experimental participants with two visual displays. The displays were presented in sequence. The stimuli were of three types: colored squares, black lines at varying orientations, and colored lines at different orientations. Thus, the third kind of stimulus combined the features of the first two. The kind of stimulus was the same in each of the two displays. For example, if the first display contained colored squares, so did the second. The two displays could be either the same or different from each other. If they were different, then it was by only one feature. The participants needed to indicate whether the two displays were the same or different. The investigators found that participants could hold roughly four items in memory, which were within the estimates suggested by Cowan (2001). The results were the same whether just individual features were varied (i.e., colored squares, black lines at varying orientation) or pairs of features were varied (i.e., colored lines at different orientations). Thus, storage seems to depend on numbers of objects rather than numbers of features.

This work contained a possible confound (i.e., other responsible factors that cannot be easily disentangled from the supposed causal factor). In the stimuli with colored lines at different orientations, the added feature was at the same spatial location as the original one. That is, color and orientation were, with respect to the same object, in the same place in the display. A further study thus was done to separate the effects of spatial location from number of objects (Lee & Chun, 2001). In this research, stimuli comprising boxes and lines could be either at separate locations or at overlapping locations. The overlapping locations thus separated the objects from the fixed locations. The research would enable one to determine whether people can remember four objects, as suggested in the previous work, or four spatial locations. The results were the same as in the earlier research. Participants still could remember four objects, regardless of spatial locations. Therefore, memory was for
objects, not spatial locations. Further, using American Sign Language, researchers have found that short-term memory can hold approximately four items for signed letters. This finding is consistent with earlier work on visual-spatial short-term memory. The finding makes sense, given the visual nature of these items (Bavelier et al., 2006; Wilson & Emmorey, 2006).

**Long-Term Store**

We constantly use short-term memory throughout our daily activities. When most of us talk about memory, however, we usually are talking about long-term memory. Here we keep memories that stay with us over long periods, perhaps indefinitely. All of us rely heavily on our long-term memory. We hold in it information we need to get us by in our day-to-day lives—people’s names, where we keep things, how we schedule ourselves on different days, and so on.

How much information can we hold in long-term memory? How long does the information last? The question of storage capacity can be disposed of quickly because the answer is simple. We do not know. Nor do we know how we would find out. We can design experiments to tax the limits of short-term memory, but we do not know how to test the limits of long-term memory and thereby find out its capacity. Some theorists have suggested that the capacity of long-term memory is infinite, at least in practical terms (Bahrick, 2000; Brady, 2008). It turns out that the question of how long information lasts in long-term memory is not easily answerable. At present, we have no proof even that there is an absolute outer limit to how long information can be stored.

What is stored in the brain? Wilder Penfield addressed this question while performing operations on the brains of conscious patients afflicted with epilepsy. He used electrical stimulation of various parts of the cerebral cortex to locate the origins of each patient’s problem. In fact, his work was instrumental in plotting the motor and sensory areas of the cortex, described in Chapter 2.

During the course of such stimulation, Penfield (1955, 1969) found that patients sometimes would appear to recall memories from their childhoods. These memories may not have been called to mind for many, many years. (Note that the patients could be stimulated to recall episodes such as events from their childhood, not facts such as the names of U.S. presidents.) These data suggested to Penfield that long-term memories might be permanent.

Some researchers have disputed Penfield’s interpretations (e.g., Loftus & Loftus, 1980). For example, they have noted the small number of such reports in relation to the hundreds of patients on whom Penfield operated. In addition, we cannot be certain that the patients actually were recalling these events. They may have been inventing them. Other researchers, using empirical techniques on older participants, found contradictory evidence.

Some researchers tested participants’ memory for names and photographs of their high-school classmates (Bahrick, Bahrick, & Wittlinger, 1975). Even after 25 years, there was little forgetting of some aspects of memory. Participants tended to recognize names as belonging to classmates rather than to outsiders. Recognition memory for matching names to graduation photos was quite high. As you might expect, recall of names showed a higher rate of forgetting.

The term permastore refers to the very long-term storage of information, such as knowledge of a foreign language (Bahrick, 1984a, 1984b; Bahrick et al., 1993) and of mathematics (Bahrick & Hall, 1991).
Schmidt and colleagues (2000) studied the permastore effect for names of streets near one’s childhood homes. Indeed, the author just returned to his childhood home of more than 40 years ago and perfectly remembered the names of the nearby streets. These findings indicate that permastore can occur even for information that you have passively learned. Some researchers have suggested that permastore is a separate memory system. Others, such as Neisser (1999), have argued that one long-term memory system can account for both. There is to date no resolution of the issue.

In any case, research on the immense capacity of long-term memory has motivated researchers, instructors, and teachers to come up with new methods to help students memorize what they learn. Students do have great memory capacity, and ideally, they should leave school with both the ability to think critically and also a good knowledge base about which to think. To this end, new and motivating techniques are constantly being developed and include on-line quizzes that students can take to test their knowledge, or the use of clickers (remote control devices that allow students to communicate with their teacher in front via a computer system) with which students can answer multiple-choice questions during class and can give feedback to the teacher (Miller, 2009).

The Levels-of-Processing Model

A radical departure from the three-stores model of memory is the levels-of-processing framework, which postulates that memory does not comprise three or even any specific number of separate stores, but rather varies along a continuous dimension in terms of depth of encoding (Craik & Lockhart, 1972, 2008). In other words, there are theoretically an infinite number of levels of processing (LOP) at which items can be encoded through elaboration—or successively deeper understanding of material to be learned. There are no distinct boundaries between one level and the next. The emphasis in this model is on processing as the key to storage. The level at which information is stored will depend, in large part, on how it is encoded. Moreover, the deeper the level of processing, the higher, in general, is the probability that an item may be retrieved (Craik & Brown, 2000).

A set of experiments seems to support the LOP view (Craik & Tulving, 1975). Participants received a list of words. A question preceded each word. Questions were varied to encourage item elaboration on three different levels of processing. In progressive order of depth, they were physical, phonological, and semantic. Samples of the words and the questions are shown in Table 5.2. The results of the research were clear: The deeper the level of processing encouraged by the question, the higher the level of recall achieved. Similar results emerged independently in Russia (Zinchenko, 1962, 1981).

The levels-of-processing framework can also be applied to nonverbal stimuli. Melinda Burgess and George Weaver (2003) showed participants photos of faces and asked them questions about the persons of the photo to induce either deep or shallow processing. Faces that were deeply processed were better recognized on a subsequent test than those that were studied at a lower level of processing. A level-of-processing (or depth-of-processing) benefit can be seen for a variety of populations, including in people with schizophrenia. People suffering from schizophrenia often suffer from memory impairments because they do not process words semantically. Deeper processing helps them improve their memory (Ragland et al., 2003).
An even more powerful inducement to recall has been termed the self-reference effect (Rogers, Kuiper, & Kirker, 1977). In the self-reference effect, participants show very high levels of recall when asked to relate words meaningfully to the participants by determining whether the words describe them. Even the words that participants assess as not describing themselves are recalled at high levels. This high recall is a result of considering whether the words do or do not describe the participants. However, the highest levels of recall occur with words that people consider self-descriptive. Similar self-reference effects have been found by many other researchers (e.g., Bower & Gilligan, 1979; Reeder, McCormick, & Esselman, 1987). Objects can be better remembered, for example, if they belong to the participant (Cunningham et al., 2008). Some researchers suggest that the self-reference effect is distinctive, but others suggest that it is explained easily in terms of the LOP framework or other ordinary memory processes (e.g., Mills, 1983). Specifically, each of us has a very elaborate self-schema. This self-schema is an organized system of internal cues regarding our attributes, our personal experiences, and ourselves. Thus, we can richly and elaborately encode information related to ourselves much more so than information about other topics (Bellezza, 1984, 1992).

An even more powerful inducement to recall has been termed the self-reference effect (Rogers, Kuiper, & Kirker, 1977). In the self-reference effect, participants show very high levels of recall when asked to relate words meaningfully to the participants by determining whether the words describe them. Even the words that participants assess as not describing themselves are recalled at high levels. This high recall is a result of considering whether the words do or do not describe the participants. However, the highest levels of recall occur with words that people consider self-descriptive. Similar self-reference effects have been found by many other researchers (e.g., Bower & Gilligan, 1979; Reeder, McCormick, & Esselman, 1987). Objects can be better remembered, for example, if they belong to the participant (Cunningham et al., 2008). Some researchers suggest that the self-reference effect is distinctive, but others suggest that it is explained easily in terms of the LOP framework or other ordinary memory processes (e.g., Mills, 1983). Specifically, each of us has a very elaborate self-schema. This self-schema is an organized system of internal cues regarding our attributes, our personal experiences, and ourselves. Thus, we can richly and elaborately encode information related to ourselves much more so than information about other topics (Bellezza, 1984, 1992).

Despite much supporting evidence, the LOP framework as a whole has its critics. For one thing, some researchers suggest that the particular levels may involve

---

**Table 5.2 Levels-of-Processing Framework**

Among the levels of processing proposed by Fergus Craik and Endel Tulving are the physical, phonological, and semantic levels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level of Processing</th>
<th>Basis for Processing</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physical</td>
<td>Visually apparent features of the letters</td>
<td>Word: TABLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Question: Is the word written in capital letters?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phonological</td>
<td>Sound combinations associated with the letters [e.g., rhyming]</td>
<td>Word: CAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Question: Does the word rhyme with “MAT”?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantic</td>
<td>Meaning of the word</td>
<td>Word: DAFFODIL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Question: Is the word a type of plant?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

An even more powerful inducement to recall has been termed the self-reference effect (Rogers, Kuiper, & Kirker, 1977). In the self-reference effect, participants show very high levels of recall when asked to relate words meaningfully to the participants by determining whether the words describe them. Even the words that participants assess as not describing themselves are recalled at high levels. This high recall is a result of considering whether the words do or do not describe the participants. However, the highest levels of recall occur with words that people consider self-descriptive. Similar self-reference effects have been found by many other researchers (e.g., Bower & Gilligan, 1979; Reeder, McCormick, & Esselman, 1987). Objects can be better remembered, for example, if they belong to the participant (Cunningham et al., 2008). Some researchers suggest that the self-reference effect is distinctive, but others suggest that it is explained easily in terms of the LOP framework or other ordinary memory processes (e.g., Mills, 1983). Specifically, each of us has a very elaborate self-schema. This self-schema is an organized system of internal cues regarding our attributes, our personal experiences, and ourselves. Thus, we can richly and elaborately encode information related to ourselves much more so than information about other topics (Bellezza, 1984, 1992).

Despite much supporting evidence, the LOP framework as a whole has its critics. For one thing, some researchers suggest that the particular levels may involve

---

**INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY**

**Levels of Processing**

Ask some friends or family members to help you with a memory experiment. Give half of them the instruction to count the number of letters in the words you are about to recite. Give the other half the instruction to think of three words related to the words you are about to recite. Recite the following words about 5 seconds apart: beauty, ocean, competitor, bad, decent, happy, brave, beverage, artistic, dejected. About 5 or 10 minutes later, ask your friends to write down as many of the 10 words as they can remember. In general, those who were asked to think of three related words to the words you read will remember more than those who were asked to count the number of letters in the words. This is a demonstration of levels of processing. Those friends who thought of three related words processed the words more deeply than those who merely counted up the number of letters in the words. Words that are processed more deeply are remembered better.
a circular definition. On this view, the levels are defined as deeper because the information is retained better. But the information is viewed as being retained better because the levels are deeper. In addition, some researchers noted some paradoxes in retention. For example, under some circumstances, strategies that use rhymes have produced better retention than those using just semantic rehearsal. That means, focusing on superficial sounds and not underlying meanings can result in better retention than focusing on repetition of underlying meanings. But now imagine two conditions—one in which participants encode the information acoustically (based on rhymes) and retrieve it based on acoustic cues as well; and one in which participants both encode and retrieve the information semantically. For example, participants are presented with a word and then have to determine whether that word rhymes with another word (acoustic encoding). For semantic encoding, they have to determine whether that word belongs to a given category or fits into a given sentence. Performance is greater for semantic retrieval than for acoustic retrieval (Fisher & Craik, 1977).

In light of these criticisms and some contrary findings, the LOP model has been revised. The sequence of the levels of encoding may not be as important as was thought before. Two other variables may be of more importance: the way people process (elaborate) the encoding of an item (e.g., phonological or semantic), and the way the item is retrieved later on. The better the match between the type of elaboration of the encoding and the type of task required for retrieval, the better the retrieval results (Morris, Bransford, & Franks, 1977).

Furthermore, there appear to be two kinds of strategies for elaborating the encoding. The first is within-item elaboration. It elaborates encoding of the particular item (e.g., a word or other fact) in terms of its characteristics, including the various levels of processing. The second kind of strategy is between-item elaboration. It elaborates encoding by relating each item’s features (again, at various levels) to the features of items already in memory. Thus, suppose you wanted to be sure to remember something in particular. You could elaborate it at various levels for each of the two strategies.

PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS OF COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY

Elaboration strategies have practical applications: In studying, you may wish to match the way in which you encode the material to the way in which you will be expected to retrieve it in the future, because the better the match between the way you encode the material and the way you will need to retrieve it later, the better you are able to retrieve items from memory. For example, if you are learning a new language and have a vocabulary test coming up, you will concentrate on learning the meaning of the words. If you have to write an essay, you will also need to concentrate on sentence structure and grammar.

Also, the more elaborately and diversely you encode material, the more readily you are likely to recall it later in a variety of task settings. Just looking over material again and again in the same way is less likely to be productive for learning the material than is finding more than one way in which to learn it. If the context for retrieval will require you to have a deep understanding of the information, you should find ways to encode the material at deep levels of processing, such as by asking yourself meaningful questions about the material.

Are there any circumstances under which elaboration might be problematic?
An Integrative Model: Working Memory

The working-memory model is probably the most widely used and accepted model today. Psychologists who use it view short-term and long-term memory from a different perspective (e.g., Baddeley, 2007, 2009; Unsworth, 2009). Table 5.3 shows the contrasts between the Atkinson-Shiffrin model and an alternative perspective. Note the semantic distinctions in how memory components are labeled, the differences in metaphorical representation, and the differences in emphasis for each view. The key feature of the alternative view is the role of working memory. Working memory holds only the most recently activated, or conscious, portion of long-term memory, and it moves these activated elements into and out of brief, temporary memory storage (Dosher, 2003).

The Components of Working Memory

Alan Baddeley has suggested an integrative model of memory (see Figure 5.5; Baddeley, 1990a, 1990b, 2007, 2009). It synthesizes the working-memory model with the LOP framework. Essentially, he views the LOP framework as an extension of, rather than as a replacement for, the working-memory model.

Baddeley originally suggested that working memory comprises five elements: the visuospatial sketchpad, the phonological loop, the central executive, subsidiary Table 5.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Terminology: definition of memory stores</th>
<th>Traditional Three-Store View</th>
<th>Alternative View of Memory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Working memory is another name for short-term memory, which is distinct from long-term memory.</td>
<td>Working memory (active memory) is that part of long-term memory that comprises all the knowledge of facts and procedures that recently has been activated in memory, including the brief, fleeting short-term memory and its contents.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metaphor for envisioning the relationships</td>
<td>Short-term memory may be envisioned as being distinct from long-term memory, perhaps either alongside it or hierarchically linked to it.</td>
<td>Short-term memory, working memory, and long-term memory may be envisioned as nested concentric spheres, in which working memory contains only the most recently activated portion of long-term memory, and short-term memory contains only a very small, fleeting portion of working memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metaphor for the movement of information</td>
<td>Information moves directly from long-term memory to short-term memory and then back—never in both locations at once.</td>
<td>Information remains within long-term memory; when activated, information moves into long-term memory’s specialized working memory, which actively will move information into and out of the short-term memory store contained within it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emphasis</td>
<td>Distinction between long- and short-term memory.</td>
<td>Role of activation in moving information into working memory and the role of working memory in memory processes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
“slave systems,” and the episodic buffer. The first element, the **visuospatial sketchpad**, briefly holds some visual images.

The **phonological loop** briefly holds inner speech for verbal comprehension and for acoustic rehearsal. We use the phonological loop for a number of everyday tasks, including sounding out new and difficult words and solving word problems. There are two critical components of this loop. One is **phonological storage**, which holds information in memory. The other is **subvocal rehearsal**, which is used to put the information into memory in the first place. The role of subvocal rehearsal can be seen in the following example. Try to memorize the following list of words while repeating the number five to yourself continuously:

Tree, pencil, marshmallow, lamp, sunglasses, computer, chocolate, noise, clock, snow, river, square, store.

Did you notice how hard it is to memorize these words? Try it again without repeating the number five to yourself—it should be much easier now! So what happens when you repeat the number five while memorizing words? In this case subvocal rehearsal is inhibited and you would be unable to rehearse the new words. When subvocal rehearsal is inhibited, the new information is not stored. This phenomenon is called **articulatory suppression**. Articulatory suppression is more pronounced when the information is presented visually versus aurally (e.g., by hearing). The amount of information that can be manipulated within the phonological loop is limited. Thus, we can remember fewer long words compared with short words (Baddeley, 2000b). Without this loop, acoustic information decays after about 2 seconds.

The third element is a **central executive**, which both coordinates attentional activities and governs responses. The central executive is critical to working memory because it is the gating mechanism that decides what information to process further and how to process this information. It decides what resources to allocate to memory and related tasks, and how to allocate them. It is also involved in higher-order reasoning and comprehension and is central to human intelligence.

---

**Figure 5.5 Working Memory.**

The components of the working-memory model comprise the central executive, the phonological loop, the visuospatial sketchpad, and the episodic buffer, as well as several “subsidiary slave systems” (not pictured).
The fourth element is a number of other “subsidiary slave systems” that perform other cognitive or perceptual tasks (Baddeley, 1989, p. 36). The fifth component is the episodic buffer. The episodic buffer is a limited-capacity system that is capable of binding information from the visuospatial sketchpad and the phonological loop as well as from long-term memory into a unitary episodic representation. This component integrates information from different parts of working memory—that is, visual-spatial and phonological—so that they make sense to us. This incorporation allows us to solve problems and re-evaluate previous experiences with more recent knowledge.

Whereas the three-store view emphasizes the structural receptacles for stored information (a relatively passive task), the working-memory model underscores the functions of working memory in governing the processes of memory. These processes include encoding and integrating information. Examples are integrating acoustic and visual information through cross-modality, organizing information into meaningful chunks, and linking new information to existing forms of knowledge representation in long-term memory.

We can conceptualize the differing emphases with contrasting metaphors. For example, we can compare the three-store view to a warehouse in which information is passively stored. The sensory store serves as the loading dock. The short-term store comprises the area surrounding the loading dock. Here, information is stored temporarily until it is moved to or from the correct location in the warehouse (long-term store).

A metaphor for the working-memory model might be a multimedia production house. It continuously generates and manipulates images and sounds. It also coordinates the integration of sights and sounds into meaningful arrangements. Once images, sounds, and other information are stored, they are still available for reformatting and reintegration in novel ways, as new demands and new information become available.

**Neuroscience and Working Memory**

Neuropsychological methods, and especially brain imaging, can be very helpful in understanding the nature of memory. Support for a distinction between working memory and long-term memory comes from neuropsychological research. Neuropsychological studies have shown abundant evidence of a brief memory buffer. The buffer is used for remembering information temporarily. It is distinct from long-term memory, which is used for remembering information for long periods (Rudner et al., 2007; Squire & Knowlton, 2000).

Furthermore, through some promising new research using positron emission tomography (PET) techniques, investigators have found evidence for distinct brain areas involved in the different aspects of working memory. The phonological loop, maintaining speech-related information, appears to involve activation in the left hemisphere of the lateral frontal and inferior parietal lobes as well as the temporal lobe (Gazzaniga et al., 2009; Baddeley, 2006).

It is interesting that the visuospatial sketchpad appears to activate slightly different areas. Which ones it activates depends on factors like task difficulty and the length of the retention interval (Logie & Della Sala, 2005). Shorter intervals activate areas of the occipital and right frontal lobes. Longer intervals activate areas of the parietal and left frontal lobes (Haxby et al., 1995).

Relatively little is known about the central executive. The central executive functions appear to involve activation mostly in the frontal lobes (Baddeley, 2006; Roberts, Robbins, & Weiskrantz, 1996).

Finally, the episodic buffer operations seem to involve the bilateral activation of the frontal lobes and portions of the temporal lobes, including the left hippocampus (Rudner et al., 2007). Different aspects of working memory are represented in the brain differently. Figure 5.6 shows some of these differences.
Figure 5.6  The Brain and Working Memory.

Different areas of the cerebral cortex are involved in different aspects of working memory. The figure shows those aspects involved primarily in the articulatory loop, including phonological storage and subvocal rehearsal.

Measuring Working Memory

Working memory can be measured through a number of different tasks. The most commonly used are shown in Figure 5.7.

Task (a) is a retention-delay task. It is the simplest task shown in the figure. An item is shown—in this case, a geometric shape. (The + at the beginning is merely a

![Figure 5.7 Tasks to Assess Working Memory.](image-url)

Different kinds of tasks can be used to assess working memory.

focus point to indicate that the series of items is beginning.) There is then a retention interval, which may be filled with other tasks, or unfilled; in which case time passes without any specifically designed intervening activity. The participant is then presented with a stimulus and must say whether it is old or new. In the figure, the stimulus being tested is new. So “new” would be the correct answer.

Task (b) is a temporally ordered working memory load task. A series of items is presented. After a while, the series of asterisks indicates that a test item will be presented. The test item is presented, and the participant must say whether the item is old or new. Because “4,” the number in the figure, has not been presented before, the correct answer is “new.”

Task (c) is a temporal order task. A series of items is presented. Then the asterisks indicate a test item will be given. The test item shows two previously presented items, 3 and 7. The participant must indicate which of the two numbers, 3 or 7, appeared more recently. The correct answer is 7 because 7 occurred after 3 in the list.

Task (d) is an n-back task. Stimuli are presented. At specified points, one is asked to repeat the stimulus that occurred n presentations back. For example, one might be asked to repeat the digit that occurred 1 back—or just before (as with the 6). Or one might be asked to repeat the digit that occurred 2 back (as with the 7).

Task (e) is a temporally ordered working memory load task. It can also be referred to simply as a digit-span task (when digits are used). One is presented with a series of stimuli. After they are presented, one repeats them back in the order they were presented. A variant of this task has the participant repeat them back in the order opposite to that in which they were presented—from the end to the beginning.

Finally, Task (f) is a temporally ordered working memory load task. One is given a series of simple arithmetic problems. For each problem, one indicates whether the sum or difference is correct. At the end, one repeats the results of the arithmetic problems in their correct order.

Each of the tasks described here and in Figure 5.7 allows for the examination of how much information we can manipulate in memory. Frequently, these tasks are paired with a second task (called, appropriately, a secondary task) so that researchers can learn more about the central executive. The central executive is responsible for allocating attentional and other resources to ongoing tasks. By having participants do more than one task at once, we can examine how mental resources are assigned (Baudouin et al., 2006; D’Amico & Guarnera, 2005). A task that often is paired with those listed in Figure 5.7 is a random-number generation task. In this task, the participant must try to generate a random series of numbers while completing a working memory task (Rudkin, Pearson, & Logie, 2007).

**Intelligence and Working Memory**

Recent work suggests that a critical component of intelligence may be working memory. Indeed, some investigators have argued that intelligence may be little more than working memory (Kyllonen & Christal, 1990). In one study, participants read sets of passages and, after they had read the passages, tried to remember the last word of each passage (Daneman & Carpenter, 1983). Recall was highly correlated with verbal ability. In another study, participants performed a variety of working memory tasks. In one task, for example, the participants saw a set of simple arithmetic problems, each of which was followed by a word or a digit. An example would be
“Is \((3 \times 5) - 6 = 7?\) TABLE” (Turner & Engle, 1989; see also Hambrick, Kane, & Engle, 2005). The participants saw sets of from two to six such problems and solved each one. After solving the problems in the set, they tried to recall the words that followed the problems. The number of words recalled was highly correlated with measured intelligence.

There are indications that a measure of working memory can provide almost perfect prediction of scores on tests of general ability (Colom et al., 2004; see also Kane, Hambrick, & Conway, 2005). Other researchers have demonstrated a significant but smaller relationship between working memory and general intelligence (e.g., Ackerman, Beier, & Boyle, 2005). Thus, it appears that the ability to store and manipulate information in working memory may be an important aspect of intelligence. It is probably not all there is to intelligence, however.

**Multiple Memory Systems**

The working-memory model is consistent with the notion that multiple systems may be involved in the storage and retrieval of information. Recall that when Wilder Penfield electrically stimulated the brains of his patients, the patients often asserted that they vividly recalled particular episodes and events. They did not, however, recall semantic facts that were unrelated to any particular event. These findings suggest that there may be at least two separate explicit memory systems. One would be for organizing and storing information with a distinctive time referent. It would address questions such as, “What did you eat for lunch yesterday?” or “Who was the first person you saw this morning?” The second system would be for information that has no particular time referent. It would address questions such as, “Who were the two psychologists who first proposed the three-stores model of memory?” and “What is a mnemonist?”

Based on such findings, Endel Tulving (1972) proposed a distinction between two kinds of explicit memory. **Semantic memory** stores general world knowledge. It is our memory for facts that are not unique to us and that are not recalled in any particular temporal context. **Episodic memory** stores personally experienced events or episodes. According to Tulving, we use episodic memory when we learn lists of words or when we need to recall something that occurred to us at a particular time or in a particular context. In either case, we have personally experienced the learning as associated with a given time. The list we learn in the experiment, for example, is associated with the experiment as the context for learning. For example, suppose I needed to remember that I saw Harrison Hardimanowitz in the dentist’s office yesterday. I would be drawing on an episodic memory. But if I needed to remember the name of the person I now see in the waiting room (“Harrison Hardimanowitz”), I would be drawing on a semantic memory. There is no particular time tag associated with the name of that individual being Harrison. But there is a time tag associated with my having seen him at the dentist’s office yesterday.

Tulving (1983, 1989) and others (e.g., Shoben, 1984) provide support for the distinction between semantic and episodic memory. It is based on both cognitive research and neurological investigation. The neurological investigations have involved electrical-stimulation studies, studies of patients with memory disorders, and cerebral blood flow studies. For example, lesions in the frontal lobe appear to affect recollection regarding when a stimulus was presented. But they do not affect
recall or recognition memory that a particular stimulus was presented (Schacter, 1989a).

However, it is not clear that semantic and episodic memories are two distinct systems. They sometimes appear to function in different ways. But many cognitive psychologists question this distinction (e.g., Eysenck & Keane, 1990; Humphreys, Bain, & Pike, 1989). They point out that the boundary between these two types of memory is often fuzzy. They also note methodological problems with some of the supportive evidence. Perhaps episodic memory is merely a specialized form of semantic memory (Tulving, 1984, 1986).

Some neurological evidence suggests that these two types of memory are separate, however. Through neuropsychological methods, investigators found dissociations, which means that separate and distinct areas seem to be involved in semantic versus episodic memory retrieval (Prince, Tsukiura, & Cabeza, 2007). When researchers find neural substrates of particular brain functions, one speaks about dissociation. There are patients who suffer only from loss of semantic memory, but their episodic memory is not impaired, as well as vice versa (Temple & Richardson, 2004; Vargha-Khadem et al., 1997). A person with semantic memory loss may have trouble remembering what date it is or who the current president is; a person with episodic memory loss cannot remember personal events like where she met her spouse for the first time. These observations indicate that there is a dissociation between the two kinds of memory. These findings all support the conclusion that there are separate episodic and semantic memory systems.

A neuroscientific model called HERA (hemispheric encoding/retrieval asymmetry) attempts to account for differences in hemispheric activation for semantic versus episodic memories. According to this model, there is greater activation in the left than in the right prefrontal hemisphere for tasks requiring retrieval from semantic memory (Nyberg, Cabeza, & Tulving, 1996; Tulving et al., 1994). In contrast, there is more activation in the right than in the left prefrontal hemisphere for episodic-retrieval tasks. This model, then, proposes that semantic and episodic memories must be distinct because they draw on separate areas of the brain. For example, if one is asked to generate verbs that are associated with nouns (e.g., “drive” with “car”), this task requires semantic memory. It results in greater left-hemispheric activation (Nyberg, Cabeza, & Tulving, 1996). In contrast, if people are asked to freely recall a list of words—an episodic-memory task—they show more right-hemispheric activation. Some recent fMRI and ERP studies have not found the predicted frontal asymmetries during encoding and retrieval (Berryhill et al., 2007; Evans & Federmeier, 2009).

Other findings suggest that the neural processes involved in these memories overlap (Rajah & McIntosh, 2005). Although there is substantial behavioral and neurological evidence that there are differences between these two types of memory, most researchers agree that there is, at the very least, a great deal of interaction between these two types of memory. As a result, the question of whether these forms of memory are separate is still open.

A taxonomy of the memory system in terms of the dissociations described in the previous sections is shown in Figure 5.8 (Squire, 1986, 1993). It distinguishes declarative (explicit) memory from various kinds of nondeclarative (implicit) memory. Nondeclarative memory comprises procedural memory, priming effects, simple
IN THE LAB OF MARCIA K. JOHNSON

Memory and the Brain

A memory is a mental experience that is taken to be a veridical (truthful) representation of an event from one’s past. Attributions we make about the origin of the active information that constitutes our mental experience are the result of cognitive processes that encode, revive, and monitor information from various sources or experiences. The integration of information across individual experiences is necessary for all higher order—complex thought. But this very capacity for creative integration of information from multiple events makes us vulnerable to false memories because we sometimes misattribute the sources of the information that comes to mind. Source monitoring errors include many types of confusions, for example, attributing something that was imagined to perception, an intention to an action, something only heard about to something one witnessed, something read in a tabloid to a television news program, or an incident that occurred in place A or at time A to place B or time B. Memories can be false in relatively minor ways (e.g., believing one last saw the car keys in the kitchen when they actually were in the living room) and in major ways that have profound implications for oneself and others (e.g., mistakenly believing one is the source or originator of an idea, or believing that one was sexually abused as a child when one was not).

Investigators from many labs are using neuroimaging (e.g., functional magnetic resonance imaging [fMRI]) to help identify the brain regions that encode different features of events (e.g., scenes [parahippocampal gyrus], faces [fusiform gyrus], lateral occipital cortex [objects]), and the regions involved in binding these features into representations of complex events (e.g., hippocampus). We have been particularly interested in the fact that the same regions are active when you perceptually process something (e.g., a visual scene) and when you think of it. This similarity between perception and reflection is one of the factors that sets the stage for false memories.

Several types of evidence indicate that the prefrontal cortex [PFC] plays a key role both in binding features of stimuli together during encoding and in later identifying the sources of mental experiences during remembering. Damage to PFC produces deficits in source memory. Source memory errors are more likely in children (whose frontal lobes are slow to develop) and in older adults (who are likely to show increased neuropathology in PFC with age). PFC dysfunction may also play a role in schizophrenia, which sometimes includes severe source monitoring deficits in the form of delusions or hallucinations. Neuroimaging is helping to clarify the specific functions of PFC in source memory.

For example, in one type of study, participants see a series of items of two types (e.g., pictures and words). Later they are given a memory test in which they are shown three kinds of words: words that correspond to the pictures seen earlier, words seen earlier as words, and new words that do not correspond to any of the items seen earlier (new items). They are asked to identify the source of some items (e.g., say “yes” to items previously seen as pictures), and for other items to simply decide if they are familiar (say “yes” to any previously presented [“old”] item). Typically there is greater brain activity in PFC in the source identification compared with the old/new test condition. Studies from our lab and other labs suggest that both right and left PFC contribute to evaluating the origin of mental experiences, possibly in different ways (e.g., engaging different processes or monitoring different types of information), and interactions between the right and left hemispheres are likely important. Thus, one goal for future research is to relate specific component processes of cognition to patterns of activity across various regions of the PFC and to specify how PFC regions interact with other brain regions (e.g., the hippocampus and various feature representational areas) in producing the subjective experiences we take to be memories.
classical conditioning, habituation, sensitization, and perceptual aftereffects. In yet another view, there are five memory systems in all: episodic, semantic, perceptual (i.e., recognizing things on the basis of their form and structure), procedural, and working memory (Schacter, 2000).

A Connectionist Perspective

The network model provides the structural basis for the connectionist parallel distributed processing (PDP) model (see also Chapter 8; Frean, 2003; Sun, 2003). According to the PDP model, the key to knowledge representation lies in the connections among various nodes, or elements, stored in memory, not in each individual node (Feldman & Shastri, 2003). Activation of one node may prompt activation of a connected node. This process of spreading activation may prompt the activation of additional nodes (Figure 5.9). The PDP model fits nicely with the notion of working memory as comprising the activated portion of long-term memory. In this model, activation spreads through nodes within the network. This spreading continues as long as the activation does not exceed the limits of working memory.

A prime is a node that activates a connected node. A priming effect is the resulting activation of the node. The priming effect has been supported by considerable evidence. Examples are the aforementioned studies of priming as an aspect of implicit memory. In addition, some evidence supports the notion that priming is due to spreading activation (McClelland & Rumelhart, 1985, 1988). But not everyone agrees about the mechanism for the priming effect (see McKoon & Ratcliff, 1992b).

Connectionist models also have some intuitive appeal in their ability to integrate several contemporary notions about memory: Working memory comprises the activated portion of long-term memory and operates through at least some amount of parallel processing. Spreading activation involves the simultaneous (parallel) activation (priming) of multiple links among nodes within the network. Many cognitive psychologists who hold this integrated view suggest that part of the reason we humans are as efficient as we are in processing information is that we can handle many operations at once. Thus, the contemporary cognitive-psychological conceptions of working
memory, network models of memory, spreading activation, priming, and parallel processes mutually enhance and support one another. Some of the research supporting this connectionist model of memory has come directly from experimental studies of people performing cognitive tasks in laboratory settings. Connectionist models effectively explain priming effects, skill learning (procedural memory), and several other phenomena of memory. Thus far, however, connectionist models have failed to provide clear predictions and explanations of recall and recognition memory that occurs following a single episode or a single exposure to semantic information.

In addition to using laboratory experiments on human participants, cognitive psychologists have used computer models to simulate various aspects of information processing. The three-store model is based on serial (sequential) processing of information. Serial processing can be simulated on individual computers that handle only one operation at a time. In contrast, the parallel-processing model of working memory, which involves simultaneous processing of multiple operations, cannot be simulated on a single computer. Parallel processing requires neural networks. In these networks, multiple computers are linked and operate in tandem. Alternatively, a single special computer may operate with parallel networks. Many cognitive psychologists now prefer a parallel-processing model to describe many phenomena of memory. The parallel-processing model was actually inspired by observing how the human brain seems to process information. Here, multiple processes go on at the same time. In addition to inspiring theoretical models of memory function, neuropsychological research has offered specific insights into memory processes. It also has provided evidence regarding various hypotheses of how human memory works.

Figure 5.9  Connectionist Network.
A connectionist network consists of many different nodes. Unlike in semantic networks, it is not a single node that has a specific meaning, but rather the knowledge is represented in a combination of differently activated nodes. The size of the dots inside the nodes above indicates the amount of activation (with larger dots indicating more activation). The concept of a canary is represented by the overall pattern of activation.

Not all cognitive researchers accept the connectionist model. Some believe that human thought is more systematic and integrated than connectionist models seem to allow (Fodor & Pylyshyn, 1988; Matthews, 2003). They believe that complex behavior displays a degree of top-down orderliness and purposefulness that connectionist models, which are bottom-up, cannot incorporate. Connectionist modelers dispute this claim. The issue will be resolved as cognitive psychologists explore the extent to which connectionist models can reproduce and even explain complex behavior.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What is the difference between the sensory store and the short-term store?
2. What are levels of processing?
3. What are the components of the working-memory model?
4. Why do we need both semantic and episodic memories?
5. Describe a connectionist model of memory.

**Exceptional Memory and Neuropsychology**

Up to this point, the discussion of memory has focused on tasks and structures involving normally functioning memory. However, there are rare cases of people with exceptional memory (either enhanced or deficient) that provide some interesting insights into the nature of memory in general. The study of exceptional memory leads directly to neuropsychological investigations of the physiological mechanisms underlying memory.

**Outstanding Memory: Mnemonists**

Imagine what your life would be like if you were able to remember every word printed in this book. In this case, you would be considered a **mnemonist**, someone who demonstrates extraordinarily keen memory ability, usually based on using special techniques for memory enhancement. Perhaps the most famous of mnemonists was a man called “S.”

Russian psychologist Alexander Luria (1968) reported that one day S. appeared in his laboratory and asked to have his memory tested. Luria tested him. He discovered that the man’s memory appeared to have virtually no limits. S. could reproduce extremely long strings of words, regardless of how much time had passed since the words had been presented to him. Luria studied S. for over 30 years. He found that even when S.’s retention was measured 15 or 16 years after a session in which S. had learned words, S. still could reproduce the words. S. eventually became a professional entertainer. He dazzled audiences with his ability to recall whatever was asked of him.

What was S.’s trick? How did he remember so much? Apparently, he relied heavily on the mnemonic of visual imagery. He converted material that he needed to remember into visual images. For example, he reported that when asked to remember the word **green**, he would visualize a green flowerpot. For the word **red**, he visualized a man in a red shirt coming toward him. Numbers called up images. For example, 1 was a proud, well-built man. The number 3 was a gloomy person. The number 6 was a man with a swollen foot, and so on.
For S., much of his use of visual imagery in memory recall was not intentional. Rather, it was the result of a rare psychological phenomenon. This phenomenon, termed synesthesia, is the experience of sensations in a sensory modality different from the sense that has been physically stimulated. For example, S. automatically would convert a sound into a visual impression. He even reported experiencing a word’s taste and weight. Each word to be remembered evoked a whole range of sensations that automatically would come to S. when he needed to recall that word.

Other mnemonicists have used different strategies. “V. P.,” a Russian immigrant, could memorize long strings of material, such as rows and columns of numbers (Hunt & Love, 1972). Whereas S. relied primarily on visual imagery, V. P. apparently relied more on verbal translations. He reported memorizing numbers by transforming them into dates. Then he would think about what he had done on that day.

Another mnemonic, “S. F.,” remembered long strings of numbers by segmenting them into groups of three or four digits each. He then encoded them into running times for different races (Ericsson, Chase, & Faloon, 1980). An experienced long-distance runner, S. F. was familiar with the times that would be plausible for different races. S. F. did not enter the laboratory as a mnemonic. Rather, he had been selected to represent the average college student in terms of intelligence and memory ability. S. F.’s original memory for a string of numbers was about seven digits, average for a college student. After 200 practice sessions distributed over a period of 2 years, however, S. F. had increased his memory for digits more than tenfold. He could recall up to about 80 digits. His memory was impaired severely, however, when the experimenters purposely gave him sequences of digits that could not be translated into running times. The work with S. F. suggests that a person with a fairly typical level of memory ability can, at least in principle, be converted into one with quite an extraordinary memory. At least, this is possible in some domains, following a great deal of concerted practice.

Many of us yearn to have memory abilities like those of S. or V. P. In this way, we may believe we could ace our exams virtually effortlessly. However, we should consider that S. was not particularly happy with his life, and part of the reason was his exceptional memory. He reported that his synesthesia, which was largely involuntary, interfered with his ability to listen to people. Voices gave rise to blurs of sensations. They in turn interfered with his ability to follow a conversation. Moreover, S.’s heavy reliance on imagery created difficulty for him when he tried to understand abstract concepts. For example, he found it hard to understand concepts such as infinity or nothing. These concepts do not lend themselves well to visual images. He also sometimes was overwhelmed when he read. Earlier memories also sometimes intruded on later ones. Of course, we cannot say how many of S.’s problems in life were caused by his exceptional memory. But clearly S. believed that his exceptional memory had a downside as well as an upside. It was often as likely to be a hindrance as a help.

These exceptional mnemonicists offer some insight into processes of memory. Each of the three described here did more or less the same thing—consciously or almost automatically. Each translated arbitrary, abstract, meaningless information into more meaningful and often more concrete information, sometimes connected to the senses. Whether the translated information was racing times, dates and events, or visual images, the key was their meaning for the mnemonic.

Like the mnemonists, we more easily encode information into our long-term memory that is similar to the information already stored there. Because we have information in long-term memory that pertains to our interests, it is easier to learn
new information that is in line with these interests that we can relate to the old information (De Beni et al., 2007). Thus, you may be able to remember the lyrics of your favorite songs from years ago but not be able to recall the definitions of new terms that you have just learned. You can improve your memory for new information if you can relate the new information to old information already stored in long-term memory.

If you are unable to retrieve a memory that you need, does it mean that you have forgotten it? Not necessarily. Cognitive psychologists have studied a phenomenon called hypermnnesia, which is a process of producing retrieval of memories that would seem to have been forgotten (Erdelyi & Goldberg, 1979; Holmes, 1991; Turtle & Yuille, 1994). Hypermnnesia is sometimes loosely referred to as “unforgetting,” although the terminology cannot be correct because, strictly speaking, the memories

---

**BELIEVE IT OR NOT**

**YOU CAN BE A MEMORY CHAMPION, TOO!!!**

Have you ever heard about people who can effortlessly remember huge lists of words or numbers? Or would you already be satisfied if you could memorize your shopping list? Well, you can do this, too! How? The first thing you need to do is to come up with a nice system that helps you remember numbers. Then you connect the words you want to remember with those numbers. Sounds too complicated? Not really. The example below illustrates how you can imagine numbers as representations of objects (remember, you can create your own system!):

Once you are intimately familiar with your representations of numbers, you can start connecting them with words you would like to remember. Assume you want to buy beans, chopped tomatoes, and cereal. You’ll create lively pictures that combine the numbers with the items you need to buy. For item #1, you can imagine beans growing up high on a flagpole, for example. For item #2, you can imagine a swan with red plumage because it is swimming in a pond of chopped tomatoes. And for item #3, you can imagine a nice plate of breakfast cereal shaped in the form of hearts. You get the idea? Once you are in the supermarket, you’ll just work down your list from the first item to the last, imagining your created pictures. There are no rules except that the representations have to work for you. With a little bit of practice you’ll soon be able to memorize long lists of words, even more complicated or abstract ones. This technique is one of many mnemonic techniques that belong to the group of association techniques.
that are retrieved were never unavailable (i.e., forgotten), but rather, inaccessible (i.e., hard to retrieve). Hypermnesia is usually achieved by trying many and diverse retrieval cues to unearth a memory. Psychodynamic therapy, for example, is sometimes used to try to achieve hypermnesia. This therapy also points out the risk of trying to achieve hypermnesia. The individual may create a new memory, believing it is an old one, rather than retrieving a genuine old memory. In cases where there are accusations of abuse against a parent or other individual, newly created memories posing as old memories could pose a serious problem leading to false accusations.

We usually take for granted the ability to remember, much like the air we breathe. However, just as we become more aware of the importance of air when we do not have enough to breathe, we are less likely to take memory for granted when we observe people with serious memory deficiencies.

**Deficient Memory**

There are many syndromes associated with memory loss. Just as with the study of exceptionally good memory, the study of deficient memory provides us with many valuable insights into how memory works. In this section, we will have a look at two syndromes. The first and also most well known is amnesia. Afterwards, we will explore the symptoms and causes of Alzheimer’s disease, which is another prominent disease that causes memory loss.

**Amnesia**

We begin this section on amnesia by looking at some case studies to gain a better understanding of what amnesia is and what different kinds of amnesia exist. Afterwards, we will consider what insights can be gained about the differences between implicit and explicit memory by studying amnesia, and have a look at neuropsychological findings in the context of amnesia.

*If the patient uses hypermnesia to dredge up what has seemed to be a forgotten memory, we often cannot be certain that the memory is genuine, rather than one newly created by suggestion.*
What Is Amnesia? Amnesia is severe loss of explicit memory (Robbins, 2009). One type is retrograde amnesia, in which individuals lose their purposeful memory for events prior to whatever trauma induces memory loss (Levine et al., 2009; Squire, 1999). Mild forms of retrograde amnesia can occur fairly commonly when someone sustains a concussion. Usually, events immediately prior to the concussive episode are not well remembered.

W. Ritchie Russell and P. W. Nathan (1946) reported a more severe case of retrograde amnesia. A 22-year-old landscaper was thrown from his motorcycle in August of 1933. A week after the accident, the young man was able to converse sensibly. He seemed to have recovered. However, it quickly became apparent that he had suffered a severe loss of memory for events that had occurred prior to the trauma. On questioning, he gave the date as February 1922. He believed himself to be a schoolboy. He had no recollection of the intervening years. Over the next several weeks, his memory for past events gradually returned. The return started with the least recent event and proceeded toward more recent events. By 10 weeks after the accident, he had recovered his memory for most of the events of the previous years. He finally was able to recall everything that had happened up to a few minutes prior to the accident. In retrograde amnesia, the memories that return typically do so starting from the more distant past. They then progressively return up to the time of the trauma. Often events right before the trauma are never recalled.

One of the most famous cases of amnesia is the case of H. M. (Scoville & Milner, 1957). H. M. underwent brain surgery to save him from continual disruptions due to uncontrollable epilepsy. The operation took place on September 1, 1953. It was largely experimental. The results were highly unpredictable. At the time of the operation, H. M. was 29 years old. He was above average in intelligence. After the operation, his recovery was uneventful with one exception. He suffered severe anterograde amnesia, the inability to remember events that occur after a traumatic event. However, he had good (although not perfect) recollection of events that had occurred before his operation. H. M.’s memory loss severely affected his life. H. M. has been extensively studied through behavioral and neurological methods. On one occasion, he remarked, “Every day is alone in itself, whatever enjoyment I’ve had, and whatever sorrow I’ve had” (Milner, Corkin, & Teuber, 1968, p. 217). Many years after the surgery, H. M. still reported that the year was 1953. He also could not recall the name of any new person he met after the operation, regardless of the number of times they interacted. Apparently, H. M. lost his ability to recollect any new memories of the time following his operation. As a result, he lives suspended in an eternal present.

The examination of H. M.’s memory is ongoing, with recent work examining changes in H. M.’s memory and brain as he ages. These recent studies have noted additional memory and cognitive declines. In particular, H. M. exhibited new problems with comprehension and generation of new sentences (MacKay, 2006; MacKay et al., 2006; Salat et al., 2006; Skotko et al., 2004).

Another kind of “amnesia” that we all experience is infantile amnesia, the inability to recall events that happened when we were very young (Spear, 1979). (We place “amnesia” in quotation marks because some investigators question whether infantile amnesia is truly a form of amnesia at all.)

Amnesia and the Explicit-Implicit Memory Distinction Why do researchers study amnesia patients? What kinds of insight can be gained from amnesia research? One of the general insights gained by studying amnesia victims highlights the distinction
between explicit and implicit memories. Explicit memory is typically impaired in amnesia. Implicit memory, such as priming effects on word-completion tasks and procedural memory for skill-based tasks, is typically not impaired. This observation indicates that two kinds of abilities need to be distinguished. The first is the ability to reflect consciously on prior experience, which is required for tasks involving explicit memory. The second is the ability to demonstrate remembered learning in an apparently automatic way, without conscious recollection of the learning (implicit memory; Baddeley, 1989). Priming effects can be seen from about 250 to 500 milliseconds after exposure through positive brain potentials recorded in the frontal region of the brain. Explicit memory retrieval, however, is indicated by brain potentials that appear at a later time in the posterior regions (Voss & Paller, 2006).

Amnesia victims perform extremely poorly on most explicit memory tasks, but they may show normal or almost-normal performance on tasks involving implicit memory, such as cued-recall tasks (Warrington & Weiskrantz, 1970) and word-completion tasks (Baddeley, 1989). What do you think happens after word-completion tasks? When amnesics were asked whether they previously had seen the word they just completed, they were unlikely to remember the specific experience of having seen the word (Graf, Mandler, & Haden, 1982; Tulving, Schacter, & Stark, 1982). Furthermore, these amnesics do not explicitly recognize words they have seen at better than chance levels. Although the distinction between implicit memory and explicit memory has been readily observed in amnesics, both amnesics and normal participants show the presence of implicit memory.

Likewise, amnesia victims also show paradoxical performance in another regard. Consider two kinds of tasks. As previously described, procedural-knowledge tasks involve “knowing how.” They involve skills such as how to ride a bicycle, whereas declarative-knowledge tasks involve “knowing that.” They tap factual information, such as the terms in a psychology textbook. On the one hand, amnesia victims may perform extremely poorly on the traditional memory tasks requiring recall or recognition memory of declarative knowledge. On the other hand, they may demonstrate improvement in performance resulting from learning—remembered practice—when engaged in tasks that require procedural knowledge. Such tasks would include solving puzzles, learning to read mirror writing, or mastering motor skills (Baddeley, 1989).

Consider an example of procedural knowledge that is retained when a person suffers from amnesia. Patients with amnesia, when asked to drive in a normal situation, were able to operate and control the car as a normal driver would (Anderson et al., 2007). However, the investigators also exposed the patients to a simulation in which a complex accident sequence was experienced. In this situation, the patients with amnesia showed significant impairment. They could not recall the proper response to this situation. This finding is in line with the fact that in patients with amnesia, implicit, procedural knowledge is spared, while explicit knowledge is impaired. Most drivers do not have extensive experience with complex accident-avoidance scenarios and therefore would have to rely more on their declarative memory to make decisions about how to respond.

Amnesia and Neuropsychology Studies of amnesia victims have revealed much about the way in which memory depends on the effective functioning of particular structures of the brain. By looking for matches between particular lesions in the brain and particular deficits of function, researchers come to understand how normal
memory functions. Thus, when studying cognitive processes in the brain, neuropsychologists frequently look for dissociations of function. In dissociations, normal individuals show the presence of a particular function (e.g., explicit memory). But people with specific lesions in the brain show the absence of that particular function. This absence occurs despite the presence of normal functions in other areas (e.g., implicit memory).

By observing people with disturbed memory function, we know that memory is volatile. A blow to the head, a disturbance in consciousness, or any number of other injuries to or diseases of the brain may affect it. We cannot determine, however, the specific cause-effect relationship between a given structural lesion and a particular memory deficit. The fact that a particular structure or region is associated with an interruption of function does not mean that the region is solely responsible for controlling that function. Indeed, functions can be shared by multiple structures or regions. A broad physiological analogy may help to explain the difficulty of determining localization based on an observed deficit. The normal functioning of a portion of the brain—the reticular activating system (RAS)—is essential to life. But life depends on more than a functioning brain. If you doubt the importance of other structures, ask a patient with heart or lung disease. Thus, although the RAS is essential to life, a person’s death may be the result of malfunction in other structures of the body. Tracing a dysfunction within the brain to a particular structure or region poses a similar problem.

For the observation of simple dissociations, many alternative hypotheses may explain a link between a particular lesion and a particular deficit of function. Much more compelling support for hypotheses about cognitive functions comes from observing double dissociations. In double dissociations, people with different kinds of neuropathological conditions show opposite patterns of deficits. A double dissociation can be observed if a lesion in brain structure 1 leads to impairment in memory function A but not in memory function B; and a lesion in brain structure 2 leads to impairment in memory function B but not in memory function A.

For some functions and some areas of the brain, neuropsychologists have managed to observe the presence of a double dissociation. For example, some evidence
for distinguishing brief memory from long-term memory comes from just such a dou-
ble dissociation (Schacter, 1989b). People with lesions in the left parietal lobe of the
brain show profound inability to retain information in short-term memory, but they
show no impairment of long-term memory. They continue to encode, store, and re-
trieve information in long-term memory, apparently with little difficulty (Shallice &
Warrington, 1970; Warrington & Shallice, 1972). In contrast, persons with lesions
in the medial (middle) temporal regions of the brain show relatively normal short-
term memory of verbal materials, such as letters and words, but they show serious
inability to retain new verbal materials in long-term memory (Milner, Corkin, &
Teuber, 1968; Shallice, 1979; Warrington, 1982).

Double dissociations offer strong support for the notion that particular
structures of the brain play particular vital roles in memory (Squire, 1987). Distur-
bances or lesions in these areas cause severe deficits in memory formation. But we
cannot say that memory—or even part of memory—resides in these structures. None-
theless, studies of brain-injured patients are informative and at least suggestive of how
memory works. At present, cognitive neuropsychologists have found that double dis-
associations support several distinctions. These distinctions are those between brief
memory and long-term memory and between declarative (explicit) and nondeclarative
(implicit) memory. There also are some preliminary indications of other distinctions.

**Alzheimer’s Disease**

Although amnesia is the syndrome most associated with memory loss, it is often less
devastating than a disease that includes memory loss as one of many symptoms.
**Alzheimer’s disease** is a disease of older adults that causes dementia as well as pro-
gressive memory loss (Kensinger & Corkin, 2003). Dementia is a loss of intellectual
function that is severe enough to impair one’s everyday life. The memory loss in
Alzheimer’s disease can be seen in comparative brain scans of individuals with and
without Alzheimer’s disease. Note in Figure 5.10 that as the disease advances, there
is diminishing cognitive activity in the areas of the brain associated with memory
function.

The disease was first identified by Alois Alzheimer in 1907. It is typically recog-
nized on the basis of loss of intellectual function in daily life. Formally, a definitive
diagnosis is possible only after death. Alzheimer’s disease leads to an atrophy (de-
crease in size) of the brain; especially in the hippocampus and frontal and temporal
brain regions (Jack et al., 2002). The brains of people with the disease show plaques
and tangles that are not found in normal brains. Plaques are dense protein deposits
found outside the nerve cells of the brain (Mirochnic et al., 2009). Tangles are pairs
of filaments that become twisted around each other. They are found in the cell body
and dendrites of neurons and often are shaped like a flame (Kensinger & Corkin,
2003). Alzheimer’s disease is diagnosed when memory is impaired and there is at
least one other area of dysfunction in the domains of language, motor, attention,
executive function, personality, or object recognition. The symptoms are of gradual
onset, and the progression is continuous and irreversible.

Although the progression of disease is irreversible, it can be slowed somewhat.
The main drug currently being used for this purpose is Donepezil (Aricept).
Research evidence is mixed (Fischman, 2004). It suggests that, at best, Aricept may
slightly slow progression of the disease, but that it cannot reverse it. A more recent
drug, memantine (sold as Namenda or Ebixa), can supplement Aricept and slow
progression of the disease somewhat more. The two drugs have different mechanisms. Aricept slows destruction of the neurotransmitter acetylcholine in the brain. Memantine inhibits a chemical that overexcites brain cells and leads to cell damage and death (Fischman, 2004).

The incidence of Alzheimer’s increases exponentially with age (Kensinger & Corkin, 2003). About 1% of people between 70 to 75 years of age experience an onset of Alzheimer’s. But between ages 80 and 85, the incidence is more than 6% a year.

A special kind of Alzheimer’s disease is familial, known as early-onset Alzheimer’s disease. It has been linked to a genetic mutation. People with the genetic mutation always develop the disease. It results in the disease exhibiting itself early, often before even 50 years of age and sometimes as early as the 20s (Kensinger & Corkin, 2003). Late-onset Alzheimer’s, in contrast, appears to be complexly determined and related to a variety of possible genetic and environmental influences, none of which have been conclusively identified.

**Figure 5.10  The Brain with and without Alzheimer’s.**

Brain scans of (a) a normal individual and (b) an individual with early-stage Alzheimer’s. You can see the atrophy (black space) in the brain of the Alzheimer’s patient (b) compared with the healthy person (a). Image (c) depicts PET scans of an individual with late-stage Alzheimer’s and a healthy person. The metabolism in the healthy brain is much more pronounced. As the disease progresses, cognitive activity in the brain associated with memory function decreases.
The earliest signs of Alzheimer’s disease typically include impairment of episodic memory. People have trouble remembering things that were learned in a temporal or spatial context. As the disease progresses, semantic memory also begins to go. Whereas people without the disease tend to remember emotionally charged information better than they remember non-emotionally charged information, people with the disease show no difference in the two kinds of memory (Kensinger et al., 2002). Most forms of nondeclarative memory are spared in Alzheimer’s disease until near the very end of its course. The end is inevitably death, unless the individual dies first of other causes.

Memory tests may be given to assess whether an individual has Alzheimer’s disease. However, definitive diagnosis is possible only through analysis of brain tissue, which, as mentioned earlier, shows plaques and tangles in cases of disease. In one test, individuals see a sheet of paper containing four words (Buschke et al., 1999). Each word belongs to a different category. The examiner says the category name for one of the words. The individual must point to the appropriate word. For example, if the category is animal, the individual might point to a picture of a cow. A few minutes after the words have been presented, individuals make an attempt to recall all the words they saw. If they cannot recall a word, they are given the category to which the word belongs. Some individuals cannot remember the words, even when prompted with the categories. Alzheimer’s patients score much worse on this test than do other individuals.

How Are Memories Stored?

Where in the brain are memories stored, and what structures and areas of the brain are involved in memory processes, such as encoding and retrieval? Many early attempts at localization of memory were unfruitful. For example, after literally hundreds of experiments, renowned neuropsychologist Karl Lashley (1950) reluctantly stated that he could find no specific locations in the brain for specific memories. In the decades since Lashley’s admission, psychologists have located many cerebral structures involved in memory. For example, they know of the importance of the hippocampus and other nearby structures. However, the physiological structure may not be such that we will find Lashley’s elusive localizations of specific ideas, thoughts, or events. Even Penfield’s findings regarding links between electrical stimulation and episodic memory of events have been subject to question.

Some studies show encouraging, although preliminary, findings regarding the structures that seem to be involved in various aspects of memory. First, specific sensory properties of a given experience appear to be organized across various areas of the cerebral cortex (Squire, 1986). For example, the visual, spatial, and olfactory (odor) features of an experience may be stored discretely in each of the areas of the cortex responsible for processing each type of sensation. Thus, the cerebral cortex appears to play an important role in memory in terms of the long-term storage of information (Zola & Squire, 2000; Zola-Morgan & Squire, 1990).

In addition, the hippocampus and some related nearby cerebral structures appear to be important for explicit memory of experiences and other declarative information. The hippocampus also seems to play a key role in the encoding of declarative information (Manns & Eichenbaum, 2006; Thompson, 2000). Its main function appears to be in the integration and consolidation of separate sensory information as well as spatial orientation and memory (Ekstrom et al., 2003; Moscovitch, 2003;
Solstad et al., 2008). Most important, it is involved in the transfer of newly synthesized information into long-term structures supporting declarative knowledge. Perhaps such transfer provides a means of cross-referencing information stored in different parts of the brain (Reber, Knowlton, & Squire, 1996). Additionally, the hippocampus seems to play a crucial role in complex learning (Gupta et al., 2009; McCormick & Thompson, 1984). Finally, the hippocampus also has a significant role in the recollection of information (Gilboa et al., 2006).

In evolutionary terms, the aforementioned cerebral structures (chiefly the cortex and the hippocampus) are relatively recent acquisitions. Declarative memory also may be considered a relatively recent phenomenon. At the same time, other memory structures may be responsible for nondeclarative forms of memory. For example, the basal ganglia seem to be the primary structures controlling procedural knowledge (Shohamy et al., 2009). But they are not involved in controlling the priming effect (Heindel, Butters, & Salmon, 1988), which may be influenced by various other kinds of memory (Schacter, 1989b). Furthermore, the cerebellum also seems to play a key role in memory for classically conditioned responses and contributes to many cognitive tasks in general (Thompson & Steinmetz, 2009). Thus, various forms of nondeclarative memory seem to rely on differing cerebral structures.

The amygdala is often associated with emotional events, so a natural question to ask is whether, in memory tasks, there is involvement of the amygdala in memory for emotionally charged events. In one study, participants saw two video presentations on separate days (Cahill et al., 1996). Each presentation involved 12 clippings, half of which had been judged as involving relatively emotional content and the other half as involving relatively unemotional content. As participants watched the video clippings, brain activity was assessed by means of PET (see Chapter 2). After a gap of 3 weeks, the participants returned to the lab and were asked to recall the clips. For the relatively emotional clips, amount of activation in the amygdala was associated with recall; for the relatively unemotional clips, there was no association. This pattern of results suggests that when memories are emotionally charged, the level of amygdala activation is associated with recall. In other words, the more emotionally charged the emotional memory, the greater the probability the memory will later be retrieved. There also may be a gender difference with regard to recall of emotional memories. There is some evidence that women recall emotionally charged pictures better than do men (Canli et al., 2002). The amygdala also appears to play an important role in memory consolidation, especially where emotional experience is involved (Cahill & McGaugh, 1996; Roozendaal et al., 2008).

In addition to these preliminary insights regarding the macrolevel structures of memory, we are beginning to understand the microlevel structure of memory. For example, we know that repeated stimulation of particular neural pathways tends to strengthen the likelihood of firing. This is called long-term potentiation (where potentiation refers to an increase in activity). In particular, at a particular synapse, there appear to be physiological changes in the dendrites of the receiving neuron. These changes make the neuron more likely to reach the threshold for firing again. This finding is very important because it indicates that neurons in the hippocampus may be able to change their interactions (i.e., that they are plastic).

We also know that some neurotransmitters disrupt memory storage. Others enhance memory storage. Both serotonin and acetylcholine seem to enhance neural transmission associated with memory. Norepinephrine also may do so. High concentrations of acetylcholine have been found in the hippocampus of normal people (Squire, 1987), but low concentrations are found in people with Alzheimer's disease. In fact, Alzheimer's patients show severe loss of the brain tissue that secretes acetylcholine.
Serotonin also plays a role in another form of memory dysfunction, Korsakoff syndrome. Severe or prolonged abuse of alcohol can lead to this devastating form of anterograde amnesia. Alcohol consumption has been shown to disrupt the activity of serotonin. It thereby impairs the formation of memories (Weingartner et al., 1983). This syndrome is often accompanied by at least some retrograde amnesia (Clark et al., 2007). Korsakoff's syndrome has been linked to damage in the diencephalon (the region comprising the thalamus and the hypothalamus) of the brain (Postma et al., 2008). It also has been linked to dysfunction or damage in other areas, such as in the frontal and the temporal lobes of the cortex (Jacobson et al., 1990; Kopelman et al., 2009; Reed et al., 2003).

Other physiological factors also affect memory function. Some of the naturally occurring hormones stimulate increased availability of glucose in the brain, which enhances memory function. These hormones are often associated with highly arousing events. Examples of such events are traumas, achievements, first-time experiences (e.g., first passionate kiss), crises, or other peak moments (e.g., reaching a major decision). Hormones may play a role in remembering these events.

Some of the most fascinating research in cognitive psychology focuses on the strategies used in regard to memory. Memory strategies and memory processes are the subject of the following chapter.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. Define amnesia and name three forms of amnesia.
2. What is Alzheimer's disease?
3. What is the role of the hippocampus in storing information?

**Key Themes**

This chapter illustrates some of the key themes noted in Chapter 1.

**Applied versus basic research.** Basic and applied research can interact. An example is research on Alzheimer's disease. Presently, the disease is not curable, but is treatable with drugs and with guidance provided in a structured living environment. Basic research into the biological structures (e.g., tangles and plaques) and cognitive functions (e.g., impaired memory) associated with Alzheimer's may one day help us better understand and treat the disease.

**Biology versus behavioral methods.** This chapter shows the interaction of biology with behavior. The hippocampus has become one of the most carefully studied parts of the brain. Current functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) research is showing how the hippocampus and other parts of the brain, such as the amygdala (in the case of emotionally based memories) and the cerebellum (in the case of procedural memories) function to enable us to remember what we need to know. Biological processes have an impact on what we experience, how we behave, and what we remember.

**Structures versus processes.** Structure and function are both important to understanding human memory. The Atkinson-Shiffrin model proposed control processes that operate on three structures: a very short-term store, a short-term store, and a long-term store. The more recent working-memory model proposes how executive function controls and activates portions of long-term memory to provide the information needed to solve tasks at hand.
1. What are some of the tasks used for studying memory, and what do various tasks indicate about the structure of memory? Among the many tasks used by cognitive psychologists, some of the main ones have been tasks assessing explicit recall of information (e.g., free recall, serial recall, and cued recall) and tasks assessing explicit recognition of information. By comparing memory performance on these explicit tasks with performance on implicit tasks (e.g., word-completion tasks), cognitive psychologists have found evidence of differing memory systems or processes governing each type of task (e.g., as shown in studies of amnesics).

2. What has been the prevailing traditional model for the structure of memory? Memory is the means by which we draw on our knowledge of the past to use this knowledge in the present. According to one model, memory is conceived as involving three stores: a sensory store is capable of holding relatively limited amounts of information for very brief periods; a short-term store is capable of holding small amounts of information for somewhat longer periods; and a long-term store is capable of storing large amounts of information virtually indefinitely. Within the sensory store, the iconic store refers to visual sensory memory.

3. What are some of the main alternative models for the structure of memory? An alternative model uses the concept of working memory, usually defined as being part of long-term memory and also comprising short-term memory. From this perspective, working memory holds only the most recently activated portion of long-term memory. It moves these activated elements into and out of short-term memory.

   A second model is the levels-of-processing framework, which hypothesizes distinctions in memory ability based on the degree to which items are elaborated during encoding.

   A third model is the multiple memory systems model, which posits not only a distinction between procedural memory and declarative (semantic) memory but also a distinction between semantic and episodic memory.

   In addition, psychologists have proposed other models for the structure of memory. They include a parallel distributed processing (PDP; connectionist) model. The PDP model incorporates the notions of working memory, semantic memory networks, spreading activation, priming, and parallel processing of information.

   Finally, many psychologists call for a complete change in the conceptualization of memory, focusing on memory functioning in the real world. This call leads to a shift in memory metaphors from the traditional storehouse to the more modern correspondence metaphor.

4. What have psychologists learned about the structure of memory by studying exceptional memory and the physiology of the brain? Among other findings, studies of mnemonists have shown the value of imagery in memory for concrete information. They also have demonstrated the importance of finding or forming meaningful connections among items to be remembered. The main forms of amnesia are anterograde amnesia, retrograde amnesia, and infantile amnesia. The last form of amnesia is qualitatively different from the other forms and occurs in everyone.

   Through the study of the memory function of people with each form of amnesia, it has been possible to differentiate various aspects of memory. These include long-term versus temporary forms of memory, procedural versus declarative memory processes, and explicit versus implicit memory.

   Although specific memory traces have not yet been identified, many of the specific structures involved in memory function have been located. To date, the subcortical structures involved in memory appear to include the hippocampus, the thalamus, the hypothalamus, and even the basal ganglia, and the cerebellum. The cortex also governs much of the long-term storage of declarative knowledge.

   The neurotransmitters serotonin and acetylcholine appear to be vital to memory function. Other physiological chemicals, structures, and processes also play important roles, although further investigation is required to identify these roles.
Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

1. Describe two characteristics each of sensory memory, short-term memory, and long-term memory.
2. What are double dissociations, and why are they valuable to understanding the relationship between cognitive function and the brain?
3. Compare and contrast the three-store model of memory with one of the alternative models of memory.
4. Critique one of the experiments described in this chapter (e.g., Sperling’s 1960 experiment on the iconic store, or Craik and Tulving’s 1975 experiment on the levels-of-processing model).

5. How would you design an experiment to study some aspect of implicit memory?
6. Imagine what it would be like to recover from one of the forms of amnesia. Describe your impressions of and reactions to your newly recovered memory abilities.
7. How would your life be different if you could greatly enhance your own mnemonic skills in some way?

Key Terms

Alzheimer’s disease, p. 221
amnesia, p. 218
anterograde amnesia, p. 218
central executive, p. 204
culture-relevant tests, p. 192
episodic buffer, p. 205
episodic memory, p. 209
explicit memory, p. 190
hypermnnesia, p. 216
hypothetical constructs, p. 193
iconic store, p. 194
implicit memory, p. 190
infantile amnesia, p. 218
levels-of-processing framework, p. 200
long-term store, p. 193
memory, p. 187
mnemonist, p. 214
phonological loop, p. 204
prime, p. 212
priming effect, p. 212
recall, p. 187
recognition, p. 187
retrograde amnesia, p. 218
semantic memory, p. 209
sensory store, p. 193
short-term store, p. 193
visuospatial sketchpad, p. 204
working memory, p. 203

Media Resources

Visit the companion website—www.cengagebrain.com—for quizzes, research articles, chapter outlines, and more.

CogLab

Explore CogLab by going to http://coglab.wadsworth.com. To learn more, examine the following experiments:

Brain Asymmetry
Memory Span
Partial Report
Absolute Identification
Operation Span
Implicit Learning
Modality Effect
Position Error
Irrelevant Speech
Phonological Similarity
Levels of Processing
Memory Processes

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Encoding and Transfer of Information

Forms of Encoding
- Short-Term Storage
- Long-Term Storage

Transfer of Information from Short-Term Memory to Long-Term Memory
- Rehearsal
- Organization of Information

Retrieval

Retrieval from Short-Term Memory
- Parallel or Serial Processing?
- Exhaustive or Self-Terminating Processing?
- The Winner—a Serial Exhaustive Model—with Some Qualifications

Retrieval from Long-Term Memory
- Intelligence and Retrieval

Processes of Forgetting and Memory

Distortion
- Interference Theory
- Decay Theory

The Constructive Nature of Memory

Autobiographical Memory
- Memory Distortions
  - The Eyewitness Testimony Paradigm
  - Repressed Memories
- The Effect of Context on Memory

Key Themes

Summary

Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

Key Terms

Media Resources
Here are some of the questions we will explore in this chapter:

1. What have cognitive psychologists discovered regarding how we encode information for storing it in memory?
2. What affects our ability to retrieve information from memory?
3. How does what we know or what we learn affect what we remember?

BELIEVE IT OR NOT

**There’s a Reason You Remember Those Annoying Songs**

Having a song or part of a song stuck in your head is incredibly frustrating. We’ve all had the experience of the song from a commercial repeatedly running through our minds, even though we wanted to forget it. But sequence recall—remembering episodes or information in sequential order (like the notes to a song)—has a special and useful place in memory. We constantly have to remember sequences, from the movements involved in signing our name or making coffee in the morning, to the names of the exits that come before the motorway turn-off we take to drive home every day.

The ability to recall these sequences makes many aspects of everyday life possible. As you think about a snippet of song or speech, your brain may repeat a sequence that strengthens the connections associated with that phrase. In turn, this increases the likelihood that you will recall it, which leads to more reinforcement.

You could break this unending cycle of repeated recall and reinforcement—even though this is a necessary and normal process for the strengthening and cementing of memories—by introducing other sequences. Thinking of another song may allow a competing memory to crowd out the first one. Find another infectious song and hope that the cure doesn’t become more annoying than the original problem.

In this chapter, we will learn more about how we store and recall information, as well as what makes us forget that information again.

Researchers John Bransford and Marcia Johnson (1972, p. 722) gave their participants the following procedure to follow. Are you able to recall the steps outlined in this procedure?

The procedure is actually quite simple. First, you arrange items into different groups. Of course one pile may be sufficient, depending on how much there is to do. If you have to go somewhere else due to lack of facilities that is the next step; otherwise, you are pretty well set. It is important not to overdo things. That is, it is better to do too few things at once than too many. In the short run this may not seem important but complications can easily arise. A mistake can be expensive as well. At first, the whole procedure will seem complicated. Soon, however, it will become just another facet of life. It is difficult to foresee any end to the necessity for this task in the immediate future, but then, one can never tell. After the procedure is completed one arranges the materials into different groups again. Then they can be put into their appropriate places. Eventually they will be used once more and the whole cycle will then have to be repeated. However, that is part of life.

How easy or difficult is it for you to remember all the details? Bransford and Johnson’s participants (and probably you, too) had a great deal of difficulty understanding this passage and recalling the steps involved. What makes this task so difficult? What are the mental processes involved in this task?
As mentioned in the previous chapter, cognitive psychologists generally refer to the main processes of memory as comprising three common operations: encoding, storage, and retrieval. Each one represents a stage in memory processing:

- **Encoding** refers to how you transform a physical, sensory input into a kind of representation that can be placed into memory.
- **Storage** refers to how you retain encoded information in memory.
- **Retrieval** refers to how you gain access to information stored in memory.

Our emphasis in discussing these processes will be on recall of verbal and pictorial material. Remember, however, that we have memories of other kinds of stimuli as well, such as odors (Herz & Engen, 1996; Olsson et al., 2009).

Encoding, storage, and retrieval often are viewed as sequential stages. You first take in information. Then you hold it for a while. Later you pull it out. However, the processes interact with each other and are interdependent. For example, you may have found the Bransford and Johnson procedure difficult to encode, thereby also making it hard to store and to retrieve the information. However, a verbal label can facilitate encoding and hence storage and retrieval.

Most people do much better with the passage if given its title, “Washing Clothes.” Now, read the procedure again. Can you recall the steps described in the passage? The verbal label, “washing clothes” helps us to encode, and therefore to remember a passage that otherwise seems incomprehensible.

**Encoding and Transfer of Information**

Before information can be stored in memory, it first needs to be encoded for storage. Even if the information is held in our short-term memory, it is not always transferred to our long-term memory. So in order to remember events and facts over a long period of time, we need to encode and subsequently transfer them from short-term to long-term storage. These are the processes we will explore in the forthcoming section.

**Forms of Encoding**

We encode our memories to store them. However, do short-term and long-term storage use the same kind of code to store information, or do their codes differ? Let us have a look at some research to answer this question.

**Short-Term Storage**

When you encode information for temporary storage and use, what kind of code do you use? This is what Conrad and colleagues (1964) set out to discover with an experiment. Participants were visually presented with several series of six letters at the rate of 0.75 seconds per letter. The letters used in the various lists were B, C, F, M, N, P, S, T, V, and X. There were no vowels included in order to ensure that letter combinations did not result in any words or pronounceable combinations that could be memorized more easily. Immediately after the letters were presented, participants were asked to write down each list of six letters in the order given. What kinds of errors did participants make? Despite the fact that letters were presented visually, errors tended to be based on acoustic confusability. In other words, instead of recalling the letters they were supposed to recall, participants substituted letters...
that sounded like the correct letters. Thus, they were likely to confuse F for S, B for V, P for B, and so on.

Another group of participants simply listened to single letters in a setting that had noise in the background. They then immediately reported each letter as they heard it. Participants showed the same pattern of confusability in the listening task as in the visual memory task (Conrad, 1964). Thus, we seem to encode visually presented letters by how they sound, not by how they look.

The Conrad experiment shows the importance in short-term memory of an acoustic code rather than a visual code. But the results do not rule out the possibility that there are other codes. One such code would be a semantic code—one based on word meaning.

Baddeley (1966) argued that short-term memory relies primarily on an acoustic rather than a semantic code. He compared recall performance for lists of acoustically confusable words—such as map, cab, mad, man, and cap—with lists of acoustically distinct words—such as cow, pit, day, rig, and bun. He found that performance was much worse for the visual presentation of acoustically similar words. He also compared performance for lists of semantically similar words—such as big, long, large, wide, and broad—with performance for lists of semantically dissimilar words—such as old, foul, late, hot, and strong. There was little difference in recall between the two lists. If performance for the semantically similar words had been much worse, what would such a finding have meant? It would have indicated that participants were confused by the semantic similarities and hence were processing the words semantically. However, performance for the semantically similar words was only slightly worse than that for the semantically dissimilar words, meaning that semantics did not matter much for processing.

Subsequent work investigating how information is encoded in short-term memory has shown clear evidence, however, of at least some semantic encoding in short-term memory (Shulman, 1970; Wickens, Dalezman, & Eggemeier, 1976). Thus, encoding in short-term memory appears to be primarily acoustic, but there may be some secondary semantic encoding as well. In addition, we sometimes temporarily encode information visually as well (Posner, 1969; Posner et al., 1969; Posner & Keele, 1967). But visual encoding appears to be even more fleeting (about 1.5 seconds). We are more prone to forgetting visual information than acoustic information. Thus, initial encoding is primarily acoustic in nature, but other forms of encoding may be used under some circumstances. For example, when you remember a telephone number from long ago, you are more likely to remember how it sounds when you say it to yourself than to remember a visual image of it.

**Long-Term Storage**

As mentioned, information stored temporarily in working memory is encoded primarily in acoustic form. So, when we make errors in retrieving words from short-term memory, the errors tend to reflect confusions in sound. How is information encoded into a form that can be transferred into storage and available for subsequent retrieval?

Most information stored in long-term memory is primarily semantically encoded. In other words, it is encoded by the meanings of words. Consider some relevant evidence.

Participants in a research study learned a list of 41 words (Grossman & Eagle, 1970). Five minutes after learning took place, participants were given a recognition test. Included in the recognition test were distracters—items that appear to be
legitimate choices but that are not correct alternatives. Nine of the distracters (words that were not in the list of 41 words) were semantically related to words on the list. Nine were not. The researchers were interested in “false alarm” responses in which the participants indicated that they had seen the distracters, even though those words weren’t even on the list. Participants falsely recognized an average of 1.83 of the synonyms but only an average of 1.05 of the unrelated words. This result indicated a greater likelihood of semantic confusion.

Another way to show semantic encoding is to use sets of semantically related test words, rather than distracters. Participants learned a list of 60 words that included 15 animals, 15 professions, 15 vegetables, and 15 names of people (Bousfield, 1953). The words were presented in random order. Thus, members of the various categories were intermixed thoroughly. After participants heard the words, they were asked to use free recall to reproduce the list in any order they wished. The investigator then analyzed the order of output of the recalled words. Did participants recall successive words from the same category more frequently than would be expected by chance? Indeed, successive recalls from the same category did occur much more often than would be expected by chance occurrence. Participants were remembering words by clustering them into categories.

Levels of processing, discussed in Chapter 5, also influences encoding in long-term memory. When learning lists of words, participants move more information into long-term memory when using a semantic encoding strategy than when using a nonsemantic strategy. Interestingly, this advantage is not seen in people with autism. This finding suggests that, in persons with autism, information may not be encoded semantically, or at least, not to the same extent as in people who do not have autism (Toichi & Kamio, 2002). When engaged in semantic processing, people with autism show less activation in Broca’s area than do healthy participants. This finding indicates that Broca’s area may be related to the semantic deficits autistic patients often exhibit (Harris et al., 2006).

Encoding of information in long-term memory is not exclusively semantic. There also is evidence for visual encoding. Participants in a study received 16 drawings of objects, including four items of clothing, four animals, four vehicles, and four items of furniture (Frost, 1972). The investigator manipulated not only the semantic category but also the visual category. The drawings differed in visual orientation. Four were angled to the left, four angled to the right, four horizontal, and four vertical. Items were presented in random order. Participants were asked to recall them freely. The order of participants’ responses showed effects of both semantic and visual categories. These results suggested that participants were encoding visual as well as semantic information. In fact, people are able to store thousands of images (Brady et al., 2008).

Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging (fMRI) studies have found that the brain areas that are involved in encoding can be, but do not necessarily have to be, involved in retrieval. With respect to faces, the anterior medial prefrontal cortex and the right fusiform face area play an important role both in encoding and retrieval, whereas the left fusiform face area contributes mostly to encoding processes. Both encoding and retrieval of places activate the left parahippocampal place area (PPA); the left PPA is associated with encoding rather than retrieval. In addition, medial temporal and prefrontal regions are related to memory processes in general, no matter what kind of stimulus is used (Prince et al., 2009).

In addition to semantic and visual information, acoustic information can be encoded in long-term memory (Nelson & Rothbart, 1972). Thus, there is considerable
flexibility in the way we store information that we retain for long periods. Those who seek to know the single correct way we encode information are seeking an answer to the wrong question. There is no one correct way. A more useful question involves asking, “In what ways do we encode information in long-term memory?” From a more psychological perspective, however, the most useful question to ask is, “When do we encode in which ways?” In other words, under what circumstances do we use one form of encoding, and under what circumstances do we use another? These questions are the focus of present and future research.

Transfer of Information from Short-Term Memory to Long-Term Memory

We encounter two key problems when we transfer information from short-term memory to long-term memory: interference and decay. When competing information interferes with our storing information, we speak of interference. Imagine you have watched two crime movies with the same actor. You then try to remember the
story line of one of the movies but mix it up with the second movie. You are experiencing interference. When we forget facts just because time passes, we speak of decay. These two concepts will be discussed in more detail later in this chapter.

Given the problems of decay and interference, how do we move information from short-term memory to long-term memory? The means of moving information depends on whether the information involves declarative or nondeclarative memory.

Some forms of nondeclarative memory are highly volatile and decay quickly. Examples are priming and habituation. Let’s go back to our movie example and assume that one of the main protagonists in the movie was Tom Cruise. After the movie, you overhear a conversation in which the word “cruise” is mentioned. Automatically, Tom Cruise pops into your mind. If you hear the word “cruise” a few days later, however, Tom Cruise may not be so accessible in your mind, and you may rather think of a cruise you recently took, or would like to take, in the Caribbean. Other nondeclarative forms are maintained more readily, particularly as a result of repeated practice (of procedures) or repeated conditioning (of responses).

Entrance into long-term declarative memory may occur through a variety of processes. One method of accomplishing this goal is by deliberately attending to information to comprehend it. Another is by making connections or associations between the new information and what we already know and understand. We make connections by integrating the new data into our existing schemas of stored information. This process of integrating new information into stored information is called consolidation. In humans, the process of consolidating declarative information into memory can continue for many years after the initial experience (Squire, 1986). When you learn about someone or something, for example, you often integrate new information into your knowledge a long time after you have acquired that knowledge. For example, you may have met a friend many years ago and started organizing that knowledge at that time. But you still acquire new information about that friend—sometimes surprising information—and continue to integrate this new information into your knowledge base.

Stress generally impairs the memory functioning. However, stress also can help enhance the consolidation of memory through the release of hormones (Park et al., 2008; Roozendaal, 2002, 2003). The disruption of consolidation has been studied effectively in amnesics. Studies have particularly examined people who have suffered brief forms of amnesia as a consequence of electroconvulsive therapy (ECT; Squire, 1986). For these amnesics, the source of the trauma is clear. Confounding variables can be minimized. A patient history before the trauma can be obtained, and follow-up testing and supervision after the trauma are more likely to be available. A range of studies suggests that during the process of consolidation, our memory is susceptible to disruption and distortion.

We may use various metamemory strategies to preserve or enhance the integrity of memories during consolidation (Metcalfe, 2000; Waters & Schneider, 2010). Metamemory strategies involve reflecting on our own memory processes with a view to improving our memory. Such strategies are especially important when we are transferring new information to long-term memory by rehearsing it. Metamemory strategies are just one component of metacognition, our ability to think about and control our own processes of thought and ways of enhancing our thinking.

**Rehearsal**

One technique people use for keeping information active is rehearsal, the repeated recitation of an item. The effects of such rehearsal are termed practice effects. Rehearsal may be *overt*, in which case it is usually loud and obvious to anyone watching. Or it may be *covert*, in which case it is silent and hidden.
**Elaborative and Maintenance Rehearsal**  To move information into long-term memory, an individual must engage in elaborative rehearsal. In *elaborative rehearsal*, the individual somehow elaborates the items to be remembered. Such rehearsal makes the items either more meaningfully integrated into what the person already knows or more meaningfully connected to one another and therefore more memorable.

In contrast, consider maintenance rehearsal. In *maintenance rehearsal*, the individual simply repetitiously rehearses the items to be repeated. Such rehearsal temporarily maintains information in short-term memory without transferring the information to long-term memory. Without any kind of elaboration, the information cannot be organized and transferred (Tulving, 1962). This finding is of immediate importance when you study for an exam. If you want to transfer facts to your long-term memory, you will need somehow to elaborate on the information and link it to what you already know. For example, if you meet a new acquaintance, you might encode not just the acquaintance’s name but also other connections you have with the person, such as being members of a particular club or taking a particular course together. It will also be helpful to use mnemonic techniques like the ones discussed in the next section, but repeating words over and over again is not enough to achieve effective rehearsal.

**The Spacing Effect**  What is the best way to organize your time for rehearsing new information? More than a century ago, Hermann Ebbinghaus (1885, cited in Schacter, 1989a; see also Chapter 1) noticed that the distribution of study (memory rehearsal) sessions over time affects the consolidation of information in long-term memory. Much more recently, researchers have offered support for Ebbinghaus’s observations as a result of their studies of people’s recall of foreign language vocabulary, facts, and names of visual objects (Cepeda, 2009).

Much more recently, researchers have offered support for Ebbinghaus’s observation as a result of their studies of people’s long-term recall of Spanish vocabulary words the subjects had learned 8 years earlier (Bahrick & Phelps, 1987). People’s memory for information depends on how they acquire it. Their memories tend to be good when they use *distributed practice*, learning in which various sessions are spaced over time. Their memories for information are not as good when the information is acquired through *massed practice*, learning in which sessions are crammed together in a very short space of time. The greater the distribution of learning trials over time, the more the participants remembered over long periods. To maximize the effect on long-term recall, the spacing should ideally be distributed over months, rather than days or weeks. This effect is termed the *spacing effect*. The research in this area is used by companies producing consumer products and advertising companies, among others. The goal of these companies is to anchor their products in your long-term memory so that you will remember them when you are in need of a particular product. The spacing in advertisements is varied to maximize the effect on your memory (Appleton-Knapp, 2005). That means that a company will not place ads for the same product on several papers of a given magazine, but rather that they will place one ad every month in that magazine.

The spacing effect is linked to the process by which memories are consolidated in long-term memory (Glenberg, 1977, 1979; Leicht & Overton, 1987). That is, the spacing effect may occur because at each learning session, the context for encoding may vary. The individuals may use alternative strategies and cues for encoding. They thereby enrich and elaborate their schemas for the information. The principle of the spacing effect is important to remember in studying. You will recall information longer, on average, if you distribute your learning of subject matter and you vary the context for encoding. Do not try to cram it all into a short period. Imagine studying for an
exam in several short sessions over a 2-week period. You will remember much of the material. However, if you try to study all the material in just one night, you will remember very little and the memory for this material will decay relatively quickly.

Why would distributing learning trials over days make a difference? One possibility is that information is learned in variable contexts. These diverse contexts help strengthen and begin to consolidate it. Another possible answer comes from studies of the influences of sleep on memory.

**Sleep and Memory Consolidation** Of particular importance to memory is the amount of rapid eye movement (REM) sleep, a particular stage of sleep (see Figure 6.1) characterized by dreaming and increased brainwave activity (Karni et al., 1994), a person receives.

---

**Figure 6.1** There are five different sleep stages that differ in their EEG patterns. Dreaming takes place during stage 5, the so-called REM sleep. REM sleep is particularly important for memory consolidation.
Specifically, disruptions in REM sleep patterns the night after learning reduced the amount of improvement on a visual discrimination task that occurred relative to normal sleep. Furthermore, this lack of improvement was not observed for disrupted stage-three or stage-four sleep patterns (Karni et al., 1994). Other research also shows better learning with increases in the proportion of REM-stage sleep after exposure to learning situations (Ellenbogen, Payne, & Stickgold, 2006; Smith, 1996). The positive influence of sleep on memory consolidation is seen across age groups (Hornung et al., 2007). People who suffer from insomnia, a disorder that deprives the sufferer of much-needed sleep, have trouble with memory consolidation (Backhaus et al., 2006). Research suggests that memory processes in the hippocampus are influenced by the production and integration of new cells into the neuronal network. Prolonged sleep deprivation seems to affect such cell development negatively (Meerlo et al., 2009). These findings highlight the importance of biological factors in the consolidation of memory. Thus, a good night’s sleep, which includes plenty of REM-stage sleep, aids in memory consolidation.

Neuroscience and Memory Consolidation

Is there something special occurring in the brain that could explain why REM sleep is so important for memory consolidation? Neuropsychological research on animal learning may offer a tentative answer to this question. Recall that the hippocampus has been found to be an important structure for memory. In recording studies of rat hippocampal cells, researchers have found that cells of the hippocampus that were activated during initial learning are reactivated during subsequent periods of sleep. It is as if they are replaying the initial learning episode to achieve consolidation into long-term storage (Scaggs & McNaughton, 1996; Wilson & McNaughton, 1994). This effect has also been observed in humans. After learning routes within a virtual town, participants slept. Increased hippocampal activity was seen during sleep after the person had learned the spatial information. In the people with the most hippocampal activation, there was also an improvement in performance when they needed to recall the routes (Peigneux et al., 2004). During this increased activity, the hippocampus also shows extremely low levels of the neurotransmitter acetylcholine. When patients were given acetylcholine during sleep, they showed impaired memory consolidation, but only for declarative information. Procedural memory consolidation was not affected by acetylcholine levels (Gais & Born, 2004).

The hippocampus acts as a rapid learning system (McClelland, McNaughton, & O’Reilly, 1995). It temporarily maintains new experiences until they can be appropriately assimilated into the more gradual neocortical representation system of the brain. Such a complementary system is necessary to allow memory to more accurately represent the structure of the environment. McClelland and his colleagues have used connectionist models of learning to show that integrating new experiences too rapidly leads to disruptions in long-term memory systems. Thus, the benefits of distributed practice seem to occur because we have a relatively rapid learning system in the hippocampus that becomes activated during sleep. Repeated exposure on subsequent days and repeated reactivation during subsequent periods of sleep help learning. These rapidly learned memories become integrated into our more permanent long-term memory system.

Reconsolidation is a topic related to consolidation. The process of consolidation makes memories less likely to undergo either interference or decay. However, after a memory is called back into consciousness, it may return to a more unstable state. In this state, the memory that was consolidated may again fall victim to interference or
decay. To prevent this loss, a process of reconsolidation takes place. Reconsolidation has the same effect that consolidation does, but it is completed on previously encoded information. Reconsolidation does not necessarily occur with each memory we recall but does seem to occur with relatively newly consolidated material (Walker et al., 2003).

Organization of Information
Stored memories are organized. One way to show how memories are organized is by measuring subjective organization in free recall. This means that researchers measure the different ways that individuals organize their memories. Researchers do this by giving participants a list of unrelated words to recall in any order (free recall). Participants have multiple trials during which to learn to recall a list of unrelated words in any order they choose. Remember that if sets of test words can be divided into categories (e.g., names of fruits or of furniture), participants spontaneously will cluster their recall output by these categories. They do so even if the order of presentation is random (Bousfield, 1953). Similarly, participants will tend to show consistent patterns of word order in their recall protocols, even if there are no apparent relations among words in the list (Tulving, 1962). In other words, participants create their own consistent organization and then group their recall by the subjective units they create. Although most adults spontaneously tend to cluster items into categories, categorical clustering also may be used intentionally as an aid to memorization.

Mnemonic devices are specific techniques to help you memorize lists of words (Best, 2003). Essentially, such devices add meaning to otherwise meaningless or arbitrary lists of items. Even music can be used as a mnemonic device when a well-known or easy melody is used and connected with the material that needs to be learned. Music can even serve as a retrieval cue. For example, if you want to learn vocabulary words in a foreign language for body parts, sing those words to yourself in a melody that you like and know well (see, for example, Moore et al., 2008).

As Table 6.1 shows, a variety of methods—categorical clustering, acronyms, acrostics, interactive imagery among items, pegwords, and the method of loci—can help you to memorize lists of words and vocabulary items. Although the techniques described in Table 6.1 are not the only available ones, they are among the most frequently used.
Of the many mnemonic devices available, the ones described here rely either on organization of information into meaningful chunks, such as categorical clustering, acronyms, and acrostics, or on visual images, such as interactive images, a pegword system, and the method of loci.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Explanation/Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Categorical clustering</td>
<td>Organize a list of items into a set of categories.</td>
<td>If you needed to remember to buy apples, milk, bagels, grapes, yogurt, rolls, Swiss cheese, grapefruit, and lettuce, you would be better able to do so if you tried to memorize the items by categories: fruits—apples, grapes, grapefruit; dairy products—milk, yogurt, Swiss cheese; breads—bagels, rolls; vegetables—lettuce.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interactive images</td>
<td>Create interactive images that link the isolated words in a list.</td>
<td>Suppose you have to remember to buy socks, apples, and a pair of scissors. You might imagine using scissors to cut a sock that has an apple stuffed in it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pegword system</td>
<td>Associate each new word with a word on a previously memorized list and form an interactive image between the two words.</td>
<td>One such list is from a nursery rhyme: One is a bun. Two is a shoe. Three is a tree, and so on. To remember that you need to buy socks, apples, and a pair of scissors, you might imagine an apple between two buns, a sock stuffed inside a shoe, and a pair of scissors cutting a tree. When you need to remember the words, you first recall the numbered images and then recall the words as you visualize them in the interactive images.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method of loci</td>
<td>Visualize walking around an area with distinctive landmarks that you know well, and then link the various landmarks to specific items to be remembered</td>
<td>Mentally walk past each of the distinctive landmarks, depositing each word to be memorized at one of the landmarks. Visualize an interactive image between the new word and the landmark. Suppose you have three landmarks on your route to school—a strange-looking house, a tree, and a baseball diamond. You might imagine a big sock on top of the house in place of the chimney, the pair of scissors cutting the tree, and apples replacing bases on the baseball diamond. When ready to remember the list, you would take your mental walk and pick up the words you had linked to each of the landmarks along the walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Devise a word or expression in which each of its letters stands for a certain other word or concept (e.g., USA, IQ, and laser)</td>
<td>Suppose that you want to remember the names of the mnemonic devices described in this chapter. The acronym “IAM PACK” might prompt you to remember Interactive images, Acronyms, Method of loci, Pegwords, Acrostics, Categories, and Keywords. Of course, this technique is more useful if the first letters of the words to be memorized actually can be formed into a word phrase, or something close to one, even if the word or phrase is nonsensical, as in this example.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acrostic</td>
<td>Form a sentence rather than a single word to help you remember the new words</td>
<td>Music students trying to memorize the names of the notes found on lines of the treble clef (the higher notes; specifically E, G, B, D, and F above middle C) learn that “Every Good Boy Does Fine.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keyword system</td>
<td>Form an interactive image that links the sound and meaning of a foreign word with the sound and meaning of a familiar word.</td>
<td>Suppose that you needed to learn that the French word for butter is beurre. First, you would note that beurre sounds something like “bear.” Next, you would associate the keyword bear with butter in an image or sentence. For instance, you might visualize a bear eating a stick of butter. Later, bear would provide a retrieval cue for beurre.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In **categorical clustering**, organize a list of items into a set of categories.

In **interactive images**, imagine (as vividly as possible) the objects represented by words you have to remember as if the objects are interacting with each other in some active way.

In the **pegword system**, associate each word with a word on a previously memorized list and form an interactive image between the two words.

In the **method of loci**, visualize walking around an area with distinctive, well-known landmarks and link the various landmarks to specific items to be remembered.

In using **acronyms**, devise a word or expression in which each of its letters stands for a certain other word or concept.

In using **acrostics**, form a sentence, rather than a single word, to help one remember new words.

In using the **keyword system**, create an interactive image that links the sound and meaning of a foreign word with the sound and meaning of a familiar word.

What is the comparative effectiveness of the mnemonic strategies listed in Table 6.1? Henry Roediger (1980) conducted a study in which his participants used different strategies to memorize material. Table 6.2 shows how effective the different strategies were.

Henry Roediger’s (1980) study of recall memory involved initial recall of a series of items compared with recall following brief training in each of several memory

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition (type of mnemonic training)</th>
<th>Elaborative rehearsal (verbal)</th>
<th>Isolated images of individual items</th>
<th>Interactive imagery (with links from one item to the next)</th>
<th>Method of loci</th>
<th>Pegword system</th>
<th>Mean performance across conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of participants</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediate recall</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>13.0</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>12.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediate recall</td>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>15.6</td>
<td>15.3</td>
<td>14.2</td>
<td>13.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediate recall</td>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediate recall</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediate recall following a 24-hour delay</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediate recall following a 24-hour delay</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 6.2 Mnemonic Devices: Comparative Effectiveness**

strategies. For both free recall and serial recall, training in interactive imagery, the method of loci, and the pegword system was more effective than either elaborative (verbal) rehearsal or imagery for isolated items. However, the beneficial effects of training were most pronounced for the serial recall condition. In the free recall condition, imagery of isolated items was modestly more effective than elaborative (verbal) rehearsal, but for serial recall, elaborative (verbal) rehearsal was modestly more effective than imagery for isolated items.

The relative effectiveness of the methods for encoding is influenced by the kind of task (free recall versus serial recall) required at the time of retrieval (Roediger, 1980). Thus, when choosing a method for encoding information for subsequent recall, you should consider the purpose for recalling the information. You should choose not only strategies that allow for effectively encoding the information (moving it into long-term memory), but strategies that offer appropriate cues for facilitating subsequent retrieval when needed. For example, using a strategy for retrieving an alphabetical list of prominent cognitive psychologists would probably be relatively ineffective prior to taking an exam in cognitive psychology. Using a strategy for linking particular theorists with the key ideas of their theories is likely to be more effective.

The use of mnemonic devices and other techniques for aiding memory involves metamemory (our understanding and reflection upon our memory and how to improve it). Because most adults spontaneously use categorical clustering, its inclusion in this list of mnemonic devices is actually just a reminder to use this common memory strategy. In fact, each of us often uses various kinds of reminders—external memory aids—to enhance the likelihood that we will remember important information. For example, by now you have surely learned the benefits of various external memory aids. These include taking notes during lectures, writing shopping lists for items to purchase, setting timers and alarms, and even asking other people to help you remember things. In addition, we can design our environment to help us remember important information through the use of forcing functions (Norman, 1988). These are physical constraints that prevent us from acting without at least considering the key information to be remembered. For example, to ensure that you remember to take your notebook to class, you might lean the notebook against the door through which you must pass to go to class.

So-called forcing functions are also used in professional settings, such as hospitals, to change behavior. Patients in emergency rooms sometimes have to be physically restrained, but that restraint also significantly increases their risk of dying. The computer systems physicians use can force the physicians to re-evaluate their decisions concerning the restraint orders by requiring them to renew the order and eventually blocking computer access if the renewal is not executed (Griffey et al., 2009). In effect, the physicians are forced to deal with the problem at hand.

Most of the time, we try to improve our retrospective memory—our memory for the past. At times we also try to improve our prospective memory—memory for things we need to do or remember in the future. For example, we may need to remember to call someone, to buy cereal at the supermarket, or to finish a homework assignment due the next day. We use a number of strategies to improve prospective memory. Examples are keeping a to-do list, asking someone to remind us to do something, or tying a string around our finger to remind us that we need to do something. Research suggests that having to do something regularly on a certain day does not necessarily improve prospective memory for doing that thing. However, being monetarily reinforced for doing the thing does tend to improve prospective memory (Meacham, 1982; Meacham & Singer, 1977).
Prospective memory, like retrospective memory, is subject to decline as we age. Over the years, we retain more of our prospective memory than of our retrospective memory. This retention is likely the result of the use of the external cues and strategies that can be used to bolster prospective memory. In the laboratory, older adults show a decline in prospective memory; however, outside the laboratory they show better performance than young adults. This difference may be due to greater reliance on strategies to aid in remembering as we age (Henry et al., 2004).

![CONCEPT CHECK]

1. How does encoding differ in the short-term storage and the long-term storage?
2. What is rehearsal?
3. Name three mnemonic devices.

Retrieval

Once we have encoded and stored information in short-term memory, how do we retrieve it? If we have problems retrieving information, was the information even stored in the first place?

Retrieval from Short-Term Memory

In one study on memory scanning, Saul Sternberg presented participants with a short list including from one to six digits (Sternberg, 1966). They were expected to hold the list in short-term memory. After a brief pause, a test digit was flashed on a screen. Participants had to say whether this digit appeared in the set that they had been asked to memorize. Thus, if the list comprised the digits 4, 1, 9, 3, and the digit 9 flashed on the screen, the correct response would be “yes.” If, instead, the test digit was 7, the correct response would be “no.” The digits that were presented are termed the positive set. Those that were not presented are termed the negative set. Predictions of the possible results are shown in Figure 6.2.

Are items retrieved all at once (parallel processing) or sequentially (serial processing)? If retrieved serially, the question then arises: Are all items retrieved, regardless of the task (exhaustive retrieval), or does retrieval stop as soon as an item seems to accomplish the task (self-terminating retrieval)? In the next sections, we examine parallel and serial processing, and then exhaustive and self-terminating retrieval.

INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY

Test Your Short-Term Memory

Test your ability to retrieve information from your short-term memory. Try this memory scanning test that is similar to the S. Sternberg experiment described in the chapter. Use 10 index cards and write one number on each card (1–10). Have a friend quickly show you five of the index cards (e.g., 6, 3, 8, 2, 7). Then, have your friend hold up one of the index cards and ask, “Is this one of the numbers?” Have your friend repeat this procedure five times. How often were you correct? Now, switch roles and test your friend’s short-term memory. How do people make decisions such as this one?
Let’s think about these different options for retrieving memories and see what the research results say.

**Parallel or Serial Processing?**
Parallel processing refers to the simultaneous handling of multiple operations. As applied to short-term memory, the items stored in short-term memory would be retrieved all at once, not one at a time. The prediction in Figure 6.2(a) shows what would happen if parallel processing were the case in the Sternberg memory scanning task: Response times should be the same, regardless of the size of the positive set. This is because all comparisons would be done at once.

Serial processing refers to operations being done one after another. In other words, on the digit-recall task, the digits would be retrieved in succession, rather than all at once (as in the parallel model). According to the serial model, it should take longer to retrieve four digits than to retrieve two digits [as shown in Figure 6.2(b)].

**Exhaustive or Self-Terminating Processing?**
If information processing were serial, there would be two ways in which to gain access to the stimuli: exhaustive or self-terminating processing. Exhaustive serial processing implies that the participant always checks the test digit against all digits in the positive set, even if a match were found partway through the list.

---

**Figure 6.2** This figure shows the four possible predictions for retrieval from short-term memory of Saul Sternberg’s experiment. Panel (a) illustrates findings suggestive of parallel processing; (b) illustrates serial processing; (c) shows exhaustive serial processing; and (d) shows self-terminating serial processing.

Exhaustive processing would predict the pattern of data shown in Figure 6.2(c). Note that positive responses all would take the same amount of time, regardless of the serial position of a positive test probe. In other words, in an exhaustive search, you would take the same amount of time to find any digit. Where in the list it was located would not matter.

Self-terminating serial processing implies that the participant would check the test digit against only those digits needed to make a response. Consider Figure 6.2(d). It shows that response time now would increase linearly as a function of where a test digit was located in the positive set. The later the serial position, the longer is the response time.

The Winner—a Serial Exhaustive Model—with Some Qualifications

The actual pattern of data was crystal clear. The data looked like those in Figures 6.2(b) and (c). Response times increased linearly with set size, but they were the same, regardless of serial position. Later, this pattern of data was replicated (Sternberg, 1969). Moreover, the mean response times for positive and negative responses were essentially the same. This fact further supported the serial exhaustive model. Comparisons took roughly 38 milliseconds (0.038 seconds) apiece (Sternberg, 1966, 1969).

Although many investigators considered the question of parallel versus serial processing to have been answered decisively, in fact, a parallel model could account for the data (Corcoran, 1971). Imagine a horse race that involves parallel processing. The race is not over until the last horse passes the finish line. Now, suppose we add more horses to the race. The length of the race, from the start until the last of the horses crosses the finishing line, is likely to increase. For example, if horses are selected randomly, the slowest horse in an eight-horse race is likely to be slower than the slowest horse in a four-horse race. That is, with more horses, a wider range of speeds is more likely. So the entire race will take longer because the race is not complete until the slowest horse crosses the finish line.

Similarly, when applying a parallel model to a retrieval task involving more items, a wider range of retrieval speeds for the various items is also more likely. The entire retrieval process is not complete until the last item has been retrieved. Mathematically, it is impossible to distinguish parallel from serial models unequivocally (Townsend, 1971). Some parallel model always exists that will mimic any serial model in its predictions and vice versa. The two models may not be equally plausible, but they still exist. Moreover, it appears that which processes individuals use depends in part on the stimuli that are processed (e.g., Naus, 1974; Naus, Glucksberg, & Ornstein, 1972).

Some cognitive psychologists have suggested that we should seek not only to understand the how of memory processes but also the why of memory processes (e.g., Bruce, 1991). That is, what functions does memory serve for individual persons and for humans as a species? To understand the functions of memory, we must study memory for relatively complex information. We also need to understand the relationships between the information presented and other information available to the individual, both within the informational context and as a result of prior experience.

Retrieval from Long-Term Memory

It is difficult to separate storage from retrieval phenomena. Participants in one study were tested on their memory for lists of categorized words (Tulving & Pearlstone, 1966). Participants would hear words within a category together in the list. They...
even would be given the name of the category before the items within it were presented. For example, the participants might hear the category “article of clothing” followed by the words, “shirt, socks, pants, belt.” Participants then were tested for their recall.

The recall test was done in one of two ways. In the free recall condition, participants merely recalled as many words as they could in any order they chose. In a cued recall condition, however, participants were tested category by category. They were given each category label as a cue. They then were asked to recall as many words as they could from that category. The critical result was that cued recall was far better, on average, than free recall. Had the researchers tested only free recall, they might have concluded that participants had not stored quite so many words. However, the comparison to the cued recall condition demonstrated that apparent memory failures were largely a result of retrieval, rather than storage failures.

Categorization dramatically can affect retrieval. Investigators had participants learn lists of categorized words (Bower et al., 1969). Either the words were presented in random order or they were presented in the form of a hierarchical tree that showed the organization of the words. For example, the category “minerals” might be at the top, followed by the categories of “metals and stones,” and so on. Participants given hierarchical presentation recalled 65% of the words. In contrast, recall was just 19% by participants given the words in random order.

An interesting study by Khader and colleagues (2005) demonstrated that material that is processed in certain cortical areas during perception also activates those same areas again during long-term memory recall. Participants learned abstract words that were connected either with one or two faces or with one or two spatial positions (see Figure 6.3). A few days later in a cued recall task, they were presented with two words and were asked to decide whether those two words were connected by a common face or position, with their performance recorded by fMRI. Recall of

![Experimental stimuli](image)

**Figure 6.3** In the experiment of Khader and colleagues (2005), participants were presented with abstract words like “concept,” which were paired with either one or two spatial positions or faces.

spatial positions activated areas such as the parietal and precentral cortex, and faces activated areas such as the left prefrontal temporal cortex and the posterior cingulated cortex. Blood oxygen levels increased with the number of associations to be recalled.

Another problem that arises when studying memory is figuring out why we sometimes have trouble retrieving information. Cognitive psychologists often have difficulty finding a way to distinguish between availability and accessibility of items. **Availability** is the presence of information stored in long-term memory. **Accessibility** is the degree to which we can gain access to the available information. Memory performance depends on the accessibility of the information to be remembered. Ideally, memory researchers would like to assess the availability of information in memory. Unfortunately, they must settle for assessing the accessibility of such information.

**Intelligence and Retrieval**

Is there a link between age-related slowing of information processing and (1) initial encoding and recall of information and (2) long-term retention (Nettelbeck et al., 1996; see also Bors & Forrin, 1995)? It appears that the relation between inspection time and intelligence may not be related to learning. In particular, there is a difference between initial recall and actual long-term learning (Nettelbeck et al., 1996). Initial recall performance is mediated by processing speed. Older, slower participants showed deficits.

Longer-term retention of new information, preserved in older participants, is mediated by cognitive processes other than speed of processing. These processes include rehearsal strategies. Thus, speed of information processing may influence initial performance on recall and inspection time tasks, but speed is not related to long-term learning. Perhaps faster information processing aids participants in performance aspects of intelligence test tasks, rather than contributing to actual learning and intelligence. Clearly, this area requires more research to determine how information-processing speed relates to intelligence.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. How do we retrieve data from short-term memory?
2. Why do we need to make a difference between the **availability** and the **accessibility** of information?
3. Does intelligence influence retrieval?

**Processes of Forgetting and Memory Distortion**

Why do we so easily and so quickly forget phone numbers we have just looked up or the names of people whom we have just met? Several theories have been proposed as to why we forget information stored in working memory. The two most well-known theories are interference theory and decay theory. Interference occurs when competing information causes us to forget something; decay occurs when simply the passage of time causes us to forget.
Interference Theory

Interference theory refers to the view that forgetting occurs because recall of certain words interferes with recall of other words. Evidence for interference goes back many years (Brown, 1958; Peterson & Peterson, 1959). In one study, participants were asked to recall trigrams (strings of three letters) at intervals of 3, 6, 9, 12, 15, or 18 seconds after the presentation of the last letter (Peterson & Peterson, 1959). The investigators used only consonants so that the trigrams would not be easily pronounceable—for example, “K B F.” Figure 6.4 shows percentages of correct recalls after the various intervals of time.

Why does recall decline so rapidly? Because after the oral presentation of each trigram, participants counted backward by threes from a three-digit number spoken immediately after the trigram. The purpose of having the participants count backward was to prevent them from rehearsing during the retention interval. This is the time between the presentation of the last letter and the start of the recall phase of the experimental trial.

Clearly, the trigram is almost completely forgotten after just 18 seconds if participants are not allowed to rehearse it. Moreover, such forgetting also occurs when words rather than letters are used as the stimuli to be recalled (Murdock, 1961). So, counting backward interfered with recall from short-term memory, supporting the interference account of forgetting in short-term memory. At that time, it seemed surprising that counting backward with numbers would interfere with the recall of letters. The previous view had been that verbal information would interfere only with verbal (words) memory. Similarly, it was thought that quantitative (numerical) information would interfere only with quantitative memory.

At least two kinds of interference figure prominently in psychological theory and research: retroactive interference and proactive interference. Retroactive interference (or retroactive inhibition) occurs when newly acquired knowledge impedes the recall of older material. This kind of interference is caused by activity occurring after we learn something but before we are asked to recall that thing. The interference in the Brown-Peterson task appears to be retroactive because counting backward by threes occurs after learning the trigram. It interferes with our ability to remember information we learned previously.

![Figure 6.4](image-url) The percentage of recall of three consonants (a trigram) drops off quickly if participants are not allowed to rehearse the trigrams.

Proactive interference (or proactive inhibition) occurs when material that was learned in the past impedes the learning of new material. In this case, the interfering material occurs before, rather than after, learning of the to-be-remembered material. If you have studied more than one foreign language, you may have experienced this effect quite intensely. The author studied French at school, and then started learning Spanish when she entered college. Unfortunately, French words found their way into her Spanish essays unnoticed, and it took her a while to eliminate those French words from her writing in Spanish (proactive interference). Later, she studied Italian, and because she had not practiced Spanish in a few years, when she formulated Spanish sentences in a conversation without much time to think, there was a good chance a mixture of Italian and Spanish would emerge (retroactive interference).

Proactive as well as retroactive interference may play a role in short-term memory (Keppel & Underwood, 1962; Makovski & Jiang, 2008). Thus, retroactive interference appears to be important (Reitman, 1971; Shiffrin, 1973; Waugh & Norman, 1965), but not the only factor impeding memory performance.

The amount of proactive interference generally climbs with increases in the length of time between when the information is presented (and encoded) and when the information is retrieved (Underwood, 1957). Also as you might expect, proactive interference increases as the amount of prior—and potentially interfering—learning increases (Greenberg & Underwood, 1950). Proactive interference generally has stronger effects in older adults than in younger people (Ebert & Anderson, 2009).

Proactive interference seems to be associated with activation in the frontal cortex. In particular, it activates Brodmann area 45 in the left hemisphere (Postle, Brush, & Nick, 2004). In alcoholic patients, proactive interference is seen to a lesser degree than in non-alcoholic patients. This finding suggests that the alcoholic patients have difficulty integrating past information with new information. Thus, alcoholic patients may have difficulty binding together unrelated items in a list (De Rosa & Sullivan, 2003). Taken together, these findings suggest that Brodmann area 45 is likely involved in the binding of items into meaningful groups. When more information is gathered, an attempt to relate them to one another can occupy much of the available resources, leaving limited processing ability for new items.

All information does not equally contribute to proactive interference. For instance, if you are learning a list of numbers, your performance in learning the list will gradually decline as the list continues. If, however, the list switches to words, your performance will rebound. This enhancement in performance is known as release from proactive interference (Bunting, 2006). The effects of proactive interference appear to dominate under conditions in which recall is delayed. However, proactive and retroactive interference now are viewed as complementary phenomena.

Some early psychologists recognized the need to study memory retrieval for connected texts and not just for unconnected strings of digits, words, or nonsense syllables. In one study, participants learned a text and then recalled it (Bartlett, 1932). British participants learned a North American Indian legend called “The War of the Ghosts,” which to them was a strange and difficult-to-understand text. Read the legend in Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Bartlett’s Legend and test yourself to see how much of the legend you can recall.

Participants distorted their recall to render the story more comprehensible to themselves. In other words, their prior knowledge and expectations had a substantial effect on their recall. Apparently, people bring into a memory task their already existing schemas, which affect the way in which they recall what they
Schemas are mental frameworks that represent knowledge in a meaningful way. The later work using the Brown-Peterson paradigm confirms the notion that prior knowledge has an enormous effect on memory, sometimes leading to interference or distortion.

INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY
Can You Recall Bartlett’s Legend?

Read the following legend and then turn the page so you can not see the story. Now, try to recall the legend in its entirety by writing down what you remember.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(A) ORIGINAL INDIAN MYTH</th>
<th>(B) TYPICAL RECALL BY A STUDENT IN ENGLAND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>The War of the Ghosts</strong></td>
<td><strong>The War of the Ghosts</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One night two young men from Edulac went down to the river to hunt seals, and while they were there it became foggy and calm. Then they heard warcries, and they thought: “Maybe this is a war-party.” They escaped to the shore, and hid behind a log.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two men from Edulac went fishing. While thus occupied by the river they heard a noise in the distance. “It sounds like a cry,” said one, and presently there appeared some in canoes who invited them to join the party of their adventure. One of the young men refused to go, on the ground of family ties, but the other offered to go.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Now canoes came up, and they heard the noise of paddles, and saw one canoe coming up to them. There were five men in the canoe, and they said: “What do you think? We wish to take you along. We are going up the river to make war on the people.”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But there are no arrows,” he said. “The arrows are in the boat,” was the reply. He thereupon took his place, while his friend returned home. The party paddled up the river to Kaloma, and began to land on the banks of the river. The enemy came rushing upon them, and some sharp fighting ensued. Presently someone was injured, and the cry was raised that the enemy were ghosts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One of the young men said, “I have no arrows.” “Arrows are in the canoe,” they said. “I will not go along. I might be killed. My relatives do not know where I have gone. But you,” he said, turning to the other, “may go with them.”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“But there are no arrows,” he said. “The arrows are in the boat,” was the reply. He thereupon took his place, while his friend returned home. The party paddled up the river to Kaloma, and began to land on the banks of the river. The enemy came rushing upon them, and some sharp fighting ensued. Presently someone was injured, and the cry was raised that the enemy were ghosts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>So one of the young men went, but the other returned home.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>So the canoes went back to Egulac, and the young man went ashore to his house, and made a fire. And he told everybody and said: “Behold I accompanied the ghosts, and we went to fight. Many of our fellows were killed, and many of those who attacked us were killed. They said I was hit, and I did not feel sick.”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He told it all, and then he became quiet. When the sun rose he fell down. Something black came out of his mouth. His face became contorted. The people jumped up and cried. He was dead.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Another method often used for determining the causes of forgetting involves the serial-position curve. The **serial-position curve** represents the probability of recall of a given word, given its serial position (order of presentation) in a list. Suppose that you are presented with a list of words and are asked to recall them. The **recency effect** refers to superior recall of words at and near the end of a list. The **primacy effect** refers to superior recall of words at and near the beginning of a list. As Figure 6.5 shows, both the recency effect and the primacy effect seem to influence recall. The serial-position curve makes sense in terms of interference theory. Words at the end of the list are subject to proactive but not to retroactive interference. Words at the beginning of the list are subject to retroactive but not to proactive interference. And words in the middle of the list are subject to both types of interference. Therefore, recall would be expected to be poorest in the middle of the list. Indeed, it is poorest.

Primacy and recency effects can also be encountered in everyday life. Have you noticed that when you meet someone and then get to know him or her better, it can sometimes be very hard to get over your first impressions? This difficulty may be a
result of a primacy effect, which leads to your remembering your first impression particularly well. And if you are applying for a job and are doing interviews, you may be well served by being one of the first or last candidates that are interviewed in the hope that your interviewers will remember you better and more clearly than the candidates whose turns were in the middle.

Decay Theory

In addition to interference theory, there is another theory for explaining how we forget information—decay theory. Decay theory asserts that information is forgotten because of the gradual disappearance, rather than displacement, of the memory trace. Thus, decay theory views the original piece of information as gradually disappearing unless something is done to keep it intact. This view contrasts with interference theory, in which one or more pieces of information block recall of another.

Decay theory turns out to be exceedingly difficult to test because under normal circumstances, preventing participants from rehearsing is difficult. Through rehearsal, participants maintain the to-be-remembered information in memory. Usually participants know that you are testing their memory. They may try to rehearse the information or they may even inadvertently rehearse it to perform well during testing. However, if you do prevent them from rehearsing, the possibility of interference arises. The task you use to prevent rehearsal may interfere retroactively with the original memory.

For example, try not to think of white elephants as you read the next two pages. When instructed not to think about them, you actually find it quite difficult not to. The difficulty persists even if you try to follow the instructions. Unfortunately, as a test of decay theory, this experiment is itself a white elephant because preventing people from rehearsing is so difficult.

Despite these difficulties, it is possible to test decay theory. A research paradigm called the “recent-probes task” has been developed that does not encourage participants to rehearse the items presented (Berman et al., 2009; Monsell, 1978). It is
based on the item-recognition task of S. Sternberg (1966) presented earlier in this chapter. Here is the recent-probes task:

- Participants are shown four target words.
- Next, participants are presented with a probe word.
- Participants decide whether or not the probe word is identical to one of the four target words.

If the probe word is not the same as the target words but is identical to a target word from a recent prior set of target words ("recent negative"), then it will take participants longer to decide that probe word and target words do not match than if the probe word is completely new.

The response delay, which is usually between 50–100 milliseconds, is a result of the high familiarity of the probe word. That is, the recent-probes task elicits clear interference effects. Of interest to researchers is the intertrial interval (the time between the presentation of one set of target words and subsequent probe), which can easily be varied. After each set of stimuli, participants have no incentive to rehearse the target words, so the longer the intertrial interval, the more time passes and the more are the target words subject to decay in memory. Thus, if there is memory decay just as a result of time passing by, then recent negative probes in trials with a longer intertrial interval should not be as interfering of memory performance as recent negative probes in trials with a shorter intertrial time. So even if both decay and interference contribute to forgetting, it can be argued that interference has the strongest effect (Berman et al., 2009).

And this is exactly what researchers have found:

- Decay only had a relatively small effect on forgetting in short-term memory.
- Interference accounted for most of the forgetting.
- So even if both decay and interference contribute to forgetting, it can be argued that interference has the strongest effect (Berman et al., 2009).

To conclude, evidence exists for both interference and decay, at least in short-term memory. There is some evidence for decay, but the evidence for interference is much stronger. For now, we can assume that interference accounts for most of the forgetting in short-term memory. However, the extent to which the interference is retroactive, proactive, or both is unclear. In addition, interference also affects material in long-term memory, leading to memory distortion.

### CONCEPT CHECK

1. Name and define two types of interference.
2. What is the recency effect?
3. What is the difference between interference and decay?

### The Constructive Nature of Memory

An important lesson about memory is that memory retrieval is not just reconstructive, involving the use of various strategies (e.g., searching for cues, drawing inferences) for retrieving the original memory traces of our experiences and then
rebuilding the original experiences as a basis for retrieval (see Kolodner, 1983, for an artificial-intelligence model of reconstructive memory). Rather, in real-life situations, memory is also constructive, in that prior experience affects how we recall things and what we actually recall from memory (Davis & Loftus, 2007; Grant & Ceci, 2000; Sutton, 2003). Think back to the Bransford and Johnson (1972) study, cited at the opening of this chapter. In this study, participants could remember a passage about washing clothes quite well but only if they realized that it was about washing clothes.

In a further demonstration of the constructive nature of memory, participants read an ambiguous passage that could be interpreted meaningfully in two ways (Bransford & Johnson, 1973). It could be viewed as being either about watching a peace march from the 40th floor of a building or about a space trip to an inhabited planet. Participants omitted different details, depending on what they thought the passage was about. Consider, for example, a sentence mentioning that the atmosphere did not require the wearing of special clothing. Participants were more likely to remember it when they thought the passage was about a trip into outer space than when they thought it was about a peace march.

Consider a comparable demonstration in a different domain (Bower, Karlin, & Dueck, 1975). Investigators showed participants 28 different droodles—nonsense pictures that can be given various interpretations (see also Chapter 10). Half of the participants in their experiment were given an interpretation by which they could label what they saw. The other half did not receive an interpretation prompting a label. Participants in the label group correctly reproduced almost 20% more droodles than did participants in the control group.

### Autobiographical Memory

**Autobiographical memory** refers to memory of an individual’s history. Autobiographical memory is constructive. One does not remember exactly what has happened. Rather, one remembers one’s construction or reconstruction of what happened. People’s autobiographical memories are generally quite good. Nevertheless, they are subject to distortions (as will be discussed later). They are differentially good for different periods of life. Middle-aged adults often remember events from their youthful and early-adult periods better than they remember events from their more recent past (Read & Connolly, 2007; Rubin, 1982, 1996).

One way of studying autobiographical memory is through diary studies. In such studies, individuals, often researchers, keep detailed autobiographies (e.g., Linton, 1982; Wagenaar, 1986). One investigator, for example, kept a diary for a 6-year period (Linton, 1982). She recorded at least two experiences per day on index cards. Then, each month she chose two cards at random and tried to recall the events she had written on the cards as well as the dates of the events. She further rated each memory for its salience and its emotional content. Surprisingly, her rate of forgetting of events was linear. It was not curvilinear, as is usually the case. In other words, a typical memory curve shows substantial forgetting over short time intervals and then a slowing in the rate of forgetting over longer time intervals. Linton’s forgetting curve, however, did not show any such pattern. Her rate of forgetting was about the same over the entire 6-year interval. She also found little relationship between her ratings of the salience and emotionality of memories, on the one hand, and their memorability, on the other. Thus, she surprised herself in what she did and did not remember.
In another study of autobiographical memory, a researcher attempted to recall information regarding performances attended at the Metropolitan Opera over a period of 25 years (Sehulster, 1989). A total of 284 performances comprised the data for the study. The results were more in line with traditional expectations. Operas seen near the beginning and end of the 25-year period were remembered better (serial-position effect). Important performances also were better recalled than less important ones.

Recent work has illustrated the importance of self-esteem in the formation and recall of autobiographical memory. People with positive self-esteem remember more positive events, whereas people with negative self-esteem remember more negative events (Christensen, Wood, & Barrett, 2003). Likewise, depressed people recall more negative memories than people who are not depressed (Wisco & Nolen-Hoeksema, 2009). When people misremember, they usually tend to be wrong with regard to minor and marginal aspects, but remember the central characteristics.

Events like the attacks of September 11, 2001, are often remembered in flashbulb memories that are experienced almost as vividly as a movie.
correctly. But if you think about it, this is not so surprising. If we would remember a large number of small details, those details would likely at some point start to interfere with our memories for important things. So it may be better to concentrate on what is really important (Bjork et al., 2005; Goldsmith et al., 2005).

An often-studied form of vivid memory is the flashbulb memory—a memory of an event so powerful that the person remembers the event as vividly as if it were indelibly preserved on film (Brown & Kulik, 1977). People old enough to recall the assassination of President John Kennedy may have flashbulb memories of this event. Some people also have flashbulb memories for the destruction of the World Trade Center, or momentous events in their personal lives. The emotional intensity of an experience may enhance the likelihood that we will recall the particular experience (over other experiences) ardently and perhaps accurately (Bohannon, 1988). A related view is that a memory is most likely to become a flashbulb memory under three circumstances: The memory trace is important to the individual, is surprising, and has an emotional effect on the individual (Conway, 1995).

Some investigators suggest that flashbulb memories may be more vividly recalled because of their emotional intensity. Other investigators, however, suggest that the vividness of recall may be the result of the effects of rehearsal. The idea here is that we frequently retell, or at least silently contemplate, our experiences of these momentous events. Perhaps our retelling also enhances the perceptual intensity of our recall (Bohannon, 1988). Other findings suggest that flashbulb memories may be perceptually rich (Neisser & Harsch, 1993). In this view, they may be recalled with relatively greater confidence in the accuracy of the memories (Weaver, 1993) but not actually be any more reliable or accurate than any other recollected memory (Neisser & Harsch, 1993; Weaver, 1993). Suppose flashbulb memories are indeed more likely to be the subject of conversation or even silent reflection. Then perhaps, at each retelling of the experience, we reorganize and construct our memories such that the accuracy of our recall actually diminishes, while the perceived vividness of recall increases over time.

A study examining the memories of more than 3,000 people of the September 11 attacks on the World Trade Center towers in New York City found that the rate of forgetting is faster in the first year and then slows down. This change in rate allows the content to become more stable later on. Furthermore, it seems that emotional reactions elicited by the flashbulb memories are not as well remembered as nonemotional features, such as where a person was at the time of the attack (Hirst et al., 2009).

Some interesting effects of flashbulb memory involve the role of emotion. The more a person is emotionally involved in an event, the better the person’s memory is for that event. Also, over time, memory for the event degrades (Smith, Bibi, & Sheard, 2004). In one study, more than 70% of people who were questioned about the World Trade Center attacks on September 11, 2001, reported seeing the first plane hit the first tower. However, this footage was not available until the next day (Pezdek, 2003, 2006). These distortions illustrate the constructive nature of flashbulb memories. These findings further indicate that flashbulb memories are not immune to distortion, as once was thought.

Are different memory processes at work for flashbulb memories than for other kinds of memories? It appears not. Just as for other memories, the factors that influence encoding and retrieval are ones such as elaboration and the frequency of rehearsal (Neisser, 2003; Read & Connolly, 2007).
Which parts of the brain are involved in autobiographic memories? It seems that the medial temporal lobe is crucially involved in the recall of autobiographic memories. People with lesions in this area have trouble recalling memories from their recent past (but not from their more remote past; Kirwan et al., 2008).

Memory Distortions

People have tendencies to distort their memories (Aminoff et al., 2008; Roediger & McDermott, 2000; Schacter & Curran, 2000; Schnider, 2008). For example, just saying something has happened to you makes you more likely to think it really happened. This is true whether the event happened or not (Ackil & Zaragoza, 1998). These distortions tend to occur in seven specific ways, which Schacter (2001) refers to as the “seven sins of memory.” Here are Schacter’s “seven sins”:

1. Transience. Memory fades quickly. For example, although most people know that O. J. Simpson was acquitted of criminal charges in the murder of his wife, they do not remember how they found out about his acquittal. At one time they could have said, but they no longer can.
2. Absent-mindedness. People sometimes brush their teeth after already having brushed them or enter a room looking for something only to discover that they have forgotten what they were seeking.
3. Blocking. People sometimes have something that they know they should remember, but they can’t. It’s as though the information is on the tip of their tongue, but they cannot retrieve it (see also the explanation of the tip-of-the-tongue phenomenon in Chapter 4). For example, people may see someone they know, but the person’s name escapes them; or they may try to think of a synonym for a word, knowing that there is an obvious synonym, but are unable to recall it.
4. Misattribution. People often cannot remember where they heard what they heard or read what they read. Sometimes people think they saw things they did not see or heard things they did not hear. For example, eyewitness testimony is sometimes clouded by what we think we should have seen, rather than what we actually saw.
5. Suggestibility. People are susceptible to suggestion, so if it is suggested to them that they saw something, they may think they remember seeing it. For example,
in one study, when asked whether they had seen a television film of a plane crashing into an apartment building, many people said they had seen it. There was no such film.

6. **Bias.** People often are biased in their recall. For example, people who currently are experiencing chronic pain in their lives are more likely to remember pain in the past, whether or not they actually experienced it. People who are not experiencing such pain are less likely to recall pain in the past, again with little regard to their actual past experience.

7. **Persistence.** People sometimes remember things as consequential that, in a broad context, are inconsequential. For example, someone with many successes but one notable failure may remember the single failure better than the many successes.

What are some of the specific ways in which memory distortions are studied? We will consider two research areas next that investigate eyewitness testimony and repressed memories.

**The Eyewitness Testimony Paradigm**

A survey of U.S. prosecutors estimated that about 77,000 suspects are arrested each year after being identified by eyewitnesses (Dolan, 1995). Of the first 180 cases in the United States in which convicts were exonerated through the use of DNA evidence, more than three quarters involved eyewitness errors (Wells et al., 2006).

Eyewitness testimony may be the most common source of wrongful convictions in the United States (Modafferi et al., 2009). Generally, what proportion of eyewitness identifications are mistaken? The answer to that question varies widely (“from as low as a few percent to greater than 90%”; Wells, 1993, p. 554), but even the most conservative estimates of this proportion suggest frightening possibilities.

Consider the story of a man named Timothy. In 1986, Timothy was convicted of brutally murdering a mother and her two young daughters (Dolan, 1995). He was then sentenced to die, and for 2 years and 4 months, Timothy lived on death row. Although the physical evidence did not point to Timothy, eyewitness testimony placed him near the scene of the crime at the time of the murder. Subsequently, it was discovered that a man who looked like Timothy was a frequent visitor to the neighborhood of the murder victims. Timothy received a second trial and was acquitted.

**What Influences the Accuracy of Eyewitness Testimonies?** There are serious potential problems of wrongful conviction when using eyewitness testimony as the sole, or even the primary, basis for convicting accused people of crimes (Loftus & Ketcham, 1991; Loftus, Miller, & Burns, 1987; Wells & Loftus, 1984). Moreover, eyewitness testimony is often a powerful determinant of whether a jury will convict an accused person. The effect is particularly pronounced if eyewitnesses appear highly confident of their testimony. This is true even if the eyewitnesses can provide few perceptual details or offer apparently conflicting responses. People sometimes even think they remember things simply because they have imagined or thought about them (Garry & Loftus, 1994). It has been estimated that as many as 10,000 people per year may be convicted wrongfully on the basis of mistaken eyewitness testimony (Cutler & Penrod, 1995; Loftus & Ketcham, 1991). In general, people are remarkably susceptible to mistakes in eyewitness testimony. They are generally prone to imagine that they have seen things they have not seen (Loftus, 1998).

Some of the strongest evidence for the constructive nature of memory has been obtained by those who have studied the validity of eyewitness testimony. In a
now-classic study, participants saw a series of 30 slides in which a red Datsun drove down a street, stopped at a stop sign, turned right, and then appeared to knock down a pedestrian crossing at a crosswalk (Loftus, Miller, & Burns, 1978). Afterwards, participants were asked a series of 20 questions, one of which referred either to correct information (the stop sign) or incorrect information (a yield sign instead of the stop sign). In other words, the information in the question given this second group was inconsistent with what the participants had seen. Later, after engaging in an unrelated activity, all participants were shown two slides and asked which they had seen. One had a stop sign, the other had a yield sign. Accuracy on this task was 34% better for participants who had received the consistent question (stop sign question) than for participants who had received the inconsistent question (yield sign question).

Loftus’ eyewitness testimony experiment and other experiments (e.g., Loftus, 1975, 1977) have shown people’s great susceptibility to distortion in eyewitness accounts. This distortion may be due, in part, to phenomena other than just constructive memory. But it does show that we easily can be led to construct a memory that is different from what really happened. As an example, you might have had a disagreement with a roommate or a friend regarding an experience in which both of you were in the same place at the same time. But what each of you remembers about the experience may differ sharply. And both of you may feel that you are truthfully and accurately recalling what happened.

Questions do not have to be suggestive to influence the accuracy of eyewitness testimony. Line-ups also can lead to faulty conclusions (Wells, 1993). Eyewitnesses assume that the perpetrator is in the line-up. This is not always the case, however. When the perpetrator of a staged crime was not in a line-up, participants were susceptible to naming someone other than the true perpetrator as the perpetrator. In this way, they believed they were able to recognize someone in the line-up as having committed the crime. The identities of the nonperpetrators in the line-up also can affect judgments (Wells, Luus, & Windschitl, 1994). In other words, whether a given person is identified as a perpetrator can be influenced simply by who the others are in the line-up. So the choice of the “distracter” individuals is important. Police may inadvertently affect the likelihood of whether or not an identification occurs and also whether a false identification is likely to occur.

Confessions also influence the testimony of eyewitnesses. A study by Hasel and Kassin (2009) had participants view a staged robbery. Afterwards, the participants were presented with a line-up of suspects and were given the opportunity to identify
the robber (although the actual perpetrator was not among them). Sometime later, the participants were informed that one of the suspects in the lineup had made a confession. In all, 61% of those who had made a selection previously changed their identifications, and 50% of those who had not made an identification went on to positively identify the confessor. This finding shows what a grave impact a confession has on the identification of a perpetrator.

Likewise, feedback to eyewitnesses affected participants’ testimony. Telling them that they had identified the perpetrator made them feel more secure in their choice, whereas the feedback that they had identified a filler person made them back away from their judgment immediately. This phenomenon is called the post-identification feedback effect (Wells, 2008; Wright & Skagerberg, 2007).

Eyewitness identification is particularly weak when identifying people of a racial or ethnic group other than that of the witness (e.g., Bothwell, Brigham, & Malpass, 1989; Brigham & Malpass, 1985; Pezdek, Blandon-Gitlin, & Moore, 2003; Shapiro & Penrod, 1986). Evidence suggests that this weakness is not a problem remembering stored faces of people from other racial or ethnic groups, but rather, a problem of accurately encoding their faces (Walker & Tanaka, 2003).

Eyewitness identification and recall are also affected by the witness’s level of stress. As stress increases, the accuracy of both recall and identification declines (Deffenbacher et al., 2004; Payne et al., 2002). These findings further call into question the accuracy of eyewitness testimony because most crimes occur in highly stressful situations.

Not everyone views eyewitness testimony with such skepticism, however (e.g., see Zaragoza, McCloskey, & Jamis, 1987). It is still not clear whether the information about the original event actually is displaced by, or is simply competing with, the subsequent misleading information. Some investigators have argued that psychologists need to know a great deal more about the circumstances that impair eyewitness testimony before impugning such testimony before a jury (McKenna, Treadway, & McCloskey, 1992). At present, the verdict on eyewitness testimony is still not in.

Although there has been no ultimate verdict yet on eyewitness testimony, it is certainly important for all involved parties to know the limits of eyewitness statements. Research has shown, however, that although defense attorneys are moderately knowledgeable about the limitations of eyewitness testimony, prosecutors are less so. Indeed, prosecutors tend to overestimate the reliability of eyewitnesses’ statements and to underestimate the role of eyewitness statements in wrongful convictions (Wise et al., 2009). These results show the importance of educating the public as well as the parties involved in court proceedings about the fallibility of eyewitness accounts.

**Children as Eyewitnesses** Whatever may be the validity of eyewitness testimony for adults, it clearly is suspect for children (Ceci & Bruck, 1993, 1995). Children’s recollections are particularly susceptible to distortion. Such distortion is especially likely when the children are asked leading questions, as in a courtroom setting.

Consider some relevant facts (Ceci & Bruck, 1995). First, the younger the child is, the less reliable the testimony of that child can be expected to be. In particular, children of preschool age are much more susceptible to suggestive questioning that tries to steer them to a certain response than are school-age children or adults.

Second, when a questioner is coercive or even just seems to want a particular answer, children can be quite susceptible to providing the adult with what he or
she wants to hear. Given the pressures involved in court cases, such forms of questioning may be unfortunately prevalent. For instance, when asked a yes-or-no question, even if they don’t know the answer, most children will give an answer. If the question has an explicit “I don’t know” option, most children, when they do not know an answer, will admit they do not know, rather than speculate (Waterman, Blades, & Spencer, 2001).

Third, children may believe that they recall observing things that others have said they observed. In other words, they hear a story about something that took place and then believe that they have observed what allegedly took place. If the
child has some intellectual disability, memory for the event is even more likely to be distorted, at least when a significant delay has occurred between the time of the event and the time of recall (Henry & Gudjonsson, 2003).

A study in the United Kingdom has found that, when giving eyewitness testimony, children are also easily impressed by the presence of uniformed officers. When having to identify an individual in a line-up after having witnessed a staged incident, children made significantly more mistakes when a uniformed official was present (Lowenstein et al., 2010). Therefore, perhaps even more so than the eyewitness testimony of adults, the testimony of children must be interpreted with great caution.

**Can Eyewitness Testimonies Be Improved?** Steps can be taken to enhance eyewitness identification (e.g., using methods to reduce potential biases, to reduce the pressure to choose a suspect from a limited set of options, and to ensure that each member of an array of suspects fits the description given by the eyewitness, yet offers diversity in other ways; described in Wells, 1993). Moreover, suggestive interviews can cause biases in memory (Melnyk & Bruck, 2004). This problem is especially likely to occur when these interviews take place close in time to the actual event. After a crime, witnesses are generally interviewed as soon as possible. Therefore, steps must be taken to ensure that the questions asked of witnesses are not leading questions, especially when the witness is a child. This caution can decrease the likelihood of distortion of memory.

Gary Wells (2006) made several suggestions to improve identification accuracy in line-ups. These suggestions include presenting only one suspect per line-up so that witnesses do not feel like they have to decide between several people they saw; making sure that all people in the line-up are reasonably similar to each other to decrease the chance that somebody is identified mistakenly, just because he or she happens to share one characteristic with the suspected perpetrator that no one else in the line-up shares; and cautioning witnesses that the suspect may not be in the line-up at all.

In addition, some psychologists (e.g., Loftus, 1993a, 1993b) and many defense attorneys believe that jurors should be advised that the degree to which the eyewitness feels confident of her or his identification does not necessarily correspond to the degree to which the eyewitness is actually accurate in her or his identification of the defendant as being the culprit. At the same time, some psychologists (e.g., Egeth, 1993; Yuille, 1993) and many prosecutors believe that the existing evidence, based largely on simulated eyewitness studies rather than on actual eyewitness accounts, is not strong enough to risk attacking the credibility of eyewitness testimony when such testimony might send a true criminal to prison, preventing the person from committing further crimes.

**Repressed Memories**
Might you have been exposed to a traumatic event as a child but have been so traumatized by this event that you now cannot remember it? Some psychotherapists have begun using hypnosis and related techniques to elicit from people what are alleged to be repressed memories. Repressed memories are memories that are alleged to have been pushed down into unconsciousness because of the distress they cause. Such memories, according to the view of psychologists who believe in their existence, are very inaccessible, but they can be dredged out (Briere & Conte, 1993). However, although people may be able to forget terrible events that happened to them, there is only dubious support for the notion that clients in psychotherapy often are unaware of their having been abused as a child (Loftus, 1996).
Do repressed memories actually exist? Many psychologists strongly doubt their existence (Ceci & Loftus, 1994; Pennebaker & Memon, 1996; Roediger & McDermott, 1995, 2000; Rofe, 2008). Others are at least highly skeptical (Bowers & Farvolden, 1996; Brenneis, 2000). There are many reasons for this skepticism, which are provided in the following section. First, some therapists may inadvertently plant ideas in their clients’ heads. In this way, they may inadvertently create false memories of events that never took place. Indeed, creating false memories is relatively easy, even in people with no particular psychological problems. Such memories can be implanted by using ordinary, nonemotional stimuli (see below; Roediger & McDermott, 1995).

Second, showing that implanted memories are false is often extremely hard to do. Reported incidents often end up, as in the case of childhood sexual abuse, merely pitting one person’s word against another (Schooler, 1994). At the present time, no compelling evidence points to the existence of such memories. But psychologists also have not reached the point where their existence can be ruled out definitively. Therefore, no clear conclusion can be reached at this time.

The Roediger-McDermott (1995) paradigm, which is adapted from the work of Deese (1959), is able to show the effects of memory distortion in the laboratory. Participants receive a list of 15 words strongly associated with a critical but
nonpresented word. For example, the participants might receive 15 words strongly related to the word *sleep* but never receive the word *sleep*. The recognition rate for the nonpresented word (in this case, *sleep*) was comparable to that for presented words. This result has been replicated multiple times (McDermott, 1996; Schacter, Verfaellie, & Pradere, 1996; Sugrue & Hayne, 2006). Even when shorter lists were used, there was an increased level of false recognition for nonpresented items. In one experiment, lists as short as three items revealed this effect, although to a lesser degree (Coane et al., 2007). Embedding the list in a story can increase this effect in young children. This strategy strengthens the shared context and increases the probability of a participant’s falsely recognizing the nonpresented word (Dewhurst, Pursglove, & Lewis, 2007).

Why are people so weak in distinguishing what they have heard from what they have not heard? One possibility is a source-monitoring error, which occurs when a person attributes a memory derived from one source to another source. People frequently have difficulties in source monitoring, or figuring out the origins of a memory. They may believe they read an article in a prestigious newspaper, such as *The New York Times*, when in fact they saw it in a tabloid on a supermarket shelf while waiting to check out. When people hear a list of words not containing a word that is highly associated with the other words, they may believe that their recall of that central word is from the list rather than from their minds (Foley et al., 2006; Johnson, 1996, 2002).

Another possible explanation of this increased false recognition is spreading activation. In spreading activation, every time an item is studied, you think of the items related to that item. Imagine a metaphorical spider web with a word in the middle. Branching out from that word are all the words relating to that word. Of course there will be individual differences in the construction of these webs, but there will also be a lot of overlap. For instance, when you read the word *nap*, words like *sleep*, *bed*, and *cat* may be activated in your mind. In this way, activation branches out from the original word *nap*. If you see 15 words, all of which activate the word *sleep*, it is likely that, via a source-monitoring error, you may think you had been presented the word *sleep*. Some recent work supports the spreading-activation theory of errors in this paradigm (Dodd & MacLeod, 2004; Hancock et al., 2003; Roediger, Balota, & Watson, 2001). This theory is not, however, universally accepted (Meade et al., 2007).

**The Effect of Context on Memory**

A number of factors, such as emotions, moods, states of consciousness, schemas, and other features of our internal context, clearly affect memory retrieval. As studies of constructive memory show, our cognitive contexts for memory clearly influence our memory processes of encoding, storing, and retrieving information. Studies of expertise also show how existing schemas (frameworks for representing knowledge, see also Chapter 8) may provide a cognitive context for encoding, storing, and retrieving new information. Specifically, experts generally have more elaborated schemas than novices in regard to their areas of expertise (e.g., Chase & Simon, 1973; Frensch & Sternberg, 1989). These schemas provide a cognitive context in which the experts can operate. The use of schemas makes integration and organization relatively easy. They fill in gaps when provided with partial or even distorted information and visualize concrete aspects of verbal information. They also can implement appropriate metacognitive strategies for organizing and rehearsing new information. Clearly, expertise enhances our confidence in our recollected memories.

Our moods and states of consciousness also may provide a context for encoding that affects later retrieval of semantic memories. Thus, when we encode semantic
information during a particular mood or state of consciousness, we may more readily retrieve that information when in the same state again (Baddeley, 1989; Bower, 1983). Interestingly, an Australian study has found that weather-induced negative mood improves people’s memory for everyday scenes (like a scene in a shopping mall; Forgas et al., 2009).

How does state of consciousness affect memory? Something that is encoded when we are influenced by alcohol or other drugs may be retrieved more readily while under those same influences again (Eich, 1980, 1995). On the whole, however, the “main effect” of alcohol and many drugs is stronger than the interaction. In other words, the depressing effect of alcohol and many drugs on memory is greater than the facilitating effect of recalling something in the same drugged state as when one encoded it.

Some investigators have suggested that persons in a depressed mood can more readily retrieve memories of previous sad experiences, which may further the continuation of the depression (Baddeley, 1989; see also Wisco & Nolen-Hoeksema, 2009). If psychologists or others can intervene to prevent the continuation of this vicious cycle, the person may begin to feel happier. As a result, other happy memories may be more easily retrieved, thus further relieving the depression, and so on. Perhaps the folk-wisdom advice to “think happy thoughts” is not entirely unfounded. In fact, under laboratory conditions, participants seem more accurately to recall items that have pleasant associations than they recall items that have unpleasant or neutral associations (Matlin & Underhill, 1979; Monnier & Syssau, 2008). Interestingly, people suffering from depression tend to have deficits in forming and recalling memories (Bearden et al., 2006).

Even our external contexts may affect our ability to recall information. We appear to be better able to recall information when we are in the same physical context as the one in which we learned the material (Godden & Baddeley, 1975). In one experiment, 16 underwater divers were asked to learn a list of 40 unrelated words. Learning occurred either while the divers were on shore or while they were 20 feet beneath the sea. Later, they were asked to recall the words when either in the same environment as where they had learned them or in the other environment. Recall was better when it occurred in the same place as did the learning.

Even infants demonstrate context effects on memory. Consider an operant-conditioning experiment in which the infants could make a crib mobile move in interesting ways by kicking it. Three-month-old infants (Butler & Rovee-Collier, 1989) and 6-month-old infants (Borovsky & Rovee-Collier, 1990) were given an opportunity to kick a distinctive crib mobile in the same context (i.e., surrounded by a distinctive bumper lining the periphery of the crib) in which they first learned to kick it or in a different context. They kicked more strongly in the same context. The infants showed much less kicking when in a different context or when presented with a different mobile.

From these results, such learning seems highly context dependent. However, in one set of studies, 3-month-old infants (Rovee-Collier & DuFault, 1991) and 6-month-old infants (Amabile & Rovee-Collier, 1991) were offered operant conditioning experiences in multiple contexts for kicking a distinctive mobile. They were soon thereafter placed in a novel context. It was unlike any of the contexts for conditioning. The infants retained the memory. They kicked the mobile at high rates in the novel context. Thus, when information is encoded in various contexts, the information also seems to be retrieved more readily in various contexts. This effect occurs at least when there is minimal delay between the conditioning contexts and the novel context. However, consider what happened when the novel context occurred after a long delay. The infants did not show increased kicking.
Nevertheless, they still showed context-dependent memory for kicking in the familiar contexts (Amabile & Rovee-Collier, 1991).

All of the preceding context effects may be viewed as an interaction between the context for encoding and the context for retrieval of encoded information. The results of various experiments on retrieval suggest that how items are encoded has a strong effect both on how, and on how well, items are retrieved. This relationship is called **encoding specificity**—what is recalled depends on what is encoded (Tulving & Thomson, 1973). Consider a rather dramatic example of encoding specificity. We know that recognition memory is virtually always better than recall. For example, recognizing a word that you have learned is easier than recalling it. After all, in recognition you have only to say whether you have seen the word. In recall, you have to generate the word and then mentally confirm whether it appeared on the list.

In one experiment, Watkins and Tulving (1975) had participants learn a list of 24 paired associates, such as *ground-cold* and *crust-cake*.

- Participants were instructed to learn to associate each response (such as *cold*) with its stimulus word (such as *ground*).
- After participants had studied the word pairs, they were given an irrelevant task.
- Then they were given a recognition test with distracters.
- Participants were asked simply to circle the words they had seen previously.

Participants recognized an average of 60% of the words from the list. Then, participants were provided with the 24 stimulus words. They were asked to recall the responses. Their cued recall was 73%. Thus, recall was better than recognition. Why? According to the encoding-specificity hypothesis, the stimulus was a better cue for the word than the word itself. The reason was that the words had been learned as paired associates.

As mentioned in Chapter 5, the link between encoding and retrieval also may explain the **self-reference effect** (Greenwald & Banaji, 1989). Specifically, the main cause of the self-reference effect is not due to unique properties of self-referent cues. Rather, it is due to a more general principle of encoding and retrieval: When individuals generate their own cues for retrieval, they are much more potent than when other individuals do so.

Other researchers have confirmed the importance of making cues meaningful to the individual to enhance memory. For example, consider what happened when participants made up their own retrieval cues. They were able to remember, almost without errors, lists of 500 and 600 words (Mantyla, 1986). For each word on a list, participants were asked to generate another word (the cue) that to them was an appropriate description or property of the target word. Later, they were given a list of their cue words. They were asked to recall the target word. Cues were most helpful when they were both compatible with the target word and distinctive, in that they would not tend to generate a large number of related words. For example, if you are given the word *coat*, then *jacket* might be both compatible and distinctive as a cue. However, suppose you came up with the word *wool* as a cue. That cue might make you think of a number of words, such as *fabric* and *sheep*, which are not the target word.

To summarize, retrieval interacts strongly with encoding. Suppose you are studying for a test and want to recall well at the time of testing. Organize the information you are studying in a way that appropriately matches the way in which you will be expected to recall it. Similarly, you will recall information better if the level of processing for encoding matches the level of processing for retrieval (Moscovitch & Craik, 1976).


**Key Themes**

This chapter illustrates several of the key themes first presented in Chapter 1.

**Rationalism versus empiricism.**To what extent should courts rely on empirical evidence from psychological research to guide what they do? To what extent should the credibility of witnesses be determined by rational considerations (e.g., were they at the scene of a crime, or are they known to be trustworthy) and to what extent by empirical considerations revealed by psychological research (e.g., being at the scene of a crime does not guarantee credible testimony, and people’s judgments of trustworthiness are often incorrect)? Court systems often work on the basis of rational considerations—of what should be. Psychological research reveals what is.

**Domain generality versus domain specificity.**Mnemonics discussed in this chapter work better in certain domains than they do in others. For example, you may be able to devise mnemonics better if you are highly familiar with a domain, such as was the case for the long-distance runner studied by Chase, Ericsson, and Faloon (discussed in Chapter 5). In general, the more knowledge you have about a domain, the easier it will be to chunk information in that domain.

**Validity of causal inferences versus ecological validity.** Some researchers, such as Mahzarin Banaji and Robert Crowder, have argued that laboratory research yields findings that maximize not only experimental control but also ecological validity. Ulric Neisser has disagreed, suggesting that if one wishes to study everyday memory, one must study it in everyday settings. Ultimately, the two kinds of research together are likely to maximize our understanding of memory phenomena. Typically, there is no one right way to do research. Rather, we learn the most when we use a variety of methods that converge on a set of common findings.

---

**Summary**

1. What have cognitive psychologists discovered regarding how we encode information for storing it in memory? Encoding of information in short-term memory appears to be largely, although not exclusively, acoustic in form. Information in short-term memory is susceptible to acoustic confusability—that is, errors based on sounds of words. But there is some visual and semantic encoding of information in short-term memory. Information in long-term memory appears to be encoded primarily in a semantic form. Thus, confusions tend to be in terms of meanings rather than in terms of the sounds of words. In addition, some evidence points to the existence of visual encoding, as well as of acoustic encoding, in long-term storage.
Transfer of information into long-term storage may be facilitated by several factors:
1. rehearsal of the information, particularly if the information is elaborated meaningfully;
2. organization, such as categorization of the information;
3. the use of mnemonic devices;
4. the use of external memory aids, such as writing lists or taking notes;
5. knowledge acquisition through distributed practice across various study sessions, rather than through massed practice.

However, the distribution of time during any given study session does not seem to affect transfer into long-term memory. The effects of distributed practice may be due to a hippocampal-based mechanism that results in rapid encoding of new information to be integrated with existing memory systems over time, perhaps during sleep.

2. **What affects our ability to retrieve information from memory?**

Studying retrieval from long-term memory is difficult due to problems of differentiating retrieval from other memory processes.

It also is difficult to differentiate accessibility from availability. Retrieval of information from short-term memory appears to be in the form of serial exhaustive processing. This implies that a person always sequentially checks all information on a list. Nevertheless, some data may be interpreted as allowing for the possibility of self-terminating serial processing and even of parallel processing.

Interference also seems to influence long-term memory, at least during the period of consolidation. This period may continue for several years after the initial memorable experience.

Memory appears to be not only reconstructive—a reproduction of what was learned, based on recalled data and on inferences from only those data. It is also constructive—influenced by attitudes, subsequently acquired information, and schemas based on past knowledge. As shown by the effects of existing schemas on the construction of memory, schemas affect memory processes. However, so do other internal contextual factors, such as emotional intensity of a memorable experience, mood, and even state of consciousness. In addition, environmental context cues during encoding seem to affect later retrieval. Encoding specificity refers to the fact that what is recalled depends largely on what is encoded. How information is encoded at the time of learning will greatly affect how it is later recalled.

One of the most effective means of enhancing recall is for the individual to generate meaningful cues for subsequent retrieval.

**Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions**

1. In what forms do we encode information for brief memory storage versus long-term memory storage?
2. What is the evidence for encoding specificity? Cite at least three sources of supporting evidence.
3. What is the main difference between two of the proposed mechanisms by which we forget information?
4. Compare and contrast some of the views regarding flashbulb memory.
5. Suppose that you are an attorney defending a client who is being prosecuted solely on the basis of eyewitness testimony. How could you demonstrate to members of the jury the frailty of eyewitness testimony?
6. Use the chapter-opening example from Bransford and Johnson as an illustration to make up a description of a common procedure without
labeling the procedure (e.g., baking chocolate chip cookies or changing a tire). Try having someone read your description and then recall the procedure.

7. Make a list of 10 or more unrelated items you need to memorize. Choose one of the mnemonic devices mentioned in this chapter, and describe how you would apply the device to memorizing the list of items. Be specific.

8. What are three things you learned about memory that can help you to learn new information and effectively recall the information over the long term?

### Key Terms

- accessibility, p. 246
- autobiographical memory, p. 253
- availability, p. 246
- consolidation, p. 234
- constructive, p. 253
- decay, p. 234
- decay theory, p. 251
- distributed practice, p. 235
- encoding, p. 230
- encoding specificity, p. 265
- flashbulb memory, p. 255
- interference, p. 233
- interference theory, p. 247
- massed practice, p. 235
- metacognition, p. 234
- metamemory, p. 234
- mnemonic devices, p. 238
- primacy effect, p. 250
- proactive interference, p. 248
- recency effect, p. 250
- reconstructive, p. 252
- rehearsal, p. 234
- retrieval (memory), p. 230
- retroactive interference, p. 247
- schemas, p. 249
- serial-position curve, p. 250
- spacing effect, p. 235
- storage (memory), p. 230

### Media Resources

Visit the companion website—www.cengagebrain.com—for quizzes, research articles, chapter outlines, and more.

**CogLab**

Explore CogLab by going to http://coglab.wadsworth.com. To learn more, examine the following experiments:
- Brown-Peterson
- False Memory
- Serial Position
- Sternberg Research
- Von Restorff Effect
- Encoding Specificity
- Forgot It All Along
- Remember/Know
The Landscape of Memory: Mental Images, Maps, and Propositions

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Mental Representation of Knowledge
Communicating Knowledge: Pictures versus Words
Pictures in Your Mind: Mental Imagery
Dual-Code Theory: Images and Symbols
Storing Knowledge as Abstract Concepts:
  Propositional Theory
  What Is a Proposition?
  Using Propositions
Do Propositional Theory and Imagery Hold Up to Their Promises?
  Limitations of Mental Images
  Limitations of Propositional Theory

Mental Manipulations of Images
Principles of Visual Imagery
Neuroscience and Functional Equivalence
Mental Rotations
  How Does Mental Rotation Work?
  Intelligence and Mental Rotation
  Neuroscience and Mental Rotation
  Gender and Mental Rotation
Zooming in on Mental Images: Image Scaling
Examining Objects: Image Scanning
Representational Neglect

Synthesizing Images and Propositions
Do Experimenters’ Expectations Influence Experiment Outcomes?
Johnson-Laird’s Mental Models
Neuroscience: Evidence for Multiple Codes
  Left Brain or Right Brain: Where Is Information Manipulated?
  Two Kinds of Images: Visual versus Spatial

Spatial Cognition and Cognitive Maps
Of Rats, Bees, Pigeons, and Humans
Rules of Thumb for Using Our Mental Maps:
  Heuristics
Creating Maps from What You Hear:
  Text Maps

Key Themes
Summary
Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions
Key Terms
Media Resources
Here are some of the questions we will explore in this chapter:

1. What are some of the major hypotheses regarding how knowledge is represented in the mind?
2. What are some of the characteristics of mental imagery?
3. How does knowledge representation benefit from both images and propositions?
4. How may conceptual knowledge and expectancies influence the way we use images?

BELIEVE IT OR NOT

City Maps of Music for the Blind

How can a person who is blind find his or her way around in a new city? Well, not too far in the future they may be able to hear their way around by means of a translation of the landscape into music. Researchers are developing a handheld device that helps blind persons navigate their environment with their ears (Cronly-Dillon et al., 2000).

Just like a musical score is made up of black dots in a particular spatial distribution and are then transformed into music by a musician, the pixels in a digital image can be transformed into music as well. Listeners explore the musical landscape and create a mental image of what they see. The picture is read from the left to the right; a horizontal line is played as one continuous note, a vertical line is played as a fast chord of many notes, and a diagonal line from the top left to the bottom right can be heard as a descending scale. Listeners can scan an entire scene or zoom in to see the details of an object. The resulting music sounds a little like modern music. However, this only works for people who were once able to see because they once developed the ability to create three-dimensional mental images.

For example, in one study, blind subjects were able to distinguish trees, different buildings (like Victorian or modern houses and churches), or various types of cars. The blind subjects communicated their mental images to the researchers by drawing. In Figure 7.1, you can see the original images of two cars, processed images that were analyzed by the blind subjects, and the pictures of the mental images they drew.

In this chapter, we will explore the representation of knowledge in our minds—in words as well as in images.

Figure 7.1 How People Who Are Blind Form Mental Images.

Look carefully at the photos depicted in Figure 7.2. Now cover the photos and describe to yourself what two of these people look like and sound like. Clearly, none of these people can truly exist in a physical form inside your mind. How are you able to imagine and describe them? You must have stored in your mind some form of mental representation, something that stands for these people—of what you know about them.

What you use to recall these celebrities is more generally called knowledge representation, the form for what you know in your mind about things, ideas, events, and so on, in the outside world.

This chapter explores how knowledge is stored and represented in our minds:

- First, we consider what representations are and in what form they can be stored.
- Second, we will look at theories that describe knowledge representation and suggest that we store our knowledge in images, symbols, or propositions.
- Third, we look more closely at images in our mind. How can we rotate or scan them; in short, how can we manipulate mental images?
- Fourth, we examine whether separate theories regarding images and propositions can be combined as one approach.
- Last, we look at mental maps.

Mental Representation of Knowledge

Ideally, cognitive psychologists would love to observe directly how each of us represents knowledge. It would be as if we could take a videotape or a series of snapshots of ongoing representations of knowledge in the human mind. Unfortunately, direct empirical methods for observing knowledge representations are not available at present. Also, such methods are unlikely to be available in the immediate future. When direct empirical methods are unavailable, several alternative methods remain. We can ask people to describe their own knowledge representations and knowledge-representation processes: What do they see in their minds when they think of the Statue of Liberty, for example? Unfortunately, none of us has conscious access to our own knowledge-representation processes and self-reported information about these processes is highly unreliable (Pinker, 1985). Therefore, an introspectionist approach goes only so far.

Another possibility for observing how we represent knowledge in our minds is the rationalist approach. In this approach, we try to deduce logically how people represent knowledge. For centuries, philosophers have done exactly that. In classic epistemology—the study of the nature, origins, and limits of human knowledge—philosophers distinguished between two kinds of knowledge structures. The first type of knowledge structure is declarative knowledge. Declarative knowledge refers to facts that can be stated, such as the date of your birth, the name of your best friend, or the way a rabbit looks. Procedural knowledge refers to knowledge of procedures that can be implemented. Examples are the steps involved in tying your shoelaces, adding a column of numbers, or driving a car. The distinction is between knowing that and knowing how (Ryle, 1949). These concepts will be used later in the chapter.

There are two main sources of empirical data on knowledge representation: standard laboratory experiments and neuropsychological studies. In experimental work, researchers indirectly study knowledge representation because they cannot look
Figure 7.2  Mental Representations.
Look at each of these photos carefully. Next, close your eyes, and picture two of the people represented—people whom you recognize from reports in the media. Without looking again at the photos, mentally compare the appearances of the two people you have chosen. To compare the people, you need to have a mental representation of them in your mind.
into people’s minds directly. They observe how people handle various cognitive tasks that require the manipulation of mentally represented knowledge.

In neuropsychological studies, researchers typically use one of two methods: (1) they observe how the normal brain responds to various cognitive tasks involving knowledge representation, or (2) they observe the links between various deficits in knowledge representation and associated pathologies in the brain.

In the following sections, we explore some of the theories researchers have proposed to explain how we represent and store knowledge in our minds:

• First, we consider what the difference is between images and words when they are used to represent ideas in the outside world, such as in a book.
• Then we learn about mental images and the idea that we store some of our knowledge in the form of images.
• Next, we explore the idea that knowledge is stored in the form of both words and images (dual-code theory).
• Finally, we consider an alternative—propositional theory—which suggests that we actually use an abstract form of knowledge encoding that makes use of neither words nor mental images.

**Communicating Knowledge: Pictures versus Words**

Knowledge can be represented in different ways in your mind: It can be stored as a mental picture, or in words, or abstract propositions. In this chapter, we focus on the difference between those kinds of knowledge representation. Of course, cognitive psychologists chiefly are interested in our internal, mental representations of what we know. However, before we turn to our internal representations, let’s look at external representations, like books. A book communicates ideas through words and pictures. How do external representations in words differ from such representations in pictures?

Some ideas are better and more easily represented in pictures, whereas others are better represented in words. For example, suppose someone asks you, “What is the shape of a chicken egg?” You may find drawing an egg easier than describing it. Many geometric shapes and concrete objects seem easier to represent in pictures rather than in words. However, what if someone asks you, “What is justice?” Describing such an abstract concept in words would already be very difficult, but doing so pictorially would be even harder.

As Figure 7.3(a) and Figure 7.3(b) show, both pictures and words may be used to represent things and ideas, but neither form of representation actually retains all the characteristics of what is being represented. For example, neither the word cat nor the picture of the cat actually eats fish, meows, or purrs when petted. Both the word cat and the picture of this cat are distinctive representations of “catness.” Each type of representation has distinctive characteristics.

As you just observed, the picture is relatively analogous (i.e., similar) to the real-world object it represents. The picture shows concrete attributes, such as shape and relative size. These attributes are similar to the features and properties of the real-world object the picture represents. Even if you cover up a portion of the figure of the cat, what remains still looks like a part of a cat. Under typical circumstances, most aspects of the picture are grasped simultaneously; but you may scan the picture, zoom in for a closer look, or zoom out to see the big picture. Even when scanning or
zooming, however, there are no arbitrary rules for looking at the picture—you may scan the picture from the left to the right, from the bottom to the top, or however it pleases you.

In contrast, the word *cat* is a **symbolic representation**, meaning that the relationship between the word and what it represents is simply arbitrary. There is nothing inherently catlike about the word. If you had grown up in another country like Germany or France, the word “*Katze*” or the word “*chat*,” respectively, would instead symbolize the concept of a cat to you. Suppose you cover up part of the word “*cat*.” The remaining visible part no longer bears even a symbolic relationship to any part of a cat.

Because symbols are arbitrary, their use requires the application of rules. For example, in forming words, the sounds or letters also must be sequenced according to rules (e.g., “c-a-t,” not “a-c-t” or “t-c-a”). In forming sentences, the words also must be sequenced according to rules. For example, one can say “the cat is under the table,” but not “table under cat the is.”

Symbolic representations, such as the word *cat*, capture some kinds of information but not other kinds of information. The dictionary defines *cat* as “a carnivorous mammal (*Felis catus*) long domesticated as a pet and for catching rats and mice” (Merriam-Webster’s Online Dictionary, 2010). Suppose our own mental representations for the meanings of words resemble those of the dictionary. Then the

---

**Figure 7.3** Different Kinds of Mental Representations.

We may represent things and ideas in pictures or in words. Neither pictures nor words capture all the characteristics of what they represent, and each more readily captures some kinds of information than other kinds. Some cognitive psychologists have suggested that we have (a) some mental representations that resemble pictorial, analogous images; (b) other mental representations that are highly symbolic, like words; and perhaps even (c) more fundamental propositional representations that are in a pure abstract “mentalese” that is neither verbal nor pictorial, which cognitive psychologists often represent in this highly simplified shorthand.
word cat connotes an animal that eats meat ("carnivorous"), nurses its young ("mammal"), and so on. This information is abstract and general. It may be applied to any number of specific cats having any fur color or pattern. To represent additional characteristics, we must use additional words, such as black, Persian, or calico.

The picture of the cat does not convey any of the abstract information conveyed by the word regarding what the cat eats, whether it nurses its young, and so on. However, the picture conveys a great deal of concrete information about this specific cat. For example, it communicates the exact position of the cat’s legs, the angle at which we are viewing the cat, the length of the cat’s tail, whether both of its eyes are open, and so on.

Pictures and words also represent relationships in different ways. The picture in Figure 7.3(a) shows the spatial relationship between the cat and the table. For any given picture showing a cat and a table, the spatial (positional) relationship (e.g., beside, above, below, behind) will be represented concretely in the picture. In contrast, when using words, we must state spatial relationships between things explicitly by a discrete symbol, such as a preposition ("The cat is under the table."). More abstract relationships, however, such as class membership, often are implied by the meanings of the words. Cats are mammals or tables are items of furniture. But abstract relationships rarely are implied through pictures.

To summarize, pictures aptly capture concrete and spatial information in a manner analogous to whatever they represent. They convey all features simultaneously. In general, any rules for creating or understanding pictures pertain to the analogous relationship between the picture and what it represents. They help ensure as much similarity as possible between the picture and the object it represents. Words, on the contrary, handily capture abstract and categorical information in a manner that is symbolic of whatever the words represent. Representations in words usually convey information sequentially. They do so according to arbitrary rules that have little to do with what the words represent. Pictures and words are both well suited to some purposes but not to others. For example, blueprints and identification photos serve different purposes than essays and memos.

Now that we have some preliminary ideas about external representations of knowledge, let’s consider internal representations of knowledge. Specifically, how do we represent what we know in our minds? Do we have mental scenarios (pictures) and mental narratives (words)? In subsequent chapters on information processing and language, we discuss symbolic mental representations. In this chapter, we focus on mental imagery.
Pictures in Your Mind: Mental Imagery

Imagery is the mental representation of things that are not currently seen or sensed by the sense organs (Moulton & Kosslyn, 2009; Thomas, 2003). In our minds we often have images for objects, events, and settings. For example, recall one of your first experiences on a college campus. What were some of the sights, sounds, and smells you sensed at that time—cut grass, tall buildings, or tree-lined paths? You do not actually smell the grass and see the buildings, but you still can imagine them. Mental imagery even can represent things that you have never experienced. For example, imagine what it would be like to travel down the Amazon River. Mental images even may represent things that do not exist at all outside the mind of the person creating the image. Imagine how you would look if you had a third eye in the center of your forehead!

Imagery may involve mental representations in any of the sensory modalities, such as hearing, smell, or taste. Imagine the sound of a fire alarm, your favorite song, or your nation’s anthem. Now imagine the smell of a rose, of fried bacon, or of an onion. Finally, imagine the taste of a lemon, pickle, or your favorite candy. At least hypothetically, each form of mental representation is subject to investigation (e.g., Kurby et al., 2009; Palmieri et al., 2009; Pecenka & Keller, 2009).

Nonetheless, most research on imagery in cognitive psychology has focused on visual imagery, such as representations of objects or settings that are not presently visible to the eyes. When students kept a diary of their mental images, the students reported many more visual images than auditory, smell, touch, or taste images (Kosslyn et al., 1990). Most of us are more aware of visual imagery than of other forms of imagery.

We use visual images to solve problems and to answer questions involving objects (Kosslyn & Rabin, 1999; Kosslyn, Thompson & Ganis, 2006). Which is darker red—a cherry or an apple? How many windows are there in your house or apartment? How do you get from your home, apartment, or dormitory room to your first class of the day? How do you fit together the pieces of a puzzle or the component parts of an engine, a building, or a model? According to Kosslyn, to solve problems and answer questions such as these, we visualize the objects in question. In doing so, we mentally represent the images.

Many psychologists outside of cognitive psychology are interested in applications of mental imagery to other fields in psychology. Such applications include using guided-imagery techniques for controlling pain and for strengthening immune responses and otherwise promoting health. With such techniques, you could imagine being at a beautiful beach and feeling very comfortable, letting your pain fade into the background. Or you could imagine the cells of your immune system successfully destroying all the bad bacteria in your body. Such techniques are also helpful in overcoming psychological problems, such as phobias and other anxiety disorders. Design engineers, biochemists, physicists, and many other scientists and technologists use imagery to think about various structures and processes and to solve problems in their chosen fields.

Not everyone is equally skilled in creating and manipulating mental images, however. Research in applied settings and in the laboratory indicates that some of us are better able to create mental images than are others (Reisberg et al., 1986; Schienle et al., 2008). These differences are even measurable with functional
magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) (Cui et al., 2007). Research also indicates that the use of mental images can help to improve memory. In the case of persons with Down syndrome, the use of mental images in conjunction with hearing a story improved memory for the material as compared with just hearing the story (de la Iglesia, Buceta, & Campos, 2005; Kihara & Yoshikawa, 2001). Mental imagery also is used in other fields such as occupational therapy. Using this technique, patients with brain damage train themselves to complete complex tasks. For instance, by means of imagining the details of the tasks in the correct order so as to remember all the details involved, brain-damaged patients can wash dishes or take medication (Liu & Chan, 2009).

In what form do we represent images in our minds? According to an extreme view of imagery, all images of everything we ever sense may be stored as exact copies of physical images. But realistically, to store every observed physical image in the brain seems impossible. The capacity of the brain would be inadequate to such a task (Kosslyn, 2006; Kosslyn & Pomerantz, 1977). Note the simple example in Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Can Your Brain Store Images of Your Face?

Amazingly, learning can indeed take place just by using mental images. A study by Tartaglia and colleagues (2009) presented participants with a vertical parallel arrangement of three lines. The middle one was closer either to the right or left outer line. Practice using mental images resulted in participants becoming more sensitive to the asymmetry toward either the left or right side. A study with architects also showed the importance of mental images. Whether or not they were permitted to draw sketches in the early design phase of a project did not impact the design outcome and cognitive activity—if they were not allowed to draw sketches, they just used mental imaging (Bilda, 2006).

### Dual-Code Theory: Images and Symbols

According to dual-code theory, we use both pictorial and verbal codes for representing information (Paivio, 1969, 1971) in our minds. These two codes organize information into knowledge that can be acted on, stored somehow, and later retrieved for subsequent use. According to Paivio, mental images are analog codes. Analog codes resemble the objects they are representing. For example, trees and rivers might be represented by analog codes. Just as the movements of the hands on an analog clock are analogous to the passage of time, the mental images we form in our minds are analogous to the physical stimuli we observe.

### Investigating Cognitive Psychology

**Can Your Brain Store Images of Your Face?**

Look at your face in a mirror. Gradually turn your head from far right (to see yourself out of your left peripheral vision) to far left. Now tilt your head as far forward as you can then tilt it as far back as you can. All the while, make sure you still are seeing your reflection. Now make a few different expressions, perhaps even talking to yourself to exaggerate your facial movements. Could your brain store this series of separate images of your face? Storing each of these images and every image you see every day for years likely is impossible for your brain. So how do we store images in our brains?
In contrast, our mental representations for words chiefly are represented in a symbolic code. A *symbolic code* is a form of knowledge representation that has been chosen arbitrarily to stand for something that does not perceptually resemble what is being represented. Just as a digital watch uses arbitrary symbols (typically, numerals) to represent the passage of time, our minds use arbitrary symbols (words and combinations of words) to represent many ideas. Sand can be used as well to represent the flow of time, as shown in the hourglass in Figure 7.4.

A symbol may be anything that is arbitrarily designated to stand for something other than itself. For example, we recognize that the numeral “9” is a symbol for the concept of “nineness.” It represents a quantity of nine of something. But nothing about the symbol in any way would suggest its meaning. We arbitrarily have designated this symbol to represent the concept. But “9” has meaning only because we use it to represent a deeper concept. Concepts like *justice* and *peace* are best represented symbolically.

Paivio, consistent with his dual-code theory, noted that verbal information seems to be processed differently than pictorial information. For example, in one study, participants were shown both a rapid sequence of pictures and a sequence of words (Paivio, 1969). They then were asked to recall the words or the pictures in one of two ways. One way was at random, so that they recalled as many items as possible, regardless of the order in which the items were presented. The other way was in the correct sequence.

Participants more easily recalled the pictures when they were allowed to do so in any order. But they more readily recalled the sequence in which the words were presented than the sequence for the pictures, which suggests the possibility of two different systems for recall of words versus pictures.

Other researchers have found supporting evidence for dual-code theory as well. For example, it has been hypothesized that actual visual perception could interfere

---

**Figure 7.4** *Symbols Can Represent Ideas in Our Minds.*

This hourglass illustrates that we can depict the passage of time in various ways. We do not necessarily need numbers.
with simultaneous visual imagery. Similarly, the need to produce a verbal response could interfere with the simultaneous mental manipulation of words. If, however, an experiment found that visual and verbal tasks do not interfere with each other, this result would indicate that the two kinds of tasks draw on two different systems.

A classic investigation tested this notion (Brooks, 1968). Participants performed either a visual task or a verbal task. The visual task involved answering questions requiring judgments about a picture that was presented briefly. The verbal task involved answering questions requiring judgments about a sentence that was stated briefly. Participants expressed their responses verbally (saying “yes” or “no” aloud), visually (pointing to an answer), or manually (tapping with one hand to agree and the other to disagree). There were two conditions in which Brooks expected interference: a visual task requiring a visual (pointing) response and a verbal task requiring a verbal response. This prediction assumed that both task and response required the same system for completion. Interference was measured by slow-downs in

INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY

Analogical and Symbolic Representations of Cats

To get an intuitive sense of how you may use each of the two kinds of representations, think about how you mentally represent all the facts you know about cats. Use your mental definition of the word cat and all the inferences you may draw from your mental image of a cat. Which kind of representation is more helpful for answering the following questions:

- Is a cat’s tail long enough to reach the tip of the cat’s nose if the cat is stretching to full length?
- Do cats like to eat fish?
- Are the back legs and the front legs of a cat exactly the same size and shape?
- Are cats mammals?
- Which is wider—a cat’s nose or a cat’s eye?

Which kinds of mental representations were the most valuable for answering each of these questions?

INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY

Dual Coding

Look at the list of words that your friends and family members recalled in the demonstration in Chapter 6. Add up the total number of recollections for every other word (i.e., book, window, box, hat, etc.—the words in odd-numbered positions in the list). Now add up the total number of recollections for the other words (i.e., peace, run, harmony, voice, etc.—the words in even-numbered positions in the list). Most people will recall more words from the first set than from the second set. This is because the first set is made up of words that are concrete, or those words that are easily visualized. The second set of words is made up of words that are abstract, or not easily visualized. This is a demonstration of the dual-coding hypothesis (or its more contemporary version, the functional-equivalence hypothesis).
response times. Brooks confirmed his hypothesis. Participants did show slower response times in performing the pictorial task when asked to respond using a competing visual display, as compared with when they were using a noninterfering response medium (i.e., either verbal or manual).

**IN THE LAB OF STEPHEN KOSSLYN**

**Seeing with the Mind’s Eye**

If asked to decide what shape Mickey Mouse’s ears are, most people report that they visualize the cartoon figure’s ears and “see” that the ears are circular. Visual mental imagery hinges on such “seeing with the mind’s eye” and is used not only to recall information (often that one has not thought about previously, such as the shape of that rodent’s ears), but also in various forms of reasoning. For example, when considering how best to fit a bunch of backpacks, suitcases, and duffle bags into a trunk of a car, you might visualize each of them, and “see” how best to move them around and pack them efficiently—all before lifting a finger to heft a single bag into the trunk.

My lab has studied the nature of visual mental imagery for more than three decades now and a considerable amount has been learned. First and foremost, visual mental imagery is a lot like visual perception, which occurs when one registers input from the eyes. That is, whereas imagery is a bit like playing a DVD and seeing the results on the screen, perception is more like seeing the input from a camera displayed on a screen (but this is just a metaphor; there’s no little man in your head watching a screen—it’s just signals being processed). In fact, when we asked participants to classify parts of visible (but degraded) objects and, in another part of the test, to close their eyes and classify parts of visualized objects, more than 90% of the same brain areas were activated in common.

However, there has been a controversy about which parts of the brain give rise to visual mental imagery. Specifically, are the first parts of the cortex to register input from the eyes during perception also used during visual mental imagery? (Just how similar is mental imagery to perception?) Some neuroimaging studies find that these portions of the brain are activated during visual imagery, but some do not. In an analysis of the results from more than 50 such studies, we found that the variations in results reflected three factors: (1) if the task required “seeing” parts with relatively high resolution (e.g., as is necessary to use imagery to classify the shape of an animal’s ears from memory), then these parts of visual cortex are activated; (2) if the task is spatial (e.g., as required to decide in which arm the Statue of Liberty holds the torch), these parts of the brain are not activated; and (3) if a more powerful scanning technique is used (e.g., using a more powerful magnet in a magnetic resonance imaging machine), then it is more likely that activation in these areas will be detected.

In addition, in order to use imagery in reasoning—such as in packing the trunk of a car—one must be able to transform the image (rotating objects in it, sliding them around, bending them, etc.). We have found that there are several distinct ways in which such processes occur. For example, you can imagine physically moving the objects in the image (e.g., twisting them by hand) or can imagine some external force moving them (e.g., watching a motor spin them around). In the former case, parts of the brain used to control actual movements are activated during mental imagery, but not when the same movement is imagined as a result of an external force’s being at work.

This research has shown that much of the brain is activated in comparable ways during visual imagery and perception. But imagery has turned out to be “not one thing”; rather, it is a collection of distinct abilities (such as those used to classify shapes versus those used to rotate objects). Each new discovery about mental imagery brings us a little closer toward understanding how we can “see” things that aren’t there!
Similarly, his participants showed more interference in performing the verbal task when asked to respond using a competing verbal form of expression, as compared with how they performed when responding manually or by using a visual display. Thus, a response involving visual perception can interfere with a task involving manipulations of a visual image. Similarly, a response involving verbal expression can interfere with a task involving mental manipulations of a verbal statement. These findings suggest the use of two distinct codes for mental representation of knowledge. The two codes are an imaginal (analogical) code and a verbal (symbolic) code.

**Storing Knowledge as Abstract Concepts: Propositional Theory**

Not everyone subscribes to the dual-code theory. Researchers have developed an alternative theory termed a conceptual-propositional theory, or propositional theory (Anderson & Bower, 1973; Pylyshyn, 1973, 1984; 2006). **Propositional theory** suggests that we do not store mental representations in the form of images or mere words. We may experience our mental representations as images, but these images are *epiphenomena*—secondary and derivative phenomena that occur as a result of other more basic cognitive processes. According to propositional theory, our mental representations (sometimes called “mentalese”) more closely resemble the abstract form of a proposition. A proposition is the meaning underlying a particular relationship among concepts. Anderson and Bower have moved beyond their original conceptualization to a more complex model that encompasses multiple forms of mental representation. Others, such as Pylyshyn (2006), however, still hold to this position.

**What Is a Proposition?**

How would a propositional representation work? Consider an example. To describe Figure 7.3(a), you could say, “The table is above the cat.” You also could say, “The cat is beneath the table.” Both these statements indicate the same relationship as “Above the cat is the table.” With a little extra work, you probably could come up with a dozen or more ways of verbally representing this relationship.

Logicians have devised a shorthand means, called “predicate calculus,” of expressing the underlying meaning of a relationship. It attempts to strip away the various superficial differences in the ways we describe the deeper meaning of a proposition:

\[ \text{[Relationship between elements]}(\text{[Subject element]}, \text{[Object element]}) \]

The logical expression for the proposition underlying the relationship between the cat and the table is shown in Figure 7.3(c). This logical expression, of course, would need to be translated by the brain into a format suitable for its internal mental representation.

**Using Propositions**

It is easy to see why the hypothetical construct of propositions is so widely accepted among cognitive psychologists. Propositions may be used to describe any kind of relationship. Examples of relationships include actions of one thing on another, attributes of a thing, positions of a thing, class membership of a thing, and so on, as shown in Table 7.1. In addition, any number of propositions may be combined to represent more complex relationships, images, or series of words. An example would be “The furry mouse bit the cat, which is now hiding under the table.” The
key idea is that the propositional form of mental representation is neither in words nor in images. Rather, it is in an abstract form representing the underlying meanings of knowledge. Thus, a proposition for a sentence would not retain the acoustic or visual properties of the words. Similarly, a proposition for a picture would not retain the exact perceptual form of the picture (Clark & Chase, 1972).

According to the propositional view (Clark & Chase, 1972), both images (e.g., of the cat and the table in Figure 7.3(a)) and verbal statements (e.g., in Figure 7.3(b)) are mentally represented in terms of their deep meanings, and not as specific images or words. That is, they are represented as propositions. According to propositional theory, pictorial and verbal information are encoded and stored as propositions. Then, when we wish to retrieve the information from storage, the propositional representation is retrieved. From it, our minds re-create the verbal or the imaginal code relatively accurately.

Some evidence suggests that these representations need not be exclusive. People seem to be able to employ both types of representations to increase their performance on cognitive tests (Talasli, 1990).

### Table 7.1  Propositional Representations of Underlying Meanings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Relationship</th>
<th>Representation in Words</th>
<th>Propositional Representation*</th>
<th>Imaginal Representation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Actions</td>
<td>A mouse bit a cat.</td>
<td>Bite [action] [mouse [agent of action], cat [object]]</td>
<td>![Cat and Mouse Image]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>Mice are furry.</td>
<td>[external surface characteristic] [furry [attribute], mouse [object]]</td>
<td>![Mice Image]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spatial positions</td>
<td>A cat is under the table.</td>
<td>[vertically higher position] [table, cat]</td>
<td>![Cat and Table Image]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class or Category membership</td>
<td>A cat is an animal.</td>
<td>[categorical membership] [animal [category], cat [member]]</td>
<td>![Cat Image]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In this table, propositions are expressed in a shorthand form (known as “predicate calculus”) commonly used to express underlying meaning. This shorthand is intended only to give some idea of how the underlying meaning of knowledge might be represented. It is not believed that this form is literally the form in which meaning is represented in the mind. In general, the shorthand form for representing propositions is this: [Relationship between elements] ([subject element], [object element]).
Do Propositional Theory and Imagery Hold Up to Their Promises?

The controversy over whether we represent information in our memory by means of propositions or mental images continues today (see for example Kosslyn, 2006; Pylyshyn, 2006). Both theories have their limits. We explore these limits in the next section.

Limitations of Mental Images

What are the limits to analogical representation of images? For example, look quickly at Figure 7.5, then look away. Does Figure 7.5 contain a parallelogram (a four-sided figure that has two pairs of parallel lines of equal length)? Participants in one study looked at figures such as this one. They had to determine whether particular shapes (e.g., a parallelogram) were or were not part of a given whole figure (Reed, 1974). Overall performance was little better than chance. The participants appeared unable to call up a precise analogical mental image. They could not use a mental image to trace the lines to determine which component shapes were or were not part of a whole figure. To Reed, these findings suggested the use of a propositional code rather than an analogical one. Examples of a propositional code would be “a Star of David” or “two overlapping triangles, one of which is inverted.” Another possible explanation is that people have analogical mental images that are imprecise in some ways.

There are additional limits to knowledge representation in mental images (Chambers & Reisberg, 1985, 1992).

- Look at Figure 7.6(a).
- Now cover the image and imagine the rabbit shown in the figure.

Actually, the figure shown here is an ambiguous figure, meaning that it can be interpreted in more than one way. Ambiguous figures often are used in studies of perception. But these researchers decided to use such figures to determine whether

---

**Figure 7.5** Mental Images.

Quickly glance at this figure and then cover it with your hand. Imagine the figure you just saw. Does it contain a parallelogram?

mental representations of images are truly analogical to perceptions of physical objects (i.e., if mental images are indeed representations similar to what our eyes see).

- Without looking back at the figure, can you determine the alternative interpretation of Figure 7.6(a)?

When the participants in Chambers and Reisberg’s study had difficulty, the researchers offered cues. But even participants with high visualization skills often were unable to conjure the alternative interpretation.

Finally, the investigators suggested to participants that they should draw the figures out of their memory.

- Without looking again at the figure, briefly sketch Figure 7.6(a), based on your own mental representation of it.
- Once you have completed your sketch, try once more to see whether you can find an alternative interpretation of the figure.

If you are like most of Chambers and Reisberg’s participants, you need to have an actual percept (object of perception) of the figure in front of you so you can guess
at an alternative interpretation of the figure. These results indicate that mental representations of figures are not the same as percepts of these figures. In case you have not yet guessed it, the alternative interpretation of the rabbit is a duck. In this interpretation, the rabbit’s ears are the duck’s bill. One interpretation of Chambers and Reisberg’s findings—an implausible one—is that people plainly do not use images to represent what they see. An alternative and more plausible explanation is that a propositional code may override the imaginal code in some circumstances.

Early studies have also suggested that visual images can be distorted through verbal information. Participants were asked to view figures that were labeled. When they recalled the images, they were distorted in the direction of the meaning of the images.

Much earlier work suggested that semantic (verbal) information (e.g., labels for figures) tends to distort recall of visual images in the direction of the meaning of the images (Carmichael, Hogan, & Walter, 1932). For example, for each of the figures in the center column of Figure 7.7, observe the alternative interpretations for the figures recalled. Recall differs based on the differing labels given for the figures.

**Figure 7.7  The Influence of Semantic Labels.**
Semantic labels clearly influence mental images, as shown here in the differing drawings based on mental images of objects given differing semantic (verbal) labels. (After Carmichael, Hogan, & Walter, 1932.)
Limitations of Propositional Theory
In contrast to the work just discussed, there is some evidence that we do not necessarily need a propositional code to manipulate information, but can manipulate mental imagery directly.

Participants in a study by Finke and colleagues (Finke, Pinker, & Farah, 1989) manipulated mental images by combining two distinct images to form a different mental image altogether. This manipulation of mental images may be thought of as an imaginal Gestalt experience. In the combined image, the whole of the two combined images differed from the sum of its two distinct parts. The study showed that in some situations, mental images can be combined effectively (e.g., the letter $H$ and the letter $X$) to create mental images. The images may be of geometric shapes (e.g., right triangles), of letters (e.g., M), or of objects (e.g., a bow tie).

It appears that propositional codes are less likely to influence imaginal ones when participants create their own mental images, rather than when participants are presented with a picture to be represented. However, propositional codes may influence imaginal ones. This influence is especially likely to occur when the picture used for creating an image is ambiguous [as in Figure 7.6(a)–(c)] or rather abstract (as in Figure 7.5).

Other investigators have built on Finke’s work regarding the construction of mental images (Finke, Pinker, & Farah, 1989). They presented an alternative view of Chambers and Reisberg’s findings regarding the manipulation of ambiguous figures (Peterson et al., 1992). They believe that the mental reinterpretation of ambiguous figures involves two manipulations.

1. The first is a mental realignment of the reference frame. This realignment would involve a shift in the positional orientations of the figures on the mental “page” or “screen” on which the image is displayed. In Figure 7.6(a), the shift would be of the duck’s back to the rabbit’s front, and the duck’s front to the rabbit’s back.

2. The second manipulation is a mental reconstrual (reinterpretation) of parts of the figure. This reconstrual would be of the duck’s bill as the rabbit’s ears.

Participants may be unlikely to manipulate mental images spontaneously to reinterpret ambiguous figures, but such manipulations occur when participants are given the right context.

Under what conditions do participants mentally reinterpret their image of the duck-rabbit figure [see Figure 7.6(a)] and of some other ambiguous figures (Peterson et al., 1992)? What are the supporting hints? Across experiments, 20% to 83% of participants were able to reinterpret ambiguous figures, using one or more of the following hints:

1. Implicit reference-frame hint. Participants first were shown another ambiguous figure involving realignment of the reference frame [e.g., see Figure 7.6(b); a hawk’s head/a goose’s tail, and a hawk’s tail/a goose’s head].

2. Explicit reference-frame hint. Participants were asked to modify the reference frame by considering either “the back of the head of the animal they had already seen as the front of the head of some other animal” (Peterson et al., 1992, p. 111; considered a conceptual hint) or “the front of the thing you were seeing as the back of something else” (p. 115; considered an abstract hint).
3. **Attentional hint.** Participants were directed to attend to regions of the figure where realignments or reconstruals were to occur.

4. **Construals from “good” parts.** Participants were asked to construe an image from parts determined to be “good” (according to both objective [geometrical] and empirical [inter-rater agreement] criteria), rather than from parts determined to be “bad” (according to similar criteria).

Additionally, some spontaneous reinterpretation of mental images for ambiguous figures may occur. This is particularly likely for images that may be reinterpreted without realigning the reference frame. For example, see Figure 7.6(c), which may be a whole snail or an elephant’s head, or possibly even a bird, a helmet, a leaf, or a seashell.

The investigators went on to suggest that the processes involved in constructing and manipulating mental images are similar to the processes involved in perceptual processes (Peterson et al., 1992). An example would be the recognition of forms (discussed in Chapter 3). Not everyone agrees with this view. Some support for their views has been found by cognitive psychologists who hold that mental imagery and visual perception are functionally equivalent. Here, *functional equivalence* refers to individuals using about the same operations to serve about the same purposes for their respective domains.

Overall, the weight of the evidence seems to indicate there are multiple codes rather than just a single code. But the controversy continues (Kosslyn, 2006; Pylyshyn, 2006).

### Concept Check

1. In what forms can knowledge be represented in our mind?
2. What kinds of codes does dual-code theory comprise?
3. What is a proposition?

## Mental Manipulations of Images

According to the *functional-equivalence hypothesis*, although visual imagery is not identical to visual perception, it is functionally equivalent to it. Functionally equivalent things are strongly analogous to each other—they can accomplish the same goals. The functionally-equivalent images are thus analogous to the physical percepts they represent. This view essentially suggests that we use images rather than propositions in knowledge representation for concrete objects that can be pictured in the mind. This view has many advocates (e.g., Farah, 1988b; Finke, 1989; Jolicoeur & Kosslyn, 1985a, 1985b; Rumelhart & Norman, 1988; Shepard & Metzler, 1971).

### Principles of Visual Imagery

One investigator has suggested some principles of how visual imagery may be functionally equivalent to visual perception (Finke, 1989). These principles may be used as a guide for designing and evaluating research on imagery. Table 7.2 offers an idea of some of the research questions that may be generated, based on Finke’s principles.
Neuroscience and Functional Equivalence

Evidence for functional equivalence can be found in neuroimaging studies. In one study, participants either viewed or imagined an image. Activation of similar brain areas was noted, in particular, in the frontal and parietal regions. However, there was no overlap in the areas associated with sensory processes, such as vision (Ganis, Thomson, & Kosslyn, 2004).

Schizophrenia provides an interesting example of the similarities between perception and imagery. Many people who suffer from schizophrenia experience auditory hallucinations. Auditory hallucinations are experiences of “hearing” that occur in the absence of actual auditory stimuli. This “hearing” is the result of internally generated material. These patients have difficulty discriminating between many different types of self-produced and externally provided stimuli (Blakemore et al., 2000). Evidence from other researchers reveals that during auditory hallucinations there is abnormal activation of the auditory cortex (Lennox et al., 2000). Additionally, activation of brain areas involved with receptive language (i.e., hearing or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principle</th>
<th>Possible Questions Generated from Principles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Our mental transformations of images and our mental movements across images correspond to those of physical objects and percepts.</td>
<td>Do our mental images follow the same laws of motion and space that are observed in physical percepts? For example, does it take longer to manipulate a mental image at a greater angle of rotation than at a smaller one? Does it take longer to scan across a large distance in a mental image than across a smaller distance?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The spatial relations among elements of a visual image are analogous to those relations in actual physical space.</td>
<td>Are the characteristics of mental images analogous to the characteristics of percepts? For example, is it easier to see the details of larger mental images than of smaller ones? Are objects that are closer together in physical space also closer together in mental images of space?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Mental images can be used to generate information that was not explicitly stored during encoding.</td>
<td>After participants have been asked to form a mental image, can they answer questions that require them to infer information based on the image that was not specifically encoded at the time they created the image? For example, suppose that participants are asked to picture a tennis shoe. Can they later answer questions such as “How many lace-holes are there in the tennis shoe?”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. The construction of mental images is analogous to the construction of visually perceptible figures.</td>
<td>Does it take more time mentally to construct a more complex mental image than a simpler one? Does it take longer to construct a mental image of a larger image than of a smaller one?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Visual imagery is functionally equivalent to visual perception in terms of the processes of the visual system used for each.</td>
<td>Are the same regions of the brain involved in manipulating mental imagery as are involved in manipulating visual percepts? For example, are similar areas of the brain activated when mentally manipulating an image, as compared with those involved when physically manipulating an object?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7.2 Principles of Visual Imagery: Questions

According to the functional-equivalence hypothesis, we represent and use visual imagery in a way that is functionally equivalent (strongly analogous) to that for physical percepts. Ronald Finke has suggested several principles of visual imagery that may be used to guide research and theory development.
reading as opposed to speaking or writing) is observed during auditory hallucinations (Ishii et al., 2000). In sum, it is believed that auditory hallucinations occur at least in part because of malfunctions of the auditory imaging system and problematic perception processes (Seal, Aleman, & McGuire, 2004). These challenges make it difficult for afflicted individuals to differentiate between internal images and the perception of external stimuli.

These results suggest that there is indeed functional equivalence between what our senses perceive and what we create in our minds. In the following section, we will explore the mental manipulation of images in more detail.

**Mental Rotations**

Mental images can be manipulated in many ways. They can be rotated just like physical objects. We can also zoom into mental images to see more details of a specific area, or we can scan across an image from one point to another. Keep in mind that studies about mental image manipulations also give us some indication of whether the functional-equivalence hypothesis is indeed correct; that is, of whether mental images and the images we see with our eyes work in the same way and adhere to the same principles.

**How Does Mental Rotation Work?**

*Mental rotation* involves rotationally transforming an object’s visual mental image (Takano & Okubo, 2003; Zacks, 2008). Just like you can physically rotate a water bottle you hold in your hands, you can also imagine a water bottle in your mind and rotate it in the mind.

In a classic experiment, participants were asked to observe pairs of pictures showing three-dimensional (3-D) geometric forms (Shepard & Metzler, 1971). The forms were rotated from 0 to 180 degrees (Figure 7.8). The rotation was either in the picture plane [i.e., in 2-D space clockwise or counterclockwise; Figure 7.8(a)] or in depth [i.e., in 3-D space; Figure 7.8(b)].

In addition, participants were shown distracter forms. These forms were not rotations of the original stimuli [Figure 7.8(c)]. Participants then were asked to tell whether a given image was or was not a rotation of the original stimulus.

The response times for answering the questions about the rotation of the figures formed a *linear function* of the degree to which the figures were rotated (Figure 7.9). For each increase in the degree of rotation of the figures, there was a corresponding increase in the response times. Furthermore, there was no significant difference between rotations in the picture plane and rotations in depth. These findings are functionally equivalent to what we might expect if the participants had been rotating physical objects in space. To rotate objects at larger angles of rotation takes longer. Whether the objects are rotated clockwise, counterclockwise, or in the third dimension of depth, makes little difference. The finding of a relation between degree of angular rotation and reaction time has been replicated a number of times with a variety of stimuli (e.g., Gogos et al., 2010; Van Selst & Jolicoeur, 1994; see also Tarr, 1999).

To try your own hand at mental rotations, do the demonstration in the *Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Try Your Skills at Mental Rotations* box for yourself (based on Hinton, 1979).

Other researchers have supported these original findings in other studies of mental rotations. For example, they have found similar results in rotations of 2-D figures, such as letters of the alphabet (Gogos et al., 2010; Jordan & Huntsman, 1990),
cubes (Just & Carpenter, 1985; Peters & Battista, 2008), and body parts, in particular hands (Fiorio, Tinazzi & Aglioti, 2006; Fiorio et al., 2007; Takeda et al., 2009). In addition, response times are longer for degraded stimuli—stimuli that are blurry, incomplete, or otherwise less informative (Duncan & Bourg, 1983)—than for intact stimuli. Response times are also longer for complex items compared with simple items (Bethell-Fox & Shepard, 1988) and for unfamiliar figures compared with familiar ones (Jolicoeur, Snow, & Murray, 1987). Older adults have more difficulty with this task than do younger adults (Band & Kok, 2000).

The benefits of increased familiarity also may lead to practice effects—improvements in performance associated with increased practice. When participants have practice in mentally rotating particular figures (increasing their familiarity), their performance improves (Bethell-Fox & Shepard, 1988). This improvement, however, appears not to carry over to rotation tasks for novel figures (Jolicoeur, 1985; Wiedenbauer, Schmid, & Jansen-Osmann, 2007).

**Figure 7.8  Mental Rotations.**
For which of these pairs of figures does the figure on the right show an accurate rotation of the figure on the left?

Moreover, children and young adults showed speedier response times in mental-rotation tasks when given opportunities for practice (Kail & Park, 1990). The performance of both school-aged children and young adults on mental-rotation tasks is not impaired as a function of their engaging in simultaneous tasks involving memory recall (Kail, 1991). These findings suggest that mental rotation may be an automatic process for school-aged children and adults. Given that familiarity with the items and practice with mental rotation appear to enhance response times, Robert Kail’s work suggests that mental rotation may be an automatic process. Thus, enhanced response times may be the result of increasing automatization of the task across the years of childhood and adolescence. Furthermore, such automatic processes may be a sign of more effective visuospatial skills because increased speed is associated with increased accuracy in spatial memory (Kail, 1997).

Figure 7.9  Response Times for Mental Rotation.
Response times to questions about mental rotations of figures show a linear relationship to the angle of rotation, and this relationship is preserved, whether the rotations are in the picture plane or are in depth.

At the other end of the life span, two investigators studied whether processing speed or other factors may influence age-related changes in mental rotation by adults (Dror & Kosslyn, 1994). They found that older participants (55–71 years; mean 65 years) responded more slowly and less accurately than did younger participants (18–23 years; mean 20 years) on mental-rotation tasks, a finding that has been replicated (Band & Kok, 2000; Inagaki et al., 2002). However, they also found that older and younger participants showed comparable response times and error rates on tasks involving image scanning. Based on these and other findings, the authors concluded that aging affects some aspects of visual imagery more than others.

**Intelligence and Mental Rotation**

The work of Shepard and others on mental rotation provides a direct link between research in cognitive psychology and research on intelligence. The kinds of problems studied by Shepard and his colleagues are very similar to problems that can be found on conventional psychometric tests of spatial ability. For example, the Primary Mental Abilities test of Louis and Thelma Thurstone (1962) requires mental rotation of two-dimensionally pictured objects in the picture plane. Similar problems appear on other tests. Shepard’s work points out a major contribution of cognitive research toward our understanding of intelligence: It has identified the mental representations and cognitive processes that underlie adaptations to the environment and thus, ultimately, that constitute human intelligence.

**Neuroscience and Mental Rotation**

Is there any physiological evidence for mental rotation? One type of study involves the brains of primates, animals whose cerebral processes seem most closely analogous to our own. Using single-cell recordings in the motor cortex of monkeys, investigators found some physiological evidence that monkeys can do mental rotations (Georgopoulos et al., 1989). Each monkey had been trained physically to move a handle in a specific direction toward a target light used as a reference point. Whenever the target light appeared, the monkeys were to use that point as a reference for the physical rotation of the handle. During these physical rotations, the monkey’s

---

**INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY**

**Try Your Skills at Mental Rotation**

Imagine a cube floating in the space in front of you. Now, mentally grasp the left front bottom corner of the cube with your left hand. Also grasp the right back top corner of the cube with your right hand. While mentally holding those corners, rotate the cube so that the corner in your left hand is directly below the corner in your right hand (as if to form a vertical axis around which the cube would spin). How many corners of the imaginary cube are in the middle (i.e., not being grasped by your hands)? Describe the positions of the corners.

How well did you do with this mental rotation? Very few people have experience with mental rotation of geometric shapes. Most people imagine that there are four remaining corners of the cube being held by the two corners in their hands. They further imagine that all four corners are aligned on a horizontal plane, parallel to the ground. In fact, six corners remain. Only two corners are aligned in a given horizontal plane (parallel to the ground) at any one time.
cortical activity was recorded. Later, in the absence of the handle, the target light again was presented at various locations. The cortical activity again was recorded. During these presentations, activity in the motor cortex showed an interesting pattern. The same individual cortical cells tended to respond as if the monkeys were anticipating the particular rotations associated with particular locations of the target light. Another study examining mental rotation also indicates that the motor cortex (areas in the posterior frontal cortex) is activated during this task. The areas associated with hand movement were particularly active during the mental rotation task (Eisenegger, Herwig, & Jancke, 2007; Zacks, 2008).

Preliminary findings based on primate research suggest that areas of the cerebral cortex have representations that resemble the 2-D spatial arrangements of visual receptors in the retina of the eye (see Kosslyn, 1994b). These mappings may be construed as relatively depictive of the visual arrays in the real world (Cohen et al., 1996; Kosslyn et al., 1995). Perhaps if these same regions of the cortex are active in humans during tasks involving mental imagery, mental imagery may be similarly illustrative of the real world in mental representation.

Current brain-imaging techniques have allowed researchers to create images of human brain activity noninvasively to address such speculations. For example, in a study using functional magnetic resonance imaging, investigators found that the same brain areas involved in perception also are involved in mental rotation tasks (Cohen et al., 1996; see also Kosslyn & Sussman, 1995). Thus, not only are imagery and perception functionally equivalent in psychological studies, neuropsychological techniques also verify this equivalence by demonstrating overlapping brain activity.

Does mental imagery also involve the same mechanisms as memory processes because we have to recall those images from memory? If so, the functional-equivalence hypothesis for perception would lose some ground. If imagery is “functionally equivalent” to everything, then, in effect, it really is equivalent to nothing. A careful review cites many psychological studies that find differences between human-imagery and memory tasks so we can assume that these two kinds of tasks are not functionally equivalent (Georgopoulos & Pellizzer, 1995).

In sum, there is converging evidence, both from traditional and neuropsychological studies, to lend support to the hypothesis of functional equivalence between perception and mental imagery. Further neuropsychological work on images and propositions will be discussed later in the chapter.

**Gender and Mental Rotation**

Mental rotation has been extensively studied in addition to its application to the theories of imagery. A number of studies have highlighted an advantage for males over females in mental rotation tasks (Collins & Kimura, 1997; Roberts & Bell, 2000a, 2000b, 2003), but others have not (Beste et al., 2010; Jaencke & Jordan, 2007; Jansen-Osmann & Heil, 2007). A number of studies that have not found gender differences have used characters (like letters or numbers) for mental rotation; therefore, it is possible that the rotation of characters engages different processes than the mental rotation of other objects. Some researchers have speculated that this advantage has decreased since it was first observed. A number of other interesting features of this effect have been identified.

First, in young children, there is no gender difference either in performance or in neurological activation (Roberts & Bell, 2000a, 2000b). Second, there seem to be differences in the activation of the parietal regions between men and women. There is less parietal activation for women than for men completing the same mental
rotation task. However, women exhibit additional inferior frontal activation (Hugdahl et al., 2006; Thomsen et al., 2000; Zack, 2008). Thus, in women, spatial tasks involve both sides of the brain, whereas in men, the right side dominates this function. The differences in brain activation may mean that men and women use different strategies to solve mental rotation problems (Blake, McKenzie, & Hamm, 2002; Hugdahl et al., 2006; Jordan et al., 2002). Additionally, women have a proportionally greater amount of gray matter in the parietal lobe than do men, which is associated with a performance disadvantage for mental rotation tasks for the women (as they need increased effort to complete the tasks) (Koscik et al., 2009). Training causes the gender difference to decrease or even to disappear (Bosco, Longoni, & Vecchi, 2004; Kass, Ahlers, & Dugger, 1998).

**Zooming in on Mental Images: Image Scaling**

The key idea underlying research on image size and scaling is that we represent and use mental images in ways that are functionally equivalent to our representations and uses of percepts. In other words, we use mental images the same way we use our actual perceptions.

For example, when you look at a building from afar, you won’t be able to see as many details as when you are close by, and you may not be able to see things as clearly. Our resolution is limited. In general, seeing details of large objects is easier than seeing such details of small ones. We respond more quickly to questions about large objects we observe than to questions about small ones we observe. Now, if we assume that perception and mental representations are functionally equivalent, then participants should respond more quickly to questions about features of large imagined objects than to questions about features of small ones.

What happens when we zoom in closer to objects to perceive details? Sooner or later, we reach a point at which we can no longer see the entire object. To see the whole object once more, we must zoom out. See Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Imaging Scaling to observe perceptual zooming for yourself.

In research on visual perception, it is easy for researchers to control the sizes of the objects you see. However, for research on image size, controlling the sizes of people’s mental images is more difficult. How do you know that the image of the elephant in your head is the same size as the image of the elephant in someone else’s head? Fortunately, there are some ways to get around this problem (Kosslyn, 1975).

---

**INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY**

**Image Scaling**

Find a large bookcase (floor to ceiling, if possible; if not, observe the contents of a large refrigerator with an open door). Stand as close to the bookcase as you can while still keeping all of it in view. Now, read the smallest writing on the smallest book in the bookcase. Without changing your gaze, can you still see all of the bookcase? Can you read the title of the book farthest from the book on which you are focusing your perception? Depending on what you want to see (a detail like a book title or the whole shelf), you may have to zoom in and out of what you see. When you look at a small detail, it will be hard to perceive the whole shelf, and vice versa. The same is true for mental images.
One of the ways is to use relative size as a means of manipulating image size (Kosslyn, 1975). Participants imagine four pairs of animals—an elephant and a rabbit, a rabbit and a fly, a rabbit and an elephant-sized fly, and a rabbit and a fly-sized elephant (Figure 7.10 and Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Image Scanning). Then the participants answer specific questions about the features of the rabbit and are timed in their responses. It takes them longer to describe the details of smaller objects than to describe the details of the larger objects. That is, it takes longer to respond to rabbits paired with elephants or with elephant-sized flies than to respond to rabbits paired with flies or with fly-sized elephants. This result makes sense intuitively: Imagine we each have a mental screen for visual images and look at an elephant’s eye. The larger the eye on the screen, the more details we can see (Kosslyn, 1983; Kosslyn & Koenig, 1992).

In another study, children in the first and fourth grades and adult college undergraduates were asked whether particular animals can be characterized as having various physical attributes (Kosslyn, 1976). Examples would be “Does a cat have claws?” and “Does a cat have a head?” In one condition, participants were asked to visualize each animal and to use their mental image in answering the questions. In the other condition, the participants were not asked to use mental images. It was presumed that they used verbal-propositional knowledge to respond to the verbal questions.

In the imagery condition, all participants responded more quickly to questions about physical attributes that were larger than to questions about attributes that were smaller. For example, they might have been asked about a cat’s head (larger) and a cat’s claws (smaller). Different results were found in the nonimagery condition. In the nonimagery condition, fourth graders and adults responded more quickly to questions about physical attributes based on the distinctiveness of the characteristic for the animal. For example, they responded more quickly to questions about whether cats have claws (which are distinctive) than to questions about whether cats have heads (which are not particularly distinctive to cats alone). The physical size of the features did not have any effect on performance in the nonimagery condition for either fourth graders or adults.

INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY

Image Scanning

Look at the rabbit and the fly in Figure 7.10. Close your eyes and picture them both in your mind. Now, in your imagination, look only at the fly and determine the exact shape of the fly’s head. Do you notice yourself having to take time to zoom in to “see” the detailed features of the fly? If you are like most people, you are able to zoom in on your mental images to give the features or objects a larger portion of your mental screen, much as you might physically move toward an object you wanted to observe more closely.

Now, look at the rabbit and the elephant and picture them both in your mind. Next, close your eyes and look at the elephant. Imagine walking toward the elephant, watching it as it gets closer to you. Do you find that there comes a point when you can no longer see the rabbit or even all of the elephant? If you are like most people, you will find that the image of the elephant will appear to overflow the size of your image space. To “see” the whole elephant, you probably have to mentally zoom out again.
Interestingly, first-graders constantly responded more quickly regarding larger attributes, not only in the imagery condition but also in the nonimagery condition. Many of these younger children indicated that they used imagery even when not instructed to do so. Furthermore, in both conditions, adults responded more quickly than did children. But the difference was much greater for the nonimagery condition than for the imagery condition. These findings support the functional-equivalence hypothesis: When we see something in front of our “mental eye,” it takes children and adults about the same amount of time to perceive it, just as it would if we saw something in real life.

The findings also support the dual-code view in two ways. First, for adults and older children, responses based on the use of imagery (an imaginal code) differed from responses based on propositions (a symbolic code). Second, the development of propositional knowledge and ability does not occur at the same rate as the development of imaginal knowledge and ability. Children just did not have the propositional knowledge yet and therefore were slower than were adults in the nonimaginary condition. The distinction in the rate of development of each form of representation also seems to support Paivio’s notion of two distinct codes.

Examining Objects: Image Scanning

Stephen Kosslyn has found additional support for his hypothesis that we use mental images in image scanning. The key idea underlying image scanning research is that images can be scanned in much the same way as physical percepts can be scanned. Furthermore, our strategies and responses for imaginal scanning should be the same

Figure 7.10  Zooming in on Details.

Stephen Kosslyn (1983) asked participants to imagine either a rabbit and a fly (to observe zooming in to “see” details) or a rabbit and an elephant (to observe whether zooming in may lead to apparent overflow of the image space).
as for perceptual scanning. A means of testing the functional equivalence of imaginal scanning is to observe some aspects of performance during perceptual scanning, and then compare that performance with performance during imaginal scanning.

For example, in perception, to scan across longer distances takes longer than to scan across shorter ones (Denis & Kosslyn, 1999). In one of Kosslyn's experiments, participants were shown a map of an imaginary island, which you can see in Figure 7.11 (Kosslyn, Ball, & Reiser, 1978). The map shows various objects on the island, such as a hut, a tree, and a lake. Participants studied the map until they could reproduce it accurately from memory. Once the memorization phase of the experiment was completed, the critical phase began:

- Participants were instructed that, on hearing the name of an object read to them, they should imagine the map and mentally scan to the mentioned object.
- As soon as they arrived at the location of that object, they should press a key.
- An experimenter then read to the participants the names of objects.
- The participants had to scan to the proper location and press the button once they had found it.

This procedure was repeated a number of times. In each case, the participants mentally moved between various pairs of objects on successive trials. For each trial, the experimenter kept track of the participants' response times, indicating the amount of time it took them to scan from one object to another.

![Figure 7.11](image)

**Figure 7.11** Mental Scanning: An Imaginary Island.

Stephen Kosslyn and his colleagues used a map of an imaginary island with various landmarks to determine whether mental scanning across the image of a map was functionally equivalent to perceptual scanning of a perceived map.
What did Kosslyn find? There was an almost perfect linear relation between the distances separating pairs of objects in the mental map and the amount of time it took participants to press the button. The further away from each other the objects were, the longer it took participants to scan from one object to the other. Participants seem to have encoded the map in the form of an image. They actually scanned that image as needed for a response, just as they would have scanned a real map.

These findings have been replicated using other objects as well. In one study, Borst and Kosslyn (2008) presented participants with dots on a screen for a short time. In the mental image scanning task, participants had to memorize the location of the dots before the trial. Once the dots had been presented, participants in the mental-image group were presented with an empty frame that contained only an arrow. They had to decide whether the arrow pointed at one of the dots they had seen previously. In another condition, the participants were presented with a frame that contained not only the arrow but also the dots. In all conditions, the time to make a judgment increased linearly, depending on the distance between the dot and the arrow.

This finding indicates that the same mechanisms were used, no matter whether participants looked at the actual dots presented with the arrow, or looked only at the arrow, needing to imagine the dots. If participants did not use a spatial representation but rather a code based on Pylyshyn’s propositional theory (1973), then the distance between the points and the arrow should not have influenced reaction time, but it did. Recall that the experiment by Shepard and Metzler (1971) found linearly increasing reaction times for mental rotations as the angle of rotation increased.

Findings supporting an imaginal code have been shown in several other domains. For example, the same pattern of results has been obtained for scanning objects in three dimensions (Pinker, 1980). Specifically, participants observed and then mentally represented a 3-D array of objects—toys suspended in an open box—and then mentally scanned from one object to another.

**Representational Neglect**

Additional evidence for the similarity between perception and mental imagery can be seen in cases of representational neglect. Many patients suffering from spatial neglect (see Chapter 4) also suffer from a related impairment called representational neglect. As noted earlier, in spatial neglect a person ignores half of his or her visual field. In representational neglect, a person asked to imagine a scene and then describe it ignores half of the imagined scene. Although these two types of neglect often occur together, they can also occur independently. Peru and Zapparoli (1999) described a case of a woman who showed no evidence of spatial neglect while struggling with tasks that required the production of a mental image.

In another set of studies, an array was described to patients suffering from representational neglect. When the patients had to recall the array, they could not describe the left portion (Logie et al., 2005). Similarly, when subjects with representational neglect were presented with an image, they described the entire image. However, when the image was removed and they were asked to describe the image from memory, they failed to describe the left portion (Denis et al., 2002).
In scenes, representational neglect is present only when a vantage point is given (Rode et al., 2004). For example, if a person with representational neglect were asked to describe his or her kitchen, he or she would do so accurately. However, if the same person were asked to describe the kitchen from the refrigerator, then he or she would demonstrate neglect. It is likely that there exists complete knowledge of the scene, but that knowledge sometimes is not accessible when the patient generates a mental image.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What is mental rotation?
2. What is some of the neuropsychological evidence for mental rotation?
3. What is image scaling?
4. How do we mentally scan images?
5. What is representational neglect?

**Synthesizing Images and Propositions**

In this chapter, we have discussed two opposing views of knowledge representation. One is a dual-code theory, suggesting that knowledge is represented both in images and in symbols. The second is a propositional theory, suggesting that knowledge is represented only in underlying propositions, not in the form of images, words, or other symbols. Before we consider some proposed syntheses of the two hypotheses, let’s review the findings described thus far. We do so in light of Finke’s principles of visual imagery (see Table 7.3).

In our discussion, we addressed the first three of Finke’s criteria for imaginal representations. Mental imagery appears functionally equivalent to perception in many ways. This conclusion is based on studies of mental rotations, image scaling (sizing), and image scanning. However, the studies involving ambiguous figures and unfamiliar mental manipulations suggest that there are limits to the analogy between perception and imagery.

**Do Experimenters’ Expectations Influence Experiment Outcomes?**

Although there seems to be good evidence for the existence of both propositions and mental images (Borst, 2008; Kosslyn, 2006; Pylyshyn, 2006), the debate is not over. Perhaps some of the confirmatory results found in image research could be the result of demand characteristics (i.e., subjects’ perceptions of what is expected of them when they participate in an experiment) (Intons-Peterson, 1983). Do experimenters’ expectancies regarding the performance of participants on a particular task create an implicit demand for the participants to perform as expected?

Intons-Peterson (1983) set out to investigate just that question. She manipulated experimenter expectancies by suggesting to one group of experimenters that task performance would be expected to be better for perceptual tasks than for imaginal ones. She suggested the opposite outcome to a second group of experimenters. Would the different expectations of the experimenters lead to different performances?
of the participants? She found that experimenter expectancies did influence participants’ responses in three tasks: image scanning, mental rotations, and another task comparing perceptual performance with imaginal performance.

When experimenters expected imaginal performance to be better than perceptual performance, participants responded accordingly, and vice versa. This result occurred even when the experimenters were not present while participants were responding and when the cues were presented via computer. Thus, experimental

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 7.3 Principles of Visual Imagery: Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Principle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Our mental transformations of images and our mental movements across images correspond to similar transformations of and movements across physical objects and percepts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The spatial relations among elements of a visual image are analogous to those relations in actual physical space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Mental images can be used to generate information that was not explicitly stored during encoding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. The construction of mental images is analogous to the construction of visually perceptible figures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Visual imagery is functionally equivalent to visual perception in terms of the processes of the visual system used for each.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
participants performing visualization tasks may be responding in part to the demand characteristics of the task. These demand characteristics result from the experimenters’ expectations regarding the outcomes.

Other investigators responded to these findings (Jolicoeur & Kosslyn, 1985a, 1985b). In one experiment, participants were not asked to scan their mental images at all. However, they were asked two kinds of questions intermixed with each other: questions that involved responses requiring image scanning and questions that did not. Even when image scanning was not an implicit task demand, participants’ responses to questions that required image scanning still showed a linear increase in response time if the subjects had to scan across a longer distance. When questions did not require image scanning, reaction time was always about the same, no matter what the focus of the question was.

In another set of experiments, Jolicoeur and Kosslyn used a map of an island, similar to the one presented in Figure 7.11, and again had participants imagine the map and scan from one location to another. They led their experimenters to expect a pattern of responses that would show a U-shaped curve, rather than a linear function. In this study, too, responses still showed a linear relation between distance and time. They did not show the U-shaped response pattern expected by the experimenters. Thus, the expectations of the experimenters did not influence the responses of the participants. The hypothesis regarding the functional equivalence of imagery and perception thus appears to have strong empirical support.

The debate between the propositional hypothesis and the functional-equivalence (analogical) hypothesis has been suggested to be intractable, based on existing knowledge (Keane, 1994). For each empirical finding that supports the view that imagery is analogous to perception, a rationalist reinterpretation of the finding may be offered. The reinterpretation offers an alternative explanation of the finding. Although the rationalist alternative may be a less parsimonious explanation than the empiricist explanation, the alternative cannot be refuted outright. Therefore, the debate between the functional-equivalence view and the propositional view may boil down to a debate between empiricism and rationalism.

**Johnson-Laird’s Mental Models**

An alternative synthesis of the literature suggests that mental representations may take any of three forms: propositions, images, or mental models (Johnson-Laird, 1983, 1999; Johnson-Laird & Goldvarg, 1997). Here, propositions are fully abstracted representations of meaning that are verbally expressible. The criterion of the possibility of verbal expression distinguishes Johnson-Laird’s view from that of other cognitive psychologists.

**Mental models** are knowledge structures that individuals construct to understand and explain their experiences (Brewer, 2003; Goodwin & Johnson-Laird, 2010; Johnson-Laird, 2001; Schaeken et al., 1996; Tversky, 2000). The models are constrained by the individuals’ implicit theories about these experiences, which can be more or less accurate. For example, you may have a mental model to account for how planes fly into the air. But the model depends—not on physical or other laws but rather—on your beliefs about them. The same would apply to the creation of mental models from text or symbolic reasoning problems as from accounts of planes flying in the air (Byrne, 1996; Ehrlich, 1996; Garnham & Oakhill, 1996).
“The cat is under the table” may be represented in several ways: as a proposition (because it is verbally expressible); as an image (of a particular cat in a particular position under a particular table); or as a mental model (of any cat and table).

Is there any proof for the use of mental models? In an experiment by Mani and Johnson-Laird (1982), some participants received precise location information for each object in a spatial array (determinate descriptions). Other participants received ambiguous location information for objects in the array (indeterminate descriptions). As an analogy, consider a relatively determinate description of the location of Washington, D. C.: It lies between Alexandria, Virginia, and Baltimore, Maryland; an indeterminate description of the location is that it lies between the Pacific Ocean and the Atlantic Ocean. When participants were given detailed (determinate) descriptions for the spatial layout of objects, they inferred additional spatial information not included in the descriptions, but they did not recall the verbatim details well. For example, they could infer additional geographic information about Washington, D. C.’s location, but they could not remember the description word for word. Their having inferred additional spatial information suggests that the participants formed a mental model of the information. That they then did not recall the verbatim descriptions very well suggests that they relied on the mental models. They did not rely on the verbal descriptions for their mental representations.

What do you think happened when participants were given ambiguous (indeterminate) descriptions for the spatial layout of objects? They seldom inferred spatial information not given in the descriptions, but they remembered the verbatim descriptions better than did the other participants. The authors suggested that participants did not infer a mental model for the indeterminate descriptions because of the multitude of possibilities for mental models of the given information. Instead, the participants appear to have mentally represented the descriptions as verbally expressible propositions. The notion of mental models as a form of knowledge representation has been applied to a broad range of cognitive phenomena. These phenomena include visual perception, memory, comprehension of text passages, and reasoning (Johnson-Laird, 1983, 1989). Consider, for example, the statement: “Some dogs are poodles.” How might you construct a mental model to represent this statement?

Perhaps the use of mental models may offer a possible explanation of some findings that cannot be fully explained in terms of visual imagery. A series of experiments studied people who were born blind (Kerr, 1983). Because these participants have never experienced visual perception, we may assume that they never have formed visual images (at least, they have not done so in the ordinary sense of the term). Some of Kosslyn’s tasks were adapted to work comparably for sighted and for blind participants (Kerr, 1983). For example, for a map-scanning task, the experimenter used a board with topographical features and landmarks that could be detected by using touch. She then asked participants to form a mental image of the board.

Kerr asked participants to imagine various common objects of various sizes. The blind participants responded more slowly to all tasks than did the sighted participants. But Kerr’s blind participants still showed similar response patterns to those of sighted participants. They showed faster response times when scanning shorter distances than when scanning longer distances. They also were faster when answering questions about images of larger objects than about images of smaller objects. At least in some respects, spatial imagery appears not to involve representations that are actual analogs to visual percepts.
The use of haptic (touch-based) “imagery” suggests alternative modalities for mental imagery. Haptic imagery has been explored further by a number of researchers. These researchers have found that haptic imagery shares a number of features with visual imagery. For instance, similar brain areas are active during both types of imagery (James et al., 2002; Zhang et al., 2004). Perhaps haptic imagery involves the formation of a mental model that is analogous, in some respects, to visual imagery.

Imaginal representation also may occur in an auditory modality (based on hearing). As an example, investigators found that participants seem to have auditory mental images, just as they have visual mental images (Intons-Peterson, Russell, & Dressel, 1992). Specifically, participants took longer mentally to shift a sound upward in pitch than downward. In particular, they were slower in going from the low-pitched purring of a cat to the high-pitched ringing of a telephone than in going from the cat’s purring to a clock’s ticking. The relative response times were analogous to the time needed physically to change sounds up or down in pitch. Consider what happened, in contrast, when individuals were asked to make psychophysical judgments involving discriminations between stimuli. Participants took longer to determine whether purring was lower-pitched than was ticking (two relatively close stimuli) than to determine whether purring was lower-pitched than was ringing (two relatively distant stimuli). As with haptic imagery, it is easier to conceptualize auditory imagery in terms of mental models than strictly in terms of the kinds of pictorial mental representations of which people speak when they think of visual imagery.

Psychophysical tests of auditory sensation and perception reveal findings analogous to the studies on auditory and haptic imagery. In another study, participants listened to either familiar or unfamiliar songs with pieces of the song replaced with silence. Examining the brains of these participants revealed that there was more activation of the auditory cortex during silence when the song was familiar than when the song was unfamiliar (Kraemer et al., 2005). These findings suggest that when one generates an auditory image, the same brain areas as those involved in hearing are engaged.

Faulty mental models are responsible for many errors in thinking. Consider several examples (Brewer, 2003). School children tend to think of heat and cold as moving through objects, much as fluids do. These children also believe that plants obtain their food from the ground, and that boats made of iron should sink. Even adults have trouble understanding the trajectory of an object dropped from a moving airplane.

Experience is a useful tool for the repair of faulty mental models (Greene & Azevedo, 2007). In one study, faulty mental models concerning the process of respiration were explored. A group of college students who made false predictions concerning the process of respiration participated in this study. These predictions were based on imprecise mental models. The experimenters set up a laboratory experience for the students to demonstrate and explore the process of respiration. One group stated their predictions before the experiment and another did not. Overall, participating in the activity improved the accuracy of the answers of participants to questions concerning respiration, compared with performance before the activity. However, when the students were required to state their predictions before the experiment, the improvement was even greater (Modell et al., 2000). This research can be applied to classroom teaching. For example, if a teacher asks students to explain how they think the respiratory system works and then offers an experiment or demonstration showing how respiration works, students who did not understand the
process correctly are now more able, because of the activity, to correct their understanding and learn. Thus, experience can help correct faulty mental models. However, it is most helpful when the faulty models are made explicit.

In sum, mental models provide an additional means of representation in addition to propositions and visual images. They are not mutually exclusive with these other two forms of representation, but they are complementary to them. Mental models provide a way of explaining empirical findings, such as haptic and auditory forms of imagery, which seem quite different from visual images.

**Neuroscience: Evidence for Multiple Codes**

Participants involved in a research project involving cognitive tasks can be influenced by the expectations of the researcher. But it seems implausible that such factors would equally influence the results of neuropsychological research. For example, suppose you remembered every word in Chapter 2 regarding which particular parts of your brain govern which kinds of perceptual and cognitive functions. (This is, of course, an unlikely assumption for you or for most participants in neuropsychological research.) How would you go about conforming to experimenters’ expectations? You would have to control directly your brain’s activities and functions so that you would simulate what experimenters expected in association with particular perceptual or cognitive functions. Likewise, brain-damaged patients do not know that particular lesions are supposed to lead to particular kinds of deficits. Indeed, the patients rarely know where a lesion is until after deficits are discovered. Thus, neuropsychological findings may circumvent many issues of demand characteristics in resolving the dual-code controversy. However, this research does not eliminate experimenter biases regarding where to look for lesions or the deficits arising from them.

**Left Brain or Right Brain: Where Is Information Manipulated?**

Some investigators have followed the long-standing tradition of studying patterns of brain lesions and relating them to cognitive deficits. Initial neuropsychological research on imagery came from studies of patients with identified lesions and from split-brain patients. Recall the Chapter 2 studies of patients who underwent surgery that severed their right hemisphere from their left hemisphere. Researchers found that the right hemisphere appears to represent and manipulate visuospatial knowledge in a manner similar to perception (Gazzaniga & Sperry, 1967). In contrast, the left hemisphere appears to be more proficient in representing and manipulating verbal and other symbol-based knowledge.

Perhaps cerebral asymmetry has evolutionary origins (Corballis, 1989). The right hemisphere of the human brain represents knowledge in a manner that is analogous to our physical environment. This is also the case with the brains of other animals. Unlike the brains of other animals, however, the left hemisphere only of the human brain has the ability to manipulate imaginal components and symbols and to generate entirely new information (e.g., consonant and vowel sounds and geometric shapes). For example, the word “text” as a verb did not exist just a few years ago. Today it exists and most people know what it means, that is, to send a text message. According to Corballis, humans alone can conceive what they have never perceived. However, a review of the findings on lateralization has led to a modified view (Corballis, 1997). Specifically, recent neuropsychological studies of mental
rotation in both animals and humans show that both hemispheres may be partially responsible for task performance. The apparent right-hemisphere dominance observed in humans may be the result of the overshadowing of left-hemisphere functions by linguistic abilities. Thus, it would be useful to have clear evidence of a cerebral-hemispheric dissociation between analog imagery functions and symbolic propositional functions. Scientists, however, will have to look deeper into brain functioning before this issue is resolved completely.

Two Kinds of Images: Visual versus Spatial

While examining visual imagery, researchers have found that images actually may be stored (represented) in different formats in the mind, depending on what kind of image is involved (Farah, 1988a, 1988b; Farah et al., 1988a). Here, visual imagery refers to the use of images that represent visual characteristics such as colors and shapes. Spatial imagery refers to images that represent spatial features such as depth dimensions, distances, and orientations.

Consider the case of L. H., a 36-year-old who had a head injury at age 18. The injury resulted in lesions in the right and the left temporo-occipital regions, the right temporal lobe, and the right inferior frontal lobe. L. H.’s injuries implicated possible impairment of his ability to represent and manipulate both visual and spatial images. Figure 7.12 shows those areas of L. H.’s brain where there was damage.

![Figure 7.12 Damage to the Temporal Lobe.](image_url)

**Figure 7.12 Damage to the Temporal Lobe.**

Regions in which the brain of L. H. was damaged: the right temporal lobe and right inferior frontal lobe, as shown in the figure at the top; and the temporo-occipital region, as shown in the figure at the bottom.

Figure 7.13  L. H.’s Performance in Visual and Spatial Imagery.

L. H. was able to draw accurately various objects. Panel (a) shows what he was shown, and panel (b) shows what he drew. However, he could not recognize the objects he copied. Despite L. H.’s severe deficits on visual-imagery tasks [panel (c), regarding colors, sizes, shapes, etc.], L. H. showed normal ability on spatial-imagery tasks [panel (d), regarding rotations, scanning, scaling, etc.].

Despite L. H.’s injuries, L. H.’s ability to see was intact. He was able satisfactorily to copy various pictures [Figure 7.13(a) and (b)]. Nonetheless, he could not recognize any of the pictures he copied. In other words, he could not link verbal labels to the objects pictured. He performed very poorly when asked to respond verbally to questions requiring visual imagery, such as those regarding color or shape. Surprisingly, however, L. H. showed relatively normal abilities in several kinds of tasks. These involved: (1) rotations (2-D letters, 3-D objects); (2) mental scanning, size scaling, matrix memory, and letter corners; and (3) state locations [Figure 7.13(c) and (d)]. That is, his ability for several types of spatial imagery was not impaired. This finding indicates that spatial and visual imagery may indeed be different from each other.

Investigators have also used event-related potentials (ERP; see Chapter 2, Table 2.3) to study visual imagery. They thereby compared brain processes associated with visual perception to brain processes associated with visual imagery (Farah et al., 1988b). As you may recall, the primary visual cortex is located in the occipital region of the brain. During visual perception, ERPs generally are elevated in the occipital region. If visual imagery were analogous to visual perception, we could expect that, during tasks involving visual imagery, there would be analogous elevations of ERPs in the occipital region.

In Farah’s study, ERPs were measured during a reading task. In one condition, participants were asked to read a list of concrete words (e.g., cat). In the other condition, participants were asked to read a comparable list of concrete words but were also asked to imagine the objects during reading. Each word was presented for 200 milliseconds. ERPs were recorded from the different sites in the occipital lobe and temporal lobe regions. The researchers found that the ERPs were similar across the two conditions during the first 450 milliseconds. After this time, however, participants in the imaginal condition showed greater neural activity in the occipital lobe than did participants in the nonimaginal (reading-only) condition.

“Neurophysiological evidence suggests that our cognitive architecture includes representations of both the visual appearance of objects in terms of their form, color, and perspective, and of the spatial structure of objects in terms of their three-dimensional layout in space” (Farah et al., 1988a, p. 459). Knowledge of object labels (recognizing the objects by name) and attributes (answering questions about the characteristics of the objects) taps propositional, symbolic knowledge about the pictured objects. In contrast, the ability to manipulate the orientation (rotation) or the size of images taps imaginal, analogous knowledge of the objects. Thus, both forms of representation seem to answer particular kinds of questions for knowledge use.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. Why are demand characteristics important when researchers design and interpret experiments?
2. What kind of mental model did Johnson-Laird propose?
3. What is the difference between visual and spatial imagery?
Spatial Cognition and Cognitive Maps

Most of the studies described thus far have involved the way in which we represent pictorial knowledge. The studies are based on what we have perceived by looking at and then imagining visual stimuli. Other research suggests that we may form imaginal maps based solely on our physical interactions with, and navigations through, our physical environment. This is true even when we never have a chance to “see the whole picture,” as from an aerial photograph or a map. Spatial cognition deals with the acquisition, organization, and use of knowledge about objects and actions in two- and three-dimensional space.

Cognitive maps are internal representations of our physical environment, particularly centering on spatial relationships. Cognitive maps seem to offer internal representations that simulate particular spatial features of our external environment (Rumelhart & Norman, 1988; Wagner, 2006).

Of Rats, Bees, Pigeons, and Humans

Some of the earliest work on cognitive maps was done by Edward Tolman during the 1930s. At this time, it was considered almost unseemly for psychologists to try to understand cognitive processes that could not be observed or measured directly (you can’t look into a person’s head and “see” the image that person is thinking about). In one study, the researchers were interested in the ability of

PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS OF COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY

DUAL CODES

How do you benefit from having a dual code for knowledge representation? Although a dual code may seem redundant and inefficient, having a code for analog physical and spatial features that is distinct from a code for symbolic propositional knowledge actually can be very efficient. Consider how you learn material in your cognitive psychology course. Most people go to the lecture and obtain information from an instructor. They also read material from a textbook, as you are doing now. If you had only an analog code for knowledge representation, you would have a much harder time integrating the verbal information you received from your instructor in class with the printed information in your textbook. All your information would be in the form of auditory-visual images gleaned from listening to and watching your instructor in class and visual images of the words in your textbook. Thus, a symbolic code that is distinct from the analog features of encoding is helpful for integrating across different modes of knowledge acquisition.

Analog codes preserve important aspects of experience without interfering with underlying propositional information. For the purposes of performing well on a test, it is irrelevant whether the information was obtained in class or in the text, but later you may need to verify the source of information to prove that your answer is correct. In this case, analogical information might help.

Television used to be analog but is now largely digital. What are the advantages of digital television? Are there any potential disadvantages?
rhesus monkeys to learn a maze (Figure 7.14) (Tolman & Honzik, 1930). The monkeys were divided into three groups:

1. In the first group, the monkeys had to learn the maze. Their reward for getting from the start box to the end box was food. Eventually, these monkeys learned to run the maze without making any errors. In other words, they did not make wrong turns or follow blind alleys.

2. A second group of monkeys also was placed in the maze, but these monkeys received no reinforcement for successfully getting to the end box. Although their performance improved over time, they continued to make more errors than the reinforced group. These results are hardly surprising. We would expect the rewarded group to have more incentive to learn.

3. The third group of monkeys received no reward for 10 days of learning trials. On the 11th day, however, food was placed in the end box for the first time. With just one reinforcement, the learning of these monkeys improved dramatically. These rats ran the maze about as well in fewer trials as the rats in the first group.

What, exactly, were the monkeys in Tolman and Honzik’s experiment learning? It seems unlikely that they were learning simply “turn right here, turn left there,” and so on. According to Tolman, the monkeys were learning a cognitive map, an internal representation of the maze. Through this argument, Tolman became one of the earliest cognitive theorists. He argued for the importance of the mental representations that give rise to behavior.

**Figure 7.14  Research on Mental Imagery in Rats.**
Edward Tolman found that rats seemed to have formed a mental map of a maze during behavioral experiments.
Decades later, even very simple creatures were to appear able to form some cognitive maps. These creatures may be able to translate imaginal representations into a primitive, prewired, analogical, and perhaps even symbolic form. For example, a Nobel Prize–winning German scientist studied the behavior of bees when they return to their hive after having located a source of nectar (von Frisch, 1962, 1967).

 Apparently, bees not only can form imaginal maps for getting to food sources, they also can use a somewhat symbolic form for communicating that information to other bees. Specifically, different patterns of dances can be used to represent different meanings. For example, a round dance indicates a source less than 100 yards from the hive. A figure-eight dance indicates a source at a greater distance. The details of the dance (e.g., in regard to wiggle patterns) differ from one species to another, but the basic dances appear to be the same across all species of bees. If the lowly bee appears able to imagine the route to nectar, what kinds of cognitive maps may be conceived in the minds of humans?

Homing pigeons are noted for their excellent cognitive maps. These birds are known for their ability to return to their home from distant locations. This quality made the birds useful for communication in ancient times and even in the 19th and 20th centuries. Extensive research has been completed on how pigeons form these maps. The left hippocampus plays a pivotal role in map formation. When the left hippocampus is lesioned, pigeons’ ability to return to their homes is impaired. However, lesioning just any part of the hippocampus already impairs homing performance (Gagliardo et al., 2001, 2009). The left hippocampus is also crucial for the perception of landmarks within the environment (Bingman et al., 2003).

Other research suggests that the right hippocampus is involved in sensitivity to global features of the environment (e.g., geometry of the space). The hippocampus is involved in the formation of cognitive maps in humans as well (Iaria, 2008; Maguire, Frackowiak, & Frith, 1996).

Humans seem to use three types of knowledge when forming and using cognitive maps:

1. **Landmark knowledge** is information about particular features at a location and which may be based on both imaginal and propositional representations (Thorndyke, 1981).

2. **Route-road knowledge** involves specific pathways for moving from one location to another (Thorndyke & Hayes-Roth, 1982). It may be based on both procedural knowledge and declarative knowledge.

3. **Survey knowledge** involves estimated distances between landmarks, much as they might appear on survey maps (Thorndyke & Hayes-Roth, 1982). It may be represented imaginally or propositionally (e.g., in numerically specified distances).

Thus, people use both an analogical code and a propositional code for imaginal representations such as images of maps (McNamara, Hardy, & Hirtle, 1989; Russell & Ward, 1982).

**Rules of Thumb for Using Our Mental Maps: Heuristics**

When we use landmark, route-road, and survey knowledge, we sometimes use rules of thumb that influence our estimations of distance. These rules of thumb are cognitive strategies termed **heuristics**. For example, in regard to landmark knowledge, the density of the landmarks sometimes appears to affect our mental image of an area.
As the density of intervening landmarks increases, estimates of distances increase correspondingly. Using this rule of thumb distorts people’s mental images, however. The more landmarks there are, the larger the distance they estimate (Thorndyke, 1981). It has also been shown that people estimate the distance between two places to be shorter when traveling to a landmark than when traveling to a nonlandmark. That is, if you’re traveling from a small town to the major city, the distance may seem smaller to you than when you’re traveling from the big city to the small town (Tversky, 2005; Wagner, 2006).

In estimations of distances between particular physical locations (e.g., cities), route-road knowledge appears often to be weighted more heavily than survey knowledge. This is true even when participants form a mental image based on looking at a map (McNamara, Ratcliff, & McKoon, 1984). Consider what happened when participants were asked to indicate whether particular cities had appeared on a map. They showed more rapid response times between names of cities when the two cities were closer together in route-road distance than when the two cities were physically closer together “as the crow flies” (Figure 7.15).

As the density of intervening landmarks increases, estimates of distances increase correspondingly. Using this rule of thumb distorts people’s mental images, however. The more landmarks there are, the larger the distance they estimate (Thorndyke, 1981). It has also been shown that people estimate the distance between two places to be shorter when traveling to a landmark than when traveling to a nonlandmark. That is, if you’re traveling from a small town to the major city, the distance may seem smaller to you than when you’re traveling from the big city to the small town (Tversky, 2005; Wagner, 2006).

In estimations of distances between particular physical locations (e.g., cities), route-road knowledge appears often to be weighted more heavily than survey knowledge. This is true even when participants form a mental image based on looking at a map (McNamara, Ratcliff, & McKoon, 1984). Consider what happened when participants were asked to indicate whether particular cities had appeared on a map. They showed more rapid response times between names of cities when the two cities were closer together in route-road distance than when the two cities were physically closer together “as the crow flies” (Figure 7.15).

**Figure 7.15  Mental Maps.**

Which city is closer to Sturnburg, Schmeeville or Schmooville? It appears that our use of cognitive maps often emphasizes the use of route-road knowledge, even when it contradicts survey knowledge.

The use of heuristics in manipulating cognitive maps suggests that propositional knowledge affects imaginal knowledge (Tversky, 1981). This is so at least when people are solving problems and answering questions about images. In some situations, conceptual information seems to distort mental images. In these situations, propositional strategies may better explain people’s responses than strategies that are based on a mental image. For example, a study by Friedman and Brown (2000, see also Friedman et al., 2002 and Friedman & Montello, 2006) showed that when participants had to place cities on a map, those cities were clustered according to conceptual information like climate. The distortions seem to reflect a tendency to regularize features of mental maps. Thus, angles, lines, and shapes are represented as more like pure abstract geometric forms than they really are. Here are some examples:

1. **Right-angle bias**: People tend to think of intersections (e.g., street crossings) as forming 90-degree angles more often than the intersections really do (Moar & Bower, 1983; Smith & Cohen, 2008).
2. **Symmetry heuristic**: People tend to think of shapes (e.g., states or countries) as being more symmetrical than they really are (Montello et al., 2004; Tversky & Schiano, 1989).
3. **Rotation heuristic**: When representing figures and boundaries that are slightly slanted (i.e., oblique), people tend to distort the images as being either more vertical or more horizontal than they really are (Tversky, 1981, 1991; Wagner, 2006).
4. **Alignment heuristic**: People tend to represent landmarks and boundaries that are slightly out of alignment by distorting their mental images to be better aligned than they really are (i.e., we distort the way we line up a series of figures or objects; Tversky, 1981, 1991).
5. **Relative-position heuristic**: The relative positions of particular landmarks and boundaries is distorted in mental images in ways that more accurately reflect people’s conceptual knowledge about the contexts in which the landmarks and boundaries are located, rather than reflecting the actual spatial configurations (Seizova-Cajic, 2003).

To see how the relative-position heuristic might work, close your eyes and picture a map of the United States. Is Reno, Nevada, west of San Diego, California, or east of it? In a series of experiments, investigators asked participants questions such as this one (Stevens & Coupe, 1978). They found that the large majority of people believe San Diego to be west of Reno. That is, for most of us, our mental map looks something like that in panel (a) of Figure 7.16. Actually, however, Reno is west of San Diego. See the correct map in panel (b) of Figure 7.16.

Some of these heuristics also affect our perception of space and of forms (Chapter 3). For example, the symmetry heuristic seems to be equally strong in memory and in perception (Tversky, 1991). Nonetheless, there are differences between perceptual processes and representational (imaginal or propositional) processes. For example, the relative-position heuristic appears to influence mental representation much more strongly than it does perception (Tversky, 1991).

Semantic or propositional knowledge (or beliefs) can also influence our imaginal representations of world maps (Saarinen, 1987b, see also Louwerse & Zwaan, 2009). Specifically, students from 71 sites in 49 countries were asked to draw a sketch map of the world. Most students (even Asians) drew maps showing a Eurocentric view of world geography, indicating a cultural bias toward the West.
the world. Many Americans drew Americentric views. A few others showed views centered on and highlighting their own countries. (Figure 7.17 shows an Australian-centered view of the world.) In addition, most students showed modest distortions that enlarged the more prominent, well-known countries. They also diminished the sizes of less well-known countries (e.g., in Africa).

Finally, further work suggests that propositional knowledge about semantic categories may affect imaginal representations of maps. In one study, the researchers studied the influence of semantic clustering on estimations of distances (Hirtle & Mascolo, 1986). Hirtle's participants were shown a map of many buildings and then were asked to estimate distances between various pairs of buildings. They
tended to distort the distances in the direction of guessing shorter distances for more similar landmarks and longer distances for less similar landmarks. Investigators found similar distortions in students’ mental maps for the city in which they lived (Ann Arbor, Michigan) (Hirtle & Jonides, 1985).

The work on cognitive maps shows once again how the study of mental imagery can help elucidate our understanding of human adaptation to the environment—that is, of human intelligence. To survive, we need to find our way around the environment in which we live. We need to get from one place to another. Sometimes, to get between places, we need to imagine the route we will need to traverse. Mental imagery provides a key basis for this adaptation. In some societies (Gladwin, 1970), the ability to navigate with the help of very few cues is a life-or-death issue. If sailors cannot do so, they eventually get lost and potentially die of dehydration or starvation. Thus, our imagery abilities are potential keys to our survival and to what makes us intelligent in our everyday lives.

Creating Maps from What You Hear: Text Maps

We have discussed the construction of cognitive maps based on procedural knowledge (e.g., following a particular route, as a rat in a maze), propositional information (e.g., using mental heuristics), and observation of a graphic map. In addition, we may be able to create cognitive maps from a verbal description (Taylor & Tversky, 1992a, 1992b; Tversky, 2005). These cognitive maps may be as accurate as those created from looking at a graphic map. Others have found similar results in studies of text comprehension (Glenberg, Meyer, & Lindem, 1987).

Tversky noted that her research involved having the readers envision themselves in an imaginal setting as participants, not as observers, in the scene. She wondered whether people might create and manipulate images differently when envisioning themselves in different settings. Specifically, Tversky wondered whether propositional information might play a stronger role in mental operations when we think about settings in which we are participants, as compared with settings in which we are observers. As Item 4 in Table 7.3 indicates, the findings regarding cognitive maps suggest that the construction of mental imagery may involve both—processes analogous to perception, and processes relying on propositional representations.

Whether the debate regarding propositions versus imagery can be resolved in the terms in which it traditionally has been presented remains unclear. The various forms of mental representation sometimes are considered to be mutually exclusive. In other
words, we think in terms of the question, “Which representation of information is correct?” Often, however, we create false dichotomies. We suggest that alternatives are mutually exclusive, when, in fact, they might be complementary. For example, models postulating mental imagery and those positing propositions can be seen as opposed to each other. However, this opposition is not necessary. Rather, it is in our construction of a relation. People possibly could use both representations. Propositional theorists might like to believe that all representations are fundamentally propositional. Quite possibly, though, both images and propositions are way stations toward some more basic and primitive form of representation in the mind of which we do not yet have any knowledge. A good case can be made in favor of both propositional and imaginal representations of knowledge. Neither is necessarily more basic than the other. The question we presently need to address is when we use which.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What is a cognitive map?
2. Name some heuristics that people use when manipulating cognitive maps.
3. What is a text map?
Key Themes

This chapter illustrates some of the key themes mentioned in Chapter 1.

**Structures versus processes.** The debate regarding whether images are phenomenal or epiphenomenal hinges upon what kinds of mental structures are used to process stimuli. For example, when people mentally rotate objects, is the structural representation imaginal or propositional? Either kind of mental representation could generate processes that would enable people to see objects at different angular viewpoints. But the kinds of processes would be different—either mental manipulation of images or mental manipulation of propositions. In order to understand cognition, we need to understand how structures and processes interact.

**Validity of causal inferences versus ecological validity.** Suppose you wish to hire air-traffic controllers. Can you assess their mental-imagery and spatial-visualization skills using paper-and-pencil tests of manipulation of geometric forms? Or do you need to test them in a setting that is more similar to that of air-traffic control, as through a simulation of the actual job? The paper-and-pencil test probably will yield more precise measurements, but will these measurements be valid? There is no final answer to the question. Researchers are studying this kind of question in order to understand how best to assess people’s real-life skills.

**Biological and behavioral methods.** Early work by Stephen Kosslyn and his collaborators was all behavioral. The researchers investigated how people mentally manipulate various kinds of images. As time went by, the team started using biological techniques, such as fMRI to supplement their behavioral studies. But they never saw the two kinds of research as in opposition to each other. Rather, they viewed them as wholly complementary, and do even today.

Summary

1. **What are some of the major hypotheses regarding how knowledge is represented in the mind?** Knowledge representation comprises the various ways in which our minds create and modify mental structures that stand for what we know about the world outside our minds.

   Knowledge representation involves both declarative (knowing that) and nondeclarative (knowing how) forms of knowledge. Through mental imagery, we create analog mental structures that stand for things that are not presently being sensed in the sense organs. Imagery may involve any of the senses, but the form of imagery most commonly reported by laypeople and most commonly studied by cognitive psychologists is visual imagery. Some studies (e.g., studies of blind participants and some studies of the brain) suggest that visual imagery itself may comprise two discrete systems of mental representation: One system involves nonspatial visual attributes, such as color and shape; another involves spatial attributes, such as location, orientation, and size or distance scaling.

   According to Paivio’s dual-code hypothesis, two discrete mental codes for representing knowledge exist. One code is for images and another for words and other symbols. Images are represented in a form analogous to the form we perceive through our senses. In contrast, words and concepts are encoded in a symbolic form, which is not analogical.

   An alternative view of image representation is the propositional hypothesis. It suggests that both images and words are represented in a propositional form. The proposition retains the underlying meaning of either images or words, without any of the perceptual features of either. For example, the acoustic features of the sounds of the words are not stored, nor are the visual features of the colors or shapes of the images. Furthermore, propositional codes, more than imaginal codes, seem to influence mental representation when participants are shown ambiguous or abstract
figures. Apparently, unless the context facilitates performance, the use of visual images does not always readily lead to successful performance on some tasks requiring mental manipulations of either abstract figures or ambiguous figures.

2. **What are some of the characteristics of mental imagery?** Based on a modification of the dual-code view, Shepard and others have espoused a functional-equivalence hypothesis. It asserts that images are represented in a form functionally equivalent to percepts, even if the images are not truly identical to percepts. Studies of mental rotations, image scaling, and image scanning suggest that imaginal task performance is functionally equivalent to perceptual task performance. Even performance on some tasks involving comparisons of auditory images seems to be functionally equivalent to performance on tasks involving comparisons of auditory percepts.

Propositional codes seem less likely to influence mental representation than imaginal ones when participants are given an opportunity to create their own mental images. For example, they might do so in tasks involving image sizing or mental combinations of imaginal letters.

Some researchers have suggested that experimenter expectancies may have influenced cognitive studies of imagery, but others have refuted these suggestions. In any case, neuropsychological studies are not subject to such influences. They seem to support the functional-equivalence hypothesis by finding overlapping brain areas involved in visual perception and mental rotation.

3. **How does knowledge representation benefit from both images and propositions?** Kosslyn has synthesized these various hypotheses to suggest that images may involve both analogous and propositional forms of knowledge representation. In this case, both forms influence our mental representation and manipulation of images. Thus, some of what we know about images is represented in a form that is analogous to perception. Other things we know about images are represented in a propositional form. Johnson-Laird has proposed an alternative synthesis. He has suggested that knowledge may be represented as verbally expressible propositions, as somewhat abstracted analogical mental models, or as highly concrete and analogical mental images.

Studies of split-brain patients and patients with lesions indicate some tendency toward hemispheric specialization. Visuospatial information may be processed primarily in the right hemisphere. Linguistic (symbolic) information may be processed primarily in the left hemisphere of right-handed individuals. A case study suggests that spatial imagery also may be processed in a different region of the brain than the regions in which other aspects of visual imagery are processed. Studies of normal participants show that visual-perception tasks seem to involve regions of the brain similar to the regions involved in visual-imagery tasks.

4. **How may conceptual knowledge and expectancies influence the way we use images?** People tend to distort their own mental maps in ways that regularize many features of the maps. For example, they may tend to imagine right angles, symmetrical forms, either vertical or horizontal boundaries (not oblique ones), and well-aligned figures and objects. People also tend to employ distortions of their mental maps in ways that support their propositional knowledge about various landmarks.

They tend to cluster similar landmarks, to segregate dissimilar ones, and to modify relative positions to agree with conceptual knowledge about the landmarks. In addition, people tend to distort their mental maps. They increase their estimates regarding the distances between endpoints as the density of intervening landmarks increases.

Some of the heuristics that affect cognitive maps support the notion that propositional information influences imaginal representations. The influence of propositional information may be particularly potent when participants are not shown a graphic map. Instead, they are asked to read a narrative passage and to envision themselves as participants in a setting described in the narrative.
Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

1. Describe some of the characteristics of pictures versus words as external forms of knowledge representation.
2. What factors might lead a person’s mental model to be inaccurate with respect to how radio transmissions lead people to be able to hear music on a radio?
3. In what ways is mental imagery analogous (or functionally equivalent) to perception?
4. In what ways do propositional forms of knowledge representation influence performance on tasks involving mental imagery?
5. What are some strengths and weaknesses of ERP studies?
6. Some people report never experiencing mental imagery, yet they are able to solve mental-rotation problems. How might they solve such problems?
7. What are some practical applications of having two codes for knowledge representation? Give an example applied to your own experiences, such as applications to studying for examinations.
8. Based on the heuristics described in this chapter, what are some of the distortions that may be influencing your cognitive maps for places with which you are familiar (e.g., a college campus or your hometown)?

Key Terms

- analog codes, p. 277
- cognitive maps, p. 308
- declarative knowledge, p. 271
- dual-code theory, p. 277
- functional-equivalence hypothesis, p. 287
- heuristics, p. 310
- imagery, p. 276
- knowledge representation, p. 271
- mental models, p. 301
- mental rotation, p. 289
- propositional theory, p. 281
- procedural knowledge, p. 271
- spatial cognition, p. 308
- symbolic representation, p. 274

Media Resources

Visit the companion website—www.cengagebrain.com—for quizzes, research articles, chapter outlines, and more.

CogLab

Explore CogLab by going to http://coglab.wadsworth.com. To learn more, examine the following experiments:
Mental Rotation
Link Word
Mental Scanning
The Organization of Knowledge in the Mind

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Declarative versus Procedural Knowledge

Organization of Declarative Knowledge
  Concepts and Categories
    Feature-Based Categories: A Defining View
    Prototype Theory: A Characteristic View
    A Synthesis: Combining Feature-Based and Prototype Theories
    Theory-Based View of Categorization
    Intelligence and Concepts in Different Cultures

Semantic-Network Models
  Collins and Quillian's Network Model
  Comparing Semantic Features

Schematic Representations
  Schemas
  Scripts

Representations of How We Do Things:
  Procedural Knowledge
    The “Production” of Procedural Knowledge

Nondeclarative Knowledge

Integrative Models for Representing
  Declarative and Nondeclarative Knowledge

Combining Representations: ACT-R
  Declarative Knowledge within ACT-R
  Procedural Knowledge within ACT-R

Parallel Processing: The Connectionist Model
  How the PDP Model Works
  Criticisms of the Connectionist Models
  Comparing Connectionist with Network Representations

How Domain General or Domain Specific Is Cognition?

Key Themes

Summary

Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

Key Terms

Media Resources
Here are some of the questions we will explore in this chapter:

1. How are representations of words and symbols organized in the mind?
2. How do we represent other forms of knowledge in the mind?
3. How does declarative knowledge interact with procedural knowledge?

**BELIEVE IT OR NOT**

**There Is a Savant in All of Us**

People with autism who have an extraordinary ability have been called autistic savants. Their abilities often leave us incredulous—they can multiply large numbers within a fraction of a second, remember huge amounts of data, or they can recall any detail with their photographic memory. But people who are autistic savants may actually not be that different from us.

Research suggests that we may all possess these talents, but they are part of low-level information processing that we normally do not use because we think at a higher level that is concept-driven and allows for multisensory comparisons. For people who are autistic savants, this low-level processing comes automatic and naturally. Although we usually cannot consciously control our brain activity, studies have shown that people can learn to become sensitive to low-level processing and gain access to those early states of processing that are usually unconscious. This opens new possibilities for behavior and self-awareness (Birbaumer, 1999).

In this chapter we’ll learn about how we organize concepts in our minds and how these concepts help us think and to organize what we know.

John and Simon were college roommates and planned a trip to Arizona during spring break. They would be hiking through the remote Spikeleaf Canyon that hardly has been explored, was narrow, and had lots of pools in which the water collects and smooth rock slides that connect the pools. Once they arrived at the canyon, they parked their car and began the hike to the edge, and from there followed a steep path down to the bottom. When they were almost at the bottom of the canyon, Simon suddenly tripped, fell over, and tumbled down the remainder of the steep slope. He was unable to stand up and feared he may have broken his ankle. Simon was in excruciating pain. John could not help him climb back up the narrow path, and because they were in such a remote desert area, they did not have any cell phone reception. John raced back the way they had come, got in the car, and frantically drove about half an hour until his cell phone worked so he could call for help. Eventually, a rescue team arrived at the canyon and carried Simon back up the canyon so he could receive treatment in the nearest hospital.

This story, which sounds just like an adventure story, actually raises a number of questions relevant to cognitive psychology. John was panicked when he had to leave Simon behind and could not call for help immediately, and yet he managed to drive his car although his thoughts were completely elsewhere. How did he do that? Fortunately, his procedural knowledge of how to drive a car was so good that he was able to drive automatically and did not have to concentrate on any details. He also was worried because canyons can get flooded quickly if it rains in a distant area upriver. Such flooding would be very dangerous for his immobile friend. Therefore, John knew that he had to act fast, and he also knew how to make his cell phone work again and which number to call to get help when the phone started working.
Declarative versus Procedural Knowledge

The preceding chapter described how knowledge may be represented in the form of propositions and images. In this chapter, we explore how our knowledge can be organized so we can retrieve it when we need it. We expand this discussion to include various means of organizing declarative knowledge that can be expressed in words and other symbols (i.e., “knowing that”). John knew he had to call 9-1-1, and that to do so he would need to get into an area with cell phone reception. Consider your own knowledge of facts about cognitive psychology, about world history, about your personal history, and about mathematics. Your knowledge in these areas relies on your mental organization of declarative knowledge.

In addition, this chapter describes a few of the models for representing procedural knowledge. This is knowledge about how to follow procedural steps for performing actions (i.e., “knowing how”). For example, your knowledge of how to drive a car, how to write your signature, how to ride a bicycle to the nearest grocery store, and how to catch a ball depends on your mental representation of procedural knowledge. Some theorists even have suggested integrative models for representing both declarative and procedural knowledge.

To get an idea of how declarative and procedural knowledge may interact, get some scrap paper and a pen or pencil. Try the demonstration in Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Testing Your Declarative and Procedural Knowledge.

In addition to seeking to understand the what (the form or structure) of knowledge representation, cognitive psychologists also try to grasp the how (the processes) of knowledge representation and manipulation. Here are some of the questions we explore in this chapter:

• What are some of the general processes by which we select and control the disorganized array of raw data available to us through our sense organs?
• How do we relate that sensory information to the information we have available from internal sources of information (i.e., our memories and our thought processes)?
• How do we organize and reorganize our mental representations during various cognitive processes?

INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY

Testing Your Declarative and Procedural Knowledge

As quickly and as legibly as possible, write your normal signature, from the first letter of your first name to the last letter of your last name. Don’t stop to think about which letters come next. Just write as quickly as possible.

Turn the paper over. As quickly and as legibly as possible, write your signature backward. Start with the last letter of your last name and work toward the first letter of your first name.

Now, compare the two signatures. Which signature was more easily and accurately created?

For both signatures, you had available extensive declarative knowledge of which letters preceded or followed one another. But for the first task, you also could call on procedural knowledge, based on years of knowing how to sign your name.
Through what mental processes do we operate on the knowledge we have in our minds?

To what extent are these processes domain general—common to multiple kinds of information, such as verbal and quantitative information?

Conversely, to what extent are these processes domain specific—used only for particular kinds of information, such as verbal or quantitative information?

Knowledge representation and processing have been investigated by researchers from several disciplines. Among these researchers are cognitive psychologists, neuropsychologists, and computer scientists studying AI (artificial intelligence), which attempts to program machines to perform intelligently. The diverse approaches that researchers take when investigating knowledge representation promote exploration of a wide range of phenomena. They also encourage multiple perspectives of similar phenomena. Finally, they offer the strength of converging operations—the use of multiple approaches and techniques to address a problem.

Other than to satisfy their own idle curiosity, why do so many researchers want to understand how knowledge is represented? The way in which knowledge is represented profoundly influences how effectively knowledge can be manipulated for performing any number of cognitive tasks. To illustrate the influence of knowledge representation through a very crude analogy, try the following multiplication task using a representation in either Roman or Arabic numerals:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CMLIX} & \quad 959 \\
\times \text{LVIII} & \quad \times 58
\end{align*}
\]

The two multiplication tasks are exactly the same, but representation in Roman numerals probably makes it much harder for you to compute the solution, doesn’t it?

In this chapter, we first have a closer look at how declarative knowledge (concepts) is organized in our minds. We consider theories of how concepts can be grouped into categories as well as how they can be organized by means of semantic networks and schemas. Then we move on to the representation of procedural knowledge. And finally, we will explore models that try to combine the representation of declarative and procedural knowledge.

**Organization of Declarative Knowledge**

The fundamental unit of symbolic knowledge (knowledge of correspondence between symbols and their meaning, for example, that the symbol “3” means three) is the concept—an idea about something that provides a means of understanding the world (Bruner, Goodnow, & Austin, 1956; Kruschke, 2003; Love, 2003). Often, a concept may be captured in a single word, such as *apple*. Each concept in turn relates to other concepts, such as *apple*, which relates to *redness*, *roundness*, or *fruit*.

As you can imagine, people amass a large number of concepts over the course of their lives. How do they organize all those concepts? One way to organize them is by means of categories. A category is a group of items into which different objects or concepts can be placed that belong together because they share some common features, or because they are all similar to a certain prototype. For example, the word *apple* can act as a category, as in a collection of different kinds of apples. But it also can act as a concept within the category *fruit*. In the following sections, we will
discuss ways to organize concepts into categories. These ways include the use of define features, prototypes, and exemplars.

Later, we will explore how concepts can be organized by means of hierarchically organized semantic networks, as well as schemas, which are mental frameworks of knowledge that encompass a number of interrelated concepts (Bartlett, 1932; Brewer, 1999).

**Concepts and Categories**

Concepts and categories can be divided in various ways. One commonly used distinction is between natural categories and artifact categories (Kalenine et al., 2009; Medin, Lynch, & Solomon, 2000). **Natural categories** are groupings that occur naturally in the world, like birds or trees. **Artifact categories** are groupings that are designed or invented by humans to serve particular purposes or functions. Examples of artifact categories are automobiles and kitchen appliances. The speed it takes to assign objects to categories seems to be about the same for both natural and artifact categories (VanRullen & Thorpe, 2001). Natural and artifact categories are relatively stable and people tend to agree on criteria for membership in them. A tiger is always a mammal, for example; and a knife is always an implement used for cutting.

Concepts, on the contrary, are not always stable but can change (Dunbar, 2003; Thagard, 2003). Some categories are created just for the moment or for a specific purpose, for example, “things you can write on.” These categories are called *ad hoc* categories (Barsalou, 1983; Little, Lewandowsky, & Heit, 2006). They are described not in words but rather in phrases. Their content varies, depending on the context. People in rural Uganda will probably name different things that you can write on than will urban Americans or Inuit Eskimos.

Concepts are also used in other areas like computer science. Developers try to develop algorithms that define “spam” so that email programs can filter out unwanted messages and your mailbox is not flooded with them. However, spammers change the nature of their messages on a regular basis so that it is hard to create an algorithm that can catch all spam messages and can do so on a permanent basis (Fdez-Riverola, 2007).

Concepts appear to have a **basic level** (sometimes termed a natural level) of specificity, a level within a hierarchy that is preferred to other levels (Medin, Proffitt, & Schwartz, 2000; Rosch, 1978). Suppose I show you a red, roundish edible object that has a stem and that came from a tree. You might characterize it as a fruit, an apple, a delicious apple, a Red Delicious apple, and so on. Most people, however, would characterize the object as an apple. The basic, preferred level is *apple*. In general, the basic level is neither the most abstract nor the most specific. Of course, this basic level can be manipulated by context or expertise (Tanaka & Taylor, 1991). Suppose the object were held up at a fruit stand that sold only apples. You might describe it as a Red Delicious apple to distinguish it from the other apples around it.

How can we tell what the basic level is? Why is the basic level the *apple*, rather than *Red Delicious apple* or *fruit*? Or why is it *cow*, rather than *mammal* or *Guernsey*? Perhaps the basic level is the one that has the largest number of distinctive features that set it off from other concepts at the same level (Rosch et al., 1976). Thus, most of us would find more distinguishing features between an apple and a cow, say, than between a Red Delicious apple and a Pippin apple. Similarly, we would find few distinguishing features between a Guernsey cow and a Holstein cow. Again, not
everyone necessarily would have the same basic level, as in the case of farmers. For our purposes, the basic level is the one that most people find to be maximally distinctive. By means of training, the basic level can be shifted to a more subordinate level (Scott et al., 2008). For example, the more a person learns about cars, the more he or she is likely to make elaborate distinctions among cars. Research suggests that the differences between experts and novices are not due to qualitatively different mechanisms but rather to quantitative differences in processing efficacy (Palmeri 2004; see also Mack et al., 2009).

When people are shown pictures of objects, they identify the objects at a basic level more quickly than they identify objects at higher or lower levels (Rosch et al., 1976). Objects appear to be recognized first in terms of their basic level. Only afterward are they classified in terms of higher- or lower-level categories. Thus, the picture of the roundish red, edible object from a tree probably first would be identified as an apple. Only then, if necessary, would it be identified as a fruit or a Red Delicious apple.

Now, how do people decide what objects to put into a category? There are several theories that try to explain this process. One theory suggests that we put an object only in one category if it has several defining features. Another approach proposes that we compare an object with an averaged representation (a prototype) to decide whether it fits into a category. Yet another is that people can categorize objects based on their own theories about those objects. We will explore these approaches in the next sections.

**Feature-Based Categories: A Defining View**

The classic view of categories disassembles a concept into a set of featural components. All those features are then necessary (and sufficient) to define the category (Katz, 1972; Katz & Fodor, 1963). This means that each feature is an essential element of the category. Together, the features uniquely define the category; they are defining features (or necessary attributes): For a thing to be an X, it must have that feature. Otherwise, it is not an “X.”

Consider the term bachelor. In addition to being human, a bachelor can be viewed as comprising three features: male, unmarried, and adult. The features are each singly necessary. If one feature is absent, the object cannot belong to the category. Thus, an unmarried male who is not an adult would not be a bachelor. We would not refer to a 12-year-old unmarried boy as a bachelor, because he is not an adult. Nor would we refer to just any male adult as a bachelor. If he is married, he is out of the running. An unmarried female adult is not a bachelor, either.

Moreover, the three features are jointly sufficient. If a person has all three features, then he is automatically a bachelor. According to this view, you cannot be male, unmarried, and an adult, and at the same time not be a bachelor. The feature-based view applies to more than bachelorhood, of course. For example, the term wife is made up of the features married, female, and adult. Husband comprises the features married, male, and adult.

The feature-based view is especially common among linguists, those who study language (Clark & Clark, 1977; Finley & Badecker, 2009). This view is attractive because it makes categories appear so orderly and systematic. Unfortunately, it does not work as well as it appears to at first glance. Some categories do not readily lend themselves to featural analysis. Game is one such category. Finding anything at all that is a common feature of all games is actually difficult to do (Wittgenstein, 1953). Some are fun; some are not. Some involve multiple players; others, such as
solitaire, do not. Some are competitive; others, such as children’s circle games (e.g., ring-around-the-rosy), are not. The more you consider the concept of a game, the more you begin to wonder whether there is anything at all that holds the category together. It is not clear that there are any defining features of a game at all. Nonetheless, we all know what we mean, or think we do, by the word game.

Another problem with the feature-based view is that a violation of those defining features does not seem to change the category we use to define them. Consider a zebra (see Keil, 1989). Now suppose that someone painted a zebra all black. It would then be missing the critical attribute of stripes, but we still would call it a zebra. We run into the same problem with birds. We might think of the ability to fly as critical to being a bird. But certainly we would agree that a robin whose wings have been clipped is still a robin. So is an ostrich, which does not fly.

The examples of the robin and the ostrich point out another problem with the feature-based theory. Both a robin and an ostrich share the same defining features of birds. They are, therefore, birds. However, loosely speaking, a robin seems somehow to be a better example of a bird than is an ostrich. Indeed, when people are asked to rate the typicality of a robin versus an ostrich as a bird, the robin virtually always will get a higher rating than the latter (Malt & Smith, 1984; Mervis, Catlin, & Rosch, 1976; Rosch, 1975). Children learn typical instances of a category earlier than they learn atypical ones (Rosch, 1978). Table 8.1 shows some ratings of typicality for various instances of birds (Malt & Smith, 1984). Clearly, there are enormous differences, although the defining features are the same. On the 7-point scale used by Malt and Smith for ratings of the typicality of birds, bat received a rating of 1.53. This rating is despite the fact that a bat, strictly speaking, is not even a bird at all.

In sum, the feature-based theory has some attractive features, but it does not give a complete account of categories. Some specific examples of a category such as bird seem to be better examples than others. Yet, they all have the same defining features. However, the various examples may be differentially typical of the category of birds. Thus, we need a theory of knowledge representation that better characterizes how people truly represent knowledge.

Prototype Theory: A Characteristic View

Prototype theory takes a different approach: grouping things together not by their defining features but rather by their similarity to an averaged model of the category.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 8.1</th>
<th>Typicality Ratings for Birds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bird</strong></td>
<td><strong>Rating</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robin</td>
<td>6.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seagull</td>
<td>6.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swallow</td>
<td>6.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Falcon</td>
<td>5.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starling</td>
<td>5.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owl</td>
<td>5.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Ratings were made on a 7-point scale, with 7 corresponding to the highest typicality.
Prototypes and Characteristic Features  A prototype is an abstract average of all the objects in the category we have encountered before. It is the prototype that objects are compared with in order to put them into a category. Crucial are characteristic features, which describe (characterize or typify) the prototype but are not necessary for it. Characteristic features commonly are present in typical examples of concepts, but they are not always present.

For example, consider the prototype of a game. It might include that it usually is enjoyable, has two or more players, and presents some degree of challenge. But a game does not have to be enjoyable. It does not have to have two or more players. And it does not have to be challenging. Similarly, a bird usually has wings and flies, but the prototype is just whatever game (or bird) represents the category best. This theory can handle the facts that (1) games seem to have no defining features at all and (2) a robin seems to be a better example of a bird than is an ostrich.

So what exactly is a characteristic feature? Whereas a defining feature is shared by every single object in a category, a characteristic feature need not be. Instead, many or most instances possess each characteristic feature. Thus, the ability to fly is typical of birds. But it is not a defining feature of a bird—an ostrich cannot fly. According to prototype theory, it thus seems less bird-like than a robin, which can fly. Similarly, a typical game may be enjoyable, but it need not be so. Indeed, when people are asked to list the features of a category, such as fruit or furniture, most list features like sweetness or "made out of wood." These features are characteristic rather than defining (Rosch & Mervis, 1975). You actually can compute a score that indicates how typical an instance is of its category by listing the properties typical of a category such as fruit and then assess how many of those properties a given instance has (Rosch & Mervis, 1975). This matters in our interactions with other people as well: Stereotypes of different groups of people (say, Italians or psychologists) consist of a conglomerate of average features (Medin, 1989; see also Dolderer et al., 2009).

Classical and Fuzzy Concepts  Psychologists differentiate two kinds of categories: classical concepts and fuzzy concepts. Classical concepts are categories that can be readily defined through defining features, such as bachelor. Fuzzy concepts are categories that cannot be so easily defined, such as game or death. Their borders are, as their name implies, fuzzy. Classical concepts tend to be inventions that experts have devised for arbitrarily labeling a class that has associated defining features. Fuzzy concepts tend to evolve naturally (Smith, 1988, 1995a; see also Brent et al., 1996). Thus, the concept of a bachelor is an arbitrary concept we invented. Some experts may suggest that we use the word fruit to describe any part of a plant that has seeds, pulp, and skin. But our natural, fuzzy concept of fruit usually does not easily extend to tomatoes, pumpkins, and cucumbers.

Classical concepts and categories may be built on defining features. Fuzzy concepts and categories are built around prototypes. According to the prototype view, an object will be classified as belonging to a category if it is sufficiently similar to the prototype. Exactly what is meant by similarity to a prototype can be a complex issue, however. There are actually different theories of how this similarity should be measured (Smith & Medin, 1981). For our purposes, we view similarity in terms of the number of features shared between an object and the prototype. Perhaps some features even should be weighed more heavily as being more central to the prototype than are other features (e.g., Komatsu, 1992).
Real-World Examples: Using Exemplars  Some psychologists suggest that instead of using a single abstract prototype for categorizing a concept, we use multiple, specific exemplars. Exemplars are typical representatives of a category (Ross, 2000; Ross & Spalding, 1994). For example, in considering birds, we might think not only of the prototypical songbird, which is small, flies, builds nests, sings, and so on. We also might think of exemplars for birds of prey, for large flightless birds, for medium-sized waterfowl, and so on. Some investigators use this approach in explaining how categories are both formed and used in speeded classification situations (Nosofsky & Palmeri, 1997; Nosofsky, Palmeri, & McKinley, 1994; see also Estes, 1994). In particular, categories are set up by creating a rule and then by storing examples as exemplars. Objects are then compared to the exemplars to decide whether or not they belong in the category the exemplars represent.

Exemplar theories of categorization have also been criticized. One notable criticism questions the number and types of exemplars that are stored for each category (Smith, 2005). Some theorists contend that there are not enough resources within the mind to store all the exemplars one would need to typify membership in a category (Collier, 2005).

A recent theory called VAM (varying abstraction model) suggests that prototypes and exemplars are just the two extremes on a continuum of abstraction. According to this theory, most of the time we use not just one abstract prototype nor a large number of concrete exemplars for categorization. Rather, we use a number of intermediate representations that represent subgroups within the category (Vanpaemel & Storms, 2008). For example, animals might be represented by specific exemplars of kinds of animals, such as finch or sparrow or whale, but also by higher-order categories, such as songbird or marine mammal.

Some researchers support neither an exclusive exemplar theory nor an exclusive rule-based theory (Rouder & Ratcliff, 2004, 2006). Rather, some combination of the two is thought to be more appropriate. This idea is discussed in the next section.

A Synthesis: Combining Feature-Based and Prototype Theories
A full theory of categorization can combine both defining and characteristic features (see also Hampton, 1997a; Poitrenaud et al., 2005; Smith et al., 1974, 1988; Wisniewski, 1997, 2000), so that each category has both a prototype and a core. A core refers to the defining features something must have to be considered an example of a category. The prototype encompasses the characteristic features that tend to be typical of an example (a bird can fly) but that are not necessary for being considered an example (an ostrich).

Consider the concept of a robber. The core requires that someone labeled as a robber be a person who takes things from others without permission. The prototype, however, tends to identify particular people as more likely to be robbers. Take, for example, white-collar criminals. Their crimes can include embezzling millions of dollars from their employers. These criminals are difficult to catch because they do not look like our prototypes of robbers, no matter how much they may steal from other people. In contrast, unkempt denizens of our inner cities sometimes are arrested for crimes they did not commit. In part, the reason is that they more closely match the commonly held prototype of a robber, regardless of whether or not they steal.

Two researchers tested the notion that we come to understand the importance of defining features only as we grow older (Keil & Batterman, 1984). Younger children, they hypothesized, view categories largely in terms of characteristic features.
The investigators presented children in the age range from 5 to 10 years with descriptions. Among them were two unusual individuals. The first was “a smelly, mean old man with a gun in his pocket who came to your house and took your TV set because your parents didn’t want it anymore and told him he could have it.” The second was “a very friendly and cheerful woman who gave you a hug, but then disconnected your toilet bowl and took it away without permission and with no intention to return it.” Younger children often characterized the first description as a better depiction of a robber than the second description. It was not until close to age 10 that children began to shift toward characterizing the second individual as more robber-like. In other words, the younger children viewed someone as a robber even if the person did not steal anything. What mattered was that the person had the characteristic features of a robber. However, the transition is never fully complete. We might suspect that the first individual would be at least as likely to be arrested as the second. Thus, the issue of categorization itself remains somewhat fuzzy, but it appears to include some aspects of defining features and some aspects of prototypicality.

**Theory-Based View of Categorization**

A departure from feature-based, prototype-based, and exemplar-based views of meaning is a theory-based view of meaning, also sometimes called an explanation-based view.

**How Do People Use Their Theories for Categorization?** A theory-based view of meaning holds that people understand and categorize concepts in terms of implicit theories, or general ideas they have regarding those concepts (Markman, 2003, 2007). For example, what makes someone a “good sport”?

- In the *componential view*, you would try to isolate features of a good sport.
- In the *prototype view*, you would try to find characteristic features of a good sport.
- In the *exemplar view*, you might try to find some good examples you have known in your life.
- In the *theory-based view*, you would use your experience to construct an explanation for what makes someone a good sport.

The theory-based view might go something like this: A good sport is someone who, when he or she wins, is gracious in victory and does not mock losers or otherwise make them feel bad about losing. It is also someone who, when he or she loses, loses graciously and does not blame the winner, the referee, or find excuses. Rather, he or

---

**BELIEVE IT OR NOT**

**Some Numbers Are Odd, and Some Are Odder**

Even classical concepts like that of an odd number seem to have prototypes (Armstrong, Gleitman, & Gleitman, 1983). The concept of an odd number is defined easily: an **odd number** is any integer not evenly divisible by 2. So how could one number be odder than another? People found different instances of this category to be more or less prototypical of odd numbers. For example, 7 and 13 are typical examples of odd numbers that are viewed as quite close to the prototype for an odd number. In contrast, 15 and 21 are not seen as so prototypically odd. In other words, people view 7 and 13 as better exemplars of odd numbers than 15 and 21. Nevertheless, all four numbers are actually odd.
she takes the defeat in stride, congratulates the winner, and then moves on. Note
that in the theory-based view, it is difficult to capture the essence of the theory in
a word or two. Rather, the view of a concept is more complex.

The theory-based view suggests that people can distinguish between essential
and incidental, or accidental, features of concepts because they have complex men-
tal representations of these concepts. One study showed how such theories might
manifest themselves in judgments about newly learned concepts (Rips, 1989). Parti-
cipants received stories about a hypothetical creature. The stimuli were presented
under two experimental conditions.

In this study (Rips, 1989), one condition involved a bird-like creature called a
sorp that, through an accident, came to look like an insect. It was never stated that
the sorp was bird-like or insect-like. Rather, the circumstances of the transforma-
tion were described in some detail. The sorp was described as having a diet consisting of
seeds and berries, as having two wings and two legs, and as nesting high in the
branches of a tree. The nest, like that of a bird, was composed of twigs and similar
materials. Moreover, the sorp was covered with bluish-gray feathers, like many birds.
But a particular sorp had a misfortune: Its nest was near the burial place of hazardous
chemicals. As the chemicals contaminated the vegetation that the sorp ate, its ap-
pearance gradually started to change. The sorp lost its feathers and instead grew a
new pair of wings that had a transparent membrane. The sorp left its nest and devel-
oped an outer shell that was brittle and iridescent. It grew two more pairs of legs, so
that it now had six legs in all. It came to be able to hold on to smooth surfaces, and
it started sustaining itself solely on the nectar of flowers. In due course, the sorp
mated with another sorp, a normal female. The female laid the fertilized eggs that
resulted from the mating in her nest and incubated them. After three weeks, normal
young sorps emerged from their shells. Note that in this description, the fact of the
sorp’s being able to mate with a normal sorp to produce normal sorps shows that the
unfortunate sorp never really changed its basic biological makeup. It remained, in
essence, a sorp.

The second condition involved an essential change in the nature of a creature.
In other words, the change was one of essence rather than of accident and involved
a creature known as a doon. During an early stage of the doon’s life, it is known as a
doon. It has all the characteristics of a sorp (as previously described). But after a few
months, the doon sheds its feathers and then develops the same characteristics that
resulted from the unfortunate sorp’s accident. Note that in this second condition
there is a transformation identical to that of the sorp described in the first condition,
but the transformation is represented as a natural biological change rather than an
accidental one caused by proximity to hazardous chemicals.

Participants in the study were asked to provide two ratings after reading about
the sorp and the doon. The first rating was of the degree to which the sorp (in the
sorp condition) or the doon (in the doon condition) fit into the category of “bird.”
The second rating was the similarity of the sorp or doon to birds. Thus, one rating
was for category membership and the other for similarity.

There was also a control group whose members read only the description of
sorps. Control group participants were asked merely to rate the similarity of sorps
to birds. They did not have to judge how well sorps fit into the category of “bird.”

According to prototype and exemplar theories, there is no particular reason to
expect the two sets of ratings from experimental participants to show different pat-
terns. According to these theories, people categorize objects on the basis of their
similarity to a prototype or an exemplar, so the results should be the same for both sets of ratings.

Now have a look at the results in Figure 8.1. The results for the categorization and similarity ratings are dramatically different! When the sorp’s features changed through an accident, the sorp was still rated relatively highly as belonging to the category of birds although its rating for similarity to birds was low. When the sorp transformed through a natural process, however, its rating for belonging to the category of birds went down although it was judged as being quite similar to birds.

Control group participants had no trouble recognizing the similarity of the sorp to a bird. The difference in patterns between the category-membership and similarity ratings is consistent with the theory-based view of meaning.

**Figure 8.1  Similarity Ratings.**
Control group participants clearly thought sorps are very similar to birds. When the sorp’s features changed through an accident, the sorp was still rated relatively highly as belonging to the category of birds although its rating for similarity to birds was low. When the sorp transformed through a natural process, however, its rating for belonging to the category of birds went down although it was judged as being quite similar to birds.


similarity to a prototype or an exemplar, so the results should be the same for both sets of ratings.

Now have a look at the results in Figure 8.1. The results for the categorization and similarity ratings are dramatically different! When the sorp’s features changed through an accident, it was still rated highly as belonging to the category of birds, although participants did not perceive them as very similar to birds. However, when the doon changed through a natural process, it was rated less highly as belonging to the category of birds although it seemed relatively similar to birds.

Control group participants had no trouble recognizing the similarity of the sorp to a bird. The difference in patterns between the category-membership and similarity ratings is consistent with the theory-based view of meaning.

**Finding the “Essence” of Things**  Further support for the theory-based view comes from work with children. A number of investigators have studied a view of meaning called essentialism. This view holds that certain categories, such as those of “lion” or “female,” have an underlying reality that cannot be observed directly (Gelman, 2003, 2004). For example, someone could be a female even if another individual were incapable in his or her observations on the street of detecting that femaleness. One instance is having short hair. Having short hair might be more typical of males than females, yet females can have short hair. Essentialist beliefs about the characteristics of groups are often associated with the devaluation of these groups and
increased prejudice (Bastian & Haslam, 2006; Morton et al., 2009). These beliefs suggest that members of a particular group are intrinsically one way and can’t change; therefore, they cannot ever really belong to another group.

Gelman (2004, 2009) showed that even young children look beyond obvious features to understand the essential nature of things. This view contradicts Piaget’s theory of cognitive development. According to that theory, children in the age range from roughly 8 to 11 years are “concrete” thinkers. They cannot abstract features that are formal in nature. Yet, the work of psychologists studying essentialism suggest that young children can and do look for hidden features that are not obvious.

For example, in one study, 165 children ages 4 to 5 years were asked to make inferences about things like a tiger or gold (Gelman & Markman, 1986). The researchers found that even by age 4, children could make inferences using the abstract categories as opposed merely to perceptual similarity, even when these categories conflicted with appearances.

How people learn about concepts and categories depends, in part, on the tasks they need to do with those concepts and categories. For example, people learn about categories one way if they need to make classifications (e.g., “Is this particular animal a cat or a dog?”) and another way if they need to make inferences (e.g., “If this animal is a dog, how many toes will it have?”) (Yamauchi & Markman, 1998). Learning, therefore, is strategically flexible, depending on the task that the individual will have to do; it does not occur with a “one-size-fits-all” rigidity (Markman & Ross, 2003; Ross, 1997).

What all this means is that meaning is not just a matter of a set of features or exemplars. From the time children are very young, they start to form theories about the nature of objects. These theories develop with age. For example, you probably have a theory about what makes a car a car. You could see cars looking all kinds of strange ways. As long as they conformed to your theory, you nevertheless would label them as cars. Theories enable us to view meaning deeply rather than just to assign meaning on the basis of superficial features of objects.

**Intelligence and Concepts in Different Cultures**

Culture influences many cognitive processes, including intelligence (Lehman, Chiu, & Schaller, 2004). As a result, individuals in different cultures may construct concepts in quite different ways, rendering results of concept-formation or identification studies in a single culture suspect (Atran, 1999; Coley et al., 1999; Medin & Atran, 1999). Thus, groups may think about what appears superficially to be the same phenomenon—whether a concept or the taking of a test—differently. What appear to be differences in general intelligence may in fact be differences in cultural properties (Helms-Lorenz, Van de Vijver, & Poortinga, 2003). Helms-Lorenz and colleagues (2003) have argued that measured differences in intellectual performance may result from differences in cultural complexity; but complexity of a culture is extremely hard to define, and what appears to be simple or complex from the point of view of one culture may appear different from the point of view of another.

People in different cultures may have quite different ideas of what it means to be smart. For example, one of the more interesting cross-cultural studies of intelligence was performed by Michael Cole and his colleagues (Cole et al., 1971). These investigators asked adult members of the Kpelle tribe in Africa to sort terms representing concepts. Consider what happens in Western culture when adults are given a sorting task on an intelligence test. More intelligent people typically will sort hierarchically. For example, they may sort names of different kinds of fish together. Then they
place the word fish over that. They place the name animal over fish and over birds, and so on. Less intelligent people will typically sort functionally. For example, they may sort fish with eat. Why? Because we eat fish. Or they may sort clothes with wear because we wear clothes. The Kpelle sorted functionally. They did so even after investigators unsuccessfully tried to get the Kpelle spontaneously to sort hierarchically.

Finally, in desperation, one of the experimenters (Glick) asked a Kpelle to sort as a foolish person would sort. In response, the Kpelle quickly and easily sorted hierarchically. The Kpelle were able to sort this way all along. They just had not done it because they viewed it as foolish. They probably also considered the questioners rather unintelligent for asking such stupid questions.

The Kpelle people are not the only ones who might question Western understandings of intelligence. In the Puluwat culture of the Pacific Ocean, for example, sailors navigate incredibly long distances. They use none of the navigational aids that sailors from technologically advanced countries would need to get from one place to another (Gladwin, 1970). Suppose Puluwat sailors were to devise intelligence tests for us and our fellow Americans. We and our compatriots might not seem very intelligent. Similarly, the highly skilled Puluwat sailors might not do well on American-crafted tests of intelligence. These and other observations have prompted quite a few theoreticians to recognize the importance of considering cultural context when intelligence is assessed.

**Semantic-Network Models**

Semantic-network models suggest that knowledge is represented in our minds in the form of concepts that are connected with each other in a web-like form. In the following, we consider a model developed by Collins and Quillian (1969) as well as another model that is based on a comparison of semantic features.

**Collins and Quillian’s Network Model**

An older model still in use today is that knowledge is represented in terms of a hierarchical semantic (related to meaning as expressed in language—i.e., in linguistic symbols) network. A semantic network is a web of elements of meaning (nodes) that are connected with each other through links (Collins & Quillian, 1969). Organized knowledge representation takes the form of a hierarchical tree diagram. The elements are called nodes; they are typically concepts. The connections between the nodes are labeled relationships. They might indicate category membership (e.g., an “is a” relationship connecting “pig” to “mammal”), attributes (e.g., connecting “furry” to “mammal”), or some other semantic relationship. Thus, a network provides a means for organizing concepts. The exact form of a semantic network differs from one theory to another, but most networks look something like the highly simplified network shown in Figure 8.2. The labeled relationships form links that enable the individual to connect the various nodes in a meaningful way.

---

**Figure 8.2 Structure of a Semantic Network.**

In a simple semantic network, nodes serve as junctures representing concepts linked by labeled relationships: a basic network structure showing that relationship R links the nodes a and b.
In a seminal study, the participants were given statements relating concepts, such as “A shark is a fish” and “A shark is an animal” (Collins & Quillian, 1969). They were asked to verify the truth of the statements. Some were true; others were not. As the object to be classified became more hierarchically remote from the category named in the statement, people generally took longer to verify a true statement. Thus, we could expect people to take longer to verify “A shark is an animal” than “A shark is a fish.” The reason is that fish is an immediate superordinate category for shark. Animal, however, is a more remote superordinate category (see Figure 8.3). Collins and Quillian concluded that a hierarchical network representation, such as the one shown in Figure 8.3, adequately accounted for the response times in their study.

A hierarchical model seemed ideal to the investigators. Within a hierarchy, we can efficiently store information that applies to all members of a category at the highest possible level in the hierarchy. We do not have to repeat the information at all of the lower levels in the hierarchy. Therefore, a hierarchical model provides a high degree of cognitive economy. The system allows for maximally efficient capacity use with a minimum of redundancy. Thus, if you know that dogs and cats are mammals, you store everything you know about mammals at the mammal level. For example, you might store that mammals have fur and give birth to live young whom they nurse. You do not have to repeat that information again at the
hierarchically lower level for dogs and cats. Whatever was known about items at higher levels in a hierarchy was applied to all items at lower levels in the hierarchy. This concept of inheritance implies that lower-level items inherit the properties of higher-level items. This concept, in turn, is the key to the economy of hierarchical models. Computer models of the network clearly demonstrated the value of cognitive economy.

The Collins and Quillian study instigated a whole line of research into the structure of semantic networks. However, many of the psychologists who studied the Collins and Quillian data disagreed with Collins and Quillian’s interpretations. For one thing, numerous anomalies in the data could not be explained by the model. For example, participants take longer to verify “A lion is a mammal” than to verify “A lion is an animal.” Yet, in a strictly hierarchical view, verification should be faster for the mammal statement than for the animal one. After all, the category mammal is hierarchically closer to the category lion than is the category animal.

**Comparing Semantic Features**

An alternative theory is that knowledge is organized based on a comparison of semantic features, rather than on a strict hierarchy of concepts (Smith, Shoben, & Rips, 1974). Though this theory sounds similar to the feature-based theory of categorization, it differs from it in a key way: Features of different concepts are compared directly, rather than serving as the basis for forming a category. Consider the categorization of different mammals. In the feature-based theory, each mammal would be described by its own set of defining features—a rabbit might be defined by its fur, long ears, hopping walk, etc. If features are compared directly, then you would compare all mammals on the basis of the same set of features. How does this work?

Let’s stick with the mammal example. Mammal names can be represented in terms of a psychological space organized by three features: size, ferocity, and human- ness (Henley, 1969). A lion, for example, would be high in all three. An elephant would be particularly high in size but not so high in ferocity. A rat would be small in size but relatively high in ferocity. Figure 8.4 shows how information might be organized within a nonhierarchical feature-based theory. Note that this representation, too, leaves a number of questions unanswered. For example, how does the word mammal itself fit in? It does not seem to fit into the space of mammal names. Where would other kinds of objects fit?

Neither of the preceding two theories of representation completely specifies how all information might be organized in a semantic network. For example, how are parts of a whole represented in the network? Perhaps some kind of combination of representations is used (e.g., Collins & Loftus, 1975). Other network models tend to emphasize mental relationships that we think about more frequently rather than just any hierarchical relationships. For example, they might emphasize the link between birds and robins or sparrows or the link between birds and flying. They would not emphasize the link between birds and turkeys or penguins or the link between birds and standing on two legs.

A common method for examining semantic networks involves the use of word-stem completion. In this task, participants are presented a prime for a very short amount of time and then given the first few letters of a word and told to complete the stem with the first word that comes to mind. The stems could be completed with
How did you complete it? Many people, after reading this paragraph, would complete it with “stem.” But there are many other possibilities that were not primed, such as “spam,” “slim,” and “slum,” and “sham,” to name a few.

These findings are taken to mean that the activation of one node of the network increases the activation of related nodes. One study noted that, with the progression of Alzheimer's disease, the activation of related nodes is impaired. As a result, the word stems for patients with Alzheimer's disease more frequently are completed with words that are unrelated to the prime (Passafiume, Di Giacomo, & Carolei, 2006).

Semantic networks were also explored with the patient H. M. (see Chapter 5 for information on H. M). As you may recall, H. M.’s hippocampus was lesioned as a treatment for epilepsy. A side effect of this treatment was a great loss in the ability to form new memories. However, H. M. was capable of learning at least
some new semantic information. Although performance on semantic tasks was impaired in H. M., clearly there was some semantic learning (O’Kane, Kensinger, & Corkin, 2004). These findings indicate that, although semantic learning can occur without the involvement of the hippocampus, such learning is greatly improved by its use.

We may broaden our understanding of concepts further if we consider not only the hierarchical and basic levels of a concept (Komatsu, 1992). We also should take into account other relational information the concept contains. Specifically, we may better understand the ways in which we derive meanings from concepts by considering their relations with other concepts, as well as the relations among attributes contained within a concept. For example, new multimedia learning and instruction devices that are based on semantic network models and use tools like mind-mapping can indeed increase knowledge acquisition (Zumbach, 2009).

**Schematic Representations**

Another way to organize the many concepts we have in our minds is by means of schemas. First we will discuss schemas in general and then have a look at scripts, which are a particular kind of schema.

**Schemas**

One main approach to understanding how concepts are related in the mind is through schemas. They are very similar to semantic networks, except that schemas are often more task-oriented. Recall that a schema is a mental framework for organizing knowledge. It creates a meaningful structure of related concepts. For example, we might have a schema for a kitchen that tells us the kinds of things one might find in a kitchen and where we might find them. Of course, both concepts and schemas may be viewed at many levels of analysis. It all depends on the mind of the individual and the context (Barsalou, 2000). Imagine your mother has a bad backache and you offer to give her a massage. Massage to you may mean rubbing her back and perhaps kneading her shoulders. For a massage therapist, massage may encompass much more. He distinguishes different muscles and tendons in the back and recognizes that a backache may also be related to a condition in the hips or elsewhere in the body. Thus, he targets his treatment much more specifically. Similarly, most people do not have an elaborate schema for cognitive psychology. However, for most cognitive psychologists, the schema for cognitive psychology is richly elaborated. It encompasses many subschemas, such as subschemas for attention, memory, and perception.

Schemas have several characteristics that ensure wide flexibility in their use (Rumelhart & Ortony, 1977; Thorndyke, 1984):

1. Schemas can include other schemas. For example, a schema for animals includes a schema for cows, a schema for apes, and so on.
2. Schemas encompass typical, general facts that can vary slightly from one specific instance to another. For example, although the schema for mammals includes a general fact that mammals typically have fur, it allows for humans, who are less hairy than most other mammals. It also allows for porcupines, which seem more prickly than furry, and for marine mammals like whales that have just a few bristly hairs.
3. Schemas can vary in their degree of abstraction. For example, a schema for 
*justice* is much more abstract than a schema for *apple* or even a schema for *fruit*.

Schemas also can include information about relationships (Komatsu, 1992). Some of this information includes relationships among the following:

- concepts (e.g., the link between trucks and cars);
- attributes within concepts (e.g., the height and the weight of an elephant);
- attributes in related concepts (e.g., the redness of a cherry and the redness of an apple);
- concepts and particular contexts (e.g., fish and the ocean); and
- specific concepts and general background knowledge (e.g., concepts about particular U.S. presidents and general knowledge about the U.S. government and about U.S. history).

Relationships within schemas that particularly interest cognitive psychologists are causal (“if-then”) relationships. For example, consider our schema for *glass*. It probably specifies that if an object made of glass falls onto a hard surface, the object may break. Schemas also include information that we can use as a basis for drawing inferences in novel situations. For instance, suppose that a 75-year-old woman, a 45-year-old man, a 30-year-old nun, and a 25-year-old woman are sitting on park benches surrounding a playground. A young child falls from some playground equipment. He calls out “Mama!” To whom is the child calling? Chances are that, to determine your answer, you would be able to draw an inference by calling on various schemas. They would include ones for mothers, for men and women, for people of various ages, and even for people who join religious orders.

Researchers interested in artificial intelligence (AI) have adapted the notion of schemas to fit various computer models of human intelligence. These researchers devised computer models of how knowledge is represented and used. Schemas can be used, for example, when conducting searches in large and complex databases or to integrate masses of information (Do & Rahm, 2007; Fagin et al., 2009).

A problem with schemas is that they can give rise to stereotypes. For example, we might have a schema for the kind of person we believe was responsible for the destruction of the World Trade Center on September 11, 2001. This schema can easily generate a stereotype of certain groups of people as likely terrorists. For example, if you associate a certain type of clothing or a particular belief system with the terrorists, you may easily associate other people with the group of perpetrators just because they happen to wear the same kind of clothing or share some of the beliefs of the terrorists.

**Scripts**

One particular kind of schema is a script (Schank & Abelson, 1977). A *script* contains information about the particular order in which things occur. In general, scripts are much less flexible than schemas. However, scripts include default values for the actors, the props, the setting, and the sequence of events expected to occur. These values taken together compose an overview of an event.

Think about a restaurant script. The script may be applied to one particular kind of restaurant—for example, a coffee shop. A script has several features:

- **props**: tables, a menu, food, a check, and money
- **roles** to be played: a customer, a waiter, a cook, a cashier, and an owner
• opening conditions for the script: the customer is hungry, and he or she has money
• scenes: entering, ordering, eating, and exiting
• a set of results: the customer has less money; the owner has more money; the
customer is no longer hungry; and sometimes the customer and the owner are
pleased.

Various empirical studies have been conducted to test the validity of the script
notion. In one, researchers presented their participants with 18 brief stories (Bower,
Black, & Turner, 1979). You can read one of these, representing the doctor’s office
script, in Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Scripts—The Doctor.

In the research, participants were asked to read 18 stories similar to the one in
the Investigating Cognitive Psychology box. Later, they were asked to perform one of
two tasks. In a recall task, participants were asked to recall as much as they could
about each of the stories. Here, participants showed a significant tendency to recall,
as parts of the stories, elements that were not actually in the stories but that were
parts of the scripts that the stories represented. In the recognition task, participants
were presented with sentences. They were asked to rate, on a 7-point scale, their
confidence that they had seen each of the sentences. Some of the sentences were
from the stories, others were not. Of the sentences that were not from the stories,
some were from the relevant scripts, and others were not from these scripts. Partici-
pants were more likely to characterize particular non-story sentences as having come
from the stories if the non-story sentences were script-relevant than if the non-story
sentences were not script relevant. The Bower, Black, and Turner research suggested
that scripts seem to guide what people recall and recognize—ultimately, what people
know.

In a related context, scripts also may come into play in regard to the ways in
which experts converse with and write for one another. Certainly, experts share a
jargon—specialized vocabulary commonly used within a group, such as a profession
or a trade. You may overhear psychologists engrossed in a discussion about priming
effects, but a layperson likely will not understand what they are talking about exactly.

**INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY**

**Scripts—The Doctor**

John was feeling bad today and decided to go see the family doctor. He checked in
with the doctor’s receptionist and then looked through several medical magazines that
were on the table by his chair. Finally, the nurse came and asked John to take off his
clothes. The doctor was very nice to him. He eventually prescribed some pills for John.

Then John left the doctor’s office and headed home.

Did John take off his clothes?

This “scripted” description of a visit to a doctor’s office is fairly typical. Notice that
in this description, as would probably happen in any verbal description of a script, some
details are missing. The speaker (or scriptwriter, in this case) may have omitted mention-
ing these details. Thus, we do not know for sure that John actually took off his clothes.
Moreover, the nurse probably beckoned John at some point. She or he then escorted
John to an examination room and probably took John’s temperature and his blood pres-
sure and weighed him. The doctor probably asked John to describe his symptoms, and
so on. But we do not know any of these things for sure.
In addition, however, experts share a common understanding of scripts that are known by insiders to the field of expertise. For example, after reading Chapter 2, you have a basic understanding of positron emission tomography (PET) methods. Therefore, when someone mentions that a PET scan was used to examine the brain, you have an idea of what happened. People outside the area of expertise do not share this understanding. In the PET example, a person who has never read or learned about PETs might know that the result was an image of the brain but would not know that the procedure involved the injection of a slightly radioactive form of oxygen. When trying to understand technical manuals and technical conversations outside your own area of expertise, you may run into vocabulary difficulties and information gaps. You lack the proper script for interpreting the language being spoken.

Imaging studies reveal that the frontal and parietal lobes are involved in the generation of scripts (Godbout et al., 2004). The generation of scripts requires a great deal of working memory. Further script generation involves the use of both temporal and spatial information.

A number of patient populations experience impaired script use. For instance, people with schizophrenia frequently have trouble recalling and sequencing scripts. Also, these people add events to a script that should not be included. Research indicates a relationship between difficulties with script processing and the positive symptoms of schizophrenia (like hallucinations and illusions) on the one hand, and dysfunction of the frontal lobes, on the other hand (Matsui et al., 2006). People with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), people with autistic-spectrum disorders, and even people who are aging normally also may experience problems with scripts and may have trouble recalling the proper sequence of the steps involved in scripts (Allain et al., 2007; Braun et al., 2004; Loth et al., 2008). Again, the frontal lobes seem to play a central role in script generation and use.

The typicality effect is an interesting effect in script learning. In general, when a person is learning a script, if both typical and atypical actions are provided, the atypical information will be recalled more readily. This difference is likely due to the increased effort in processing required for atypical information as compared with typical information. When someone suffers from a closed-head injury, like a strong blow
to the head, the typicality effect disappears (Vakil et al., 2002). In other words, people then have roughly equal recall of typical and atypical information.

The script model has helped cognitive psychologists gain insight into knowledge organization. Scripts enable us to use a mental framework for acting in certain situations when we must fill in apparent gaps within a given context. Without access to mental scripts, we probably would be at a loss the first time we entered a new restaurant or a new doctor's office. Imagine what it would be like if the nurse at the doctor's office had to explain each step to you. When everyone in a given situation follows a similar script, the day flows much more smoothly.

Whether we subscribe to the notion of categories, semantic networks, or schemas, the important issue is that knowledge is organized. These forms of organization can serve different purposes. The most adaptive and flexible use of knowledge would allow us to use any form of organization, depending on the situation. We need some means to define aspects of the situation, to relate these concepts to other concepts and categories, and to select the appropriate course of action, given the situation. Next, we discuss theories about how the mind represents procedural knowledge.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What is a concept?
2. What is a category?
3. What is the difference between prototypes and examplars?
4. What is the theory-based view of meaning?
5. What are the components of a semantic network?
6. What is a schema?
7. Why do we need scripts?

**Representations of How We Do Things: Procedural Knowledge**

Some of the earliest models for representing procedural knowledge (how we do things) come from AI and computer-simulation research (see Chapter 1). Through these models, researchers try to get computers to perform tasks intelligently, particularly in ways that simulate intelligent performance of humans. In fact, cognitive psychologists have learned a great deal about representing and using procedural knowledge. They have had to because of the distinctive problems posed in getting computers to implement procedures based on a series of instructions compiled in programs. Through trial-and-error attempts at getting computers to simulate intelligent cognitive processes, cognitive psychologists have come to understand some of the complexities of human information processing. The next section will describe how psychologists believe procedural knowledge “works.” Afterwards, we will have a look at some research on the brain and how it influenced theories and models.

**The “Production” of Procedural Knowledge**

Procedural knowledge representation is acquired through practicing the implementation of a procedure. It is not merely a result of reading, hearing, or otherwise
acquiring information from explicit instructions. Once a mental representation of nondeclarative knowledge is constructed (proceduralization is complete), that knowledge is implicit. It is hard to make explicit by trying to put it in words. In fact, practice tends actually to decrease explicit access to that knowledge. For example, suppose you recently have learned how to drive a standard-shift car. You may find it easier to describe how to do so than someone who learned that skill long ago. As your explicit access to nondeclarative knowledge decreases, however, your speed and ease of gaining implicit access to that knowledge increases. Eventually, most nondeclarative knowledge can be retrieved for use much more quickly than declarative knowledge can be retrieved.

Psychologists have developed a variety of models for how procedural information is represented and processed. Each of these models involves the **serial processing** of information, in which information is handled through a linear sequence of operations, one operation at a time. One way in which computers can represent and organize procedural knowledge is in the form of sets of rules governing a **production**, which includes the generation and output of a procedure (Jones & Ritter, 2003). Computer simulations of productions follow production rules (“if-then” rules), comprising an “if” clause and a “then” clause (Newell & Simon, 1972). People may use this same form of organizing knowledge or something very close to it.

For example, suppose your car is veering toward the left side of the road. Then you should steer toward the right side of the road if you wished to avoid hitting the curb. The “if” clause includes a set of conditions that must be met to implement the “then” clause. The “then” clause is an action or a series of actions that are a response to the “if” clause.

For a given “if-then” rule, each condition may contain one or more variables. For each of these conditions, there may be one or more possibilities. For example, if you want to go somewhere by car, and if you know how to drive a car, and if you are licensed and insured to drive, and if you have a car available to you, and if you do not have other constraints (e.g., no keys, no gas, broken engine, dead battery), then you may execute the actions for driving a car somewhere.

When the rules are described precisely and all the relevant conditions and actions are noted, a huge number of rules are required to perform even a very simple task. These rules are organized into a structure of **routines** (instructions regarding procedures for implementing a task) and **subroutines** (instructions for implementing a subtask within a larger task governed by a routine). Many of these routines and subroutines are **iterative**, meaning that they are repeated many times during the performance of a task.

If you want to complete a particular task or use a skill, you use a **production system** that comprises the entire set of rules (productions) for executing the task or using the skill (Anderson, 1983, 1993; Gugerty, 2007; Newell & Simon, 1972; Simon, 1999a, 1999b).

Consider an example of a simple production system for a pedestrian to cross the street at an intersection with a traffic light (Newell & Simon, 1972). It is shown here (with the “if” clauses indicated to the left of the arrows and the “then” clauses indicated to the right of the arrows):

- traffic-light red → stop
- traffic-light green → move
- move and left foot on pavement → step with right foot
- move and right foot on pavement → step with left foot
In this production system, the individual first tests to see whether the light is red. If it is red, the person stops and again tests to see whether the light is red. This sequence is repeated until the light turns green. At that point, the person starts moving. If the person is moving and the left foot is on the pavement, the person will step with the right foot. If the person is moving and the right foot is on the pavement, the person will step with the left foot.

Sometimes, production systems, like computer programs, contain bugs. Bugs are flaws in the instructions for the conditions or for executing the actions. For example, in the cross-the-street program, if the last line read “move and right foot on pavement → step with right foot,” the individual executing the production system would get nowhere. According to the production-system model, human representations of procedural knowledge may contain some occasional bugs (Gugerty, 2007; VanLehn, 1990).

Until about the mid-1970s, researchers interested in knowledge representation followed either of two basic strands of research. AI and information-processing researchers were refining various models for representing procedural knowledge. Cognitive psychologists and other researchers were considering various alternative models for representing declarative knowledge. By the end of the 1970s, some integrative models of knowledge representation began to emerge.

**Nondeclarative Knowledge**

As mentioned previously, knowledge traditionally has been described as either declarative or procedural. One can expand the traditional distinction between declarative and procedural knowledge to suggest that nondeclarative knowledge may encompass a broader range of mental representations than just procedural knowledge (Squire, 1986; Squire et al., 1990). Specifically, in addition to declarative knowledge, we mentally represent the following forms of nondeclarative knowledge:

- perceptual, motor, and cognitive skills (procedural knowledge);
- simple associative knowledge (classical and operant conditioning);
- simple non-associative knowledge (habituation and sensitization); and
- priming (fundamental links within a knowledge network, in which the activation of information along a particular mental pathway facilitates the subsequent retrieval of information along a related pathway or even the same mental pathway; see Chapter 4).

### INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY

**Procedural Knowledge**

Ask a friend if he or she would like to win $20. The $20 can be won if your friend can recite the months of the year within 30 seconds—in alphabetical order. Go! In the years that we have offered this cash to the students in our courses, not a single student has ever won, so your $20 is probably safe. This demonstration shows how something as common and frequently used as the months of the year is bundled together in a certain order. It is very difficult to rearrange their names in an order that is different from their commonly used or more familiar order.
All of these nondeclarative forms of knowledge are usually implicit. You are not aware of the different steps you carry out when you act, and it is hard for you to spell them out explicitly.

Squire’s primary inspiration for his model came from three sources: his own work; a wide range of neuropsychological research done by others, including studies of amnesic patients and animal studies; and human cognitive experiments. Consider an example: Work with amnesic patients reveals clear distinctions between the neural systems for representing declarative knowledge versus neural systems for some of the nondeclarative forms of knowledge. For instance, amnesic patients often continue to show procedural knowledge even when they cannot remember that they possess such knowledge. They often show improvements in performance on tasks requiring skills. These improvements indicate some form of new knowledge representation, despite an inability to remember ever having had previous experience with the tasks. For example, an amnesic patient who is given repeated practice in reading mirror writing will improve as a result of practice, but he or she will not recall ever having engaged in the practice (Baddeley, 1989).

Another paradox of human knowledge representation also is demonstrated by amnesics. Although amnesics do not show normal memory abilities under most circumstances, they do show the priming effect. Recall from Chapter 4 that, in priming, particular cues and stimuli seem to activate mental pathways, which in turn enhance the retrieval or cognitive processing of related information. For example, if someone asks you to spell the word sight, you will probably spell it differently, depending on several factors. These factors include whether you have been primed to think about sensory modalities ("s-i-g-h-t"), about locations for an archaeological dig ("s-i-t-e"), or about lists of references ("c-i-t-e"). When amnesic participants have no recall of the priming and cannot explicitly recall the experience during which priming occurred, priming still affects their performance.

Try the experiment on priming in Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Priming. It requires you to draw on your store of declarative knowledge.

The preceding examples illustrate situations in which an item may prime another item that is somehow related in meaning. We actually may differentiate two types of priming: semantic priming and repetition priming (Pesciarelli et al., 2007;
In semantic priming, we are primed by a meaningful context or by meaningful information. Such information typically is a word or cue that is meaningfully related to the target that is used. Examples are fruits or green things, which may prime lime. In repetition priming, a prior exposure to a word or other stimulus primes a subsequent retrieval of that information. For example, hearing the word lime primes subsequent stimulation for the word lime. Both types of priming have generated a great deal of research, but semantic priming often particularly interests cognitive psychologists.

According to spreading-activation theories, the amount of activation between a prime and a given target node is a function of two things: the number of links connecting the prime and the target, and the relative strengths of each connection. This view holds that increasing the number of intervening links tends to decrease the likelihood of the priming effect. But increasing the strength of each link between the prime and its target tends to increase the likelihood of the priming effect. This model has been well supported (e.g., McNamara, 1992). Furthermore, the occurrence of priming through spreading activation is taken by most psychologists as support for a network model of knowledge representation in memory processes. In particular, the notions of priming effects through spreading activation within a network model have led to the emergence of a newer model. It is called a connectionist model of knowledge representation and will be considered in more detail in the next section.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What is procedural knowledge?
2. What are the different kinds of nondeclarative knowledge?
3. What are two types of priming?

**Integrative Models for Representing Declarative and Nondeclarative Knowledge**

So far, we have considered models for the representation of either declarative or procedural knowledge. Next, we explore some models that attempt to explain both. The first model is the ACT-R model, which is based on semantic networks and production systems. Then we look at findings that are using the human brain, rather than computers, as a model. One such theory we will consider in detail: the connectionist model.

Last, we will discuss the question of whether psychologists should try to find models that explain all domains of knowledge representation (e.g., declarative and procedural knowledge), or whether it makes more sense to develop models that specialize in a particular domain.

**Combining Representations: ACT-R**

An excellent example of a theory that combines forms of mental representation is the ACT (adaptive control of thought) model of knowledge representation and information processing (Anderson, 1976, 1993; Anderson et al., 2001, 2004). In his ACT model, John Anderson synthesized some of the features of serial
information-processing models and some of the features of semantic-network models. In ACT, procedural knowledge is represented in the form of production systems. Declarative knowledge is represented in the form of propositional networks. Anderson (1985) defined a proposition as being the smallest unit of knowledge that can be judged to be either true or false. Recall from Chapter 7 that propositions describe abstract relationships among elements. For example, “Bobby likes cheese sticks” is a proposition, but neither “Bobby” nor “cheese sticks” is a proposition. ACT is an evolved form of earlier models (Anderson, 1972; Anderson & Bower, 1973).

Anderson intended his model to be so broad in scope that it would offer an overarching theory regarding the entire architecture of cognition. In Anderson’s view, individual cognitive processes such as memory, language comprehension, problem solving, and reasoning are merely variations on a central theme. They all reflect an underlying system of cognition. The most recent version of ACT, ACT-R (where the R stands for rational), is a model of information processing that integrates a network representation for declarative knowledge and a production-system representation for procedural knowledge (Anderson, 1983; Figure 8.5).

In ACT-R, networks include images of objects and corresponding spatial configurations and relationships. They also include temporal information, such as relationships involving the sequencing of actions, events, or even the order in which items appear. Anderson referred to the temporal information as “temporal strings.” He noted that they contain information about the relative time sequence. Examples would be before/after, first/second/third, and yesterday/tomorrow. These relative time sequences can be compared with absolute time referents, such as 2 P.M., September 4, 2004. The model is under constant revision and currently includes information about statistical regularities in the environment (Anderson, 1991, 1996; Weaver, 2008). It is also used to examine learning processes that are reflected in the cortex (Anderson et al., 2004).

### Declarative Knowledge within ACT-R

Anderson’s declarative network model, like many other network models (e.g., Collins & Loftus, 1975), contains a mechanism by which information can be retrieved and also a structure for storing information. Recall that within a semantic network, concepts are stored at various nodes within the network. According to Anderson’s model (and various other network models), the nodes can be either inactive or active at a given time. An active node is one that is, in a sense, “turned on.” A node can be turned on—activated—directly by external stimuli, such as sensations, or it can be activated by internal stimuli, such as memories or thought processes. Also, it can be activated indirectly, by the activity of one or more neighboring nodes.

Given each node’s receptivity to stimulation from neighboring nodes, there is spreading activation within the network from one node to another. But there are limits on the amount of information (number of nodes) that can be activated at any one time. (Danker et al., 2008; Shastri, 2003). Of course, as more nodes are activated and the spread of activation reaches greater distances from the initial source of the activation, the activation weakens. Therefore, the nodes closely related to the original node have a great deal of activation. However, nodes that are more remotely related are activated to a lesser degree. For instance, when the node for mouse is activated, the node for cat also is strongly activated. At the same time, the node for deer is activated (because a deer is an animal as well), but to a much lesser degree.
ACT-R also suggests means by which the network changes as a result of activation. For one thing, the more often particular links between nodes are used, the stronger the links become. In a complementary fashion, activation is likely to spread along the routes of frequently traveled connections. It is less likely to spread along infrequently used connections between nodes.
Consider an analogy. Imagine a complex set of water pipes interlinking various locations. When the water is turned on at one location, the water starts moving through various pipes. It is showing a sort of spreading activation. At various interconnections, a valve is either open or closed. It thus either permits the flow to continue through or diverts the flow (the activation) to other connections.

To carry the analogy a bit further, processes such as attention can influence the degree of activation throughout the system. Consider the water system again. The higher the water pressure in the system, the farther along the water will spread through the system of pipes. To relate this metaphor back to spreading activation, consider what happens when we are thinking about an issue and various associations seem to come to mind regarding that issue (for example, you think about tomorrow’s dinner and that you have to make a shopping list, and then it occurs to you that you long promised to invite your parents for dinner, and so on). We are experiencing the spread of activation along the nodes that represent our knowledge of various aspects of the problem and, possibly, its solution.

To help explain some aspects of spreading activation, picture the pipes as being more flexible than normal pipes. These pipes gradually can expand or contract; it all depends on how frequently they are used. The pipes along routes that are traveled frequently may expand to enhance the ease and speed of travel along those routes. The pipes along routes that are seldom traveled gradually may contract. Similarly, in spreading activation, connections that frequently are used are strengthened. Connections that are seldom used are weakened. Thus, within semantic networks, declarative knowledge may be learned and maintained through the strengthening of connections as a result of frequent use. The theory of spreading activation has been applied to a number of other cognitive concepts. These concepts include social cognition and bilingualism (Dixon & Maddox, 2005; Green, 1998).

**Procedural Knowledge within ACT-R**
How does Anderson explain the acquisition of procedural knowledge? Such knowledge is represented in production systems rather than in semantic networks. Knowledge representation of procedural skills occurs in three stages: cognitive, associative, and autonomous (Anderson, 1980). See Table 8.2 for examples of each of these three stages.

Our progress through these stages is called proceduralization (Anderson et al., 2004; Oellinger et al., 2008). Proceduralization is the overall process by which we transform slow, explicit information about procedures (“knowing that”) into speedy, implicit, implementations of procedures (“knowing how”). (Recall the discussion of automatization in Chapter 4. This is a term used by other cognitive psychologists to describe essentially the same process as proceduralization.) One means by which we make this transformation is through composition. During this stage, we construct a single production rule that effectively embraces two or more production rules. It thus streamlines the number of rules required for executing the procedure. For example, consider what happens when we learn to drive a standard-shift car. We may compose a single procedure for what were two separate procedures. One was for pressing down on the clutch. The other was for applying the brakes when we reach a stop sign. These multiple processes are combined together into the single procedure of driving.

Another aspect of proceduralization is “production tuning.” It involves the two complementary processes of generalization and discrimination. We learn to generalize existing rules to apply them to new conditions. For example, we can generalize our use of the clutch, the brakes, and the accelerator to a variety of standard-shift cars.
Finally, we learn to discriminate new criteria for meeting the conditions we face. For example, what happens after we have mastered driving a particular standard-shift car? If we drive a car with a different number of gears or with different positions for the reverse gear, we must discriminate the relevant information about the new gear positions from the irrelevant information about the old gear positions. Taatgen and Lee (2003) demonstrated that the learning of even extremely complex tasks—for instance, air-traffic controlling—can be described through these three processes.

Thus far, the models of knowledge representation presented in this chapter have been based largely on computer models of human intelligence. As the foregoing discussion shows, information-processing theories based on computer simulations of human cognitive processes have greatly advanced our understanding of human knowledge representation and information processing.

An alternative approach to understanding knowledge representation in humans has been to study the human brain itself. Much of the research in psychobiology has offered evidence that many operations of the human brain do not seem to process information step-by-step, bit-by-bit. Rather, the human brain seems to engage in multiple processes simultaneously. It acts on myriad bits of knowledge all at once. Such models do not necessarily contradict step-by-step models. First, people seem likely to use both serial and parallel processing. Second, different kinds of processes may be occurring at different levels. Thus, our brains may be processing multiple pieces of information simultaneously. They combine into each of the steps of which we are aware when we process information step by step.

### Parallel Processing: The Connectionist Model

Computer-inspired information-processing theories assume that humans, like computers, process information serially. That is, information is processed one step after another. Some aspects of human cognition may indeed be explained in terms of serial processing, but psychobiological findings and other cognitive research seem to indicate other aspects of human cognition. These aspects involve parallel processing, in
which multiple operations go on all at once. We have seen how the information processing of a computer has served as a metaphor for many models of cognition. Similarly, our increasing understanding of how the human brain processes information also serves as a metaphor for many of the recent models of knowledge representation in humans.

The human brain seems to handle many operations and to process information from many sources simultaneously—in parallel. In fact, it seems necessary that we are able to process information in parallel: A computer responds to an input within nanoseconds (millionths of a second), but an individual neuron may take up to 3 milliseconds to fire in response to a stimulus. Consequently, serial processing in the human brain would be far too slow to manage the amount of information the brain handles. For example, most of us can recognize a complex visual stimulus within about 300 milliseconds. If we processed the stimulus serially, only a few hundred neurons would have had time to respond, which is not enough for the perception of a complex stimulus. Therefore, the distribution of parallel processes better explains the speed and accuracy of human information processing.

As a result of these considerations, many contemporary models of knowledge representation emphasize the importance of parallel processing in human cognition. As a further result of interest in parallel processing, some computers have been made to simulate parallel processing, such as through so-called neural networks of interlinked computer processors.

At present, many cognitive psychologists are exploring the limits of parallel processing models. According to parallel distributed processing (PDP) models or connectionist models, we handle very large numbers of cognitive operations at once through a network distributed across incalculable numbers of locations in the brain (McClelland & Rogers, 2003; McClelland, Rumelhart, & the PDP Research Group, 1986; Rogers & McClelland, 2008).

**How the PDP Model Works**

The mental structure within which parallel processing is believed to occur is a network. In connectionist networks, all forms of knowledge are represented within the network structure. Recall that the fundamental element of the network is the node. Each node is connected to many other nodes. These interconnected patterns of nodes enable the individual to organize meaningfully the knowledge contained in the connections among the various nodes. In many network models, each node represents a concept.

The network of the PDP model is different in key respects from the semantic network described earlier. In the PDP model, the network comprises neuron-like units (McClelland & Rumelhart, 1981, 1985; Rumelhart & McClelland, 1982). They do not, in and of themselves, actually represent concepts, propositions, or any other type of information. Thus, the pattern of connections represents the knowledge, not the specific units. The same idea governs our use of language. Individual letters (or sounds) of a word are relatively uninformative, but the pattern of letters (or sounds) is highly informative. Similarly, no single unit is very informative, but the pattern of interconnections among units is highly informative. Figure 8.6 illustrates how just six units (dots) may be used to generate many more than six patterns of connections between the dots.

The PDP model demonstrates another way in which a brain-inspired model differs from a computer-inspired one. Differing cognitive processes are handled by differing patterns of activation, rather than as a result of a different set of instructions...
from a computer’s central processing unit. In the brain, at any one time, a given neuron may be inactive, excitatory, or inhibitory.

- **Inactive** neurons are not stimulated beyond their threshold of excitation. They do not release any neurotransmitters into the synapse (the interneuronal gap).
- **Excitatory** neurons release neurotransmitters that stimulate receptive neurons at the synapse. They increase the likelihood that the receiving neurons will reach their threshold of excitation.
- **Inhibitory** neurons release neurotransmitters that inhibit receptive neurons. They reduce the likelihood that the receiving neurons will reach their threshold of excitation.

Furthermore, although the action potential of a neuron is all or none, the amounts of neurotransmitters and neuromodulators released may vary. (Neuromodulators are chemicals that can either increase or inhibit neural activation.) The frequency of firing also may vary. This variation affects the degree of excitation or inhibition of other neurons at the synapse.

---

**Figure 8.6 Knowledge Represented by Patterns of Connections.**

Each individual unit (dot) is relatively uninformative, but when the units are connected into various patterns, each pattern may be highly informative, as illustrated in the patterns at the top of this figure. Similarly, individual letters are relatively uninformative, but patterns of letters may be highly informative. Using just three-letter combinations, we can generate many different patterns, such as DAB, FED, and other patterns shown in the bottom of this figure.
Similarly, in the PDP model, individual units may be inactive, or they may send excitatory or inhibitory signals to other units. That is not to say that the PDP model actually indicates specific neural pathways for knowledge representation. We are still a long way from having more than a faint glimmer of knowing how to map specific neural information. Rather, the PDP model uses the physiological processes of the brain as a metaphor for understanding cognition. According to the PDP model, connections between units can possess varying degrees of potential excitation or inhibition. These differences can occur even when the connections are currently inactive. The more often a particular connection is activated, the greater is the strength of the connection, whether the connection is excitatory or inhibitory.

According to the PDP model, whenever we use knowledge, we change our representation of it. Thus, knowledge representation is not really a final product. Rather, it is a process or even a potential process. What is stored is not a particular pattern of connections. It is a pattern of potential excitatory or inhibitory connection strengths. The brain uses this pattern to re-create other patterns when stimulated to do so.

When we receive new information, the activation from that information either strengthens or weakens the connections between units. The new information may come from environmental stimuli, from memory, or from cognitive processes. The ability to create new information by drawing inferences and making generalizations allows for almost infinite versatility in knowledge representation and manipulation. This versatility is what makes humans—unlike computers—able to accommodate incomplete and distorted information. Information that is distorted or incomplete is considered to be degraded. According to the PDP model, human minds are flexible. They do not require that all aspects of a pattern precisely match to activate a pattern. Thus, when enough distinctive (but not all) aspects of a particular pattern have been activated by other attributes in the description, we can re-create the correct pattern even though there is some degraded information. This cognitive flexibility also greatly enhances our ability to learn new information.

By using the PDP model, cognitive psychologists attempt to explain various general characteristics of human cognition. These characteristics include our ability to respond flexibly, dynamically, rapidly, and relatively accurately, even when we are given only partial or degraded information. In addition, cognitive psychologists attempt to use the model to explain specific cognitive processes. Examples of such processes are perception, reasoning, reading, language comprehension, priming, and the Stroop effect, as well as other memory processes (Elman et al., 1996; Kaplan et al., 2007; Rogers & McClelland, 2008; Smolensky, 1999; Welbourne & Ralph, 2007).

An example of the efforts to apply PDP models to specific cognitive processes can be seen through the exploration of dyslexia, or reading disability. A specific PDP model for the description of how we read was developed. This model involves pathways for both phonological and semantic representations (Plaut et al., 1996). Computer simulations with this model have been able to mimic normal reading. When one of these two pathways is damaged, these simulations are able to imitate the behavioral manifestations of dyslexia (Welbourne & Ralph, 2007). These simulations help researchers understand what processes are malfunctioning in people with reading disabilities.

Connectionist models of knowledge representation explain many phenomena of knowledge representation and processing, such as perception and memory. These processes may be learned gradually by our storing knowledge through the
strengthening of patterns of connections within the network. But connectionist models are not flawless.

Criticisms of the Connectionist Models

One general criticism is that connectionist networks neglect properties that neural systems have, or that they propose properties that neural networks do not have. Furthermore, critics ask why any model should be more credible than another for explaining cognitive mechanisms just because it resembles the structure of the brain (Thomas & McClelland, 2008).

Many aspects of the connectionist models are not yet well defined. For example, a connectionist model is less effective in explaining how people can remember a single event (Schacter, 1989a). How do we suddenly construct a whole new interconnected pattern for representing what we know about a memorable event, such as graduation day?

Similarly, connectionist models do not satisfactorily explain how we often quickly can unlearn established patterns of connections when we are presented with contradictory information (Ratcliff, 1990; Treadway et al., 1992). For example:

1. Suppose that you are told that the criteria for classifying parts of plants as fruits are that they must have seeds, pulp, and skin.
2. You also are told that whether they are sweeter than other plant parts is not important.
3. Now you are given the task of sorting various photos of plant parts into groups that are or are not fruits.
4. What happens? You will sort tomatoes and pumpkins with apples and other fruits, even if you did not previously consider them to be fruits.

These shortcomings of connectionist systems can be bypassed. It may be that there are two learning systems in the brain (McClelland, McNaughton, & O’Reilly, 1995). One system corresponds to the connectionist model in resisting change and in being relatively permanent. The complementary system handles rapid acquisition of new information. It holds the information for a short time. It then integrates the newer information with information in the connectionist system. Evidence from neuropsychology and connectionist network modeling seem to corroborate this account (McClelland, McNaughton, & O’Reilly, 1995). Thus, the connectionist system is spared. But we still need a satisfactory account of the other learning system.

The preceding models of knowledge representation and information processing clearly have profited from technological advances in computer science, in brain imaging, and in the neuropsychological study of the human brain in action. These are techniques that few would have predicted to have been so promising 40 years ago. Thus, it would be foolish to predict that specific avenues of research will lead us in particular directions. Nonetheless, particular avenues of research do hold promise. For example, using powerful computers, researchers are attempting to create parallel-processing models via neural networks. Increasingly sophisticated techniques for studying the brain offer intriguing possibilities for research. Case studies, naturalistic studies, and traditional laboratory experiments in the field of cognitive psychology also offer rich opportunities for further exploration. Some researchers are trying to explore highly specific cognitive processes, such as auditory processing of speech.
sounds. Others are trying to investigate fundamental processes that underlie all aspects of cognition. Which type of research is more valuable?

**Comparing Connectionist with Network Representations**

How do connectionist models compare with network models? Figure 8.7 shows the concept of a robin as represented by both a network model and a connectionist model.

In the network representation, the nodes represent concepts. An individual builds up a knowledge base about a robin over time as more and more information is acquired about robins. Note that information about robins is embedded in a general network representation that goes beyond just robins. One’s understanding of robins partly depends on the relationship of the robin to other birds and even other kinds of living things. Indeed, perhaps the most fundamental feature of the robin is that it is a living thing. So this information is represented at the top to show that it is an extremely general characteristic of a robin. Living things are living and can grow, so this information is also represented at a very general level. As one moves down the network, information gets more and more specific. For example, we learn that a robin is a bird and that it is partly red.

In contrast, the connectionist network represents patterns of activation. Here, too, the network shows knowledge that goes beyond just birds. But the knowledge is in the connections rather than in the nodes. Through activation of certain connections, knowledge about a robin is built up. A strong connection is one that is activated many times, whereas a weak one is activated only on rare occasions.
How Domain General or Domain Specific Is Cognition?

Should cognitive psychologists try to find a set of mental processes that is common across all domains of knowledge representation and processing? Or should they study mental processes specific to a particular domain? In early AI research, investigators believed that the ideal was to write programs that were as domain general as possible. Although none of the programs truly worked in all domains, they were a good start. Similarly, in the broader field of cognitive psychology, the trend in the 1960s through the mid-1970s was to strive for domain-general understandings of cognitive processes (Miller, Galanter, & Pribram, 1960; Simon, 1976).

Starting in the late 1970s, the balance shifted toward domain specificity. In part, this was because of striking demonstrations regarding the role of specific knowledge in chess playing (Chase & Simon, 1973; De Groot, 1965; see Chapter 11). A key book, The Modularity of Mind, presented an argument for extreme domain specificity (Fodor, 1983). In this view, the mind is modular, divided into discrete modules that operate more or less independently of each other. According to Fodor, each independently functioning module can process only one kind of input, such as language (e.g., words), visual percepts (e.g., faces), and so on.

Further evidence for the domain specificity of face recognition can be observed in studies employing functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) methods. In one study, it was observed that when subjects viewed faces and houses, different brain areas were active. It thus appears that there are both specialized brain and cognitive processes for the processing of faces. This finding is taken to suggest that there is domain specificity for facial recognition (Yovel & Kanwisher, 2004). Studies have found domain specificity for other things like scenes and bodies as well (Downing et al., 2006).

Fodor (1983) asserted the modularity (distinct origins) of lower-level processes such as the basic perceptual processes involved in lexical access. However, the application of modularity has been extended to higher intellectual processes as well (Gardner, 1983). Also, Fodor's book emphasized the modularity of specific cognitive functions, such as lexical access to word meanings, as distinct from word meanings derived from context. These functions primarily have been observed in cognitive experiments. However, issues of modularity also have been important in neuropsychological research. For example, there are discrete pathological conditions associated with discrete cognitive deficits.

Recently, there has been more of an attempt to integrate domain-specific and domain-general perspectives in our thinking about knowledge representation and processing. In the chapters that follow, you may wish to reflect on whether the processes and forms of knowledge representation are primarily domain general or primarily domain specific.

Concept Check

1. What is the ACT-R model?
2. How is procedural knowledge represented in the ACT-R model?
3. What is parallel processing?
4. How does a connectionist network represent knowledge?
5. What is domain specificity?
This chapter brings out several of the key themes described in Chapter 1.

**Rationalism versus empiricism.** How do we assign meaning to concepts? The featural view is largely a rationalistic one. Concepts have sets of features that are...
largely a priori and that are the same from one person to another. The underlying notion is that one could understand a concept by a detailed dictionary definition, pretty much without reference to people’s experience. The prototype, exemplar, and theory-based views are much more empirically based. They assign a major role to experience. For example, theories may change with experience. The theory of a concept such as a “dog” that a 3-year-old child has may be very different from that of a 10-year-old child.

Validity of causal inference versus ecological validity. Early research on concepts, such as that of Bruner, Goodnow, and Austin, used abstract concepts, such as geometric forms that could be of different colors, shapes, and sizes. But in her work, Eleanor Rosch called this approach into question. Rosch argued that natural concepts show few of the characteristics of artificial ones. Studying artificial concepts, therefore, might yield information that applied to those concepts but not necessarily to real-world ones. Modern researchers tend to study real-world concepts more than artificial ones.

Applied versus basic research. Basic research on concepts has generated a great deal of applied research. For example, market researchers are very interested in people’s conceptualizations of commercial products. They use empirical and statistical techniques to understand how products are conceived. Often, then, advertising serves to reposition the products in customers’ minds. For example, a car that is viewed as in the category of “economy cars” may be moved, through advertising, to a more “upscale car” category.

Summary

1. How are representations of words and symbols organized in the mind? The fundamental unit of symbolic knowledge is the concept. Concepts may be organized into categories, which may include other categories. They may be organized into schemas, which may include other schemas. They also may vary in application and in abstractness.

   Finally, they may include information about relationships between concepts, attributes, contexts, and general knowledge and information about causal relationships. There are different general theories of categorization. They include feature-based definitional categories, prototype-based categories, and exemplar-based approaches. One of the forms for schemas is the script. An alternative model for knowledge organization is a semantic network, involving a web of labeled relations between conceptual nodes. An early network model, based on the notion of cognitive economy, was strictly hierarchical. But subsequent ones have tended to emphasize the frequency with which particular associations are used.

2. How do we represent other forms of knowledge in the mind? Many cognitive psychologists have developed models for procedural knowledge. These are based on computer simulations of such representations. An example of such a model is the production system.

3. How does declarative knowledge interact with procedural knowledge? An important model in cognitive psychology is ACT, as well as its updated revision, ACT-R. It represents both procedural knowledge in the form of production systems and declarative knowledge in the form of a semantic network. In each of these models, the metaphor for understanding both knowledge representation and information processing is based on the way in which a computer processes information. For example, these models underscore the serial processing of information.

Research on how the human brain processes information has shown that brains, unlike computers, use parallel processing of information. In addition, it appears that much of information processing is not localized only to particular areas of the brain. Instead it is distributed across
various regions of the brain all at once. At a microscopic level of analysis, the neurons within the brain may be inactive, or they may be excited or inhibited by the actions of other neurons with which they share a synapse. Finally, studies of how the brain processes information have shown that some stimuli seem to prime a response to subsequent stimuli so that it becomes easier to process the subsequent stimuli.

A model for human knowledge representation and information processing based on what we know about the brain is the parallel distributed processing (PDP) model. It is also called a connectionist model. In such models, it is held that neuron-like units may be excited or inhibited by the actions of other units, or they may be inactive. Further, knowledge is represented in terms of patterns of excitation or inhibition strengths, rather than in particular units. Most PDP models also explain the priming effect by suggesting the mechanism of spreading activation.

Many cognitive psychologists believe that the mind is at least partly modular. It has different activity centers that operate fairly independently of each other. However, other cognitive psychologists believe that human cognition is governed by many fundamental operations. According to this view, specific cognitive functions are merely variations on a theme. In all likelihood, cognition involves some modular, domain-specific processes and some fundamental, domain-general processes.

Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

1. Define declarative knowledge and procedural knowledge, and give examples of each.
2. What is a script that you use in your daily life? How might you make it work better for you?
3. Describe some of the attributes of schemas, and compare and contrast two of the schema models mentioned in this chapter.
4. In your opinion, why have many of the models for knowledge representation come from people with a strong interest in artificial intelligence?
5. What are some advantages and disadvantages of hierarchical models of knowledge representation?
6. How would you design an experiment to test whether a particular cognitive task was better explained in terms of modular components, or in terms of some fundamental underlying domain-general processes?
7. What are some practical examples of the forms of nondeclarative knowledge in Squire’s model? (For ideas on conditioning, see Chapter 1; for ideas on habituation or on priming, see Chapter 4.)
8. How might you use semantic priming to enhance the likelihood that a person will think of something you would like the person to think of (e.g., your birthday, a restaurant to visit, or a movie to view)?

Key Terms

ACT, p. 344
ACT-R, p. 345
artifact categories, p. 323
basic level, p. 323
category, p. 322
characteristic features, p. 326
concept, p. 322
connectionist models, p. 349
converging operations, p. 322
core, p. 327
defining features, p. 324
exemplars, p. 327
jargon, p. 338
modular, p. 354
natural categories, p. 323
networks, p. 323
nodes, p. 332
parallel distributed processing (PDP) models, p. 349
parallel processing, p. 348
production, p. 341
production system, p. 341
prototype, p. 326
prototype theory, p. 325
schemas, p. 323
script, p. 337
serial processing, p. 341
spreading activation, p. 345
theory-based view of meaning, p. 328
Media Resources

Visit the companion website—www.cengagebrain.com—for quizzes, research articles, chapter outlines, and more.

CogLab

Explore CogLab by going to http://coglab.wadsworth.com. To learn more, examine the following experiments:
- Prototypes
- Absolute Identification
- Implicit Learning
CHAPTER 9

Language

CHAPTER OUTLINE

What Is Language?
  Properties of Language
  The Basic Components of Words
  The Basic Components of Sentences
  Understanding the Meaning of Words, Sentences, and Larger Text Units

Language Comprehension
  Understanding Words
    The View of Speech Perception as Ordinary
    The View of Speech Perception as Special
  Understanding Meaning: Semantics
  Understanding Sentences: Syntax
    Syntactical Priming
    Speech Errors
    Analyzing Sentences: Phrase-Structure Grammar
    A New Approach to Syntax: Transformational Grammar
    Relationships between Syntactical and Lexical Structures

Reading
  When Reading Is a Problem—Dyslexia
  Perceptual Issues in Reading
  Lexical Processes in Reading

  Fixations and Reading Speed
  Lexical Access
  Intelligence and Lexical-Access Speed

Understanding Conversations and Essays: Discourse
  Comprehending Known Words: Retrieving Word Meaning from Memory
  Comprehending Unknown Words: Deriving Word Meanings from Context
  Comprehending Ideas: Propositional Representations
  Comprehending Text Based on Context and Point of View
  Representing the Text in Mental Models

Key Themes
Summary
Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions
Key Terms
Media Resources
Here are some questions we will explore in this chapter:

1. What properties characterize language?
2. What are some of the processes involved in language?
3. How do perceptual processes interact with the cognitive processes of reading?
4. How does discourse help us understand individual words?

I stood still, my whole attention fixed upon the motions of her fingers. Suddenly, I felt a misty consciousness as of something forgotten—a thrill of returning thought; and somehow the mystery of language was revealed to me.

I knew then that “w-a-t-e-r” meant the wonderful cool something that was flowing over my hand. That living word awakened my soul, gave it light, joy, set it free! ... Everything had a name, and each name gave birth to a new thought. As we returned to the house every object which I touched seemed to quiver with life ... words that day ... words that were to make the world blossom for me.

—Helen Keller, Story of My Life

Helen Keller became both blind and deaf at 19 months of age after a severe childhood illness. She was first awakened to a sentient, thought-filled, comprehensible world through her teacher, Anne Sullivan. The miracle worker held one of Helen’s hands under a spigot from which a stream of water gushed over Helen’s hand. All the while she spelled with a manual alphabet into Helen’s other hand the mind-awakening word “w-a-t-e-r.”

Language is the use of an organized means of combining words in order to communicate with those around us. It also makes it possible to think about things and processes we currently cannot see, hear, feel, touch, or smell. These things include ideas that may not have any tangible form. As Helen Keller demonstrated, the words we use may be written, spoken, or otherwise signed (e.g., via American Sign

BELIEVE IT OR NOT

Do the Chinese think about numbers differently than Americans?

How languages name numbers and how they are pronounced differs widely. There are even significant differences between English and French. For example, in English, the number 80 is called “eighty,” and in French it is “quatre-vingt” (literally, “four twenty,” or $4 \times 20$).

Do those differences in language influence how our brain processes numbers and mathematics? This is what a Chinese research team set out to explore. Native Chinese speakers and native American speakers worked on numerical tasks while being monitored by an fMRI machine. The results found that for simple addition tasks, different areas of the brain were activated for Chinese and English speakers: English speakers used processes that involved the left perisylvian cortices, whereas Chinese speakers used a visuopremotor network for the addition tasks. The results suggest that language influences the way non-language-related content is processed. It is also possible that the Chinese language’s brevity for numbers (e.g., number words in Chinese generally contain fewer syllables than in English) increases working memory capacity, which in turn can result in more efficient processing (Tang et al., 2006).

In this chapter we will explore what language is, how we process language, and how it can influence our understanding of facts and the environment.
Language [ASL]). Even so, not all communication—exchange of thoughts and feelings—is through language. Communication encompasses other aspects—nonverbal communication, such as gestures or facial expressions, can be used to embellish or to indicate. Glances may serve many purposes. For example, sometimes they are deadly, other times, seductive. Communication can also include touches, such as handshakes, hits, and hugs. These are only a few of the means by which we can communicate.

**Psycholinguistics** is the psychology of our language as it interacts with the human mind. It considers both production and comprehension of language (Gernsbacher & Kaschak, 2003a, 2003b; Wheeldon, Meyer, & Smith, 2003). Four areas of study have contributed greatly to an understanding of psycholinguistics:

- **linguistics**, the study of language structure and change;
- **neurolinguistics**, the study of the relationships among the brain, cognition, and language;
- **sociolinguistics**, the study of the relationship between social behavior and language (Carroll, 1986); and
- **computational linguistics** and **psycholinguistics**, the study of language via computational methods (Coleman, 2003; Gasser, 2003; Lewis, 2003).

This chapter first briefly describes some general properties of language. The next sections discuss the processes of language. These processes include how we understand the meanings of particular words, and how we structure words into meaningful sentences. After our exploration of general language processes we turn to the question of how we read. And last but not least, we discuss how comprehension of larger language and text units, like essays or conversation, works. Chapter 10 describes the broader context within which we use language. This context includes the psychological and social contexts of language.

**What Is Language?**

There are almost 7,000 languages spoken in the world today (Lewis, 2009). New Guinea is the country with the most languages in the world—it has more than 850 indigenous languages, which means that on average, each language has just about 7,000 speakers. Surprisingly, there are still languages today that have not even been “discovered” and named by scientists. A linguist who traveled to southwestern China’s Yunnan province in 2006 discovered 18 languages, spoken by members of the Phula ethnic group, that never before had been defined and named (Erard, 2009). It is to be expected that there are many more languages that linguists do not yet know about. Part of the reason for the Phula languages’ not having been discovered earlier is that speakers of the language live in mountainous areas that are hard to access. What exactly constitutes a language, and are there some things that all languages have in common?

**Properties of Language**

Languages can be strikingly different, but they all have some commonalities (Brown, 1965; Clark & Clark, 1977; Glucksberg & Danks, 1975). No matter what language you speak, language is:

1. **communicative**: Language permits us to communicate with one or more people who share our language.
2. arbitrarily symbolic: Language creates an arbitrary relationship between a symbol and what it represents: an idea, a thing, a process, a relationship, or a description.

3. regularly structured: Language has a structure; only particularly patterned arrangements of symbols have meaning, and different arrangements yield different meanings.

4. structured at multiple levels: The structure of language can be analyzed at more than one level (e.g., in sounds, meaning units, words, and phrases).

5. generative, productive: Within the limits of a linguistic structure, language users can produce novel utterances. The possibilities for creating new utterances are virtually limitless.

6. dynamic: Languages constantly evolve.

Let’s examine the six properties of language in more detail. The communicative property of language may be the most obvious feature, but it is also the most remarkable one. As an example, you can write what you are thinking and feeling so that others may read and understand your thoughts and feelings. Yet, as you may know from your own experience, there are occasional flaws in the communicative property of language. Despite the frustrations of miscommunications, however, for one person to be able to use language to communicate to another is impressive.

What may be more surprising is the second property of language. We communicate through our shared system of arbitrary symbolic reference to things, ideas, processes, relationships, and descriptions (Steedman, 2003). Words are symbols that were chosen arbitrarily to represent something else, such as a “tree,” “swim,” or “brilliant.” The thing or concept in the real world that a word refers to is called referent. By consensual agreement, these combinations of letters or sounds may be meaningful to us. But the particular symbols themselves do not lead to the meaning of the word, which is why different languages use very different sounds to refer to the same thing (e.g., Baum, árbol, tree).

Symbols are convenient because we can use them to refer to things, ideas, processes, relationships, and descriptions that are not currently present, such as the Amazon River. We even can use symbols to refer to things that never have existed, such as dragons or elves. And we can use symbols to refer to things that exist in a form that is not physically tangible, such as calculus, truth, or justice. Without arbitrary symbolic reference, we would be limited to symbols that somehow resembled the things they are symbolizing (e.g., we would need a treelike symbol to represent a tree).

Two principles underlying word meanings are the principle of conventionality and the principle of contrast (Clark, 1993, 1995; Diesendruck, 2005). The principle of conventionality simply states that meanings of words are determined by conventions—they have a meaning upon which people agree. According to the principle of contrast, different words have different meanings. Thus, when you have two different words, they represent two things that are at least slightly different. Otherwise, what would be the point of having two different words for the same thing?

The third property is the regular structure of language: Particular patterns of sounds and of letters form meaningful words. Random sounds and letters, however, usually do not. Furthermore, particular patterns of words form meaningful sentences, paragraphs, and discourse. Most others make no sense. Later in this chapter, we will look more closely at the structure of language.
The fourth property is that language is structured at multiple levels. Any meaningful utterance can be analyzed at more than one level. Let’s see at what levels psycholinguists study language. They look at:

- sounds, such as p and t;
- words, such as “pat,” “tap,” “pot,” “top,” “pit,” and “tip;”
- sentences, such as “Pat said to tap the top of the pot, then tip it into the pit;”

and

- larger units of language, such as this paragraph or even this book.

A fifth property of language is productivity (sometimes termed generativity). Productivity refers here to our vast ability to produce language creatively. However, our use of language does have limitations. We have to conform to a particular structure and use a shared system of arbitrary symbols. We can use language to produce an infinite number of unique sentences and other meaningful combinations of words. Although the number of sounds (e.g., s as in “hiss”) used in a language may be

Signs that resemble the object they represent (i.e., their referent) are called icons. These pictographs are icons that were used in ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics. In contrast, most language involves the manipulation of symbols, which bear only an arbitrary relation to their referents.
finite, the various sounds can be combined endlessly to form new words and new sentences. Among them are many novel utterances—linguistic expressions that are brand new and have never been spoken before by anyone. Thus, language is inherently creative. None of us possibly could have heard previously all the sentences we are capable of producing and that we actually produce in the course of our everyday lives. Any language appears to have the potential to express any idea in it that can be expressed in any other language. However, the ease, clarity, and succinctness of expression of a particular idea may vary greatly from one language to the next. Thus, the creative potential of different languages appears to be roughly the same.

Finally, the productive aspect of language quite naturally leads to the dynamic, evolutionary nature of language. Individual language users coin words and phrases and modify language usage. The wider group of language users either accepts or rejects the modifications. Each year, recently coined words are added to the dictionary, signifying the extensive acceptance of these new words. For example, you may be familiar with the words *netiquette* (a blend of “network” and “etiquette,” referring to appropriate behavior on-line), *emoticon* (a blend of “emotion” and “icon,” referring to punctuation symbols used in emails to indicate emotions), and *webinar* (referring to a seminar held on-line). All of these words have been created just in recent years. Can you think of other newly minted words that did not exist a decade ago?

Similarly, words that are no longer used are removed from the dictionary, further contributing to the evolution of language. To imagine that language would never change is almost as incomprehensible as to imagine that people and environments would never change. For example, the modern English we speak now evolved from Middle English, and Middle English evolved from Old English.

To give you an example of how English has evolved, here is a sample from the epic poem *Beowulf*, written in Old English around 900 A.D. On the right, you can see a translation in modern English.

Hwæt! We Gardena in geardagum,  
Lo, praise of the prowess of people-kings  
þeodcyninga, þrym gefrunon,  
of spear-armed Danes, in days long sped,  
hu ða æþelingas ellen fremedon.  
we have heard, and what honor the  
athelings won!

And here is the beginning of the *Canterbury Tales* by Geoffrey Chaucer, written in Middle English in the 14th century:

Whan that aprill with his shoures soote  
When April with his showers sweet  
The droghte of march hath perced to  
with fruit  
the roote,  
The drought of March has pierced unto  
And bathed every veyne in swich  
the root  
llicour  
And bathed each vein with liquor that  
has power

Although we can delineate various properties of language, it is important always to keep in mind the main purpose of language: to construct a mental representation of a situation that enables us to understand the situation and communicate about it (Budwig, 1995; Radvansky & Dijkstra, 2007; Zwaan & Radvansky, 1998).

In other words, ultimately, language is primarily about use, not just about one set of properties or another. For example, it provides the basis for linguistic encoding
in memory. You are able to remember things better because you can use language to help you recall or recognize them.

To conclude, many differences exist among languages. Nevertheless, there are some common properties. Among them are communication, arbitrary symbolic reference, regularity of structure, multiplicity of structure, productivity, and change. Next, we consider, in more detail how language is used. Then we observe some universal aspects of how we humans acquire our primary language.

The Basic Components of Words

Language can be broken down into many smaller units. It is much like the analysis of molecules into basic elements by chemists. The smallest unit of speech sound is the phone, which is simply a single vocal sound. A given phone may or may not be part of a particular language (Minagawa-Kawai at al., 2007; Munhall, 2003; Roca, 2003b). A click of your tongue, a pop of your cheek, or a gurgling sound are all phones. These sounds, however, are not used to form distinctive words in North American English. A phoneme is the smallest unit of speech sound that can be used to distinguish one utterance in a given language from another. In English, phonemes are made up of vowel or consonant sounds, like a, i, s, and f. For example, we can distinguish among “sit,” “sat,” “fat,” and “fit,” so the /s/ sound, the /f/ sound, the /i/ sound, and the /Æ/ sound are all phonemes in English (as is the /t/ sound). These sounds are produced by alternating sequences of opening and closing the vocal tract. Different languages use different numbers and combinations of phonemes. North American English has about 40 phonemes, as shown in Table 9.1. Hawaiian has about 13 phonemes. Some African dialects have up to 60.

In English, the difference between the /p/ and the /b/ sound is an important distinction. These sounds function as phonemes in English because they constitute the difference between different words. For example, English speakers distinguish between “they bit the buns from the bin” and “they pit the puns from the pin” (a well-structured but meaningless sentence). The study of the particular phonemes of a language is called phonemics.

Phonetics is the study of how to produce or combine speech sounds or to represent them with written symbols (Roca, 2003a). Whereas phonemes are relevant to a given language, phones, as studied in phonetics, are differentiable sounds irrespective of language. Linguists may travel to remote villages to observe, record, and analyze different languages. The study of phonetic inventories of diverse languages is one of the ways linguists gain insight into the nature of language (Hoff & Shatz, 2007; Ladefoged & Maddieson, 1996). In many cases, however, it is hard to explore a given language because many languages are going extinct: It is estimated that about two languages die each month (Crystal, 2002). Language death occurs for a variety of reasons, including members leaving tribal areas in favor of more urban areas, genocide, globalization, and the introduction of a new language to an area (Grimes, 2010; Mufwene, 2004). Language death is occurring at such an alarming rate that some estimates suggest that 90% of the world's languages will be extinguished within the next generation (Abrams & Strogatz, 2003).

At the next level of the hierarchy after the phoneme is the morpheme—the smallest unit of meaning within a particular language. The word recharge contains two morphemes, “re-” and “charge,” where “re” indicates a repeated action. The word “cable” consists of only one morpheme although it is made up of two syllables; but the syllables “ca” and “ble” do not have any inherent meaning.
English courses may have introduced you to two forms of morphemes—root words and affixes. Root words are the portions of words that contain the majority of meaning. These roots cannot be broken down into smaller meaningful units. They are the items that have entries in the dictionary (Motter et al., 2002). Examples of roots are the words “fix” and “active.” We add the second form of morphemes, affixes, to these root words. Affixes include prefixes, which precede the root word, and suffixes, which follow the root word. Look at the word affixes. It contains three morphemes: af-, -fix, -es. Af- is a prefix variant of the prefix ad-, meaning “toward,” “to,” or “near.” In contrast, -fix is the root word. Finally, -es is a suffix that indicates the plural of a noun. Similarly, the word proactive contains the prefix pro-, and the root word active.

Linguists analyze the structure of morphemes and of words in general in a way that goes beyond the analysis of roots and affixes. Content morphemes are the words that convey the bulk of the meaning of a language. Function morphemes add detail and nuance to the meaning of the content morphemes or help the content morphemes fit the grammatical context. Examples are the suffix -ist, the prefix de-, the conjunction and, or the article the. For example, most American kindergartners know to add special suffixes to indicate the following:

- **Verb tense**: You study often. You studied yesterday. You are studying now.
- **Verb and noun number**: The professor assigns homework. The teaching assistants assign homework.
- **Noun possession**: The student’s textbook is fascinating.

### Table 9.1 North American English Phonetic Symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonants</th>
<th>Vowels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>spit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[tʰ]</td>
<td>tick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[t]</td>
<td>stuck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[kʰ]</td>
<td>keep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[dʒ]</td>
<td>judge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[b]</td>
<td>bib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[D]</td>
<td>butter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[g]</td>
<td>get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[f]</td>
<td>fit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjective comparison: The wiser of the two professors taught the wisest of the three students.

The lexicon is the entire set of morphemes in a given language or in a given person’s linguistic repertoire. The average adult speaker of English has a lexicon of about 80,000 morphemes (Miller & Gildea, 1987). Children in grade 1 in the United States have approximately 10,000 words in their vocabularies. By grade 3, they have about 20,000. By grade 5, they have reached about 40,000, or half of their eventual adult level of attainment (Anglin, 1993). By combining morphemes, most adult English speakers have a vocabulary of hundreds of thousands of words. For example, by attaching just a few morphemes to the root content morpheme study, we have student, studious, studied, studying, and studies. Vocabulary is built up slowly. It develops through many diverse exposures to words and clues as to their meanings (Akhtar & Montague, 1999; Hoff & Naigles, 1999; Woodward & Markman, 1998). One of the ways in which English has expanded to embrace an increasing vocabulary is by combining existing morphemes in novel ways. Some suggest that a part of William Shakespeare’s genius lay in his enjoying the creation of new words by combining existing morphemes. He is alleged to have coined more than 1,700 words—8.5% of his written vocabulary—and countless expressions—including the word countless itself, but also other words like inauspicious, pander, and dauntless (Lederer, 1991).

The Basic Components of Sentences

Although we put together sentences so seemingly easy when we speak, a substantial framework of rules hides behind our creation of these sentences. Syntax refers to the way in which we put words together to form sentences. It plays a major role in our understanding of language. A sentence comprises at least two parts. The first is a noun phrase, which contains at least one noun (often the subject of the sentence) and includes all the relevant descriptors of the noun (like “big” or “fast”). The second is a verb phrase (predicate), which contains at least one verb and whatever the verb acts on, if anything. Linguists consider the study of syntax to be fundamental to understanding the structure of language. The syntactical structure of language specifically is addressed later in this chapter.

**INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY**

**Syntax**

Identify which of the following are noun phrases:

(1) the round, red ball on the corner; (2) and the; (3) round and red; (4) the ball; (5) water; (6) runs quickly. (*Hint: Noun phrases [NP] can be the subject or object of a sentence, for example “[NP] bounces [NP].”*)

Identify which of the following are verb phrases: (1) the boy with the ball; (2) and the bouncing ball; (3) rolled; (4) ran across the room; (5) gave her the ball; (6) runs quickly. (*Hint: Verb phrases [VP] contain verbs, as well as anything on which the verb acts [but not the subject of the action]. For example, “The psychology student [VP].”*)

Answers:

Noun phrases: (1) (2) (3) (5) (6)

Verb phrases: (4) (5) (6) (7)
Understanding the Meaning of Words, Sentences, and Larger Text Units

When we read and speak, it is important not only to comprehend words and sentences but also to figure out the meaning of whole conversations or larger written pieces. **Semantics** is the study of meaning in a language. A semanticist would be concerned with how words and sentences express meaning. Discourse encompasses language use at the level beyond the sentence, such as in conversation, paragraphs, stories, chapters, and entire works of literature. (You will learn more about discourse later in this chapter.) Table 9.2 summarizes the various aspects of language. The next section discusses how we understand language through speech perception and further analysis.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What are some important properties of language?
2. What is the difference between phonemes and morphemes?
3. What is semantics?

**Language Comprehension**

Many processes are involved when we try to understand what somebody says. First of all, we need to perceive and recognize the words that are being said. Then we need
to assign meaning to those words. In addition, we have to make sense of sentences we hear. These processes will be discussed in the next sections.

**Understanding Words**

Have you ever needed to communicate with someone over the phone, but the speech you heard was garbled because of faulty cell phone reception? If so, you will agree that speech perception is fundamental to language use in our everyday lives. Understanding speech is crucial to human communication. In this section, we investigate how we perceive speech. We also reflect on the question of whether speech is somehow special among all the various sounds we can perceive.

We are able to perceive speech with amazing rapidity. On the one hand, we can perceive as many as fifty phonemes per second in a language in which we are fluent (Foulke & Sticht, 1969). When confronted with non-speech sounds, on the other hand, we can perceive less than one phone per second (Warren et al., 1969). This limitation explains why foreign languages are difficult to understand (when we hear them), and sound like they are spoken quickly. The sounds of their letters and letter combinations are different from the sounds corresponding to the same letters and letter combinations in our native language. For example, the author’s Spanish sounds “American” because he tends to reinterpret Spanish sounds in terms of the American English phonetic system, rather than the Spanish one.

Another problem we face when we try to understand what somebody else is saying is that no word sounds exactly the same when it is spoken across the various speakers who say the word. There is a lot of variability across people in the pronunciation of words. People speak faster or slower, or they may pronounce sounds differently depending on where they come from. For example, one of the author’s elementary school teachers pronounced “get” in a way that sounded like “git.” Speech sounds are very variable, but even if a word sounds different every time we hear it, we still need to be able to figure out what word it is. What makes it even more complicated is that often we pronounce more than one sound at the same time. This is called coarticulation. One or more phonemes begin while other phonemes still are being produced. For example, say the words “palace” and “pool.” They both begin with a p sound. But can you notice a difference in the shape of your lips when you say the p of “pool” as compared to the p of “palace”? You are already preparing for the following vowel as you pronounce the p sound, and this impacts the sound you produce. Not only do phonemes within a word overlap, but the boundaries between words in continuous speech also tend to overlap.

The process of trying to separate the continuous sound stream into distinct words is called speech segmentation. Figure 9.1 shows a spectrogram that records physical sound patterns. As you can see, there is often no pause between words, while at the same time, there can be breaks within words. That is to say, the recording of speech sound waves poorly resembles what we hear.

This overlapping of speech sounds may seem to create additional problems for perceiving speech, but coarticulation is viewed as necessary for the effective transmission of speech information (Liberman et al., 1967). Thus, speech perception is viewed as different from other perceptual abilities because of both the linguistic nature of the information and the particular way in which information must be encoded for effective transmission.
Coarticulation can be observed in nonverbal language as well. A number of studies have been completed that examine speech production in skilled signers (i.e., people who communicate in sign language). People who are skilled signers can convey many paragraphs worth of information in less than a minute (Lupton, 1998). A great deal of coarticulation occurs in skilled use of American Sign Language (ASL) (Grosvald & Corina, 2008; Jerde, Soechting, & Flanders, 2003). This coarticulation affects a number of aspects of the sign, both as it begins and as it leads into another sign. The affected aspects include hand shape, movement, and position (Yang & Sarkar, 2006). Coarticulation occurs more frequently with more informal forms of ASL (Emmorey, 1994). People who are just learning sign language are more likely to use the more formal form. Later, as people become more skillful, they typically begin to use the more informal forms. Therefore, as skill and fluency increase, so does the incidence of coarticulation. Coarticulation is a result of the anticipation of the next sign, much in the same way that verbal coarticulation is based on the anticipation of the next word. This coarticulation does not, however, typically impair understanding. These observations support the unique nature of language perception, regardless of whether its format is spoken or signed.

So, how do we perceive speech with such ease? There are many alternative theories of speech perception to explain our facility. These theories differ mainly as to whether speech perception is viewed as special, or ordinary, with respect to other types of auditory perception.

**The View of Speech Perception as Ordinary**

One approach to speech perception suggests that when we perceive speech, we use the same processes as when we perceive other sounds like the crowing of a rooster. These kinds of theories emphasize either template-matching or feature-detection processes. They suggest that there are different stages of neural processing: In one stage, speech sounds are analyzed into their components. In another stage, these components are analyzed for patterns and matched to a prototype or template (Kuhl,
One theory of this kind is the phonetic refinement theory (Pisoni et al., 1985; see, for example, Hanson et al., 2010). It says that we start with an analysis of auditory sensations and shift to higher-level processing. We identify words on the basis of successively paring down the possibilities for matches between each of the phonemes and the words we already know from memory. In this theory, the initial sound that establishes the set of possible words we have heard need not be the first phoneme alone. You may have observed this phenomenon yourself on a conscious level. Have you ever been watching a movie or listening to a lecture when you heard only garbled sound? It takes you a few moments to figure out what the speaker must have said. To decide what you heard, you may have gone through a conscious process of phonetic refinement.

A similar theoretical idea is embodied by the TRACE model (McClelland & Elman, 1986; Mirman et al., 2008). According to this model, speech perception begins with three levels of feature detection: the level of acoustic features, the level of phonemes, and the level of words. According to this theory, speech perception is highly interactive. In Chapter 8, you were introduced to network theories, and the TRACE model works in a similar fashion of spreading activation. Phonemic information changes activation patterns in the network while information about words or their meaning can influence the analysis as well by prediction of which words are likely to appear next. Therefore, lower levels affect higher levels and vice versa.

One attribute these theories have in common is that they all require decision-making processes above and beyond feature detection or template matching. Thus, the speech we perceive may differ from the speech sounds that actually reach our ears. The reason is that cognitive and contextual factors influence our perception of the sensed signal. For example, the phonemic-restoration effect involves integrating what we know with what we hear when we perceive speech (Kashino, 2006; Samuel, 1981; Warren, 1970; Warren & Warren, 1970).

Suppose that you were in an experiment. You are listening to a sentence having the following pattern: “It was found that the *eel was on the _____.” For the final word, one of the following words is inserted: axle, shoe, table, or orange. In addition, the speaker inserts a cough instead of the initial sound where the asterisk appeared in “*eel.” Virtually all participants are unaware that a consonant has been deleted. The sound they recall having heard differs according to the context. The participants recall hearing “the wheel was on the axle,” “the heel was on the shoe,” “the meal was on the table,” or “the peel was on the orange.” In essence, they restore the missing phoneme that best suits the context of the sentence.

How well do we understand words that we hear without any context? Researchers recorded speech acts by different individuals and then presented individual words without any context to their participants. Depending on whether the speaker spoke at a slow, normal, or fast speed, the isolated words were only correctly identified 68% (slow speech) to 41% of the time (fast speech; Miller & Isard, 1963).

Phonemic restoration is similar to the visual phenomenon of closure, which is based on incomplete visual information. Indeed, one main approach to auditory perception attempts to extend to various acoustic events, including speech, the Gestalt principles of visual perception (Bregman, 1990; Shahin et al., 2009). These principles include, for example, symmetry, proximity, and similarity. Thus, theories that consider speech perception as ordinary use general perceptual principles of feature-detection and Gestalt psychology. They thereby attempt to explain how listeners understand speech. Other theorists, however, view speech perception as special.
The View of Speech Perception as Special
Some researchers suggest that speech-perception processes differ from the processes we use when we hear other sounds. We will explore this view further in the next sections by reviewing research on categorical perception and the motor theory of speech perception.

Categorical Perception
One phenomenon in speech perception that led to the notion of specialization was the finding of categorical perception—discontinuous categories of speech sounds. That is, although the speech sounds we actually hear comprise a continuum of variation in sound waves, we experience speech sounds categorically. This phenomenon can be seen in the perception of the consonant–vowel combinations ba, da, and ga. A speech signal would look different for each of these syllables. Some patterns in the speech signal lead to the perception of ba. Others lead to the perception of da. And still others lead to perception of ga.

Additionally, the sound patterns for each syllable may differ as a result of other factors like pitch. The ba that you said yesterday differs from the ba you say today. But it is not perceived as different: It is perceived as belonging to the same category as the ba you said a few days ago or will say tomorrow. However, a non-speech sound such as a tone would be perceived as different. Here, continuous differences in pitch (how high or low the tone is) are heard as continuous and distinct.

In a classic study, researchers used a speech synthesizer to mimic this natural variation in syllable acoustic patterns. By this means, they also were able to control the acoustic difference between the syllables (Liberman et al., 1957). They created a series of consonant–vowel sounds that changed in equal increments from ba to da to ga. People who listened to the synthesized syllables, however, heard a sudden switch. It was from the sound category of ba to the sound category of da (and likewise from the category of da to that of ga). Discrimination of differences within one sound category was relatively poor, whereas discrimination between categories (e.g., between ba and da) was enhanced. Although all the sounds differed from each other acoustically (and their acoustic distance was equal), people did not really perceive differences between the sounds that represented the same category. They only heard differences when the sounds represented different categories. That is, discrimination of two neighboring b as was poor, whereas discrimination of ba from its neighboring da was preserved. Normal perceptual processing should discriminate equally between all equally spaced pairs of the different sounds along the continuum, however. The researchers thus concluded that speech is perceived via specialized processes.

A number of studies have further examined categorical perception in people with reading disabilities. In children with learning disabilities, the perceptual ability to discriminate between categories is impaired. Conversely, the perceptual ability to discriminate within categories is enhanced in these same children (Breier et al., 2005). That is, children at risk of reading disabilities, compared with children who are not at risk, use less phonological information even though they perceive more subtle acoustic (sound) differences when performing a categorical-perception task (Breier et al., 2004). These and other findings led the researchers to investigate the notion that speech perception relies on special processes.

The Motor Theory of Speech Perception
The findings described above also led to the early, but still influential, motor theory of speech perception (Galantucci, Fowler, & Turvey, 2006; Liberman et al., 1967; Liberman & Mattingly, 1985). According to the motor theory, we use the movements of the speaker’s vocal tract to
perceive what he says. Observing that a speaker rounds his lips or presses his lips together provides the listener with phonetic information. Thus, the listener uses specialized processes involved in producing speech to perceive speech. In fact, there is substantial overlap between the parts of the cortex that are involved in speech production and speech perception.

So, how can the motor theory of speech perception be tested? In a recent study, researchers had participants listen to continuous acoustic signals. As we know from the section on categorical perception, people categorize continuous sounds as syllables like “ga” and “ba”. With repetitive transcranial magnetic stimulation (rTMS), participants’ lip representation in the primary motor cortex was then interrupted. With the motor cortex’s lip representation impaired, participants had a much harder time distinguishing between speech sounds that involved the lips or tip of the tongue in their articulation (e.g., “ba” and “da”). However, differentiation between sounds that do not involve lip articulation (e.g., “ka” and “ga”) was not impaired. These findings support the notion that motor parts of the cortex are not only involved in the production of speech but also in speech perception (Moettoenen & Watkins, 2009).

Since the early work of Liberman and colleagues, the phenomenon of categorical perception has been extended to the perception of other kinds of stimuli, such as color and facial emotion. This extension weakens the claim that speech perception is special (Galantucci, Fowler, & Turvey, 2006; Jusczyk, 1997). However, supporters of the speech-is-special position still maintain that other forms of evidence indicate that speech is perceived via specialized processes.

One such distinctive aspect of human speech perception can be seen in the so-called McGurk effect (McGurk & MacDonald, 1976). This effect involves the synchrony of visual and auditory perceptions: When watching a movie, an auditory syllable is perceived differently depending on whether you see the speaker make the sound that matches the pronunciation of the syllable or make another sound that does not match the syllable spoken. Imagine yourself watching a movie. As long as the soundtrack corresponds to the speakers’ lip movements, you encounter no problems. However, suppose that the soundtrack indicates one thing, such as da. At the same time, the actor’s lips clearly make the movements for another sound, such as ba. You are likely to hear a compromise sound, such as tha. It is neither what was said nor what was seen. You somehow synthesize the auditory and visual information. You thereby come up with a result that is unlike either. For this reason, poorly...
dubbed movies can be confusing. You are vaguely aware that the lips are saying one thing, and you are hearing something else entirely.

In one set of studies, Nicholls, Searle, and Bradshaw (2004) studied the McGurk effect with respect to lip reading. The experimenters covered half of the speaker’s mouth, while either matching or mismatching auditory and visual information. The experimenters found that, when the left side of the mouth was covered, there was little change in the occurrence of the McGurk effect. However, when the right side of the mouth was covered, the occurrence of the McGurk effect dropped dramatically. Then the researchers used an inverted video of the left side of the mouth, such that it appeared to be the right side of the mouth, and saw the McGurk effect rebound (Nicholls, Searle, & Bradshaw, 2004). These findings suggest that the right side, or what is perceived as the right side of the mouth, is attended to more in lip reading. Hence, lack of correspondence between what the right side of the mouth says and what is heard are the more likely to lead to the McGurk effect.

The McGurk effect seems to have a physiological basis in the superior temporal sulcus (STS). Researchers presented their participants with stimuli like the ones described above that evoke the McGurk effect. However, when they used transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS) to interrupt activity of the STS in their participants, the likelihood of the McGurk effect was significantly reduced (Beauchamp et al., 2010).

In normal conversation, we use lip reading to augment our perception of speech. It is particularly important in situations in which background noise may make speech perception more difficult. The motor theory accounts for this integration quite easily because articulatory information includes visual and auditory information. However, believers in other theories interpret these findings as support for more general perceptual processes. They believe these processes naturally integrate information across sensory modalities (Galantucci et al., 2006; Massaro, 1987; Massaro & Cohen, 1990).

Is a synthesis of these opposing views possible? Perhaps one reason for the complexity of this issue lies in the nature of speech perception itself. It involves both linguistic and perceptual attributes. From a purely perceptual perspective, speech is just a relatively complex signal that is not treated qualitatively differently from other signals. From a psycholinguistic perspective, speech is special because it lies within the domain of language, a special human ability. Indeed, cognitive psychology textbooks differ in terms of where speech perception is discussed. Sometimes it is discussed in the context of language, other times in the context of perception. Thus, the diversity of views on the nature of speech perception can be seen as reflecting the differences in how researchers treat speech. They view it either as regular acoustic signals or as more special phonetic messages (Remez, 1994).

Understanding Meaning: Semantics

Language is very difficult to put into words.
—Voltaire

The opening of this chapter quoted Helen Keller’s description of her first awareness that words had meanings. You probably do not remember the moment that words first came alive to you, but your parents surely do. In fact, one of the greatest joys of being a parent is watching your children’s amazing discovery that words have meanings. In semantics, denotation is the strict dictionary definition of a word.
**Connotation** is a word’s emotional overtones, presuppositions, and other non-explicit meanings. Taken together, denotation and connotation form the meaning of a word. Because connotations may vary between people, there can be variation in the meaning formed. Imagine the word *snake*. For many people, the connotation of *snake* is negative or dangerous. Others, say a biologist specializing in snakes (called a herpetologist), would have a very different and probably much more positive connotation for the word *snake*.

How do we understand word meanings in the first place? Recall from previous chapters that we encode meanings into memory through concepts. These include ideas, to which we may attach various characteristics and with which we may connect various other ideas, such as through propositions (Rey, 2003). They also include images and perhaps motor patterns for implementing particular procedures. Here, we are concerned only with concepts, particularly in terms of words as arbitrary symbols for concepts.

Actually, when we think of words as representing concepts, words are economical ways in which to manipulate related information. For example, when you think about the single word *desk*, you also may conjure all these things:

- all the instances of desks in existence anywhere;
- instances of desks that exist only in your imagination;
- all the characteristics of desks;
- all the things you might do with desks; and
- all the other concepts you might link to desks (e.g., things you put on or in desks or places where you might find desks).

Having a word for something helps us to add new information to our existing information about that concept. For example, you have access to the word *desk*. When you have new experiences related to desks or otherwise learn new things about desks, you have a word around which to organize all this related information.

Recall, too, the constructive nature of memory. Having word labels (e.g., “washing clothes,” “peace march”) has several effects. First, it facilitates the ease of understanding and remembering a text passage. Second, it enhances subjects’ recall of the shape of a droodle. (Recall that a droodle is essentially a doodle puzzle: You see a doodle and you have to guess what it is.) Third, it affects the accuracy of eyewitness testimony. Having words as concepts for things helps us in our everyday nonverbal

---

**BELIEVE IT OR NOT**

**Can It Really Be Hard to Stop Cursing?**

In psychology, the involuntary utterance of socially inappropriate words or sentences is called *coprolalia*. There is a range of other coprophenomena, like making socially inappropriate gestures (copropraxia) and drawings (coprographia). Often, these utterances are related to obscene, religious, or ethnical content. They are not expressed out of anger but rather result from a kind of urge that the speaker cannot control and that can cause him or her considerable embarrassment. Coprolalia is often part of a neurological disorder called *Tourette syndrome*, which exhibits a widely variable pattern of tics (like suddenly and involuntarily kicking in the air or pulling one’s earlobe). Tourette syndrome usually starts in childhood and stabilizes after adolescence. As of today, it is not entirely clear what causes tics, but studies indicate that generally the cortical-striatal-thalamocortical pathways are involved. Different tics seem to be caused by different brain mechanisms. Coprolalia, in particular, involves activation of the brain’s language regions, caudate, thalamus, and cerebellum. It can also occur outside of *Tourette syndrome* in people who have suffered strokes or encephalitis, for example [Freeman et al., 2008]. Indeed, even cases of *Tourette syndrome* patients swearing in sign language have been reported.
interactions. For example, our concepts of skunk and of dog allow us more easily to recognize the difference between the two, even if we see an animal only for a moment (Ross & Spalding, 1994). Depending on which we saw, this rapid recognition enables us to respond appropriately. Clearly, being able to comprehend the conceptual meanings of words is important. But how do we retrieve the meanings of words? All words are stored in our mental lexicon, which contains both the words and their meanings. One observation that hints at how we represent meaning comes from studies with people who once had normal language skills but at some point contracted lesions of the temporal lobes of the brain. When certain of those people were asked to indicate the meaning of a picture, their problems in naming objects were not arbitrary. One group of patients had trouble recognizing animate things, like animals and plants. Another group of patients was challenged in recognizing things that were manufactured, like tools. Warrington and colleagues (Warrington & McCarthy, 1987; Warrington & Shallice, 1984) have suggested criteria for determining the difference between manufactured and living things. Objects that are made by humans are mostly distinguished by means of their function. Do we use an object to get from one point to another, or to open something? Living things, in contrary, are mainly distinguished by means of their looks. A horse looks different than a donkey, and both differ from what a cow looks like. So when we retrieve the meaning of words from our memory, we may rely on their perceptual features and the function (as well as some other characteristics). This interpretation is in line with the findings of the lesion studies: People who had sustained damage in regions that are involved in perceptual processing have trouble recognizing living things. People with lesions in areas that are involved in the processing of functional information have more trouble recognizing man-made things.

As you may have noticed, many words in English have more than one meaning: Take the word “foot,” for example. “I have a very wide foot,” refers to the foot as a
body part. “She lives at the foot of the hill,” indicates that a person is living at the bottom part of a hill. Generally, words have a dominant meaning that is used more often, and one or more subordinate meanings. In the example with the word “foot,” people typically think of a body part, which is the dominant meaning. The bottom part of a hill is a subordinate meaning. What meaning you ultimately ascribe to the word depends largely on the context in which it appears.

**Understanding Sentences: Syntax**

An equally important part of the psychology of language is the analysis of linguistic structure. Not only words convey meaning; the structure of sentences does as well. For example, “The man hunted the lion.” has a different meaning from “The lion hunted the man.” Syntax is the systematic way in which words can be combined and sequenced to make meaningful phrases and sentences (Carroll, 1986). Whereas studies of speech perception chiefly investigate the phonetic structure of language, syntax focuses on the study of the grammar of phrases and sentences. In other words, it considers the regularity of structure.

Although you have heard the word grammar before in regard to how people should structure their sentences, psycholinguists use the word grammar in a slightly different way. Specifically, grammar is the study of language in terms of noticing regular patterns. These patterns relate to the functions and relationships of words in a sentence. They extend as broadly to the level of discourse and narrowly to the pronunciation and meaning of individual words.

In your English courses, you may have been introduced to prescriptive grammar. This kind of grammar prescribes the “correct” ways in which to structure the use of written and spoken language. Of greater interest to psycholinguists is descriptive grammar, in which an attempt is made to describe the structures, functions, and relationships of words in language.

Consider an example of a sentence that illustrates the contrast between prescriptive and descriptive approaches to grammar: When Mario observes his father carrying upstairs an unappealing bedtime book, he responds, “Daddy, what did you bring that book that I don’t want to be read to out of up for?” (Pinker, 1994, p. 97). Mario’s utterance might shiver the spine of any prescriptive grammarian. But Mario’s ability to produce such a complex sentence, with such intricate internal interdependencies, would please descriptive grammarians.

The study of syntax allows analysis of language in manageable—and therefore relatively easily studied—units. Also, it offers limitless possibilities for exploration. There are virtually no bounds to the possible combinations of words that may be used to form sentences. Earlier, we referred to this property as the productivity of language. In English, as in any language, we can take a particular set of words (or morphemes, to be more accurate) and a particular set of rules for combining the items and produce a breathtakingly vast array of meaningful utterances. Suppose you were to go to the U.S. Library of Congress and randomly select any sentence from any book. You then searched for an identical sentence in the vast array of sentences in the books therein. Barring intentional quotations, you would be unlikely to find the identical sentence.

People demonstrate a remarkable knack for understanding syntactical structure. Read through the following demonstration in the Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Your Sense of Grammar box and try to find the sentences that are not grammatical.

Fluent speakers of a language can recognize syntactical structure immediately. We can do so whether particular sentences and particular word orders are or are
not grammatical (Bock, 1990; Pinker, 1994). We can do so even when the sentences are meaningless. For example, we can evaluate Chomsky’s sentence, “Colorless green ideas sleep furiously.” Or we can evaluate a sentence composed of nonsense words, as in Lewis Carroll’s poem “Jabberwocky,” “’Twas brillig and the slithy toves did gyre and gimble in the wabe.”

In the following, we explore the properties and impact of syntax in more detail. We have a look at the phenomena of syntactical priming and speech errors and consider two approaches to analyzing sentences: phrase-structure grammar and transformational grammar. We will also explore the interaction between words and sentence structures.

### Syntactical Priming

Just as we show semantic priming of word meanings in memory (that is, we react faster to words that are related in meaning to a prior presented word), we show syntactical priming of sentence structures. In other words, we spontaneously tend to use syntactical structures and read faster sentences that parallel the structures of sentences we have just heard (Bock, 1990; Bock, Loebell, & Morey, 1992; Sturt et al., 2010). For example, a speaker will be more likely to use a passive construction (e.g., “The student was praised by the professor”) after hearing a passive construction. He or she will do so even when the topics of the sentences differ. Even children as young as age 3 described a series of new items with the same sentence structure used by an experimenter (Bencini & Valian, 2008).

Another example of syntactical priming is sentence priming. In this type of experiment, participants are presented with a sentence. Participants then are presented with new sentences and are asked to rate the degree to which they are grammatically correct. If a sentence has the same structure as the previously presented item, it is rated as more nearly grammatically correct (Luka & Barsalou, 2005), independent of its actual degree of grammatical correctness. Participants in the experimental
group may have read the sentence, “Amanda carried Fernando the package,” whereas control-group participants read the sentence, “Amanda carried the package to Fernando.” Both groups were then asked to rate the test sentence, “Igor lugged Dr. Frankenstein the corpse.” As you can see, this sentence is structurally similar to the first sentence that participants in the experimental group were asked to read; it does not resemble the structure of the first sentence that control-group participants read. And indeed, participants from the experimental group rated the test sentence as more grammatical than did control-group participants.

**Speech Errors**

Other evidence of our uncanny aptitude for syntax is shown in the speech errors we produce. Even when we accidentally switch the placement of two words in a sentence, we still form grammatical, if meaningless or nonsensical, sentences. We almost invariably switch nouns for nouns, verbs for verbs, prepositions for prepositions, and so on. For example, we may say, “I put the oven in the cake.” But we will probably not say, “I put the cake oven in the.” We usually even attach (and detach) appropriate function morphemes to make the switched words fit their new positions. For example, when meaning to say, “The butter knives are in the drawer,” we may say, “The butter drawers are in the knife.” Here, we change “drawer” to plural and “knives” to singular to preserve the grammaticality of the sentence. Even so-called agrammatic aphasics, who have extreme difficulties in both comprehending and producing language, preserve syntactical categories in their speech errors (Butterworth & Howard, 1987; Garrett, 1992). In Chapter 10, we consider slips of the tongue in more detail.

**Analyzing Sentences: Phrase-Structure Grammar**

The preceding examples seem to indicate that we humans have some mental mechanism for classifying words according to syntactical categories. This classification mechanism is separate from the meanings for the words (Bock, 1990). When we compose sentences, we seem to analyze and divide them into functional components. This process is called parsing. We assign appropriate syntactical categories (often called “parts of speech,” e.g., noun, verb, article) to each component of the sentence. We then use the syntax rules for the language to construct grammatical sequences of the parsed components.

Early in the 20th century, linguists who studied syntax largely focused on how sentences could be analyzed in terms of sequences of phrases, such as noun phrases and verb phrases, which were mentioned previously. They also focused on how phrases could be parsed into various syntactical categories, such as nouns, verbs, and adjectives. Such analyses look at the phrase-structure grammar—they analyze the structure of phrases as they are used. Let’s have a closer look at the sentence:

“The girl looked at the boy with the telescope.”

First of all, the sentence can be divided into the noun phrase (NP) “The girl” followed by a verb phrase (VP) “looked at the boy with the telescope.” The noun phrase can be further divided into a determiner (“the”) and a noun (“girl”). Likewise, the verb phrase can be further subdivided. However, the analysis of how to divide the verb phrase depends on what meaning the speaker had in mind. You may have noticed that the sentence can have two meanings:

(a) The girl looked with a telescope at the boy, or
(b) The girl looked at a boy who had a telescope.
In case (a), the verb phrase contains a verb (V; “looked”), and two prepositional phrases (PP; “at the boy” and “with the telescope”). In case (b), the verb phrase would again contain the verb “looked,” but there is just one prepositional phrase (“looked at the boy with the telescope”). You can then work your way further...
down and divide the prepositional phrases further into prepositions, determiners, nouns, etc (see Figure 9.2 for details).

The rules governing the sequences of words are termed phrase-structure rules. Linguists often use tree diagrams, such as the ones shown in Figure 9.2, to observe the interrelationships of phrases within a sentence. Various other models also have been proposed (e.g., relational grammar, Farrell, 2005; Perlmutter, 1983a; lexical-functional grammar; Bresnan, 1982).

Tree diagrams help to reveal the interrelationships of syntactical classes within the phrase structures of sentences (Clegg & Shepherd, 2007; Wasow, 1989). In particular, such diagrams show that sentences are not merely organized chains of words, strung together sequentially. Rather, they are organized into hierarchical structures of embedded phrases. The use of tree diagrams helps to highlight many aspects of how we use language, including both our linguistic sophistication and our difficulties in using language. As you can see in Figure 9.2, our example sentence is depicted in two different ways, depending on its meaning. By observing tree diagrams of ambiguous sentences, psycholinguists can better pinpoint the source of confusion.

A New Approach to Syntax: Transformational Grammar
In 1957, Noam Chomsky revolutionized the study of syntax. He suggested that to understand syntax, we must observe not only the interrelationships among phrases within sentences. Additionally, we have to consider the syntactical relationships between sentences. Specifically, Chomsky observed that particular sentences and their tree diagrams show peculiar relationships.

For example, consider the following sentences:

$S_1$: Susie greedily ate the crocodile.

$S_2$: The crocodile was eaten greedily by Susie.

Oddly enough, a phrase-structure grammar would not show any particular relation at all between sentences $S_1$ and $S_2$. Indeed, phrase-structure analyses of $S_1$ and $S_2$ would look almost completely different (Figure 9.3). Yet, the two sentences differ only in voice. The first sentence is expressed in the active voice and the second in
Figure 9.2 Phrase-Structure Grammar (part 1).

Phrase-structure grammars illustrate the hierarchies of phrases within sentences. Here you can see two possible ways to analyze the sentence “The girl looked at the boy with the telescope.” The abbreviations used in the tree diagrams are: S (sentence), NP (noun phrase), VP (verb phrase), PP (prepositional phrase), N (noun), V (verb), Det (determiner), and P (preposition).

Figure 9.3 Phrase-Structure Grammar (part 2).

Phrase-structure grammars show surprising dissimilarities between sentences S1 and S2, yet surprising similarities between S1 and S3 or between S2 and S4. Noam Chomsky suggested that to understand syntax, we also must consider a way of viewing the interrelationships among various phrase structures.
the passive voice. But both sentences represent the same proposition “ate (greedily) (Susie, crocodile).” Recall from Chapter 7 that propositions may be used to illustrate that the same underlying meanings can be derived through alternative means of representation.

Consider another pair of sentences that have the same meaning:

S₃: The crocodile greedily ate Susie.
S₄: Susie was eaten greedily by the crocodile.

Again, the sentences have the same meaning, but phrase-structure grammar would show no relationship between S₃ and S₄. What’s more, phrase-structure grammar would show some similarities of surface structure between S₁ and S₃ as well as S₂ and S₄. The pairs of sentences clearly have quite different meanings, particularly to Susie and the crocodile. Apparently, an adequate grammar would address the fact that sentences with similar surface structures can have very different meanings.

This observation and other observations of the interrelationships among various phrase structures led linguists to go beyond merely describing various individual phrase structures. They began to focus their attention on the relationships among different phrase structures. Linguists may gain deeper understanding of syntax by studying the relationships among phrase structures that involve transformations of elements within sentences (Chomsky, 1957). Specifically, Chomsky suggested a way to supplement the study of phrase structures. He proposed the study of transformational grammar, which involves transformational rules. These rules guide the ways in which an underlying proposition can be arranged into a sentence. There are obviously many different sentences that can express the same proposition.

A simple way of looking at Chomsky’s transformational grammar is to say that “Transformations … are rules that map tree structures onto other tree structures” (Wasow, 1989, p. 170). For example, transformational grammar considers how the tree-structure diagrams in Figure 9.3 are interrelated. With application of transformational rules, the tree structure of S₁ can be mapped onto the tree structure of S₂. Similarly, the structure of S₃ can be mapped onto the tree structure of S₄.

In transformational grammar, deep structure refers to an underlying syntactical structure that links various phrase structures through various transformation rules. In contrast, surface structure refers to any of the various phrase structures that may result from such transformations. Many casual readers of Chomsky have misunderstood Chomsky’s terms. They incorrectly inferred that deep structures refer to profound underlying meanings of sentences, whereas surface structures refer only to superficial interpretations of sentences. This is not the case. Chomsky meant only to show that differing phrase structures may have a relationship that is not immediately apparent by using phrase-structure grammar alone. For example, the sentences, “Susie greedily ate the crocodile,” and “The crocodile was eaten greedily by Susie” have a relationship that cannot be seen just by looking at the phrase-structure grammar. For detection of the underlying relationship between two phrase structures, transformation rules must be applied.

**Relationships between Syntactical and Lexical Structures**

Chomsky (1965, cited in Wasow, 1989) also addressed how syntactical structures may interact with lexical structures, that is, words. He suggested that our mental lexicon contains more than the semantic meanings attached to each word (or
morpheme). In addition, each lexical item also contains syntactical information. This syntactical information for each lexical item indicates three things:

- the syntactical category of the item, such as noun versus verb;
- the appropriate syntactical contexts in which the particular morpheme may be used, such as pronouns as subjects versus as direct objects; and
- any idiosyncratic information about the syntactical uses of the morpheme, such as the treatment of irregular verbs.

For example, there would be separate lexical entries for the word *spread* categorized as a noun and for *spread* as a verb. Each lexical entry also would indicate which syntactical rules to use for positioning the word. The rules that are applicable depend on which category is applicable in the given context. For example, as a verb, *spread* would not follow the article *the*. As a noun, however, *spread* would be allowed to do so. Even the peculiarities of syntax for a given lexical entry would be stored in the lexicon. For example, the lexical entry for the verb *spread* would indicate that this verb deviates from the normal syntactical rule for forming past tenses by adding *-ed* to the stem used for the present tense.

You may wonder why we would clutter up our mental lexicon with so much syntactical information. There is an advantage to attaching syntactical, context-sensitive, and idiosyncratic information to the items in our mental lexicon. If we add to the complexity of our mental lexicon, we can simplify drastically the number and complexity of the rules we need in our mental syntax. For example, by attaching information about the idiosyncratic treatment of irregular verbs (e.g., *spread* or *fall*) to our mental lexicon, we do not have to endure different syntactical rules for each verb. By making our lexicon more complex, we allow our syntax to be simpler. In this way, appropriate transformations may be simple and relatively context-free. Once we know the basic syntax of a language, we easily can apply the rules to all items in our lexicon. We then can gradually expand our lexicon to provide increasing complexity and sophistication.

Not all cognitive psychologists agree with all aspects of Chomsky’s theories (e.g., Bock, Loebell, & Morey, 1992; Devitt, 2008; Garrett, 1992; Jackendoff, 1991). Many particularly disagree with his emphasis on syntax (form) over semantics (meaning). The suggestion that syntactic rules influence the creation of a deep structure, which is then transformed through the application of more rules into a surface structure, left psychologists wondering about the significance of meaning. A theory that put so much emphasis on syntax seemed insufficient to explain the processes of how we use language to express meaning. Nonetheless, several cognitive psychologists have proposed models of language comprehension and production that include key ideas of syntax.

How do we link the elements in our mental lexicon to the elements in our syntactical structures? Various models for such bridging have been proposed (Bock, Loebell, & Morey, 1992; Culicover & Jackendoff, 2005; Jackendoff, 1991). According to some of these models, when we parse sentences by syntactical categories, we create slots for each item in the sentence. Consider, for example, the sentence, “Juan gave María the book from the shelf.” There is a slot for a noun used as: (1) a subject (Juan); (2) as a direct object (the book); (3) as an indirect object (María); and (4) as objects of prepositions (the shelf). There are also slots for the verb, the preposition, and the articles.
In turn, lexical items contain information regarding the kinds of slots into which the items can be placed. The information is based on the kinds of thematic roles the items can fill. **Thematic roles** are ways in which items can be used in the context of communication. Several roles have been identified. In particular, these are the roles of:

- the agent, the “doer” of any action;
- the patient, the direct recipient of the action;
- the beneficiary, the indirect recipient of the action;
- the instrument, the means by which the action is implemented;
- the location, the place where the action occurs;
- the source, where the action originated; and
- the goal, where the action is going (Bock, 1990; Fromkin & Rodman, 1988).

According to this view of how syntax and semantics are linked, the various syntactical slots can be filled by lexical entries with corresponding thematic roles. For example, the slot of subject noun might be filled by the thematic role of agent. Nouns that can fill agent roles can be inserted into slots for subjects of phrases. Patient roles correspond to slots for direct objects. Beneficiary roles fit with indirect objects, and so on. Nouns that are objects of prepositions may be filled with various thematic roles. These roles include location, such as “at the beach”; source, such as “from the kitchen”; and goal, such as “to the classroom.”

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What is coarticulation, and why is it important?
2. What does the view of speech perception as ordinary suggest?
3. What is categorical perception?
4. Describe a study that is evidence for the motor theory of speech perception.
5. What is syntactical priming?
6. What is the difference between phrase-structure grammar and transformational grammar?
Because reading is so complex, a discussion of how we engage in this process could be placed in any of a number of chapters in this book. At minimum, reading involves perception, language, memory, thinking, and intelligence (Adams, 1990, 1999; Garrod & Daneman, 2003; Smith, 2004): You have to recognize the letters on this page, put them together to form words that have meaning, keep their meaning in memory until you have finished reading the sentence or even paragraph, and think about what message the writer tried to communicate to you. Although there are so many different processes going on, we read with remarkable speed and accuracy: the average adult reads prose at about 250-300 words per minute.

In a typical day, we repeatedly encounter written language. Every day we see signs, billboards, labels, and notices. These items contain a wealth of information that helps us make decisions and understand situations. As a result, the ability to read is fundamental to our everyday lives.

When Reading Is a Problem—Dyslexia

To better understand what processes are involved in reading, let us first look at people who have trouble reading. People who have dyslexia—difficulty in deciphering, reading, and comprehending text—can suffer greatly in a society that puts a high premium on fluent reading (Sternberg & Spear-Swerling, 1999; Terras et al., 2009). Problems in phonological processing, and thus in word identification, pose “the major stumbling block in learning to read” (Pollatsek & Rayner, 1989, p. 403; see also Grodzinsky, 2003). Several different processes may be impaired in dyslexia:

- **Phonological awareness**, which refers to awareness of the sound structure of spoken language. A typical way of assessing phonological awareness is through a phoneme-deletion task. Children are asked to say, for example, “goat” without the “-t.” Another task that is used is phoneme counting. Children might be asked how many different sounds there are in the word “fish.” The correct answer is three.

- **Phonological reading**, which entails reading words in isolation. Teachers sometimes call this skill “word decoding” or “word attack.” For measurement of the skill, children might be asked to read words in isolation. Some of the words might be quite easy; others, difficult. Individuals with dyslexia often have more trouble recognizing the words in isolation than in context. When given context, they use the context to figure out what the word means.

- **Phonological coding** in working memory. This process is involved in remembering strings of phonemes that are sometimes confusing. It might be measured by comparing working memory for confusable versus non-confusable phonemes. For example, a child might be assessed for how well he or she remembers the string $t, b, z, v, g$ versus the string $o, x, r, y, q$. Most people will have more difficulty with the first string. But individuals with dyslexia, who have problems in phonological coding in working memory, will have particular trouble.

- **Lexical access** refers to one’s ability to retrieve phonemes from long-term memory. The question here is whether one can quickly retrieve a word from long-term memory when it is seen. For example, if you see the word *pond*, do you immediately recognize the word as *pond*, or does it take you a while to retrieve it?
There are several different kinds of dyslexia. The most well-known kind is developmental dyslexia, which is difficulty in reading that starts in childhood and typically continues throughout adulthood. Most commonly, children with developmental dyslexia have difficulty in learning the rules that relate letters to sounds (Démondet, Taylor, & Chaix, 2004; Shaywitz & Shaywitz, 2005). A second kind of dyslexia is acquired dyslexia, which is typically caused by traumatic brain damage. A perfectly good reader who experiences a brain injury may acquire dyslexia (Coslett, 2003).

Developmental dyslexia is believed to have both biological and environmental causes. A major dispute in the field is the role of each. People with developmental dyslexia often have been found to have abnormalities in certain chromosomes, most notably, 3, 6, and 15 (Paracchini, Scerri, & Monaco, 2007). Neuropsychological studies suggest that readers with dyslexia exhibit hypoactivation (that is, too little activation) in their left temporo-parietal cortex as compared with regular readers. Other brain regions show atypical activation in dyslexic readers, for example, the left prefrontal region (linked with working memory), the left middle and superior temporal gyri (linked with receptive language), and the left occipito-temporal regions (associated with the visual analysis of letters; Gabrieli, 2009). However, educational interventions can help reduce the impairments in reading caused by dyslexia (Bakker, 2006).

In the following section, we examine three different processes that contribute to our ability to read: perceptual, lexical, and comprehension processes.

**Perceptual Issues in Reading**

A very basic but important step in reading is the activation of our ability to recognize letters. When you are reading, you somehow manage to perceive the correct letter when it is presented in a wide array of typestyles and typefaces. For example, you can perceive it correctly in capital and lowercase forms, and even in cursive forms. Such aspects are called orthographic. You then must translate the letter into a sound, creating a phonological code (relating to sound). This translation is particularly difficult in English because English does not always ensure a direct correspondence between a letter and a sound. George Bernard Shaw, playwright and lover of the English language, observed the illogicality of English spellings. He suggested that, in English, it would be perfectly reasonable to pronounce “ghoti” as “fish.” You would pronounce the “gh” as in rough, the “o” as in women, and the “ti” as in nation. That brings up another perplexing “Englishism”: How do you pronounce “ough”? Try the words dough, bough, bought, through, and cough—had enough?

After you somehow manage to translate all those visual symbols into sounds, you must sequence those sounds to form a word (Pollatsek & Miller, 2003). Then you need to identify the word and figure out what the word means. Ultimately you move on to the next word and repeat the process all over again. You continue this process with subsequent words to formulate a single sentence. You continue this process for as long as you read. Clearly, the normal ability to read is not at all simple.

About 36 million American adults have not yet learned to read at an eighth-grade level (Conn & Silverman, 1991). There were no significant changes in literacy between 1992 and 2003 (http://nces.ed.gov/naal/kf_demographics.asp). On the one hand, the statistics on low literacy and illiteracy should alarm us and provoke us to action. On the other hand, we may need to reconsider our possibly less-than-favorable appraisal of those who have not yet mastered the task of reading. To undertake such a challenge—at any age—is difficult indeed.
When learning to read, novice readers must come to master two basic kinds of processes: lexical processes and comprehension processes. **Lexical processes** are used to identify letters and words. They also activate relevant information in memory about these words. **Comprehension processes** are used to make sense of the text as a whole (and are discussed later in this chapter). The separation and integration of both bottom-up and top-down approaches to perception can be seen as we consider the lexical processes of reading.

**Lexical Processes in Reading**

We are about to explore, in more detail, the lexical processes involved in reading. First, we take a closer look at fixations in our eye movements that help us read. Then, we discuss how we identify words so we can retrieve their meaning from our memory (lexical access); and finally, we consider what connection there is between lexical-access speed and intelligence.

**Fixations and Reading Speed**

When we read, our eyes do not move smoothly along a page or even along a line of text. Rather, our eyes move in *saccades*—rapid sequential movements—as they fixate on successive clumps of text. The fixations are like a series of “snapshots” (Pollatsek & Rayner, 1989), and are of variable length (Carpenter & Just, 1981). Readers fixate for a longer time on longer words than on shorter words. They also fixate longer on less familiar words (i.e., words that appear less frequently in the English language) than on more familiar words (i.e., words of higher frequency). The last word of a sentence also seems to receive an extra long fixation time. This can be called “sentence wrap-up time” (Carpenter & Just, 1981; Warren et al., 2009).

Although most words are fixated, not all of them are. Readers fixate up to about 80% of the content words in a text. These words include nouns, verbs, and other words that carry the bulk of the meaning. (Function words, such as *the* and *of*, serve a supporting role to the content words.) Just what is the visual span of one of these fixations? It appears that we can extract useful information from a perceptual window of characters about four characters to the left of a fixation point and about 14 or 15 characters to the right of it. These characters include letters, numerals, punctuation marks, and spaces. Saccadic movements leap an average of about seven to nine characters between successive fixations. So some of the information we extract may be preparatory for subsequent fixation (Pollatsek & Rayner, 1989; Rayner et al., 1995). When students speed-read, they show fewer and shorter fixations (Just, Carpenter, & Masson, 1982). But apparently their greater speed is at the expense of comprehension of anything more than just the gist of the passage (Homa, 1983).

**Lexical Access**

An important aspect of reading is **lexical access**—the identification of a word that allows us to gain access to the meaning of the word from memory. Most psychologists who study reading believe that lexical access is an interactive process. It combines information of different kinds, such as the features of letters, the letters themselves, and the words comprising the letters (Morton, 1969).

Investigators (McClelland et al., 2009; Rumelhart & McClelland 1981, 1982) developed an interactive-activation model suggesting that activation of particular lexical elements occurs at multiple levels. Moreover, activity at each of the levels is interactive (Figure 9.4).
The interactive-activation model distinguishes among three levels of processing following visual input—the feature level, the letter level, and the word level. The model assumes that information at each level is represented separately in memory. Information passes from one level to another bidirectionally. In other words, processing occurs in each of two directions. First, it is bottom-up, starting with sensory data and working up to higher levels of cognitive processing. Second, it is top-down, starting with high-level cognition operating on prior knowledge and experiences related to a given context. The interactive view implies that not only do we use the visually or orally perceptible features of letters to help us identify words, but we also use the features we already know about words to help us identify letters. For this reason, the model is referred to as “interactive” (Plaut et al., 1996).

**Figure 9.4  Word Recognition.**

David Rumelhart and James McClelland used this figure to illustrate how activation at the feature level, the letter level, and the word level may interact during word recognition. In this figure, lines terminating in arrows prompt activation, and lines terminating in dots (blue circles) prompt inhibition. For example, the feature for a solid horizontal bar at the top of a letter leads to activation of the T character but to inhibition of the N character. Similarly, at the letter level, activation of T as the first letter leads to activation of TRAP and TRIP but to inhibition of ABLE. Going from the top down, activation of the word TRAP leads to inhibition of A, N, G, and S as the first letter but to activation of T as the first letter.

Other theorists have suggested alternatives to Rumelhart and McClelland’s model (e.g., Meyer & Schvaneveldt, 1976; Paap et al., 1982), but the distinctions among interactive models go beyond the scope of this introductory text. Support for word-recognition models involving discrete levels of processing comes from studies of cerebral processing (Harley, 2008; Petersen et al., 1988; Posner et al., 1988, 1989). Studies that map brain metabolism indicate that different regions of the brain become activated during passive visual processing of word forms, as opposed to semantic analysis of words or even spoken pronunciation of the words. These studies involve the use of techniques such as positron emission tomography (PET) and functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI), discussed in Chapter 2.

In addition to neuropsychological support, a number of word-recognition models have been simulated on computers (e.g., Harm & Seidenberg, 2004). Both models aptly predicted a word-superiority effect as well as a pseudoword-superiority effect. The word-superiority effect is similar to the configural-superiority effect and the object-superiority effect (mentioned in regard to top-down influences on perception). In the word-superiority effect, letters are read more easily when they are embedded in words than when they are presented either in isolation or with letters that do not form words. People take substantially longer to read unrelated letters than to read letters that form a word (Cattell, 1886). This effect is sometimes called the Reicher-Wheeler effect, named for two researchers who did early investigations of this effect (Reicher, 1969; Wheeler, 1970).

To observe the word-superiority effect, researchers use an experimental paradigm called the lexical-decision task. In this paradigm, a string of letters is presented very briefly. It then is either removed or covered by a visual mask, a pattern that wipes out the previously presented stimulus from iconic memory (see Chapter 5 for more information about the iconic memory store). The participant then is asked to make a decision about whether the string of letters is a word.

To observe the word-superiority effect, the standard lexical-decision task is modified to examine the processing of letters. Participants are presented very briefly with either a word or a single letter, followed by a visual mask. Participants then are given a choice of two letters and have to decide which letter they just saw. For example, participants may be presented with the word “WORK” when the test stimulus is “K.” The alternatives to choose from might be “D” and “K.” They are presented as “___D” and “___K,” which correspond to the target “WORK” and a similar word “WORD,” respectively. Participants then are instructed to choose the letter they saw. Participants are more accurate in choosing the correct letter when it is presented in the context of a word than they are in choosing the correct letter when it is presented in isolation (Johnston & McClelland, 1973). Even letters in pronounceable pseudowords (e.g., “MARD”) are identified more accurately than letters in isolation. However, strings of letters that cannot be pronounced as words (e.g., “ORWK”) do not aid in identification (Grainger et al., 2003; Pollatsek & Rayner, 1989).

There is also a sentence-superiority effect (Cattell, 1886; Perfetti, 1985): People take about twice as long to read unrelated words as to read words in a sentence (Cattell, 1886). The sentence-superiority effect can be seen in other paradigms as well. For example, suppose that a reader very briefly sees a degraded stimulus. The word window, for example, might be shown but in degraded form (Figure 9.5). When the word is standing by itself in this form, it is more difficult to recognize than when it is preceded by a sentence context. An example of such a context would be, “There were several repair jobs to be done. The first was to fix the __________.”
Context effects work at both conscious and preconscious levels. At the conscious level, we have active control over the use of context to determine word meanings. At the preconscious level, the use of context is probably automatic and outside our active control. Participants seem to make lexical decisions more quickly when presented with strings of letters that commonly are associated pairs of words (e.g., “doctor” and “nurse” or “bread” and “butter”). They respond more slowly when presented with unassociated pairs of words, with pairs of non-words, or with pairs involving a word and a non-word (Hyoenae, J., & Lindeman, 2008; Meyer & Schvaneveldt, 1971; Schvaneveldt, Meyer, & Becker, 1976).

**Intelligence and Lexical-Access Speed**

Some investigations on information processing and intelligence have focused on lexical-access speed—the speed with which we can retrieve information about words (e.g., letter names) stored in our long-term memories (Hunt, 1978). This speed can be measured with a letter-matching, reaction-time task first proposed by Posner and Mitchell in 1967 (Hunt, 1978).

Participants are shown pairs of letters, such as “A A,” “A a,” or “A b.” For each pair, they indicate whether the letters constitute a match in name (e.g., “A a” match in name of letter of the alphabet but “A b” do not). They also are given a simpler task where they are asked to indicate whether the letters match physically (e.g., “A A” are physically identical, whereas “A a” are not). The variable of interest is the difference between their speed for the first set of tasks, involving name-matching, and their speed for the second set, involving matching of physical characteristics. The difference in reaction time between the two kinds of tasks is said to provide a measure of speed of lexical access. This score is based on a subtraction of name-match minus physical-match reaction time. The subtraction controls for mere perceptual-processing time. Students with lower verbal ability take longer to gain access to lexical information than do students with higher verbal ability (Hunt, 1978). These results suggest that lexical access is a component of verbal ability.
Understanding Conversations and Essays: Discourse

The preceding sections discussed, at a general level, aspects of how we understand written and spoken language. However, in our understanding of language, not only do words and sentences play a role, but so does the greater context in which they appear. This section discusses more specifically the processes involved in understanding and using language in the greater context in which we encounter it. Discourse involves units of language larger than individual sentences—in conversations, lectures, stories, essays, and even textbooks (Di Eugenio, 2003). Just as grammatical sentences are structured according to systematic syntactical rules, passages of discourse are structured systematically (see Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Discourse).

By adulthood, most of us have a firm grasp of how sentences are sequenced into a greater whole (discourse structure). From our knowledge of discourse structure, we can derive meanings of sentence elements that are not apparent by looking at isolated sentences. To see how sentences influence the interpretation of other sentences, try out the Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Deciphering Text box.

CONCEPT CHECK

1. Which processes can be impaired in dyslexia?
2. What is lexical access?
3. Give an example for the word-superiority effect.

INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY

Discourse

The following series of sentences is taken from a short story by O. Henry (William Sydney Porter, 1899–1953) titled “The Ransom of Red Chief.” Actually, the following sequence of sentences is incorrect. Without knowing anything else about the story, try to figure out the correct sequence of sentences.

1. The father was respectable and tight, a mortgage financier and a stern, upright collection-plate passer and forecloser.
2. We selected for our victim the only child of a prominent citizen named Ebenezer Dorset.
3. We were down South in Alabama—Bill Driscoll and myself—when this kidnapping idea struck us.
4. Bill and me figured that Ebenezer would melt down for a ransom of two thousand dollars to a cent.

Hint: O. Henry was a master of irony, and by the end of the story the would-be kidnappers paid the father a hefty ransom to take back his son so that they could quickly escape from the boy.

The sequence used by O. Henry, ex-convict and expert storyteller, was 3, 2, 1, 4. Is that the order you chose? How did you know the correct sequence for these sentences?
Cognitive psycholinguists who analyze discourse particularly are intrigued by how we are able to answer the questions posed in the preceding example. When grasping the meanings of pronouns (e.g., he, she, him, her, it, they, them, we, us), how do we know to whom (or to what) the pronouns are pointing? How do we know the meanings of what could seem like cryptic utterances (e.g., “Yes, definitely”)? What does the use of the definite article the (as opposed to the indefinite article a) signify to listeners regarding whether a noun was mentioned previously? How do you know what event is being referenced by the verb do? The meanings of pronouns, ellipses, definite articles, event references, and other local elements within sentences usually depend on the discourse structure within which these elements appear (Grosz, Pollack, & Sidner, 1989).

For understanding discourse, we often rely not only on our knowledge of discourse structure but also on our knowledge of a broad physical, social, or cultural context within which the discourse is presented (Cook & Gueraud, 2005; van Dijk, 2006). Our understanding of the meaning of a paragraph is influenced by our existing knowledge and expectations. For example, this cognitive psychology textbook will be easier to read if you have taken an introductory psychology course than if you have not taken such a course. When reading the sentences in the Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Effects of Expectations in Reading box, pause between sentences and think about what you know and what you expect, based on your knowledge.

The next sections explore in more detail how we comprehend larger units of language, like essays. We discuss how we retrieve known words from memory and how we infer the meaning of new words. We explore how we understand ideas communicated in text and how our interpretation depends on our point of view. Finally, we consider how we can represent text in mental models.

**Comprehending Known Words: Retrieving Word Meaning from Memory**

Semantic encoding is the process by which we translate sensory information (that is, the written words we see) into a meaningful representation. This representation is based on our understanding of the meanings of words. In lexical access, we identify words based on letter combinations. We thereby activate our memory in regard to the words. In semantic encoding, we take the next step and gain access to the
meaning of the word stored in memory. Sometimes we cannot semantically encode
the word because its meaning does not already exist in memory. We then must find
another way in which to derive the meanings of words, such as from noting the con-
text in which we read them.

To engage in semantic encoding, the reader needs to know what a given word
means. Knowledge of word meanings (vocabulary) very closely relates to the ability
to comprehend text. People who are knowledgeable about word meanings tend to be
good readers and vice versa. A reason for this relationship appears to be that readers
simply cannot understand text well unless they know the meanings of the compo-
nent words. For example, in one study, recall of the semantic content of a passage
was much better when participants had a greater relevant vocabulary (Beck, Perfetti,
& McKeown, 1982). In children, vocabulary size is positively related to performance
on a number of semantic-understanding tasks, including retelling (both written and
oral), decoding ability, and the ability to draw inferences across sentences (Hagtvet,
2003). A number of studies suggest that in order to grasp meaning of a sample of
text with ease, one should know approximately 95% of the vocabulary (Nation,
2001; Read, 2000). Still other studies suggest that, for one to enjoy reading a text,
one needs to understand about 98% of the vocabulary (Hu & Nation, 2000).

People with larger vocabularies are able to access lexical information more rap-
idly than are those with smaller vocabularies (Hunt, 1978). Verbal information of-
ten is presented rapidly—whether in listening or in reading. The individual who can
gain access to lexical information rapidly is able to process more information per
unit of time than can one who can only gain access to such information slowly.
Comprehending Unknown Words: Deriving Word Meanings from Context

Another way in which having a larger vocabulary contributes to text comprehension is through learning from context. Whenever we cannot semantically encode a word because its meaning is not already stored in memory, we must engage in some kind of strategy to derive meaning from the text. In general, we must either search for a meaning, using external resources, such as dictionaries or teachers, or formulate a meaning. Using context cues, we formulate the meaning based on the existing information stored in memory.

People learn most of their vocabulary indirectly. They do so not by using external resources but by figuring out the meanings of the flidges from the surrounding information (Werner & Kaplan, 1952).

For example, if you tried to look up the word flidges in the dictionary, you did not find it there. From the structure of the sentence you probably figured out that flidges is a noun. From the surrounding context you probably figured out that it is a noun having something to do with words or vocabulary. In fact, flidges is a nonsense word we used as a placeholder for the word words to show how you would gain a fairly good idea of a word’s meaning from its context.

One study found that the ability to figure out meanings of words from context was impaired in children with low reading comprehension. If those children had good vocabularies, however, direct instruction could help them learn the meanings of new words just as well as did children with high reading comprehension (Cain, Oakhill, & Lemmon, 2004).

What happens when adults have to learn word meanings from sentence contexts? Studies have found that people with large or small vocabularies (high verbal/low verbal) learn word meanings differently. High-verbal participants perform a deeper analysis of the possibilities for a new word’s meaning than do low-verbal participants. In particular, the high-verbal participants used a well-formulated strategy for figuring out word meanings. The low-verbal participants seemed to have no clear strategy at all (van Daalen-Kapteijns & Elshout-Mohr, 1981; see also Sternberg & Powell, 1983).

Comprehending Ideas: Propositional Representations

What factors influence our comprehension of what we read? Walter Kintsch has developed a model of text comprehension based on his observations (Kintsch, 1990, 2007; Kintsch & van Dijk, 1978). According to the model, as we read, we try to hold as much information as possible in working (active) memory to understand what we read. However, we do not try to store the exact words we read in working (active) memory. Rather, we try to extract the fundamental ideas from groups of words. We then store those fundamental ideas in a simplified representational form in working memory.

The representational form for these fundamental ideas is the proposition. Propositions were defined in more detail in Chapter 7. For now, it suffices to say that a proposition is the briefest unit of language that can be independently found to be true or false. For example, the sentence, “Penguins are birds, and penguins can fly” contains two propositions. You can verify independently whether penguins are birds and whether penguins can fly. In general, propositions assert either an action (e.g., flying) or a relationship (e.g., membership of penguins in the category of birds).
According to Kintsch, working memory holds propositions rather than words. Its limits are thus taxed by large numbers of propositions rather than by any particular number of words (Kintsch & Keenan, 1973). When a string of words in text requires us to hold a large number of propositions in working memory, we have difficulty comprehending the text. When information stays in working memory a longer time, it is better comprehended and better recalled subsequently. Because of the limits of working memory, however, some information must be moved out of working memory to make room for new information.

According to Kintsch, propositions that are thematically central to the understanding of the text will remain in working memory longer than propositions that are irrelevant to the theme of the text passage. Kintsch calls the thematically crucial propositions macropropositions. He further calls the overarching thematic structure of a passage of text the macrostructure. In an experiment testing his model, Kintsch and an associate asked participants to read a 1,300-word text passage (Kintsch & van Dijk, 1978). The participants then had to summarize the key propositions in the passage immediately, at one month, or at three months after reading the passage. What happened after three months? Participants recalled the macropropositions and the overall macrostructure of the passage about as well as could participants who summarized it immediately after reading it. However, the propositions providing non-thematic details about the passage were not recalled as well after one month and not at all well after three months.

**Comprehending Text Based on Context and Point of View**

What we remember from a given passage of text often depends on our point of view. For example, suppose that you were reading a text passage about the home of a wealthy family. It described many of the features of the house, such as a leaky roof, a fireplace, and a musty basement. It also described the contents of the house, such as valuable coins, silverware, and television sets. How might your encoding and comprehension of the text be different if you were reading it from the point of view of a prospective purchaser of the home as opposed to the viewpoint of a prospective cat burglar? In a study using just such a passage, people who read the passage from the viewpoint of a cat burglar remembered far more about the contents of the home. In contrast, those who read from the viewpoint of a homebuyer remembered more about the condition of the house (Anderson & Pichert, 1978). In fact, varying the retrieval situations or cues can cause different details to be remembered. Researchers found that differing retrieval instructions did not affect accuracy but did affect the specific details recalled (Gilbert & Fisher, 2006).

**Representing the Text in Mental Models**

Once words are semantically encoded or their meaning is derived from the use of context, the reader still must create a mental model of the text that is being read. This mental model simulates what is going on in the world (Craik, 1943; see Johnson-Laird, 1989, 2010). A mental model may be viewed as a sort of internal working model of the situation described in the text, as the reader understands it. In other words, the reader creates some sort of mental representation that contains the main elements of the text. These elements are represented in a way that is relatively easy to grasp or at least that is simpler and more concrete than the text itself.
For example, suppose that you read the sentence, “The loud bang scared Alice.” You may form a picture of Alice becoming scared on hearing a loud noise. Or you may access propositions stored in memory regarding the effects of loud bangs. A given passage of text or even a given set of propositions (to refer back to Kintsch’s model) may lead to more than one mental model (Johnson-Laird, 1983). In fact, you may need to modify your mental model. Whether you do so depends on whether the next sentence is, “She tried to steer off the highway without losing control of the car,” or “She ducked to avoid being shot.” In representing the loud bang that scared Alice, more than one mental model is possible. If you start out with a different model than the one required in a given passage, your ability to comprehend the text depends on your ability to form a new mental model. You can hold in mind only a limited number of mental models at any given time (Johnson-Laird, Byrne, & Schaeken, 1992). Therefore, when one of the models is incorrect, it must be rejected to make room for new models.

To form mental models, you must make at least tentative inferences (preliminary conclusions or judgments) about what is meant but not said. In the first case, you are likely to assume that a tire blew out. In the second case, you may infer that someone is shooting a gun. Note that neither of these things is stated explicitly. The construction of mental models illustrates that, in addition to comprehending the words themselves, we also need to understand how words combine into meaningfully integrated representations of narratives or expositions. Passages of text that lead unambiguously to a single mental model are easier to comprehend than are passages that may lead to multiple mental models (Johnson-Laird, 1989).

Inferences can be of different kinds. One of the most important kinds is a bridging inference (Haviland & Clark, 1974; McNamara et al., 2006). This is an inference a reader or listener makes when a sentence seems not to follow directly from the sentence preceding it. In essence, what is new in the second sentence goes one step too far beyond what is given in the previous sentences. Consider, for example, two pairs of two sentences:

1. John took the picnic out of the trunk. The beer was warm.
2. John took the beer out of the trunk. The beer was warm.

Readers took about 180 milliseconds longer to read the first pair of sentences than the second. Haviland and Clark suggested a reason for this greater processing time. It was that, in the first pair, information needed to be inferred (the picnic included beer) that was directly stated in the second pair.

Although most researchers emphasize the importance of inference-making in reading and forms of language comprehension (e.g., Graesser & Kreuz, 1993; Cain & Oakhill, 2007), not all researchers agree. According to the minimalist hypothesis, readers make inferences based only on information that is easily available to them. They do so only when they need to make such inferences to make sense of adjoining sentences (McKoon & Ratcliff, 1992a; Ratcliff & McKoon, 2008). We believe that the bulk of the evidence regarding the minimalist position indicates that it is itself too minimalist. Readers appear to make more inferences than this position suggests (Suh & Trabasso, 1993; Trabasso & Suh, 1993).

To summarize, our comprehension of what we read depends on several abilities. First is gaining access to the meanings of words, either from memory or on the basis of context. Second is deriving meaning from the key ideas in what we read. Third is extracting the key information from the text, based on the contexts surrounding
what we read and on the ways in which we intend to use what we read. And fourth is forming mental models that simulate the situations about which we read.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What is discourse?
2. What technique can you apply when you come across a word you don’t know in a text?
3. Does readers’ point of view influence their text comprehension?
4. Is there a limit to the number or complexity of mental models one can have about a given text?

**Key Themes**

This chapter deals with a number of the major themes reviewed in Chapter 1.

**Rationalism versus empiricism.** Most psychologists emphasize empirical techniques in their research. But linguists such as Chomsky have emphasized more rationalistic techniques. They analyze language, typically without formally collecting empirical data at all, at least in the cognitive psychologists’ sense of what constitutes such data. The stunning insights of Chomsky show that the two methods complement each other. Many insights can evolve from rationalism. They then can be tested by empirical methods.

**Domain generality versus domain specificity.** In particular, to what extent is language special? Is it a domain apart from other domains, or simply one more cognitive domain like any other? Many psychologists today believe that there is indeed something special about language. At the same time, cognitive processes operate on it so that people use their language in practically all the other domains in which they work. For example, many mathematical and physical problems are presented with words.

**Summary**

1. What properties characterize language? There are at least six properties of language, defined as the use of an organized means of combining words in order to communicate. (1) Language permits us to communicate with one or more people who share our language. (2) Language
creates an arbitrary relationship between a symbol and its referent—an idea, a thing, a process, a relationship, or a description. (3) Language has a regular structure; only particular sequences of symbols (sounds and words) have meaning. Different sequences yield different meanings. (4) The structure of language can be analyzed at multiple levels (e.g., phonemic and morphemic). (5) Despite having the limits of a structure, language users can produce novel utterances; the possibilities for generating new utterances are virtually limitless. (6) Languages constantly evolve.

Language involves verbal comprehension—the ability to comprehend written and spoken linguistic input, such as words, sentences, and paragraphs. It also involves verbal fluency—the ability to produce linguistic output. The smallest units of sound produced by the human vocal tract are phones. Phonemes are the smallest units of sound that can be used to differentiate meaning in a given language. The smallest semantically meaningful unit in a language is a morpheme. Morphemes may be either roots or affixes—prefixes or suffixes. Affixes in turn may be either content morphemes, conveying the bulk of the word's meaning, or function morphemes, augmenting the meaning of the word. A lexicon is the repertoire of morphemes in a given language (or for a given language user). The study of the meaningful sequencing of words within phrases and sentences in a given language is syntax. Larger units of language are embraced by the study of discourse.

2. What are some of the processes involved in language? In speech perception, listeners must overcome the influence of coarticulation (overlapping) of phonemes on the acoustic structure of the speech signal. Categorical perception is the phenomenon in which listeners perceive continuously varying speech sounds as distinct categories. It lends support to the notion that speech is perceived via specialized processes. The motor theory of speech perception attempts to explain these processes in relation to the processes involved in speech production. Those who believe speech perception is ordinary explain speech perception in terms of feature-detection, prototype, and Gestalt theories of perception.

Syntax is the study of the linguistic structure of sentences. Phrase-structure grammars analyze sentences in terms of the hierarchical relationships among words in phrases and sentences.

Transformational grammars analyze sentences in terms of transformational rules that describe interrelationships among the structures of various sentences. Some linguists have suggested a mechanism for linking syntax to semantics. By this mechanism, grammatical sentences contain particular slots for syntactical categories. These slots may be filled by words that have particular thematic roles within the sentences. According to this view, each item in a lexicon contains information regarding appropriate thematic roles, as well as appropriate syntactical categories.

3. How do perceptual processes interact with the cognitive processes of reading? The reading difficulties of people with dyslexia often relate to problems with the perceptual aspects of reading.

Reading comprises two basic kinds of processes: (1) lexical processes, which include sequences of eye fixations and lexical access; and (2) comprehension processes.

4. How does discourse help us understand individual words? Obviously, we can understand discourse only through analysis of words. But sometimes we understand words through discourse. For one example, sometimes in a conversation or watching a movie, we miss a word. The context of the discourse helps us figure out what the word was likely to be. As a second example, sometimes a word can have several meanings, such as "well." We use discourse to help us figure out which meaning is intended. As a third example, sometimes we realize, through discourse, that a word is intended to mean something different from its actual meaning, as in "Yeah, right!" Here, "right" is likely to be intended to mean "not really right at all." So discourse helps us understand individual words, just as the individual words help us understand discourse.
Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

1. Describe the six key properties of language.
2. In your opinion, why do some view speech perception to be special, whereas others consider speech perception to be ordinary?
3. Compare and contrast the speech-is-ordinary and speech-is-special views, particularly in reference to categorical perception and phonemic restoration.
4. How do phrase-structure diagrams reveal the alternative meanings of ambiguous sentences?
5. Write a noun phrase and a verb phrase. How are they different?
6. In this chapter, we saw that passive-voice sentences can be transformed into active-voice sentences using transformation rules. What are some other kinds of sentence structures that are related to one another? In your own words, state the transformation rules that would govern the changes from one form to another.
7. Based on the discussion of reading in this chapter, what practical suggestion could you recommend that might make reading easier for someone who is having difficulty reading?

Key Terms

categorical perception, p. 372
goarticulation, p. 369
communication, p. 361
comprehension processes, p. 388
connotation, p. 375
content morphemes, p. 366
deep structure, p. 383
denotation, p. 374
discourse, p. 392
dyslexia, p. 386
function morphemes, p. 366

grammer, p. 377
language, p. 360
lexical access, p. 388
lexical processes, p. 388
lexicon, p. 367
morpheme, p. 365
noun phrase, p. 367
phoneme, p. 365
phonemic-restoration effect, p. 371
phrase-structure grammar, p. 379

psycholinguistics, p. 361
referent, p. 362
semantics, p. 368
surface structure, p. 383
syntax, p. 367
thematic roles, p. 385
transformational grammar, p. 383
verb phrase, p. 367
word-superiority effect, p. 390

Media Resources

Visit the companion website—www.cengagebrain.com—for quizzes, research articles, chapter outlines, and more.

CogLab

Explore CogLab by going to http://coglab.wadsworth.com. To learn more, examine the following experiments:
Categorical Perception Identification
Discrimination
Suffix Effect
Lexical Decision
Word Superiority
CHAPTER OUTLINE

Language and Thought

Differences among Languages
  - The Sapir-Whorf Hypothesis
  - Linguistic Relativity or Linguistic Universals?

Bilingualism and Dialects
  - Bilingualism—An Advantage or Disadvantage?
  - Factors That Influence Second Language Acquisition
  - Bilingualism: One System or Two?
  - Language Mixtures and Change
  - Neuroscience and Bilingualism

Slips of the Tongue

Metaphorical Language

Language in a Social Context

Speech Acts
  - Direct Speech Acts
  - Indirect Speech Acts

Characteristics of Successful Conversations

Gender and Language

Do Animals Have Language?

Neuropsychology of Language
  - Brain Structures Involved in Language

The Brain and Word Recognition

The Brain and Semantic Processing

The Brain and Syntax

The Brain and Language Acquisition

The Placisticity of the Brain

The Brain and Sex Differences in Language Processing

The Brain and Sign Language

Aphasia
  - Wernicke’s Aphasia
  - Broca’s Aphasia
  - Global Aphasia
  - Anomic Aphasia

Autism

Key Themes

Summary

Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

Key Terms

Media Resources
Here are some of the questions we will explore in this chapter:

1. How does language affect the way we think?
2. How does our social context influence our use of language?
3. How can we find out about language by studying the human brain, and what do such studies reveal?

**BELIEVE IT OR NOT**

**Is It Possible to Count Without Words for Numbers?**

Not all cultures in the world have developed words for numbers. Even if they do have counting systems and words for numbers, those systems and words may be quite different. The Piraha tribe, which lives along the banks of the Amazon River in Brazil, has just three number words—one for the number 1, one for the number 2, and one that indicates “many.” Does this lack of number words interfere with people’s ability to deal with larger numerical quantities? Peter Gordon conducted experiments with members of the Piraha tribe and found that indeed, it does. He presented them with matching tasks where he lined up specific numbers of batteries and asked them to line up an equal amount. Although the Piraha were able to complete this task well for numbers of up to three, their performance declined as the numbers increased. This finding may indicate that we do not have an innate ability to count beyond small numbers. A lack of words for larger numbers may prevent people from thinking about those larger quantities (Gordon, 2004). In this chapter, we explore how people use language in a social context, and how the environment influences people’s language and cognition.

“My surgeon was a butcher.”

“His house is a rat’s nest.”

“Her sermons are sleeping pills.”

“He’s a real toad, and he always dates real dogs.”

“Abused children are walking time bombs.”

“My boss is a tiger in board meetings but a real pussycat with me.”

“Billboards are warts on the landscape.”

“My cousin is a vegetable.”

“John’s last girlfriend chewed him up and spit him out.”

Not one of the preceding statements is literally true. Yet fluent readers of English have little difficulty comprehending these metaphors and other non-literal forms of language. How do we comprehend them? One of the reasons that we can understand non-literal uses of language is that we can interpret the words we hear within a broader linguistic, cultural, social, and cognitive context.

In this chapter, we first focus on the cognitive context of language—we look at how language and thought interact. Next, we discuss some uses of language in its social context. Then we explore animal language because it puts human language in perspective. Finally, we examine some neuropsychological insights into language. Although the topics in this chapter are diverse, they all have one element in common: They address the issue of how language is used in the everyday contexts in which we need it to communicate with others and to make our communications as meaningful as we possibly can.
One of the most interesting areas in the study of language is the relationship between language and the thinking of the human mind (Harris, 2003). Many people believe that language shapes thoughts. It is for this reason that the Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association places big value on political correctness in researchers’ writings. And for this reason politicians and media use labels like “freedom fighters” versus “terrorists,” or “surgical strikes” versus “bombing raids” (Stapel & Semin, 2007).

Many different questions have been asked about the relationship between language and thought. We consider only some of them here. Studies comparing and contrasting users of differing languages and dialects form the basis of this section.

**Differences among Languages**

Why are there so many different languages around the world? And how does using any language in general and using a particular language influence human thought? As you know, different languages comprise different lexicons. They also use different syntactical structures. These differences often reflect variations in the physical and cultural environments in which the languages arose and developed. For example, in terms of lexicon, the Garo of Burma distinguish among many kinds of rice, which is understandable because they are a rice-growing culture. Nomadic Arabs have more than 20 words for camels. These peoples clearly conceptualize rice and camels more specifically and in more complex ways than do people outside their cultural groups. As a result of these linguistic differences, do the Garo think about rice differently than we do? And do the Arabs think about camels differently than we do? Consider the way we discuss computers. We differentiate between many aspects of computers, including whether the computer is a desktop or a laptop, a PC or a Mac, or uses Linux or Windows as an operating system. A person from a culture that does not have access to computers would not require so many words or distinctions to describe these machines. We expect, however, specific performance and features for a given computer based on these distinctions. Clearly, we think about computers in a way that is different than that of people who have never encountered a computer.

The syntactical structures of languages differ, too. Almost all languages permit some way in which to communicate actions, agents of actions, and objects of actions (Gerrig & Banaji, 1994). What differs across languages is the order of subject, verb, and object in a typical declarative sentence. Also differing is the range of grammatical inflections and other markings that speakers are obliged to include as key elements of a sentence. For example, in describing past actions in English, we indicate whether an action took place in the past by changing (inflecting) the verb form. For example, *walk* changes to *walked* in the past tense. In Spanish and German, the verb also must indicate whether the agent of action was singular or plural and whether it is being referred to in the first, second, or third person. In Turkish, the verb form must additionally indicate whether the action was witnessed or experienced directly by the speaker or was noted only indirectly. Do these differences and other differences in obligatory syntactical structures influence—or perhaps even constrain—the users of these languages to think about things differently because of the language they use while thinking? We will have a closer look at these questions in the next two sections, in which we explore the concepts of linguistic relativity and linguistic universals.
The Sapir-Whorf Hypothesis

The concept relevant to the question of whether language influences thinking is linguistic relativity. Linguistic relativity refers to the assertion that speakers of different languages have differing cognitive systems and that these different cognitive systems influence the ways in which people think about the world. Thus, according to the relativity view, the Garo would think about rice differently than we do. For example, the Garo would develop more cognitive categories for rice than would an English-speaking counterpart. What would happen when the Garo contemplated rice? They purportedly would view it differently—and perhaps with greater complexity of thought—than would English speakers, who have only a few words for rice. Thus, language would shape thought. There is some evidence that word learning may occur, in part, as a result of infants’ mental differentiations among various kinds of concepts (Carey, 1994; Xu & Carey, 1995, 1996). So it might make sense that infants who encounter different kinds of objects might make different kinds of mental differentiations. These differentiations would be a function of the culture in which the infants grew up.

The linguistic-relativity hypothesis is sometimes referred to as the Sapir-Whorf hypothesis, named after the two men who were most forceful in propagating it. Edward Sapir (1941/1964) said that “we see and hear and otherwise experience very largely as we do because the language habits of our community predispose certain choices of interpretation” (p. 69). Benjamin Lee Whorf (1956) stated this view even more strongly:

_We dissect nature along lines laid down by our native languages. The categories and types that we isolate from the world of phenomena we do not find there because they stare every observer in the face; on the contrary, the world is presented in a kaleidoscopic flux of impressions which has to be organized by our minds—and this means largely by the linguistic systems in our minds._ (p. 213)

The Sapir-Whorf hypothesis has been one of the most widely discussed ideas in all of the social and behavioral sciences (Lonner, 1989). However, some of its implications appear to have reached mythical proportions. For example, “many social scientists have warmly accepted and gladly propagated the notion that Eskimos have multitudinous words for the single English word snow. Contrary to popular beliefs, Eskimos do not have numerous words for snow (Martin, 1986). “No one who knows anything about Eskimo (or more accurately, about the Inuit and Yup’ik families of related languages spoken from Siberia to Greenland) has ever said they do” (Pullum, 1991, p. 160). Laura Martin, who has done more than anyone else to debunk the myth, understands why her colleagues might consider the myth charming. But she has been quite “disappointed” in the reaction of her colleagues when she pointed out the fallacy. Most, she says, took the position that true or not ‘it’s still a great example’” (Adler, 1991, p. 63). Apparently, we must exercise caution in our interpretation of findings regarding linguistic relativity.

Consider a milder form of linguistic relativism—it is that language may not determine thought, but that language certainly may influence thought. Our thoughts and our language interact in myriad ways, only some of which we now understand. Clearly, language facilitates thought; it even affects perception and memory. For some reason, we have limited means by which to manipulate non-linguistic images (Hunt & Banaji, 1988). Such limitations make desirable the use of language to facilitate mental representation and manipulation. Even nonsense pictures (“droodles”)
are recalled and redrawn differently, depending on the verbal label given to the picture (Bower, Karlin, & Dueck, 1975).

To see how this phenomenon might work, look at Figure 10.1. Suppose, instead of being labeled “beaded necklace,” it had been titled “beaded curtain.” You might have perceived it differently. However, once a particular label has been given, viewing the same figure from the alternative perspective is much harder (Glucksberg, 1988).

Psychologists have used other ambiguous figures (see Chapters 4 and 7) and have found similar results. Figure 10.2 illustrates three other figures that can be given alternative labels. When participants are given a particular label, they tend to draw their recollection of the figure in a way more similar to the given label. For example, after viewing a figure of two circles connected by a single line, they will draw a figure differently as a function of whether it is labeled “eyeglasses” or “dumbbells.” Specifically, the connecting line will either be lengthened or shortened, depending on the label.

Language also affects how we encode, store, and retrieve information in memory. Remember the examples in Chapter 6 regarding the label “Washing Clothes”? That label enhanced people’s responses to recall and comprehension questions about text passages (Bransford & Johnson, 1972, 1973). In a similar vein, eyewitness testimony is powerfully influenced by the distinctive phrasing of questions posed to
eyewitnesses (Loftus & Palmer, 1974; see also Chapter 6 for more information on eyewitness testimony). In a famous study, participants viewed an accident (Loftus & Palmer, 1974). Participants then were asked to describe the speeds of the cars before the accident. The word indicating impact was varied across participants. These words included smashed, collided, bumped, and hit. When the word smashed was used, the participants rated speed as significantly higher than when any of the other words were used. The connotation of the word smash thereby seems to bias participants to estimate a higher speed. Similarly, when participants were asked if they saw broken glass (after a week’s delay), the participants who were questioned with the word smashed said “yes” much more frequently than did any of the other participants (Loftus & Palmer, 1974). No other circumstances varied between participants, so the difference in the description of the accident is presumably the result of the word choice.

Even when participants generated their own descriptions, the subsequent accuracy of their eyewitness testimony declined (Schooler & Engstler-Schooler, 1990). Accurate recall actually declined following an opportunity to write a description of an observed event, a particular color, or a particular face. When given an opportunity to identify statements about an event—the actual color or a face—participants were less able to do so accurately if they previously had described it. Paradoxically, when participants were allowed to take their time in responding, their performance was even less accurate than when they were forced to respond quickly. In other words, given time to reflect on their answers, participants were more likely to respond in accord with what they had said or written than with what they had seen.

Is the Sapir-Whorf hypothesis relevant to everyday life? It almost certainly is. If language constrains our thought, then we may fail to see solutions to problems because we do not have the right words to express these solutions. Consider the

---

**Figure 10.2  Labels Affect Perception (part 2).**

When the original figures (in the center) are redrawn from memory, the new drawings tend to be distorted to be more like the labeled figures.


---
misunderstandings we have with people who speak other languages. For example, one of the authors once was in Japan talking to a Japanese college student, who referred to the author as an “Aryan.” The author explained that this concept has no basis in reality. It turned out that she meant to say “Alien,” but in Japanese, there is not distinction between the “l” and “r” sounds. Even then, referring to him as an “alien” was not particularly comforting to him. According to the Sapir-Whorf view, the misunderstandings may result from the fact that other languages parse words differently than ours does, and may use different phonemes as well. One must be grateful that extreme versions of the Sapir-Whorf hypothesis do not appear to be justified. Such versions would suggest that we are, figuratively, slaves to the words available to us.

**Linguistic Relativity or Linguistic Universals?**

There has been some research that addresses linguistic universals—characteristic patterns across all languages of various cultures—and relativity. Recall from Chapter 9 that linguists have identified hundreds of linguistic universals related to phonology (the study of phonemes), morphology (the study of morphemes), semantics, and syntax. For example, Chomsky would argue that deep structure applies, in its own way, to the syntaxes of all languages.

**Colors**

An area that illustrates much of this research focuses on color names. These words provide an especially convenient way of testing for universals. Why? Because people in every culture can be expected to be exposed, at least potentially, to pretty much the same range of colors.

In actuality, different languages name colors quite differently. But the languages do not divide the color spectrum arbitrarily. A systematic pattern seems universally to govern color naming across languages. Consider the results of investigations of color terms across a large number of languages (Berlin & Kay, 1969; Kay, 1975). Two apparent linguistic universals about color naming have emerged across languages. First, all the languages surveyed took their basic color terms from a set of just 11 color names. These are black, white, red, yellow, green, blue, brown, purple, pink, orange, and gray. Languages ranged from using all 11 color names, as in English, to using just two of the names, as in the Dani tribe of Western New Guinea (Rosch Heider, 1972). Second, when only some of the color names are used, the naming of colors falls into a hierarchy of five levels. The levels are (1) black, white; (2) red; (3) yellow, green, blue; (4) brown; and (5) purple, pink, orange, gray. Thus, if a language names only two colors, they will be black and white. If it names three colors, they will be black, white, and red. A fourth color will be taken from the set of yellow, green, and blue. The fifth and sixth will be taken from this set as well. Selection will continue until all 11 colors have been labeled. The order of selection within the categories may, however, vary between cultures (Jameson, 2005).

Another study had participants name various colors that were shown to them on color plates. Participants also were asked to choose the best example for each color (e.g., out of the many color plates presented, which is the best “red”?). This procedure was done for many languages, and the results showed that the “best” colors tended to cluster around the colors that English speakers call red, yellow, green, and blue (Regier et al., 2005). This result indicates that there are some universals in color perception.

In contrast, several studies have shown that color categories vary, depending on the speaker’s language. For example, Berinmo speakers from New Guinea tend to
aggregate colors together in one name (nol) that we call green and blue (Roberson et al., 2000, 2005). Other languages tend to see categorical differences where English speakers do not see any. For example, Russian speakers discriminate between light blue (goluboy) and dark blue (siniy) (Winawer et al., 2007). Various theories have been proposed of why color names differ in different cultures. It has been proposed, for example, that the sun’s ultraviolet rays causes people’s lenses to yellow, which makes it harder to discriminate between green and blue. The large sun exposure, then, in areas near the equator could be the reason for the relative scarcity of separate color terms for blue and green in some languages in this area (Lindsey & Brown, 2002). It also could be that color names are an evolutionary result of the most frequently occurring colors in the environment of members of a particular language group (Yendrikhovskij, 2001). But so far, none of the theories are consistent with each other.

So overall, while it seems that color naming is relatively universal in that it clusters worldwide around the same areas, color categories vary considerably and color names can have an impact on perception and cognition (Kay & Regier, 2006; Roberson & Hanley, 2007).

Verbs and Grammatical Gender Syntactical as well as semantic structural differences across languages may affect thought. For example, Spanish has two forms of the verb “to be”—ser and estar. However, they are used in different contexts. One investigator studied the uses of ser and estar in adults and in children (Sera, 1992).

When “to be” indicated the identity of something (e.g., in English, “This is José.”) or the class membership of something (e.g., “José is a carpenter.”), both adults and children used the verb form ser. Moreover, both adults and children used different verb forms when “to be” indicated attributes of things. Ser was used to indicate permanent attributes (e.g., “Maria is tall.”). Estar was also used to indicate temporary attributes (e.g., “Maria is busy.”). Finally, when using forms of “to be” to describe the locations of objects, including people, animals, and other things, both adults and children used estar (e.g., “Marie is on the chair.”). However, when using forms of
“to be” to describe the locations of events (e.g., meetings or parties), adults used ser, whereas children continued to use estar.

Sera (1992) interprets these findings as indicating two things. First, ser seems to be used primarily for indicating permanent conditions, such as identity; class inclusion; and relatively permanent, stable attributes of things. Estar seems to be used primarily for indicating temporary conditions, such as short-term attributes of things and the location of objects. These things often are subject to change from one place to another. Moreover, children treat the location of events in the same way as the location of objects. They view it as temporary and hence use estar. Adults, in contrast, differentiate between events and objects. In particular, adults consider the locations of events to be unchanging. Because they are permanent, they require the use of ser.

Other researchers have also suggested that young children have difficulty distinguishing between objects and events (e.g., Keil, 1979). Young children also find it difficult to recognize the permanent status of many attributes (Marcus & Overton, 1978). Thus, the developmental differences regarding the use of ser to describe the location of events may indicate developmental differences in cognition. Sera's work suggests that differences in language use may indeed indicate differences in thinking. However, her work leaves open an important psychological question. Do native Spanish speakers have a more differentiated sense of the temporary and the permanent than do native English speakers, who use the same verb form to express both senses of “to be”? The answer is unclear.

Other languages also have been used in investigations of linguistic relativity. Some studies explore the relevance of different languages using different prepositions. In English, people use the prepositions “in” and “on” to describe putting a pear in a bowl or putting a cup on the table. “In” refers to containment of some sort, whereas “on” refers to support. Korean speakers differentiate between “tight fit” (kkita, like a DVD in its sleeve) and “loose fit” (nehta, like a pear in a bowl) in their prepositions. In one experiment, participants were shown several spatial actions and had to pick the one that seemed “odd” and not to fit the other actions. The spatial actions were performed with objects of different texture and material (e.g., wooden or made of sponge) and showed the objects either being put in a tight-fitting setting or a loose container. In all, 80% of the Korean speakers picked the odd scene on the basis of whether or not it involved tight/loose fit. In comparison, only 37% of English speakers did. The majority of English speakers picked out a scene where the material or shape of the object differed (McDonough et al., 2003).

Another experiment tested the effect of grammatical gender. The study was conducted in English, but participants were native German and Spanish speakers. They were presented with 24 noun words that they had to describe in three adjectives each. In all, 12 of the nouns were feminine in German and masculine in Spanish, and the other 12 nouns were masculine in German and feminine in Spanish. There were marked differences in how the objects were described, depending on their gender. For example, the word “key,” which is feminine in Spanish (la llave), was described by the Spanish speakers as “golden, intricate, little, lovely.” In German, the word “key” is masculine (der Schlüssel) and was described as “hard, heavy, jagged, metal.” The effect is especially impressive because the experiment was conducted in English and did not involve the participants speaking German or Spanish (Boroditsky et al., 2003).
Also consider some more facts:

- Children who learn Mandarin Chinese tend to use more verbs than nouns. In contrast, children acquiring English or Italian tend to use more nouns than verbs (Tardif, 1996; Tardif, Shatz, & Naigles, 1997).

What differences in thinking might such differences in acquisition imply? No one knows for sure.

**Concepts** An intriguing experiment assessed the possible effects of linguistic relativity by studying people who speak more than one language (Hoffman, Lau, & Johnson, 1986). In Chinese, a single term, *shì gÈ*, specifically describes a person who is "worldly, experienced, socially skillful, devoted to his or her family, and somewhat reserved" (p. 1098). English clearly has no comparable single term to embrace these diverse characteristics. Hoffman and his colleagues composed text passages in English and in Chinese describing various characters. They included the *shì gÈ* stereotype, without, of course, specifically using the term *shì gÈ* in the descriptions. The researchers then asked participants who were fluent in both Chinese and English to read the passages either in Chinese or in English. Then they rated various statements about the characters, in terms of the likelihood that the statements would be true of the characters. Some of these statements involved a stereotype of a *shì gÈ* person.

Their results seemed to support the notion of linguistic relativity. The participants were more likely to rate the various statements in accord with the *shì gÈ* stereotype when they had read the passages in Chinese than when they had read the passages in English. Similarly, when participants were asked to write their own impressions of the characters, their descriptions conformed more closely to the *shì gÈ* stereotype if they previously read the passages in Chinese. These authors do not suggest that it would be impossible for English speakers to comprehend the *shì gÈ* stereotype. Rather, they suggest that having that stereotype readily accessible facilitates its mental manipulation.

Research on linguistic relativity is a good example of the dialectic in action. Before Sapir and Whorf, the issue of how language constrains thought was not salient in the minds of psychologists. Sapir and Whorf then presented a thesis that language largely controls thought. After they presented their thesis, a number of psychologists tried to show the antithesis. They argued that language does not control thought. Today, many psychologists believe in a synthesis: Language has some influence on thought but not nearly so extreme an influence as Sapir and Whorf believed.

The question of whether linguistic relativity exists, and if so, to what extent, remains open. There may be a mild form of relativity in the sense that language can influence thought. However, a stronger deterministic form of relativity is less likely. Based on the available evidence, language does not seem to determine differences in thought among members of various cultures. Finally, it is probably the case that language and thought interact with each other throughout the life span (Vygotsky, 1986).
Eye Movements and Reading

Reading is a remarkable achievement of the human brain/mind. How do we understand written language on a moment-to-moment basis? This is the primary question that has driven my research for many years. We typically use eye movement measures as a reflection of moment-to-moment processing. A considerable amount of research from my lab (and others) clearly documents that how long readers look at words in text is strongly influenced by cognitive processes and the ease or difficulty associated with processing a word. For example, readers look longer at low-frequency words (like “vituperative”) than high-frequency words (like “house”).

There are a number of critical issues that needed attention before one could safely assume that eye movements reflect moment-to-moment processing. In reading, our eyes pause on average for about 200–250 milliseconds. How much useful information do readers obtain on each fixation? To answer this question, George McConkie and I developed a gaze-contingent moving window paradigm in which we controlled how much information readers had available on each fixation. We found that the span of perception in reading extends about 3–4 letter spaces to the left of fixation to about 14–15 letters spaces to the right of fixation for readers of English.

In subsequent work, I developed a gaze-contingent boundary paradigm to determine what kind of information readers obtain from the word to the right of fixation. This work documented that readers obtain a preview benefit from having valid information to the right of fixation. We found that the span of perception in reading extends about 3–4 letter spaces to the left of fixation to about 14–15 letters spaces to the right of fixation for readers of English.

In subsequent work, I developed a gaze-contingent boundary paradigm to determine what kind of information readers obtain from the word to the right of fixation. This work documented that readers obtain a preview benefit from having valid information to the right of fixation. In these types of experiments (which are quite popular these days), the type of information that is available in a target word location is manipulated (so for example, the preview might be the word chest), but during the eye movement to the word, the preview changes to the target word (chart). The amount of preview benefit depends on how far away the eyes were from the target word when the saccade was launched and the relationship between the preview and the target.

A final type of gaze-contingent technique that we developed is the disappearing-text paradigm. Here, on each fixation, the word the reader is looking at disappears (or is masked) early in a fixation. One remarkable finding is that readers can read normally if they get to see the fixated word for 50–60 milliseconds (this doesn’t mean that word recognition is completed in this time, just that the information has been entered into the processing system). Second, how long the eyes remain in place is strongly influenced by the frequency of the fixated word: if it is a low-frequency word, the eyes remain on it longer than if it is a high-frequency word. This is very good evidence that cognitive processing drives eye movements during reading.

Given these findings, eye movements can be used to study moment-to-moment processing. In my lab, we have taken advantage of the various types of ambiguity that exist in written English to strive to understand readers’ moment-to-moment comprehension processes. Thus, we have studied how readers parse sentences that contain temporary syntactic ambiguities, as well as how they deal with lexically ambiguous words (words with two meanings, like bank and straw) and phonologically ambiguous words (that are spelled the same, but have two different pronunciations). We have also used eye movement data to study higher-level discourse processing, though the link between such processes and how long readers look at parts of the text is much more tenuous than is the case with lexical processes. Finally, given that we have learned so much about the relationship between eye movements and reading, we (Erik Reichle, Sandy Pollatsek, Don Fisher, and myself) developed a model of eye movement control in reading (called the E-Z Reader model) that does a good job of predicting where readers fixate and how long they fixate on words.
Bilingualism and Dialects

Suppose a person can speak and think in two languages. Does the person think differently in each language? Do bilinguals—people who can speak two languages—think differently from monolinguals—people who can speak only one language? (Multilinguals speak at least two and possibly more languages.) What differences, if any, emanate from the availability of two languages versus just one? Might bilingualism affect intelligence, positively or negatively?

Bilingualism—An Advantage or Disadvantage?

Does bilingualism make thinking in any one language more difficult, or does it enhance thought processes? The data are somewhat contradictory. Different participant populations, different methodologies, different language groups, and different experimenter biases may have contributed to the inconsistency in the literature. Consider what happens when bilinguals are balanced bilinguals, who are roughly equally fluent in both languages, and when they come from middle-class backgrounds. In these instances, positive effects of bilingualism tend to be found. Executive functions, which are located primarily in the prefrontal cortex and include abilities such as to shift between tasks or ignore distracters, are enhanced in bilingual individuals. Even the onset of dementia in bilinguals may be delayed by as much as four years (Andreou & Karapetkas, 2004; Bialystok & Craik, 2010; Bialystok et al., 2007). But negative effects may result as well. Bilingual speakers tend to have smaller vocabularies and their access to lexical items in memory is slower (Bialystok, 2001b; Bialystok & Craik, 2010). What might be the causes of this difference?

Let us distinguish between what might be called additive versus subtractive bilingualism (Cummins, 1976). In additive bilingualism, a second language is acquired in addition to a relatively well-developed first language. In subtractive bilingualism, elements of a second language replace elements of the first language. It appears that the additive form results in increased thinking ability. In contrast, the subtractive form results in decreased thinking ability (Cummins, 1976). In particular, there may be something of a threshold effect. Individuals may need to be at a certain relatively high level of competence in both languages for a positive effect of bilingualism. Classroom teachers often discourage bilingualism in children (Sook Lee & Oxelson, 2006). Either through letters requesting only English be spoken at home, or through subtle attitudes and methods, many teachers actually encourage subtractive bilingualism (Sook Lee & Oxelson, 2006). Additionally, children from backgrounds with lower socioeconomic status (SES) may be more likely to be subtractive bilinguals than are children from the middle SES. Their SES may be a factor in their being hurt rather than helped by their bilingualism.

Researchers also distinguish between simultaneous bilingualism, which occurs when a child learns two languages from birth, and sequential bilingualism, which occurs when an individual first learns one language and then another (Bhatia & Ritchie, 1999). Either form of language learning can contribute to fluency. It depends on the particular circumstances in which the languages are learned (Pearson et al., 1997). It is known, however, that infants begin babbling at roughly the same age. This happens regardless of whether they consistently are exposed to one or two languages (Oller et al., 1997). In the United States, many people make a big deal of bilingualism, perhaps because relatively few Americans born in the United States of non-immigrant parents learn a second language to a high degree of fluency. In other cultures, however, the learning of multiple languages is taken for granted. For example, in parts of India, people routinely may learn as many as four languages.
In Flemish-speaking Belgium, many people learn at least some French, English, and/or German. Often, they learn one or more of these other languages to a high degree of fluency.

Factors That Influence Second Language Acquisition

A significant factor believed to contribute to acquisition of a language is age. Some researchers have suggested that native-like mastery of some aspects of a second language is rarely acquired after adolescence. Other researchers disagree with this view (Bahrick et al., 1994; Herschensohn, 2007). They found that some aspects of a second language, such as vocabulary comprehension and fluency, seem to be acquired just as well after adolescence as before. Furthermore, these researchers found that even some aspects of syntax seem to be acquired readily after adolescence. These results are contrary to prior findings. The mastery of native-like pronunciation often seems to depend on early acquisition. But individual differences are great and some learners attain native-like language abilities even at a later age (Birdsong, 2009). It may seem surprising that learning completely novel phonemes in a second language may be easier than learning phonemes that are highly similar to the phonemes of the first language (Flege, 1991). In any case, there do not appear to be critical periods for second-language acquisition (Birdsong, 1999, 2009). Adults may appear to have a harder time learning second languages because they can retain their native language as their dominant language. Young children, in contrast, who typically need to attend school in the new language, may have to switch their dominant language. So, they learn the new language to a higher level of mastery (Jia & Aaronson, 1999). A study on second language acquisition found that age and proficiency in a language are negatively correlated (Mechelli et al., 2004). This finding has been well documented (Birdsong, 2006). This does not mean that we cannot learn a new language later in life, but rather, that the earlier we learn it, the more likely we will become highly proficient in its use.

What kinds of learning experiences facilitate second-language acquisition? There is no single correct answer to that question (Bialystok & Hakuta, 1994). One reason is that each individual language learner brings distinctive cognitive abilities and knowledge to the language-learning experience. In addition, the kinds of learning experiences that facilitate second-language acquisition should match the context and uses for the second language once it is acquired.

For example, consider these individuals:

- Caitlin, a young child, may not need to master a wealth of vocabulary and complex syntax to get along well with other children. If she can master the phonology, some simple syntactical rules, and some basic vocabulary, she may be considered fluent.
- Similarly, José needs only to get by in a few everyday situations, such as shopping, handling routine family business transactions, and getting around town. He may be considered proficient after mastering some simple vocabulary and syntax, as well as some pragmatic knowledge regarding context-appropriate manners of communicating.
- Kim Yee must be able to communicate regarding her specialized technical field. She may be considered proficient if she masters the technical vocabulary, a primitive basic vocabulary, and the rudiments of syntax.
- Sumesh is a student who studies a second language in an academic setting. Sumesh may be expected to have a firm grasp of syntax and a rather broad, if shallow, vocabulary.
Each of these language learners may require different kinds of language experiences to gain the proficiency being sought. Different kinds of experiences may be needed to enhance their competence in the phonology, vocabulary, syntax, and pragmatics of the second language.

When speakers of one language learn other languages, they find the languages differentially difficult. For example, it is much easier, on average, for a native speaker of English to acquire Spanish as a second language than it is to acquire Russian. One reason is that English and Spanish share more roots than do English and Russian. Moreover, Russian is much more highly inflected than are English and Spanish. English and Spanish are more highly dependent on word order. The difficulty of learning a language as a second language, however, does not appear to have much to do with its difficulty as a first language. Russian infants probably learn Russian about as easily as U.S. infants learn English (Maratsos, 1998).

Bilingualism: One System or Two?

One way of approaching the study of bilingualism is to apply what we have learned from cognitive-psychological research to practical concerns regarding how to help with acquisition of a second language. Another approach is to study bilingual individuals to see how bilingualism may offer insight into the human mind. Some cognitive psychologists have been interested in finding out how the two languages are represented in the bilingual’s mind. The single-system hypothesis suggests that two languages are represented in just one system or brain region (see Hernandez et al., 2001, for evidence supporting this hypothesis in early bilinguals). Alternatively, the dual-system hypothesis suggests that two languages are represented somehow in separate systems of the mind (De Houwer, 1995; Paradis, 1981). For instance, might German language information be stored in a physically different part of the brain than English language information? Figure 10.3 shows schematically the difference in the two points of view.

One way to address this question is through the study of bilinguals who have experienced brain damage. Suppose a bilingual person has brain damage in a particular part of the brain. According to the dual-system hypothesis, the individual would show different degrees of impairment in the two languages. The single-system view would suggest roughly equal impairment in the two languages. The logic of this kind of investigation is compelling, but the results are not. When recovery of language after trauma is studied, sometimes the first language recovers first; sometimes the second language recovers first. And sometimes recovery is about equal for the two languages (Albert & Obler, 1978; Marrero et al., 2002; Paradis, 1977). Recovery of one or both languages seems contingent on age of acquisition of the second language and on pre-incident language proficiency, among other factors (Marrero, Golden, & Espé Pfeifer, 2002).

A 32-year-old French-German bilingual who suffered from a stroke and subsequent aphasia was trained in German but was given no training in French. The researchers found significant recovery of German, but his German language abilities did not transfer to his French abilities (Meinzer et al., 2007).

The conclusions that can be drawn from all this research are ambiguous. Nevertheless, the results seem to suggest at least some duality of structure. A different method of study has led to an alternative perspective on bilingualism. Two investigators mapped the region of the cerebral cortex relevant to language use in two of their bilingual patients being treated for epilepsy (Ojemann & Whitaker, 1978).
Mild electrical stimulation was applied to the cortex of each patient. Electrical stimulation tends to inhibit activity where it is applied. It leads to a reduced ability to name objects for which the memories are stored at the location being stimulated. The results for both patients were the same. They may help explain the contradictions in the literature. Some areas of the brain showed equal impairments for object naming in both languages. But other areas of the brain showed differential impairment in one or the other language. The results also suggested that the weaker language was more diffusely represented across the cortex than was the stronger language. In other words, asking the question of whether two languages are represented singly or separately may be asking the wrong question. The results of this study suggest that some aspects of the two languages may be represented singly; other aspects may be represented separately.

To summarize, two languages seem to share some, but not all, aspects of mental representation. Learning a second language is often a plus, but it is probably most useful if the individual learning the second language is in an environment in which the learning of the second language adds to rather than subtracts from the learning of the first language. For beneficial effects to appear, the second language must be learned well. In the approach usually taken in schools, students may receive as little as two or three years of second-language instruction spread out over a few class periods a week. This approach probably will not be sufficient for the beneficial effects of bilingualism to appear. However, schooling does seem to yield beneficial effects on acquisition of syntax. This is particularly so when a second language is acquired after adolescence. Furthermore, whenever possible, individual learners should choose specific kinds of language-acquisition techniques that best fit their needs, abilities, preferences, and personal goals for using the second language.

Figure 10.3  Single-System and Dual-System Hypotheses.
The single-system conceptualization hypothesizes that both languages are represented in a unified cognitive system. The dual-system conceptualization of bilingualism hypothesizes that each language is represented in a separate cognitive system.
Language Mixtures and Change

Bilingualism is not a certain outcome of linguistic contact between different language groups. Here are some scenarios of what can happen when different language groups come into contact with each other:

- Sometimes when people of two different language groups are in prolonged contact with one another, the language users of the two groups begin to share some vocabulary that is superimposed onto each group’s language use. This superimposition results in what is known as a *pidgin*. It is a language that has no native speakers (Wang, 2009).

- Over time, this admixture can develop into a distinct linguistic form. It has its own grammar and hence becomes a *creole*. An example of a creole is the Haitian Creole language, spoken in Haiti. The Haitian Creole language is a combination of French and a number of West African languages.

- Modern creoles may resemble an evolutionarily early form of language, termed *protolanguage* (Bickerton, 1990).

The existence of pidgins and creoles, and possibly a protolanguage, supports the universality notion discussed earlier. That is, linguistic ability is so natural and universal that, given the opportunity, humans actually invent new languages quite rapidly.

Creoles and pidgins arise when two linguistically distinctive groups meet. The counterpart—a dialect—occurs when a single linguistic group gradually diverges toward somewhat distinctive variations. A *dialect* is a regional variety of a language distinguished by features such as vocabulary, syntax, and pronunciation. The study of dialects provides insights into such diverse phenomena as auditory discrimination and social discrimination. Many of the words we choose are a result of the dialect we use. The most well-known example is the word choice for a soft drink. Depending on the dialect you use, you may order a “soda,” “pop,” or a “Coke” (see Figure 10.4).

![Pop vs. Soda data as of October 3, 2002](http://popvssoda.com:2998/)

**Figure 10.4  The Pop vs. Soda Controversy.**

This map shows the distribution of different words used for “soft drink” across the United States. What word people use depends on the dialect they speak.

Dialectical differences often represent harmless regional variations. They create few serious communication difficulties, but these difficulties can lead to some confusion. In the United States, for example, when national advertisers give toll-free numbers to call, they sometimes route the calls to the Midwest. They do so because they have learned that the Midwestern form of speech seems to be the most universally understood form within the country. Other forms, such as southern and northeastern ones, may be harder for people from diverse parts of the country to understand. And when calls are routed to other countries, such as India, there may be serious difficulties in achieving effective communication because of differences in dialect as well as accent. Many radio announcers try to learn something close to a standard form of English, often called “network English.” In this way, they can maximize their comprehensibility to as many listeners as possible.

Sometimes, differing dialects are assigned different social statuses, such as standard forms having higher status than non-standard ones. The distinction between standard and non-standard forms of a language can become unfortunate when speakers of one dialect start to view themselves as speakers of a superior dialect. The view that one dialect is superior to another may lead one to make judgments about the speaker that are biased. This linguicism, or stereotype based on dialect, may be quite widespread and can cause many interpersonal problems (Phillipson, 2010; Zuidema, 2005). For example, we frequently make judgments about people’s intelligence, competence, and morality based on the dialect they use. Specifically, a person who uses a non-standard form may be judged to be less educated or less trustworthy than a person who uses a more standard form. Usually, the standard dialect is that of the class in society that has the most political or economic power. Virtually any thought can be expressed in any dialect.

**Neuroscience and Bilingualism**

Learning a second language increases the gray matter in the left inferior parietal cortex (Mechelli et al., 2004). This density is positively correlated with proficiency. Thus, the more proficient a person is in a second language, the denser this area of the brain will be. Finally, a negative correlation exists between age of acquisition and the density in the left inferior parietal cortex (Mechelli et al., 2004)—the higher the age of acquisition, the less the density. These findings suggest that this area of the brain benefits from the learning of a second language and that the earlier this learning occurs, the better it is both for brain density and for overall proficiency.

Studies with aphasic patients suggest that first and second languages may be distributed in different anatomic regions of the brain. This assumption comes from the observation of a bilingual patient who suffered a stroke and subsequently had impaired language skills in his native language. His second language, however, was unaffected (Garcia et al., 2010). Other studies, however, suggest, that the brain regions activated by two languages may actually overlap (Gandour et al., 2007; Yokohama et al., 2006). Whether or not the same brain areas are involved likely depends on other factors, like the age of acquisition of the second language.

One study had bilingual persons complete a sentence-generation task (i.e., participants were asked to create sentences). The study showed that the centers of activation in the left inferior frontal gyrus are overlapping for early bilinguals. Late bilinguals, however, show separate centers of activation (Kim et al., 1997).
Slips of the Tongue

An area of particular interest to cognitive psychologists is how people use language incorrectly. Studying speech errors helps cognitive psychologists better understand normal language processing. One way of using language incorrectly is through slips of the tongue—inadvertent linguistic errors in what we say. They may occur at any level of linguistic analysis: phonemes, morphemes, or larger units of language (Crystal, 1987; McArthur, 1992). In such cases, what we think and what we mean to say do not correspond to what we actually do say. Freudian psychoanalysts have suggested that in Freudian slips, the verbal slips reflect some kind of unconscious processing that has psychological significance. The slips are alleged often to indicate repressed emotions. For example, a business competitor may say, “I’m glad to beat you,” when what was overtly intended was, “I’m glad to meet you.”

Most cognitive psychologists see things differently from the psychoanalytic view. They are intrigued by slips of the tongue because of what the lack of correspondence between what is thought and what is said may tell us about how language is produced. In speaking, we have a mental plan for what we are going to say. Sometimes, however, this plan is disrupted when our mechanism for speech production does not cooperate with our cognitive one. Often, such errors result from intrusions by other thoughts or by stimuli in the environment, such as a background noise from radio talk show or a neighboring conversation (Garrett, 1980; Saito & Baddeley, 2004).

Slips of the tongue may be taken to indicate that the language of thought differs somewhat from the language through which we express our thoughts (Fodor, 1975). Often we have the idea right, but its expression comes out wrong. Sometimes we are not even aware of the slip until it is pointed out to us. In the language of the mind, whatever it may be, the idea is right, although the expression represented by the slip is inadvertently wrong. This fact can be seen in the occasional slips of the tongue even in preplanned and practiced speech (Kawachi, 2002).

People tend to make various kinds of slips in their conversations (Fromkin, 1973; Fromkin & Rodman, 1988):

- In **anticipation**, the speaker uses a language element before it is appropriate in the sentence because it corresponds to an element that will be needed later in the utterance. For example, instead of saying, “an inspiring expression,” a speaker might say, “an expiring expression.”
- In **perseveration**, the speaker uses a language element that was appropriate earlier in the sentence but that is not appropriate later on. For example, a speaker might say, “We sat down to a bounteous beast” instead of a “bounteous feast.”
- In **substitution**, the speaker substitutes one language element for another. For example, you may have warned someone to do something “after it is too late,” when you meant “before it is too late.”
- In **reversal** (also called “transposition”), the speaker switches the positions of two language elements. An example is the reversal that reportedly led “flutterby” to become “butterfly.” This reversal captivated language users so much that it is now the preferred form. Sometimes, reversals can be fortuitously opportune.
- In **spoonerisms**, the initial sounds of two words are reversed and make two entirely different words. The term is named after the Reverend William Spooner, who was famous for them. Some of his choicest slips include, “You have hissed all my mystery lectures,” [missed all my history lectures] and “Easier for a camel to go through the knee of an idol” [the eye of a needle] (Clark & Clark, 1977).
In *malapropism*, one word is replaced by another that is similar in sound but different in meaning (e.g., furniture dealers selling “naughty pine” instead of “knotty pine”).

Additionally, slips may occur because of *insertions of sounds* (e.g., “mischievous” instead of “mischievous” or “drowned” instead of “drowned”) or other linguistic elements. The opposite kind of slip involves deletions (e.g., sound deletions such as “prossing” instead of “processing”). Such deletions often involve blends (e.g., “blounds” for “blended sounds”).

Each kind of slip of the tongue may occur at different hierarchical levels of linguistic processing (Dell, 1986). That is, it may occur at the acoustical level of phonemes, as in “bounteous beast” instead of “bounteous feast.” It may occur at the semantic level of morphemes, as in “after it’s too late” instead of “before it’s too late.” Or it may occur at even higher levels, as in “bought the bucket” instead of “kicked the bucket” or “bought the farm.” The patterns of errors (e.g., reversals, substitutions) at each hierarchical level tend to be parallel (Dell, 1986). For example, in phonemic errors, initial consonants tend to interact with initial consonants, as in “tasting wime” instead of “wasting time.” Final consonants tend to interact with final consonants, as in “bing his tut” instead of “bit his tongue.” Prefixes often interact with prefixes, as in “expiring expression,” and so on.

Also, errors at each level of linguistic analysis suggest particular kinds of insights into how we produce speech. Consider, for example, phonemic errors. A stressed word, which is emphasized through speech rhythm and tone, is more likely to influence other words than is an unstressed word (Crystal, 1987). Furthermore, even when sounds are switched, the basic rhythmic and tonal patterns usually are preserved. An example is the emphasis on “hissed” and the first syllable of “mystery” in the first spoonerism quoted here.

Even at the level of words, the same parts of speech tend to be involved in the errors we produce (e.g., nouns interfere with other nouns, and verbs with verbs; Bock, 1990; Bock, Loebell, & Morey, 1992). In the second spoonerism quoted here, Spooner managed to preserve the syntactical categories, the nouns knee and idol. He also preserved the grammaticality of the sentence by changing the articles from “a needle” to “an idol.” Even in the case of word substitutions, syntactic categories are preserved. In speech errors, semantic categories, too, may be preserved. An example would be naming a category when intending to name a member of the category, such as “fruit” for “apple.” Another example would be naming the wrong member of the category, such as “peach” for “apple.” A last example would be naming a member of a category when intending to name the category as a whole, as in “peach” for “fruit” (Garrett, 1992).

People who are fluent in sign language and mouth at the same time they sign have slips of the tongue (or hand) occurring independently of each other, indicating that oral words and sign words are not stored together in that person’s lexicon (Vinson et al., 2010).

Another aspect of language that offers us a distinctive view is the study of *metaphorical language*.

**Metaphorical Language**

Until now, we have discussed primarily the literal uses of language. At least as interesting to poets and to many others is the non-literal, figurative use of language.
A notable example is the use of metaphors as a way of expressing thoughts. Metaphors juxtapose two nouns in a way that positively asserts their similarities, while not disconfirming their dissimilarities (e.g., The house was a pigsty). Related to metaphors are similes. Similes introduce the words like or as into a comparison between items (e.g., The child was as quiet as a mouse).

Metaphors contain four key elements: Two are the items being compared, a tenor and a vehicle. And two are ways in which the items are related. The tenor is the topic of the metaphor (e.g., house). The vehicle is what the tenor is described in terms of (e.g., pigsty). For example, consider the metaphor, “Billboards are warts on the landscape.” The tenor is “billboards.” The vehicle is “warts.” The ground of the metaphor is the set of similarities between the tenor and the vehicle (e.g., both are messy). The tension of the metaphor is the set of dissimilarities between the two (e.g., people do not live in pigsties but do live in houses). We may conjecture that a key similarity (ground) between billboards and warts is that they are both considered unattractive. The dissimilarities (tension) between the two are many, including that billboards appear on buildings, highways, and other impersonal public locations. But warts appear on diverse personal locations on an individual.

Various theories have been proposed to explain how metaphors work. The traditional views have highlighted either the ways in which the tenor and the vehicle are similar or the ways in which they differ.

- The traditional comparison view highlights the importance of the comparison. It underscores the comparative similarities and analogical relationship between the tenor and the vehicle (Malgady & Johnson, 1976; Miller, 1979; cf. also Sternberg & Nigro, 1983). As applied to the metaphor, “Abused children are walking time bombs,” the comparison view underscores the similarity between the elements: their potential for explosion.
- In contrast, the anomaly view of metaphor emphasizes the dissimilarity between the tenor and the vehicle (Beardsley, 1962; Gerrig & Healy, 1983; Searle, 1979). The anomaly view would highlight the dissimilarities between abused children and time bombs.
- The domain-interaction view integrates aspects of each of the preceding views. It suggests that a metaphor is more than a comparison and more than an anomaly. According to this view, a metaphor involves an interaction of some kind between the domain (area of knowledge, such as animals, machines, plants) of the tenor and the domain of the vehicle (Black, 1962; Hesse, 1966). The exact form of this interaction differs somewhat from one theory to another. The metaphor often is more effective when two circumstances occur. First, the tenor and the vehicle share many similar characteristics (e.g., the potential explosiveness of abused children and time bombs). Second, the domains of the tenor and the vehicle are highly dissimilar (e.g., the domain of humans and the domain of weapons) (Tourangeau & Sternberg, 1981, 1982).
- Another view is that that metaphors are essentially a non-literal form of class-inclusion statements (Glucksberg & Keysar, 1990). According to this view, the tenor of each metaphor is a member of the class characterized by the vehicle of the given metaphor. That is, we understand metaphors not as statements of comparison but as statements of category membership, in which the vehicle is a prototypical member of the category. Suppose I say, “My colleague’s partner is an iceberg.” I am thereby saying that the partner belongs to the category of things that are characterized by an utter lack of personal warmth, extreme
rigidity, and the ability to produce a massively chilling effect on anyone in the surrounding environment. For a metaphor to work well, the reader should find the salient features of the vehicle ("iceberg") to be unexpectedly relevant as features of the tenor ("my colleague’s partner"). That is, the reader should be at least mildly surprised that prominent features of the vehicle may characterize the tenor. But after consideration, the reader should agree that those features do describe the tenor.

Metaphors enrich our language in ways that literal statements cannot match. Our understanding of metaphors seems to require not only some kind of comparison. It also requires that the domains of the vehicle and of the tenor interact in some way. Reading a metaphor can change our perception of both domains. It therefore can educate us in a way that is perhaps more difficult to transmit through literal speech.

A very prominent metaphor in cognitive psychology is that of humans as information processors. This metaphor highlights certain aspects of humans, such as our limited capacity for information processing. This limited capacity leads us to be selective in terms of what information to attend to in our environment (Newell & Broeder, 2008). Metaphors such as that of the human information processor guide scientific thinking and research.

Metaphors can enrich our speech in social contexts. For example, suppose we say to someone, “You are a prince.” Chances are that we do not mean that the person is literally a prince. Rather, we mean that the person has characteristics of a prince. How, in general, do we use language to negotiate social contexts? We explore the social contexts of language in the next section.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What is linguistic relativity?
2. What impact can language have on the perception of color?
3. What is additive bilingualism?
4. Does age influence our ability to learn languages?
5. What are the single-system and dual-system hypotheses?
6. Name some kinds of slips of the tongue people make when they speak.
7. What are the key elements of metaphors?

---

**Language in a Social Context**

The study of the social context of language is a relatively new area of linguistic research. One aspect of context is the investigation of **pragmatics**, the study of how people use language. It includes sociolinguistics and other aspects of the social context of language.

Under most circumstances, you change your use of language in response to contextual cues without giving these changes much thought. Similarly, you usually unconsciously change your language patterns to fit different contexts.

For example, in speaking with a conversational partner, you seek to establish common ground, or a shared basis for engaging in a conversation (Clark & Brennan, 1991). When we are with people who share background, knowledge, motives, or
goals, establishing common ground is likely to be easy and scarcely noticeable. When little is shared, however, such common ground may be hard to find.

Gestures and vocal inflections, which are forms of nonverbal communication, can help establish common ground. One aspect of nonverbal communication is personal space—the distance between people in a conversation or other interaction that is considered comfortable for members of a given culture. Proxemics is the study of interpersonal distance or its opposite, proximity. It concerns itself with relative distancing and the positioning of you and your fellow conversants. In the United States, 2.45 feet to 2.72 feet are considered about right. In Mexico, the adequate distance ranges from 1.65 to 2.14 feet, whereas in Costa Rica it is between 1.22 and 1.32 feet (Baxter, 1970). Scandinavians expect more distance. Middle Easterners, southern Europeans, and South Americans expect less (Sommer, 1969; Watson, 1970).

When on our own familiar turf, we take our cultural views of personal space for granted. Only when we come into contact with people from other cultures do we notice these differences. For example, when the author was visiting Venezuela, he noticed his cultural expectations coming into conflict with the expectations of those around him. He often found himself in a comical dance: He would back off from the person with whom he was speaking; meanwhile, that person was trying to move closer. Within a given culture, greater proximity generally indicates one or more of three things. First, the people see themselves in a close relationship. Second, the people are participating in a social situation that permits violation of the bubble of personal space, such as close dancing. Third, the “violator” of the bubble is dominating the interaction.

Even within our own culture, there are differences in the amount of personal space that is expected. For instance, when two colleagues are interacting, the personal space is much smaller than when an employee and supervisor are interacting. When two women are talking, they stand closer together than when two men are talking (Dean, Willis, & Hewitt, 1975; Hall, 1966).

Does interpersonal distance also play a role in virtual-reality environments? When virtual worlds are created, a lot of factors matter in determining how believable the virtual worlds are. How people dress, how the streets look, and what sounds are in the background all facilitate or make it harder for people to immerse
themselves in that environment. For example, when you visit a virtual place located in Latin America, you expect to see people who look Latin American. To create lifelike simulations, it also matters how people behave during interpersonal interactions. How close do they stand together, how often do they look at each other, and how long do they keep that gaze? Computational models are being developed to simulate the behavior of people from different cultures (Jan et al., 2007).

Violations of personal space, even in virtual environments, cause discomfort (Wilcox et al., 2006). When given the option, people whose personal space is violated in a virtual environment will move away (Bailenson et al., 2003). Physical space is also maintained in video conferencing (Grayson & Coventry, 1998).

These findings on proxemics indicate the importance of interpersonal space in all interactions. They also indicate that proxemics is important, even when one or more of the people are not physically present.

**Speech Acts**

When we communicate with others, we can use either direct or indirect speech. We will examine both kinds of speech acts in the next two sections.

**Direct Speech Acts**

When you speak, what kinds of things can you accomplish? Speech acts address the question of what you can accomplish with speech and fall into five basic categories, based on the purpose of the acts (Searle, 1975a; see also Harnish, 2003). There are essentially five things you can accomplish with speech. Table 10.1 identifies these categories and gives examples of each.

The appealing thing about Searle’s taxonomy is that it classifies almost any statement that might be made. It shows the different kinds of things speech can accomplish. It also shows the close relationship between language structure and language function.

**Indirect Speech Acts**

Sometimes speech acts are indirect, meaning that we accomplish our goals in speaking in an oblique fashion. One way of communicating obliquely is through indirect requests, through which we make a request without doing so straightforwardly (Gordon & Lakoff, 1971; Searle, 1975b), for example, “Won’t you please take out the garbage?”

**Types of Indirect Speech Acts** There are four basic ways of making indirect requests:

- asking or making statements about abilities;
- stating a desire;
- stating a future action; and
- citing reasons.

Examples of these forms of indirect requests are illustrated in Table 10.2. In each case, the indirect request is aimed at having a waitress tell the speaker where to find the restroom in a restaurant.

When are indirect speech acts interpreted literally, and when is the indirect meaning understood by the listener? When an indirect speech act, such as “Must
you open the window?” is presented in isolation, it usually first is interpreted literally, for example, as “Do you need to open the window?” (Gibbs, 1979). When the same speech act is presented in a story context that makes the indirect meaning clear, the sentence first is interpreted in terms of the indirect meaning. For instance,

Table 10.1  Searle’s Taxonomy of Speech Acts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Speech Act</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Representative</td>
<td>A speech act by which a person conveys a belief that a given proposition is true. The speaker can use various sources of information to support the given belief. But the statement is nothing more, nor less, than a statement of belief. Qualifiers can be added to show the speaker’s degree of certainty.</td>
<td>Mr. Smith has a son named Jack and a daughter named Jill. If Mr. Smith says, “It’s important for Jack to learn responsibility. Asking him to help shovel the driveway is one way he can learn about responsibility,” he is conveying that he believes it is important to teach children responsibility, and that having them participate in household tasks is one way to achieve this goal. He can use various sources of information to support his belief. Nonetheless, the statement is nothing more or less than a statement of belief. Similarly, he can make a statement that is more directly verifiable, such as, “As you can see on this thermometer, the temperature outside is 31 degrees Fahrenheit.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directive</td>
<td>An attempt by a speaker to get a listener to do something, such as supplying the answer to a question. Sometimes a directive is quite indirect. For example, almost any sentence structured as a question probably is serving a directive function. Any attempt to elicit assistance of any kind, however indirect, falls into this category.</td>
<td>Mr. Smith wants Jack to help him shovel snow. He can request this in various ways, some of which are more direct than others, such as, “Please help me shovel the snow,” or “It sure would be nice if you were to help me shovel the snow,” or “Would you help me shovel the snow?” The different surface forms are all attempts to get Jack’s help. Some directives are quite indirect. If Mr. Smith asks, “Has it stopped raining yet?” he is still uttering a directive, in this case seeking information rather than physical assistance. In fact, almost any sentence structured as a question probably serves a directive function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissive</td>
<td>A commitment by the speaker to engage in some future course of action. Promises, pledges, contracts, guarantees, assurances, and the like all constitute commissives.</td>
<td>If Jack responds, “I’m busy now, but I’ll help you shovel the snow later,” he is uttering a commissive, in that he is pledging his future help. If Jill then says, “I’ll help you,” she too is uttering a commissive, because she is pledging her assistance now. Promises, pledges, contracts, guarantees, assurances, and the like all constitute commissives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressive</td>
<td>A statement regarding the speaker’s psychological state.</td>
<td>If Mr. Smith tells Jack later, “I’m really upset that you didn’t come through in helping me shovel the snow,” that would be an expressive. If Jack says, “I’m sorry I didn’t get around to helping you out,” he would be uttering an expressive. If Jill says, “Daddy, I’m glad I was able to help out,” she is uttering an expressive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declaration (also termed performative)</td>
<td>A speech act by which the very act of making a statement brings about an intended new state of affairs. Declarations also are termed performatives (Clark &amp; Clark, 1977).</td>
<td>Suppose that you are called into your boss’s office and told that you are responsible for the company losing $50,000. Then your boss says, “You’re fired.” The speech act results in your being in a new state—that is, unemployed. You might then tell your boss, “That’s fine, because I wrote you a letter yesterday saying that the money was lost because of your glaring incompetence, not mine, and I resign.” You are making a declaration.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
suppose a character in a story had a cold and asked, “Must you open the window?” It
would be interpreted as an indirect request: “Do not open the window.”

Subsequent work showed that indirect speech acts often anticipate what poten-
tial obstacles the respondent might pose. These obstacles are specifically addressed
through the indirect speech act (Gibbs, 1986). For example:

- “May I have … ?” addresses potential obstacles of permission.
- “Would you mind … ?” addresses potential obstacles regarding a possible im-
  position on the respondent.
- “Do you have … ?” addresses potential obstacles regarding availability.

Indirect requests that ask permission are judged to be the most polite (Clark &
Schunk, 1980). Similarly, indirect requests that speak to an obligation (i.e.,
“Shouldn’t you …?”) are judged as the most impolite (Clark & Schunk, 1980). The
responses to these requests typically match the requests in terms of politeness (Clark
& Schunk, 1980).

**Pinker’s Theory of Indirect Speech**  Steven Pinker and his colleagues (2007) re-
cently developed a three-part theory of indirect speech. Its basic assumption is that
communication is always a mixture of cooperation and conflict. Indirect speech
gives the speaker the chance to voice an ambiguous request that the listener can
accept or decline without reacting adversely to it. According to the three-part the-
ory, indirect speech can serve three purposes:

1. **Plausible deniability.** Imagine a policeman pulls you over when you are driving
   and wants to give you a traffic ticket. By saying, “Maybe the best thing is to take
care of this right here,” you can imply that you might be willing to pay a bribe
to get off the ticket. If the policeman is inclined to accept, he can do so. If he is
not interested in the bribe, he cannot arrest you for the attempted bribe (you
hope!) because you never made an explicit offer. You purposely were indirect
in order to ensure, to the extent possible, plausible deniability (in this case, of
your attempt to bribe). Similarly, sexual overtures are often made in an indirect
way in order to ensure deniability should the object of the overtures react
negatively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Indirect Speech Act</th>
<th>Example of an Indirect Request For Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Abilities                   | If you say, “Can you tell me where the restroom is?” to a waitress at a restaurant,
                              | and she says, “Yes, of course I can,” the chances are she missed the point. The
                              | question about her ability to tell you the location of the restroom was an
                              | indirect request for her to tell you exactly where it is. |
| Desire                      | “I would be grateful if you told me where the restroom is.” Your statements of
                              | thanks in advance are really ways of getting someone to do what you want. |
| Future action               | “Would you tell me where the restroom is?” Your inquiry into another person’s
                              | future actions is another way to state an indirect request. |
| Reasons                     | You need not spell out the reasons to imply that there are good reasons to comply
                              | with the request. For example, you might imply that you have such reasons
                              | for the waitress to tell you where the restroom is by saying, “I need to
                              | know where the restroom is.” |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Indirect Speech Act</th>
<th>Example of an Indirect Request For Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Abilities                   | If you say, “Can you tell me where the restroom is?” to a waitress at a restaurant,
                              | and she says, “Yes, of course I can,” the chances are she missed the point. The
                              | question about her ability to tell you the location of the restroom was an
                              | indirect request for her to tell you exactly where it is. |
| Desire                      | “I would be grateful if you told me where the restroom is.” Your statements of
                              | thanks in advance are really ways of getting someone to do what you want. |
| Future action               | “Would you tell me where the restroom is?” Your inquiry into another person’s
                              | future actions is another way to state an indirect request. |
| Reasons                     | You need not spell out the reasons to imply that there are good reasons to comply
                              | with the request. For example, you might imply that you have such reasons
                              | for the waitress to tell you where the restroom is by saying, “I need to
                              | know where the restroom is.” |
2. **Relationship negotiation.** This occurs when a person uses indirect language because the nature of a relationship is ambiguous. For example, one purpose of an indirect sexual overture may be plausible deniability (the first purpose). But the overture also may be indirect to avoid offending the targeted individual if he or she is not interested in a sexual relationship (relationship negotiation). In this case, indirectness is a way of helping two people mutually resolve the nature of their relationship.

3. **Language as a digital medium of indirect as well as direct communication.** Language can serve purposes other than direct communication. For example, suppose the emperor believes he is wearing fine robes when he is in fact naked. A boy shouts out, “The emperor has no clothes.” The boy is not telling the others anything they do not know—they can see the emperor has no clothes. What he is telling them is that it is not just they as individuals who see no clothes—everyone sees the emperor wearing no clothes. The boy has communicated something digitally—that all know the emperor is naked—that before was ambiguous.

Both direct and indirect communication are part of what makes a conversation successful. What else leads to a successful conversation?

**Characteristics of Successful Conversations**

In speaking to each other, we implicitly set up a cooperative enterprise. Indeed, if we do not cooperate with each other when we speak, we often end up talking past rather than to each other. In other words, we fail to communicate what we intended. Conversations thrive on the basis of a **cooperative principle**, by which we seek to communicate in ways that make it easy for our listener to understand what we mean (Grice, 1967; Mooney, 2004). According to Grice, successful conversations follow four maxims: the maxim of quantity, the maxim of quality, the maxim of relation, and the maxim of manner. These are also called **conversational postulates**. Examples of these maxims are provided in Table 10.3.

To these four maxims noted by Grice, we might add an additional maxim: Only one person speaks at a time (Sacks, Schegloff, & Jefferson, 1974). Given that maxim, the situational context and the relative social positions of the speakers affect turn-taking (Keller, 1976). Sociolinguists have noted many ways in which speakers signal to one another when and how to take turns. Sometimes people flaunt the conversational postulates to make a point. For example, suppose one says, “My parents are wardens.” One is not providing full information (what, exactly, does it mean for one’s parents to be wardens?). But the ambiguity is intentional. Or sometimes when a conversation on a topic is becoming heated, one purposely may switch topics and bring up an irrelevant issue. One’s purpose in doing so is to get the conversation to another, safer topic. When we flaunt the postulates, we are sending an explicit message by doing so: The postulates retain their importance because their absence is so notable.

People with autism have difficulty with both language and emotion. It is therefore not surprising that they have particular difficulty in detecting violations of the Gricean maxims (Eales, 1993; Surian, 1996). Further discussion of language impairments in people with autism are discussed later in the chapter.

**Gender and Language**

Within our own culture, do men and women speak a different language? Gender differences have been found in the content of what we say. Young girls are more
likely to ask for help than are young boys (Thompson, 1999). Older adolescent and young adult males prefer to talk about political views, sources of personal pride, and what they like about the other person. In contrast, females in this age group prefer to talk about feelings toward parents, close friends, classes, and their fears (Rubin et al., 1980). Also, in general, women seem to disclose more about themselves than do men (Morton, 1978).

Conversations between men and women are sometimes regarded as cross-cultural communication (Tannen, 1986, 1990, 1994). Young girls and boys learn conversational communication in essentially separate cultural environments through their same-sex friendships. As men and women, we then carry over the conversational styles we have learned in childhood into our adult conversations.

Table 10.3  Conversational Postulates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Postulate</th>
<th>Maxim</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maxim of quantity</td>
<td>Make your contribution to a conversation as informative as required but no more informative than is appropriate.</td>
<td>If someone asks you the temperature outside and you reply, “It’s 31.297868086298 degrees out there,” you are violating the maxim of quantity because you are giving more information than was probably wanted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maxim of quality</td>
<td>Your contribution to a conversation should be truthful; you are expected to say what you believe to be the case. Irony, sarcasm, and jokes might seem to be exceptions to the maxim of quality, but they are not. The listener is expected to recognize the irony or sarcasm and to infer the speaker’s true state of mind from what is said. Similarly, a joke often is expected to accomplish a particular purpose. It usefully contributes to a conversation when that purpose is clear to everyone.</td>
<td>Clearly, there are awkward circumstances in which each of us is unsure of just how much honesty is being requested. Under most circumstances, however, communication depends on an assumption that both parties to the communication are being truthful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maxim of relation</td>
<td>You should make your contributions to a conversation relevant to the aims of the conversation.</td>
<td>Almost any large meeting we attend seems to have someone who violates this maxim. This someone inevitably goes into long digressions that have nothing to do with the purpose of the meeting and that hold up the meeting. “That reminds me of a story a friend once told me about a meeting he once attended, where…”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maxim of manner</td>
<td>You should try to avoid obscure expressions, vague utterances, and purposeful obfuscation of your point.</td>
<td>Nobel Prize–winning physicist Richard Feynman (1997) described how he once read a paper by a well-known scholar, and he found that he could not make heads or tails of it. One sentence went something like this: “The individual member of the social community often receives information via visual, symbolic channels” (p. 281). Feynman concluded, in essence, that the scholar was violating the maxim of manner when Feynman realized that the sentence meant, “People read.”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tannen has suggested that male–female differences in conversational style largely center on differing understandings of the goals of conversation. These cultural differences result in contrasting styles of communication. These in turn can lead to misunderstandings and even break-ups as each partner somewhat unsuccessfully tries to understand the other. Men see the world as a hierarchical social order in which the purpose of communication is to negotiate for the upper hand, to preserve independence, and to avoid failure (Tannen, 1990, 1994). Each man strives to one-up the other and to “win” the contest. Women, in contrast, seek to establish a connection between the two participants, to give support and confirmation to others, and to reach consensus through communication.

To reach their conversational goals, women use conversational strategies that minimize differences, establish equity, and avoid any appearances of superiority on the part of one or another conversant. Women also affirm the importance of and the commitment to the relationship. They handle differences of opinion by negotiating to reach a consensus that promotes the connection and ensures that both parties at least feel that their wishes have been considered. They do so even if they are not entirely satisfied with the consensual decision.

Men enjoy connections and rapport. But because men have been raised in a gender culture in which status plays an important role, other goals take precedence in conversations. Tannen has suggested that men seek to assert their independence from their conversational partners. In this way, they indicate clearly their lack of acquiescence to the demands of others, which would indicate lack of power. Men also prefer to inform (thereby indicating the higher status conferred by authority) rather than to consult (indicating subordinate status) with their conversational partners. The male partner in a close relationship thus may end up informing his partner of their plans. In contrast, the female partner expects to be consulted on their plans. When men and women engage in cross-gender communications, their crossed purposes often result in miscommunication because each partner misinterprets the other’s intentions.

Tannen has suggested that men and women need to become more aware of their cross-cultural styles and traditions. In this way, they may at least be less likely to misinterpret one another’s conversational interactions. They are also both more likely to achieve their individual aims, the aims of the relationship, and the aims of the other people and institutions affected by their relationship. Such awareness is important not only in conversations between men and women. It is also important in conversations among family members in general (Tannen, 2001).

Tannen may be right. But at present, converging operations are needed, in addition to Tannen’s sociolinguistic case-based approach, to pin down the validity and generality of her interesting findings.

Gender differences in the written use of language have also been observed (Argamon et al., 2003). For example, a study that analyzed more than 14,000 text files from 70 separate studies found that women used more words that were related to psychological and social processes, whereas men related more to object properties and impersonal topics (Newman et al., 2008).

These findings are not conclusive. A study examining blogs noted that the type of blog, more than the gender of the author, dictated the writing style (Herring & Paolillo, 2006).

Thus far we have discussed the social and cognitive contexts for language. Language use interacts with, but does not completely determine, the nature of thought.
Social interactions influence the ways in which language is used and comprehended in discourse and reading. Next, we highlight some of the insights we have gained by studying the physiological context for language. Specifically, how do our brains process language? And do nonhuman animals have language?

**Do Animals Have Language?**

Some cognitive psychologists specialize in the study of nonhuman animals. Why would they study such animals, when humans are so readily available? There are several reasons.

First, nonhuman animals often are presumed to have somewhat simpler cognitive systems. It is therefore easier to model their behavior. These models can then be bootstrapped to the study of humans, as has happened most notably in the study of learning. For example, a model of conditioning that originally was proposed for nonhuman animals such as white rats has proven to be extremely useful in understanding human learning (Rescorla & Wagner, 1972). The model, when first proposed,
was unique in suggesting that nonhuman animal cognition is more complex than had previously been thought. Robert Rescorla and Allan Wagner showed that classical conditioning depends not just on simple contiguity of an unconditioned and conditioned stimulus, but rather on the contingency involved in the situation. In other words, classical conditioning occurs when animals reduce uncertainty in a learning situation—when they learn the relation between occurrences of two kinds of stimuli. In sum, research on simpler animals often leads to important insights about human learning.

Second, nonhuman animals can be subject to procedures that would not be possible for human ones. For example, a rat may be sacrificed at the end of a learning experiment to study changes that have occurred in the brain as a result of learning. A rat may also be injected with drugs to examine a compound’s effects on functioning. Such experimentation clearly cannot be completed on humans. All such studies, of course, must be subject to institutional approval for the ethics of experimentation before they are conducted.

Third, nonhuman animals that are not in the wild can serve as full-time subjects, or at least, regularly available subjects. They are typically there when the experimenter needs them. In contrast, college students and other humans have many other obligations, such as classes, homework, jobs, and personal commitments. Moreover, sometimes, even when they sign up for research, they fail to show up.

Fourth, an understanding of the comparative and evolutionary as well as developmental bases of human behavior requires studies of nonhuman animals of various kinds (Rumbaugh & Beran, 2003). If cognitive psychologists want to understand the origins of human cognition in the distant past, they need to study other kinds of animals besides humans.

The philosopher René Descartes suggested that language is what qualitatively distinguishes human beings from other species. Was he right? Before we get into the particulars of language in nonhuman species, we should emphasize the distinction between communication and language. Few would doubt that nonhuman animals communicate in one way or another. What is at issue is whether they do so through what reasonably can be called a language. Whereas language is an organized means of combining words to communicate, communication more broadly encompasses not only the exchange of thoughts and feelings through language but also nonverbal expression. Examples include gestures, glances, distancing, and other contextual cues.

Primates—especially chimpanzees—offer our most promising insights into nonhuman language. Jane Goodall, the well-known investigator of chimpanzees in the wild, has studied diverse aspects of chimp behavior. One is vocalizations. Goodall considers many of them to be clearly communicative, although not necessarily indicative of language. For example, chimps have a specific cry indicating that they are about to be attacked. They have another for calling their fellow chimps together. Nonetheless, their repertoire of communicative vocalizations seems to be small, non-productive (new utterances are not produced), limited in structure, lacking in structural complexity, and relatively non-arbitrary. It also is not spontaneously acquired. The chimps’ communications thus do not satisfy our criteria for a language.

But can chimps be taught to use language by humans? Several researchers have had chimps and tried to teach them language skills. The vocal tract of chimpanzees is different from the one of humans, so by their very nature they are not able to reproduce the majority of human sounds. Instead, researchers have reverted to teaching them sign language.
Savage-Rumbaugh and her colleagues (Savage-Rumbaugh et al., 1986, 1993) have found the best evidence yet in favor of language use among chimpanzees. Their pygmy chimpanzees spontaneously combined the visual symbols (such as red triangles and blue squares) of an artificial language the researchers taught them. They even appear to have understood some of the language spoken to them. One pygmy chimp in particular (Greenfield & Savage-Rumbaugh, 1990) seemed to possess remarkable skill, even possibly demonstrating a primitive grasp of language structure. It may be that the difference in results across groups of investigators is due to the particular kind of chimp tested or to the procedures used. The chimp's language may not meet all the constraints posed by the properties of language described at the beginning of the chapter. For example, the language used by the chimps is not spontaneously acquired. Rather, they learn it only through very deliberate and systematic programs of instruction.

Another famous exploration of language in a nonhuman can be seen in the gorilla Koko. Koko can use approximately 1,000 signs and can communicate quite effectively with humans, expressing both desires and thoughts. Evidence also suggests that Koko is able to understand and use humor (Gamble, 2001). Koko also seems to be able to use language in a novel way, both combining signs in new ways and by forming entirely new signs. One of the most famous examples of this behavior was exhibited when Koko developed a new sign for “ring” by combining “finger” and “bracelet” (Hill, 1978).

A neuroanatomical study of chimpanzees found that when chimps use tools, the brain regions that were especially active corresponded to Broca’s and Wernicke’s areas in humans. Both of those areas are associated with language comprehension and production, and it has been hypothesized that the use of tools in early humans actually facilitated the development of language (Hopkins et al., 2007).

A less positive view of the linguistic capabilities of chimpanzees was taken by Herbert Terrace (1987), who raised a chimp named Nim Chimpsky, a takeoff on Noam Chomsky, the eminent linguist. Over the course of several years, Nim made more than 19,000 multiple-sign utterances in a slightly modified version of ASL. Most of his utterances consisted of two-word combinations. Terrace’s careful analysis of these utterances, however, revealed that most of them were repetitions of what Nim had seen. Terrace concluded that, despite what appeared to be impressive accomplishments, Nim did not show even the rudiments of syntactical expression. The chimp could produce single- or even multiple-word utterances, but not in a syntactically organized way. For example, Nim would alternate signing, “Give Nim banana,” “Banana give Nim,” and “Banana Nim give,” showing no preference for the grammatically correct form. Moreover, Terrace also studied films showing other chimpanzees supposedly producing language. He came to the same conclusion for them that he had reached for Nim. His position, then, is that although chimpanzees can understand and produce utterances, they do not have linguistic competence in the same sense that even very young humans do. Their communications lack structure, and particularly multiplicity of structure. At this point, we just cannot be sure if the chimps truly show the full range of language abilities.

Chimpanzees are not the only ones that can learn language to a certain extent—other species can as well. Take the example of Alex, an African Grey Parrot who died in 2007. Alex could produce more than 200 words and express a variety of complex concepts, including present and absent and a zero-like concept. Recent evidence also suggests that Alex was capable of novel combinations of words to form

Whether nonhuman species can use language, it seems almost certain that the language facility of humans far exceeds that of other species psychologists have studied. Noam Chomsky (1991) has stated the key question regarding nonhuman language quite eloquently: “If an animal had a capacity as biologically advantageous as language but somehow hadn’t used it until now, it would be an evolutionary miracle, like finding an island of humans who could be taught to fly.”

CONCEPT CHECK

1. Why do psychologists conduct research with animals?
2. Do animals have the same potential for language as humans? Explain.

Neuropsychology of Language

In this part of the chapter, we will first explore which parts of the brain are involved in language production and comprehension. Afterwards, we will turn our attention to specific instances of language impairment. Recall from Chapter 2 that some of our earliest insights into brain localization related to an association between specific language deficits and specific organic damages to the brain, as first discovered by Marc Dax, Paul Broca, and Carl Wernicke (see also Brown & Hagoort, 1999; Garrett, 2003). Broca’s aphasia and Wernicke’s aphasia are particularly well-documented instances in which brain lesions affect linguistic functions.

Brain Structures Involved in Language

Through studies of patients with brain lesions, researchers have learned a great deal about the relations between particular areas of the brain (the areas of lesions observed in patients) and particular linguistic functions (the observed deficits in the brain-injured patients). For example, we can broadly generalize that many linguistic functions are located primarily in the areas identified by Broca and Wernicke. Damage to Wernicke’s area, in the posterior of the cortex, is now believed to entail more grim consequences for linguistic function than does damage to Broca’s area, closer to the front of the brain (Kolb & Whishaw, 1990). Also, lesion studies have shown that linguistic function is governed by a much larger area of the posterior cortex than just the area identified by Wernicke. In addition, other areas of the cortex also play a role. Examples are association-cortex areas in the left hemisphere and a portion of the left temporal cortex.

The Brain and Word Recognition

One avenue of research involves the study of the metabolic activity of the brain and the flow of blood in the brain during the performance of various verbal tasks. fMRI studies have found that the middle part of the superior temporal sulcus (STS) responds more strongly to speech sounds than to non-speech sounds. The response takes place in both sides of the STS, although it is usually stronger in the left hemisphere. Interestingly, it does not matter whether words or pseudo-words are presented. This means it is unlikely that processing of semantic information takes place here (Binder, 2009; Binder et al., 1996, 2000; Desai et al., 2005).
The Brain and Semantic Processing
Where does semantic processing take place then? Research shows a relatively consistent picture. The evidence comes from studies involving patients with Alzheimer's disease, aphasia, autism, and many other disorders.

There are five brain regions that are involved in the storage and retrieval of meaning (Binder, 2009):

- the ventral temporal lobes, including middle and inferior temporal, anterior fusiform, and anterior parahippocampal gyri;
- the angular gyrus;
- the anterior aspect (pars orbitalis) of the inferior frontal gyrus;
- the dorsal prefrontal cortex; and
- the posterior cingulate gyrus.

The activation of these areas takes place mostly in the left hemisphere, although there is some activation in the right hemisphere. It is suspected, however, that the right hemisphere does not play a significant role in word recognition (Binder, 2009; see also Binder et al., 2005, 2009; Ischebeck et al., 2004; Sabsewitz et al., 2005; Vandenbulcke, 2006).

Finally, some other subcortical structures (e.g., the basal ganglia and the posterior thalamus) also are involved in linguistic function. These structures remain poorly understood, however. Surgeons sometimes conduct brain surgery while patients are awake to map the language pathways and try to preserve the language capabilities of their patients after surgery (Duffau et al., 2008).

The Brain and Syntax
Event-related potentials, or ERPs (see Chapter 2), also can be used to study the processing of language in the brain. For one thing, a certain ERP called N400 (a negative potential 400 milliseconds after stimulus onset) typically occurs when individuals hear an anomalous sentence (Dambacher & Kliegl, 2007; Kutas & Hilliard, 1980). Thus, if people are presented a sequence of normal sentences but also anomalous sentences (such as “The leopard is a very good napkin”), the anomalous sentences will elicit the N400 potential. Moreover, the more anomalous a sentence is, the greater the response shown in another ERP, P600 (a positive potential 600 milliseconds after the stimulus onset; Kutas & Van Patten, 1994). The P600 effect seems to be more related to syntactic violations, whereas the N400 effect is more related to semantic violations (Friederici et al., 2004).

The Brain and Language Acquisition
There is some evidence that the brain mechanisms responsible for language learning are different from those responsible for the use of language by adults (Stiles et al., 1998). In general, the left hemisphere seems to be better at processing well-practiced routines. The right hemisphere is better at dealing with novel stimuli. A possibly related finding is that individuals who have learned language later in life show more right-hemisphere involvement (Neville, 1995; Polkczynska-Fiser, 2008). Perhaps the reason is that language remains somewhat more novel for them than for others. These findings suggest that one cannot precisely map linguistic or other kinds of functioning to hemispheres in a way that works for all people. Rather, the mappings differ somewhat from one person to another (Zurif, 1995).
The Plasticity of the Brain
Recent imaging studies of the post-traumatic recovery of linguistic functioning find that neurological language functioning appears to redistribute to other areas of the brain. Thus, damage to the major left hemisphere areas responsible for language functioning sometimes can lead to enhanced involvement of other areas as language functioning recovers. It is as if previously dormant or overshadowed areas take over the duties left vacant (Rosenberg et al., 2008; Cappa, et al., 1997).

The Brain and Sex Differences in Language Processing
Another method used to examine brain functioning is fMRI. Through these methods, dominance of the left hemisphere is observed for most language users (Anderson et al., 2006; Gaillard et al., 2004). Men and women appear to process language differently, at least at the phonological level (Shaywitz, 2005). An fMRI study of men and women asked participants to perform one of four tasks:

1. indicate whether a pair of letters was identical;
2. indicate whether two words have the same meaning;
3. indicate whether a pair of words rhymes; and
4. compare the lengths of two lines (a control task).

The researchers found that when both male and female participants were performing the letter-recognition and word-meaning tasks, they showed activation in the left temporal lobe of the brain. When they were performing the rhyming task, however, different areas were activated for men versus women. Only the inferior (lower) frontal region of the left hemisphere was activated for men. The inferior frontal region of both the left and right hemispheres was activated in women. These results suggested that men localized their phonological processing more than did women.
Some intriguing sex differences emerge in the ways that linguistic function appears to be localized in the brain (Kimura, 1987). Men seem to show more left-hemisphere dominance for linguistic function than the women show. Women show more bilateral, symmetrical patterns of linguistic function. Furthermore, the brain locations associated with aphasia seemed to differ for men and women. Most aphasic women showed lesions in the anterior region, although some aphasic women showed lesions in the temporal region. In contrast, aphasic men showed a more varied pattern of lesions. Aphasic men were more likely to show lesions in posterior regions rather than in anterior regions. One interpretation of Kimura’s findings is that the role of the posterior region in linguistic function may be different for women than it is for men.

Another interpretation relates to the fact that women show less lateralization of linguistic function. Women may be better able to compensate for any possible loss of function due to lesions in the left posterior hemisphere through functional offsets in the right posterior hemisphere. The possibility that there also may be subcortical sex differences in linguistic function further complicates the ease of interpreting Kimura’s findings. (Recall also the earlier discussion of communication differences between men and women.) A recent meta-analysis, however, could not verify any sex differences in asymmetries of the Planum Temporale (which is at the center of Wernicke’s area) or in functional imaging findings during language tasks (Sommer et al., 2008).

Despite the many findings that have resulted from studies of brain-injured patients, there are two key difficulties in drawing conclusions based only on studies of patients with lesions:

1. Naturally occurring lesions are often not easily localized to a discrete region of the brain, with no effects on other regions. For example, when hemorrhaging or insufficient blood flow (such as impairment due to clotting) causes lesions, the lesions also may affect other areas of the brain. Thus, many patients who show cortical damage also have suffered some damage in subcortical structures. This may confound the findings of cortical damage.

2. Researchers are able to study the linguistic function of patients only after the lesions have caused damage. Typically they are unable to document the linguistic function of patients prior to the damage. Because it would be unethical to create lesions merely to observe their effects on patients, researchers are able to study the effects of lesions only in those areas where lesions happen to have occurred naturally. Other areas therefore are not studied.

Researchers also investigate brain localization of linguistic functions via electrical stimulation of the brain. Gender differences have been investigated this way as well (Ojemann, 1982; Spring et al., 2008). Through stimulation studies, researchers have found that stimulation of particular points in the brain seems to yield discrete effects on particular linguistic functions (such as the naming of objects) across repeated, successive trials. For example, in a given person, repeated stimulation of one particular point might lead to difficulties in recalling the names of objects on every trial. In contrast, stimulation of another point might lead to incorrect naming of objects. In addition, information regarding brain locations in a specific individual may not apply across individuals. Thus, for a given individual, a discrete point of stimulation may seem to affect only one particular linguistic function. But across individuals, these particular localizations of function vary widely.
The effects of electrical stimulation are transitory. Linguistic function returns to normal soon after the stimulation has ceased. These brain-stimulation studies also show that many more areas of the cortex are involved in linguistic function than was thought previously. One study examined electrical stimulation of the brains of bilingual speakers. The researchers found different areas of the brain were active when using the primary versus the secondary language to name items. There was, however, some overlap of active areas with the two languages (Lucas, McKhann, & Ojemann, 2004).

Using electrical-stimulation techniques, sex differences in linguistic function can be identified. There is a somewhat paradoxical interaction of language and the brain (Ojemann, 1982). Although females generally have superior verbal skills to males, males have a proportionately larger (more diffusely dispersed) language area in their brains than do females. Counterintuitively, therefore, the size of the language area in the brain may be inversely related to the ability to use language.

The Brain and Sign Language
Kimura (1981) also has studied hemispheric processing of language in people who use sign language rather than speech to communicate. She found that the locations of lesions that would be expected to disrupt speech also disrupt signing. Further, the hemispheric pattern of lesions associated with signing deficits is the same pattern shown with speech deficits. That is, all right-handers with signing deficits show left-hemisphere lesions, as do most left-handers. But some left-handers with signing deficits show right-hemisphere lesions (see also Newman et al., 2010; Pickell et al., 2005). This finding supports the view that the brain processes both signing and speech similarly in terms of their linguistic function. It refutes the view that signing involves spatial processing or some other non-linguistic form of cognitive processing.

Aphasia
Aphasia is an impairment of language functioning caused by damage to the brain (Caramazza & Shapiro, 2001; Garrett, 2003; Hillis & Caramazza, 2003). There are several types of aphasias (Figure 10.5).

Wernicke’s Aphasia
Wernicke’s aphasia is caused by damage to Wernicke’s area of the brain (see Chapter 2). It is characterized by notable impairment in the understanding of spoken words and sentences. It also typically involves the production of sentences that have the basic structure of the language spoken but that make no sense. They are sentences that are empty of meaning. Two examples are “Yeah, that was the pumpkin furthest from my thoughts” and “the scroolish prastimer ate my spanstakes” (Hillis & Caramazza, 2003, p. 176). In the first case, the words make sense, but not in the context they are presented. In the second case, the words themselves are neologisms, or newly created words. Treatment for patients with this type of aphasia frequently involves supporting and encouraging non-language communication (Altschuler et al., 2006).

Broca’s Aphasia
Broca’s aphasia is caused by damage to Broca’s area of the brain (see Chapter 2). It is characterized by the production of agrammatical speech at the same time that verbal
comprehension ability is largely preserved. It thus differs from Wernicke’s aphasia in two key respects. First is that speech is agrammatical rather than grammatical (as in Wernicke’s). Second is that verbal comprehension is largely preserved. An example of a production by a patient with Broca’s aphasia is “Stroke … Sunday … arm, talking—bad” (Hillis & Caramazza, 2003, p. 176). The gist of the intended sentence is maintained, but the expression of it is badly distorted. Broca’s area is important for speech production, regardless of the format of the speech. In particular, Broca’s area is activated during imagined or actual sign production (Campbell, MacSweeney, & Waters, 2007; Horwitz et al., 2003).
Global Aphasia

Global aphasia is the combination of highly impaired comprehension and production of speech. It is caused by lesions to both Broca’s and Wernicke’s areas. Aphasia following a stroke frequently involves damage to both Broca’s and Wernicke’s areas. In one study, researchers found 32% of aphasias immediately following a stroke involved both Broca’s and Wernicke’s areas (Pedersen, Vinter, & Olsen, 2004).

Anomic Aphasia

Anomic aphasia involves difficulties in naming objects or in retrieving words. The patient may look at an object and simply be unable to retrieve the word that corresponds to the object. Sometimes, specific categories of things cannot be recalled, such as names of living things (Jonkers & Bastiaanse, 2007; Warrington & Shallice, 1984).

Autism

Autism is a developmental disorder characterized by abnormalities in social behavior, language, and cognition (Heinrichs et al., 2009; Pierce & Courchesne, 2003). It is biological in its origins, and researchers have already identified some of the genes associated with it (Wall et al., 2009). Children with autism show abnormalities in many areas of the brain, including the frontal and parietal lobes, as well as the cerebellum, brainstem, corpus callosum, basal ganglia, amygdala, and hippocampus. The disease was first identified in the middle of the 20th century (Kanner, 1943). It is five times more common in males than in females. The incidence of diagnosed autism has increased rapidly over recent years. Between the years of 2000 and 2004, the frequency of diagnosis of autism increased 14% (Chen et al., 2007). Autism has been diagnosed in recent years in approximately 60 out of every 10,000 children (Fombonne, 2003). This rate corresponds to about 1 out of every 165 children being diagnosed with an autism-spectrum disorder. The increase in recent times may be a result of a number of causes, including changes in diagnosing strategies or environmental pollution (Jick & Kaye, 2003; Windham et al., 2006).

Children with autism usually are identified by around 14 months of age, when they fail to show expected normal patterns of interactions with others. Children with autism display repetitive movements and stereotyped patterns of interests and activities (Pierce & Courchesne, 2003). Often they repeat the same motion, over and over again, with no obvious purpose to the movement. When they interact with someone, they are more likely to view their lips than their eyes. About half of children with autism fail to develop functional speech. What speech they do develop tends to be characterized by echolalia, meaning they repeat, over and over again, speech they have heard. Sometimes the repetition occurs several hours after the original use of the words by someone else (Pierce & Courchesne, 2003). People with autism also may have problems with the semantic encoding of language (Binder, 2009).

There are a variety of theories of autism. One recent theory suggests that autism can be understood in terms of sex differences in the wiring of the human brain. According to this theory (Baron-Cohen, 2003), male brains are, on average, stronger than female ones at understanding and building systems. These systems can be concrete ones, such as those involved in building machinery, or they can be abstract ones, such as those in politics or writing or music.

Females’ brains, in contrast, are stronger at empathizing and communicating. According to Baron-Cohen, autism results from an extreme male brain. This brain is almost totally inept in empathy and communication but very strong in systematizing. As a result, individuals with autism sometimes can perform tasks that require a
great deal of systematization, such as figuring out the day corresponding to a date well in the future. As it happens, autism is also much more common among males than among females. Although this theory has not been conclusively proven, it is intriguing and currently undergoing further investigation.

Another theory of autism is that of executive dysfunction (Chan et al., 2009; Ozonoff et al., 1994). Executive functions include abilities to control and regulate other abilities and behaviors. For example, when you initiate or terminate an action, or monitor your behavior to see if it helps you in achieving your goals, you are using executive functions. This theory describes the repetitive motion observed in autism, as well as difficulties in planning, mental flexibility, and self-monitoring (Hill, 2004). The executive dysfunction theory views autism as associated with dysfunction in the frontal lobes.

Much of this chapter has revealed the many ways in which language and thought interact. The following chapter focuses on problem solving and creativity. But it also further reveals the interconnectedness of the ways in which we use language and the ways in which we think.

**Key Themes**

This chapter deals with several of the themes highlighted in Chapter 1.

**Validity of causal inference versus ecological validity.** Some researchers study language comprehension and production in controlled laboratory settings. For example, studies of phonology are likely to occur in a laboratory where it is possible to gain precise experimental control of stimuli. But work on language and thought often is done in remote parts of the world where tight experimental controls are only a dream. Studies of language usage in remote African villages, for example, typically cannot be done with tight controls, although some control is possible. As always, a combination of methodologies best enables cognitive psychologists to understand psychological phenomena to their fullest.

**Biological versus behavioral methods.** Lesion studies are a particularly good example of a combination of the two methodologies. On the one hand, they require a deep understanding of the nature of the brain and the parts of the brain affected by particular lesions. On the other hand, researchers examine behavior to understand how the particular lesions, and by inference, parts of the brain, are related to behavioral functioning.

**Structure versus process.** To understand any linguistic phenomena, one must analyze thoroughly the structure of the language under investigation. One can then investigate the processes that are used to comprehend and produce this language. Without an understanding of both structure and process, it would be impossible to fully understand language and thought.

Suppose you are on a camping trip and are sitting around the campfire at night, admiring the numerous stars in the sky. Imagine asking someone the following

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. Which parts of the brain are involved in semantic processing?
2. What does “plasticity” refer to with respect to the brain?
3. What are some difficulties when drawing conclusions from lesion studies?
4. What is the difference between Wernicke’s aphasia and Broca’s aphasia?
metaphorical question, “Would you like to see the sun paint a picture across the morning sky?” What does this question mean? Some people might say that it means that you are asking if they would like to wake up early to see how beautiful the sunrise will be the next morning. Others might say it means that it is getting late and that you should go to sleep to wake up early to see the beautiful sunrise. Now, suppose you ask this same question not on a camping trip but in a sleazy bar. What do you think the utterance will mean in that context?

Summary

1. How does language affect the way we think? According to the linguistic-relativity view, cognitive differences that result from using different languages cause people speaking the various languages to perceive the world differently. However, the linguistic-universals view stresses cognitive commonalities across different language users. No single interpretation explains all the available evidence regarding the interaction of language and thought.

   Research on bilinguals seems to show that environmental considerations also affect the interaction of language and thought. For example, additive bilinguals have established a well-developed primary language. The second language adds to their linguistic and perhaps even their cognitive skills. In contrast, subtractive bilinguals have not yet firmly established their primary language when portions of a second language partially displace the primary language. This displacement may lead to difficulties in verbal skills. Theorists differ in their views as to whether bilinguals store two or more languages separately (dual-system hypothesis) or together (single-system hypothesis). Some aspects of multiple languages possibly could be stored separately and others unitarily. Creoles and pidgins arise when two or more distinct linguistic groups come into contact. A dialect appears when a regional variety of a language becomes distinguished by features such as distinctive vocabulary, grammar, and pronunciation.

   Slips of the tongue may involve inadvertent verbal errors in phonemes, morphemes, or larger units of language. Slips of the tongue include anticipations, perseverations, reversals (including spoonerisms), substitutions, insertions, and deletions.

   Alternative views of metaphor include the comparison view, the anomaly view, the domain-interaction view, and the class-inclusion view.

2. How does our social context influence our use of language? Psychologists, sociolinguists, and others who study pragmatics are interested in how language is used within a social context. Their research looks into various aspects of nonverbal as well as verbal communication. Speech acts comprise representatives, directives, commissives, expressives, and declarations. Indirect requests, ways of asking for something without doing so straightforwardly, may refer to abilities, desires, future actions, and reasons. Conversational postulates provide a means for establishing language as a cooperative enterprise. They comprise several maxims, including the maxims of quantity, quality, relation, and manner. Sociolinguists have observed that people engage in various strategies to signal turn-taking in conversations.

   Sociolinguistic research suggests that male–female differences in conversational style center largely on men’s and women’s differing understandings of the goals of conversation. It has been suggested that men tend to see the world as a hierarchical social order in which their communication aims involve the need to maintain a high rank in the social order. In contrast, women tend to see communication as a means for establishing and maintaining their connection to their communication partners. To do so, they seek ways to demonstrate equity and support and to reach consensual agreement.

   In discourse and reading comprehension, we use the surrounding context to infer the reference of pronouns and ambiguous phrases. The discourse context also can influence the semantic interpretation of unknown words in passages and aid in acquiring new vocabulary. Propositional representations of information in passages can be organized into mental models for text comprehension. Finally, a person’s
point of view likewise influences what will be remembered.

3. **How can we find out about language by studying the human brain, and what do such studies reveal?** Neuropsychologists, cognitive psychologists, and other researchers have managed to link quite a few language functions with specific areas or structures in the brain. They observe what happens when a particular area of the brain is injured, is electrically stimulated, or is studied in terms of its metabolic activity. For most people, the left hemisphere of the brain is vital to speech. It affects many syntactical aspects and some semantic aspects of linguistic processing. For most people, the right hemisphere handles a more limited number of linguistic functions. They include auditory comprehension of semantic information, as well as comprehension and expression of some non-literal aspects of language use. These aspects involve vocal inflection, gesture, metaphors, sarcasm, irony, and jokes.

**Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions**

1. Why are researchers interested in the number of color words used by different cultures?
2. Describe the five basic kinds of speech acts proposed by Searle.
3. How should cognitive psychologists interpret evidence of linguistic universals when considering the linguistic-relativity hypothesis?
4. Compare and contrast the kinds of understandings that can be gained by studying speech errors made by healthy people with those that can be gained by studying the language produced by people who have particular brain lesions.
5. Write an example of a pidgin conversation between two people and a creole conversation, focusing on the differences between pidgins and creoles.
6. Draft an example of a brief dialogue between a male and a female in which each may misunderstand the other, based on their differing beliefs regarding the goals of communication.
7. Suppose that you are an instructor of English as a second language. What kinds of things will you want to know about your students to determine how much to emphasize phonology, vocabulary, syntax, or pragmatics in your instruction?
8. Give an example of a humorous violation of one of Grice’s four maxims of successful conversation.

**Key Terms**

aphasia, p. 436  
bi-linguals, p. 412  
cooperative principle, p. 426  
dual-system hypothesis, p. 414  
indirect requests, p. 423  
linguistic relativity, p. 404  
linguistic universals, p. 407  
metaphors, p. 420  
monolinguals, p. 412  
pragmatics, p. 421  
similes, p. 420  
single-system hypothesis, p. 414  
slips of the tongue, p. 418  
speech acts, p. 423

**Media Resources**

Visit the companion website—www.cengagebrain.com—for quizzes, research articles, chapter outlines, and more.
Problem Solving and Creativity

CHAPTER OUTLINE

The Problem-Solving Cycle
Types of Problems
Well-Structured Problems
Isomorphic Problems
Problem Representation Does Matter!
Ill-Structured Problems and the Role of Insight
Early Gestaltist Views
The Neo-Gestaltist View
Insights into Insight
Neuroscience and Insight

Obstacles and Aids to Problem Solving
Mental Sets, Entrenchment, and Fixation
Negative and Positive Transfer
Transfer of Analogies
Intentional Transfer: Searching for Analogies
Incubation
Neuroscience and Planning during Problem Solving

Expertise: Knowledge and Problem Solving
Organization of Knowledge

Elaboration of Knowledge
Reflections on Problem Solving
Automatic Expert Processes

Innate Talent and Acquired Skill
Artificial Intelligence and Expertise
Can a Computer Be Intelligent?
The Turing Test
Expert Systems

Creativity
What Are the Characteristics of Creative People?
Neuroscience and Creativity

Key Themes
Summary
Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

Key Terms
Media Resources
Here are some of the questions we will explore in this chapter:

1. What are some key steps involved in solving problems?
2. What are the differences between problems that have a clear path to a solution versus problems that do not?
3. What are some of the obstacles and aids to problem solving?
4. How does expertise affect problem solving?
5. What is creativity, and how can it be fostered?

**BELIEVE IT OR NOT**

**Can Novices Have an Advantage Over Experts?**

An expert has invested countless hours into his field of study—be it playing a musical instrument, doing academic research, or playing chess. Does having this expertise always pay off? Research suggests that sometimes having less knowledge—being a novice—actually gives you an edge! In one experiment, researchers had expert and novice chess players briefly view a display of a chessboard with the chess pieces on it, and the players then had to recall the positions of the chess pieces on the board. As you might expect, the experts performed quite a bit better than the novices. However, the setup of the chess pieces on the board was then changed in a way that it did not make sense in terms of the actual game of chess. Suddenly, experts lost their advantage and performed no better, or even worse, than did the novices (Chase & Simon, 1973; see also Brockmole et al., 2008). We will explore possible reasons for this effect later in this chapter in the section on expertise.

Frensch and Sternberg (1989) found that when a strategic change was made in the rules for bridge, experts were hurt more than novices, presumably because the experts had become entrenched and somewhat stuck with the conventional set of rules.

How do you solve problems that arise in your relationships with other people? How do you solve the “two-string” problem illustrated in Figure 11.1? How does anyone solve any problem, for that matter? This chapter considers the process of solving problems, as well as some of the hindrances and aids to problem solving, an effort to overcome obstacles obstructing the path to a solution (Reed, 2000). At the conclusion of this chapter, we discuss creativity and its role in problem solving. Throughout the chapter, we discuss how people make the “mental leaps” that lead them from having a set of givens to having a solution to a problem (Holyoak & Thagard, 1995).

The focus of this chapter is on individual problem solving. It is worth remembering, however, that working in groups often facilitates problem solving. The solutions reached by groups often are better than those reached by individuals (Williams & Sternberg, 1988). This benefit is seen most notably when the group members represent a variety of ability levels (Hong & Page, 2004). We engage in problem solving when we need to overcome obstacles to answer a question or to achieve a goal. If we quickly can retrieve an answer from memory, we do not have a problem. If we cannot retrieve an immediate answer, then we have a problem to be solved.

How people solve problems depends partly on how they understand the problem (Whitten & Graesser, 2003). Consider an example of how understanding the nature of the problem matters.
People are told the following about a drug (Stanovich, 2003; Stanovich & West, 1999):

- 150 people received the drug and were not cured.
- 150 people received the drug and were cured.
- 75 people did not receive the drug and were not cured.
- 300 people did not receive the drug and were cured.

Will they understand exactly what they were told? Many people believe that the drug in this instance is helpful. In fact, the drug described is not helpful at all. On the contrary, it is harmful. Only 50% of the people who received the drug were cured (i.e., 150 of 300). In contrast, 80% of the people who did not receive the drug were cured (300 of 375).

**The Problem-Solving Cycle**

The problem-solving cycle includes: problem identification, problem definition, strategy formulation, organization of information, allocation of resources, monitoring, and evaluation (shown in Figure 11.2; see Bransford & Stein, 1993; Pretz, Naples, & Sternberg, 2003; Sternberg, 1986).
In considering the steps, remember also the importance of flexibility in following the various steps of the cycle. Successful problem solving may involve occasionally tolerating some ambiguity regarding how best to proceed. Rarely can we solve problems by following any one optimal sequence of problem-solving steps. We may go back and forth through the steps. We can change their order, or even skip or add steps when it seems appropriate. Following is a description of each part of the problem-solving cycle.

1. **Problem identification**: Do we actually have a problem?
2. **Problem definition and representation**: What exactly is our problem?
3. **Strategy formulation**: How can we solve the problem? The strategy may involve **analysis**—breaking down the whole of a complex problem into manageable elements. Instead, or perhaps in addition, it may involve the complementary process of **synthesis**—putting together various elements to arrange them into something useful.
4. **Organization of information**: How do the various pieces of information in the problem fit together?
5. **Resource allocation**: How much time, effort, money, etc., should I put into this problem?
6. **Monitoring problem solving**: Organizing information about a problem
7. **Evaluating problem solving**: Constructing a strategy for problem solving

**Figure 11.2 The Problem-Solving Cycle.**
The steps of the problem-solving cycle include problem identification, problem definition, strategy formulation, organization of information, allocation of resources, monitoring, and evaluation.

In considering the steps, remember also the importance of flexibility in following the various steps of the cycle. Successful problem solving may involve occasionally tolerating some ambiguity regarding how best to proceed. Rarely can we solve problems by following any one optimal sequence of problem-solving steps. We may go back and forth through the steps. We can change their order, or even skip or add steps when it seems appropriate. Following is a description of each part of the problem-solving cycle.

1. **Problem identification**: Do we actually have a problem?
2. **Problem definition and representation**: What exactly is our problem?
3. **Strategy formulation**: How can we solve the problem? The strategy may involve **analysis**—breaking down the whole of a complex problem into manageable elements. Instead, or perhaps in addition, it may involve the complementary process of **synthesis**—putting together various elements to arrange them into something useful.

Another pair of complementary strategies involves divergent and convergent thinking. In **divergent thinking**, you try to generate a diverse assortment of possible alternative solutions to a problem. Once you have considered a variety of possibilities, however, you must engage in **convergent thinking** to narrow down the multiple possibilities to converge on a single best answer.

4. **Organization of information**: How do the various pieces of information in the problem fit together?
5. **Resource allocation**: How much time, effort, money, etc., should I put into this problem?
Studies show that expert problem solvers (and better students) tend to devote more of their mental resources to global (big-picture) planning than do novice problem solvers. Novices (and poorer students) tend to allocate more time to local (detail-oriented) planning than do experts (Larkin et al., 1980; Sternberg, 1981). For example, better students are more likely than poorer students to spend more time in the initial phase, deciding how to solve a problem, and less time actually solving it (Bloom & Broder, 1950). By spending more time in advance deciding what to do, effective students are less likely to fall prey to false starts, winding paths, and all kinds of errors. When a person allocates more mental resources to planning on a large scale, he or she is able to save time and energy and to avoid frustration later on.

6. Monitoring: Am I on track as I proceed to solve the problem?
7. Evaluation: Did I solve the problem correctly?

Our emotions can influence how we implement the problem-solving cycle (Schwarz & Skurnik, 2003). In groups with participants with high measured emotional intelligence—that is, the ability to identify emotions in others and regulate emotions in oneself—emotional processing can positively influence problem solving (Jordan & Troth, 2004). In mathematicians, the ability to regulate their emotional state (among other factors) is related to higher problem-solving ability (Carlson & Bloom, 2005).

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. Why is the process of solving problems described as a cycle?
2. What are the different steps of the problem-solving cycle?
Types of Problems

Problems can be categorized according to whether they have clear paths to a solution (Davidson & Sternberg, 1984). **Well-structured problems** have clear paths to solutions. These problems also are termed well-defined problems. An example would be, “How do you find the area of a parallelogram?” **Ill-structured problems** lack clear paths to solutions (Shin et al., 2003). These problems are also termed ill-defined problems. An example is shown in Figure 11.1: “How do you tie together two suspended strings, when neither string is long enough to allow you to reach the other string while holding either of the strings?” Or how do you decide on which house to buy if each of the potential houses in which you are interested has advantages and disadvantages? Of course, in the real world of problems, these two categories may represent a continuum of clarity in problem solving rather than two discrete classes with a clear boundary between the two. Nonetheless, the categories are useful in understanding how people solve problems. Next, we consider each of these kinds of problems in more detail.

**Well-Structured Problems**

On tests in school, your teachers have asked you to tackle countless well-structured problems in specific content areas (e.g., math, history, geography). These problems had clear paths, if not necessarily easy paths, to their solutions—in particular, the application of a formula. In psychological research, cognitive psychologists might ask you to solve less content-specific kinds of well-structured problems. For example, cognitive psychologists often have studied a particular type of well-structured problem: the class of move problems, so termed because such problems require a series of moves to reach a final goal state. Perhaps the most well known of the move problems is one involving two antagonistic parties, whom we call “hobbits” and “orcs,” in the Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Move Problems box.

---

**INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY**

**Move Problems**

Three hobbits and three orcs are on a river bank. The hobbits and orcs need to cross over to the other side of the river. They have for this purpose a small rowboat that will hold just two people. There is one problem, however. If the number of orcs on either river bank exceeds the number of hobbits on that bank, the orcs will eat the hobbits on that bank. How can all six creatures get across to the other side of the river in a way that guarantees that they all arrive there with the forest intact? Try to solve the problem before reading on.

The solution to the problem is shown in Figure 11.3. The solution contains several features worth noting. First, the problem can be solved in a minimum of eleven steps, including the first and last steps. Second, the solution is essentially linear in nature. There is just one valid move (connecting two points with a line segment) at most steps of the problem solution. At all but two steps along the solution path, only one error can be made without violating the rules of the move problem: to go directly backward in the solution. At two steps, there are two possible forward-moving responses. But both of these lead toward the correct answer. Thus, again, the most likely error is to return to a previous state in the solution of the problem.
Figure 11.3  Solution to the Problem of the Hobbits and Orcs.

How can you get both the hobbits and the orcs to the other side of the river without any hobbits getting eaten? (For a more detailed description of the problem and its solution, refer to Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Move Problems.) What can you learn about your own methods of solving problems by seeing how you approached this particular problem?

People seem to make three main kinds of errors when trying to solve well-structured problems (Greeno, 1974; Simon & Reed, 1976; Thomas, 1974). These errors are:

1. **Inadvertently moving backward**: They revert to a state that is further from the end goal, for instance, moving all of the “orcs” and “hobbits” back to the first side of the river.

2. **Making illegal moves**: They make an illegal move—that is, a move that is not permitted according to the terms of the problem. For example, a move that resulted in having more than two individuals in the boat would be illegal.

3. **Not realizing the nature of the next legal move**: They become “stuck”—they do not know what to do next, given the current stage of the problem. An example would be realizing that you must bring one “orc” or “hobbit” back across the river to its starting point before you can move any of the remaining characters.

One method for studying how to solve well-defined problems is to develop computer simulations. Here, the researcher’s task is to create a computer program that can solve these problems. By developing the instructions a computer must execute to solve problems, the researcher may better understand how humans solve similar kinds of problems. According to one model of problem solving, the problem solver (which may be using human or artificial intelligence) must view the initial problem state and the goal state within a problem space (Wenke & Frensch, 2003). A **problem space** is the universe of all possible actions that can be applied to solving a problem, given any constraints that apply to the solution of the problem.

**Algorithms** are sequences of operations (in a problem space) that may be repeated over and over again and that, in theory, guarantee the solution to a problem (Hunt, 1975; Sternberg, 2000). Generally, an algorithm continues until it satisfies a condition determined by a program. Suppose a computer is provided with a well-defined problem and an appropriate hierarchy (program) of operations organized into procedural algorithms. The computer can readily calculate all possible operations and combinations of operations within the problem space. It also can determine the best possible sequence of steps to take to solve the problem.

Unlike computers, however, the human mind does not specialize in high-speed computations of numerous possible combinations. The limits of our working memory prohibit us from considering more than just a few possible operations at one time (Hambrick & Engle, 2003; Kintsch et al., 1999; see also Chapter 5). Newell and Simon recognized these limits and observed that humans must use mental shortcuts for solving problems. These mental shortcuts are termed **heuristics**—informal, intuitive, speculative strategies that sometimes lead to an effective solution and sometimes do not (see Chapter 12 for more on heuristics; Gilovich et al., 2002; Stanovich, 2003; Sternberg, 2000). Suppose we store, in long-term memory, several simple heuristics that we can apply to a variety of problems. We thereby can lessen the burden on our limited-capacity working memory. Studies suggest that when problem solvers are confronted with a problem for which they cannot immediately see an answer, effective problem solvers use the heuristic of means–ends analysis. In this strategy, the problem solver continually compares the current state and the goal state and takes steps to minimize the differences between the two states. Various other problem-solving heuristics include **working forward**, **working backward**, and **generate and test**. Table 11.1 illustrates how a problem solver might apply these heuristics to the aforementioned move problem (Greeno & Simon, 1988) and to a more common everyday problem (Hunt, 1994).
Figure 11.4 shows a rudimentary problem space for the move problem. It illustrates that there may be any number of possible strategies for solving it.

Isomorphic Problems
Sometimes, two problems are isomorphic; that is, their formal structure is the same, and only their content differs. Sometimes, as in the case of the hobbits and orcs problem and a similar missionaries and cannibals problem, in which cannibals eat missionaries when they outnumber them, the isomorphism is obvious. Similarly, you can readily detect the isomorphism of many games that involve constructing words from jumbled or scrambled letters. Figure 11.5 also shows a different set of isomorphic problems. They illustrate some of the puzzles associated with isomorphic problems.

It often is extremely difficult to observe the underlying structural isomorphism of problems. It is also difficult to be able to apply problem-solving strategies from one

Table 11.1 Four Heuristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heuristic</th>
<th>Definition of Heuristic</th>
<th>Example of Heuristic Applied to the Move Problem (Greeno &amp; Simon, 1988)</th>
<th>Example of Heuristic Applied to an Everyday Problem: How to Travel by Air from Your Home to Another Location Using the Most Direct Route Possible (Hunt, 1994)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Means–ends analysis</td>
<td>The problem solver analyzes the problem by viewing the end—the goal being sought—and then tries to decrease the distance between the current position in the problem space and the end goal in that space.</td>
<td>Try to get as many individuals on the far bank and as few people on the near bank as possible.</td>
<td>Try to minimize the distance between home and the destination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working forward</td>
<td>The problem solver starts at the beginning and tries to solve the problem from the start to the finish.</td>
<td>Evaluate the situation carefully with the six people on one bank and then try to move them step by step to the opposite bank.</td>
<td>Find the possible air routes leading from home toward the destination, and take the routes that seem most directly to lead to the destination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working backward</td>
<td>The problem solver starts at the end and tries to work backward from there.</td>
<td>Start with the final state—having all hobbits and all orcs on the far bank—and try to work back to the beginning state.</td>
<td>Find the possible air routes that reach the destination, and work backward to trace which of these routes can be most directly traced to originate at home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generate and test</td>
<td>The problem solver simply generates alternative courses of action, not necessarily in a systematic way, and then notices in turn whether each course of action will work.</td>
<td>This method works fairly well for the move problem because at most steps in the process, there is only one allowable forward move, and there are never more than two possibilities, both of which eventually will lead to the solution.</td>
<td>Find the various possible alternative routes leading from home, then see which of these routes might be used to end up at the destination. Choose the most direct route. Unfortunately, given the number of possible combinations of routes for air travel, this heuristic may not be very helpful.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 11.4 shows a rudimentary problem space for the move problem. It illustrates that there may be any number of possible strategies for solving it.

Isomorphic Problems
Sometimes, two problems are isomorphic; that is, their formal structure is the same, and only their content differs. Sometimes, as in the case of the hobbits and orcs problem and a similar missionaries and cannibals problem, in which cannibals eat missionaries when they outnumber them, the isomorphism is obvious. Similarly, you can readily detect the isomorphism of many games that involve constructing words from jumbled or scrambled letters. Figure 11.5 also shows a different set of isomorphic problems. They illustrate some of the puzzles associated with isomorphic problems.

It often is extremely difficult to observe the underlying structural isomorphism of problems. It is also difficult to be able to apply problem-solving strategies from one
Figure 11.4  Problem Space.
A problem space contains all the possible strategies leading from the initial problem state to the solution (the goal state). This problem space, for example, shows four of the heuristics that might be used in solving the move problem illustrated in Figure 11.3.

Figure 11.5  Isomorphic Problems.
Compare the problems illustrated in the games of (a) number scrabble, (b) tic-tac-toe, and (c) magic square. Number scrabble is based on equations. Which triples of numbers satisfy the equation \(X + Y + Z = 15\)? Tic-tac-toe requires one to produce three Xs or three Os in a row, column, or diagonal. The magic square requires one to place numbers in the tic-tac-toe board so that every row, column, and major diagonal adds up to 15. In what ways are these problems isomorphic? How do their differences in presentation affect the ease of representing and solving these problems? Although these problems seem different on their surface, they all require the same mental operations for their solution.
problem to another. For example, it may not be clear how an example from a textbook applies to another problem (e.g., one on a test). Problem solvers are particularly unlikely to detect isomorphisms when two problems are similar but not identical in structure. Furthermore, when the content or the surface characteristics of the problems differ sharply, detecting the isomorphism of the structure of problems is harder. For example, school-aged children may find it difficult to see the structural similarity between various word problems that are framed within different story situations. Similarly, physics students may have difficulty seeing the structural similarities among various physics problems when different kinds of materials are used. The problem of recognizing isomorphisms across varying contexts returns us to the recurring difficulties in problem representation.

**Problem Representation Does Matter!**

What is the key reason that some problems are easier to solve than others that are isomorphic to them? Consider the various versions of a problem known as the Tower of Hanoi. In this problem, the problem solver must use a series of moves to transfer a set of rings (usually three) from the first of three pegs to the third of the three pegs, using as few moves as possible (Figure 11.6). There are several electronic versions of the Tower of Hanoi on-line. You can find them by entering the search words “Tower of Hanoi game” in a search engine. Try it out yourself!

Researchers presented this same basic problem in many different isomorphic forms, for example, as dots that have to be transferred between boxes (Kotovsky, Hayes, & Simon, 1985). They found that some forms of the problem took up to 16 times as long to solve as other forms. Although many factors influenced these findings, a major determinant of the relative ease of solving the problem was how the problem was represented. For example, in the form shown in Figure 11.6, the

![Figure 11.6 The Tower of Hanoi.](image)

There are three discs of unequal sizes, positioned on the far-left side of three pegs so that the largest disc is at the bottom, the middle-sized disc is in the middle, and the smallest disc is on the top. Your task is to transfer all three discs to the peg on the far right, using the middle peg as a stationing area as needed. You may move only one disc at a time, and you may never move a larger disc on top of a smaller disc.

physically different sizes of the discs facilitated the mental representation of the restriction against moving larger discs onto smaller discs. Other forms of the problem did not. There are many variations of this task, involving differing rules and restrictions (Chen, Tian, & Wang, 2007).

Problems such as the Tower of Hanoi challenge problem-solving skills, in part through their demands on working memory. One study found that there is a relationship between working-memory capacity and the ability to solve analytic problems (Fleck, 2007). Other researchers had experimental participants do what they called the “Tower of London” task, which is very similar to the Tower of Hanoi (Welsh, Satterlee-Cartmell, & Stine, 1999). In this task, the goal was to move a set of colored balls across different-sized pegs in order to match a target configuration. As in the Tower of Hanoi, there were constraints on which balls could be moved at a given time. The researchers also gave participants two tests of working-memory capacity. They found that the measures of working-memory capacity accounted for between 25% and 36% of the variance in how successful participants were in solving the problem. Interestingly, mental-processing speed, sometimes touted as a key to intelligence, showed no correlation with success in solution. The brain areas that seem most involved in the Tower of Hanoi task are

---

**Figure 11.7  Solution to the String Problem.**

Many people assume that they must find a way to move themselves toward each string and then bring the two strings together. They fail to consider the possibility of finding a way to get one of the strings to move toward them, such as by tying something to one of the strings, then swinging the object as a pendulum, and grabbing the object when it swings close to the other string. There is nothing in the problem that suggests that the person must move, rather than that the string may move. Nevertheless, most people presuppose that the constraint exists. By placing an unnecessary and unwarranted constraint on themselves, people make the problem insoluble.

the prefrontal cortex, bilateral parietal cortex, and bilateral premotor cortex (Fincham et al., 2002).

Recall the two-string problem, posed at the outset of this chapter. The solution to the two-string problem is shown in Figure 11.7. Many people find it extremely difficult to arrive at the solution. Many never do, no matter how hard they try. People who find the problem insoluble often err at Step 2 of the problem-solving cycle, after which they never recover. That is, by defining the problem as being one in which they must be able to move toward one string while holding another, they impose on themselves a constraint that makes the problem virtually insoluble.

Ill-Structured Problems and the Role of Insight

The two-string problem is an example of an ill-structured problem. In fact, although we occasionally may misrepresent well-structured problems, we are much more likely to have difficulty representing ill-structured problems. Before we explain the nature of ill-structured problems, try to solve a few more such problems. The following problems illustrate some of the difficulties created by the representation of ill-structured problems (after Sternberg, 1986). Be sure to try all three problems before you read about their solutions.

1. Haughty Harry has been asked to build a hat rack with a few given materials (see Figure 11.8). Can you help him construct the hat rack?

![Figure 11.8 Haughty Harry’s Problem.](image-url)

Haughty Harry and several other job seekers were looking for work as carpenters. The site supervisor handed each applicant two sticks (a 1” x 2” x 60” stick and a 1” x 2” x 43” stick) and a 2” C-clamp. This situation is represented in Figure 11.8. The opening of the clamp is wide enough so that both sticks can be inserted and held together securely when the clamp is tightened. The supervisor ushered the job applicants into a room 12’ 3” x 13’ 5” with an 8’ ceiling. Mounted on the ceiling were two 1” x 1” beams, dividing the ceiling into thirds lengthwise. She told the applicants that she would hire the first applicant who could build a hat rack capable of supporting her hard hat, using just the two sticks and the C-clamp. She could hire only one person. So she recommended that the applicants not try to help one another. What should Harry do?

2. A woman who lived in a small town married 20 different men in that same town. All of them are still living, and she never divorced any of them. Yet she broke no laws. How could she do this?

3. You have loose black and brown socks in a drawer, mixed in a ratio of five black socks for every brown one. How many socks do you have to take out of that drawer to be assured of having a pair of the same color?

Both the two-string problem and each of the three preceding problems are ill-structured problems. There are no clear, readily available paths to solution. By definition, ill-structured problems do not have well-defined problem spaces. Problem solvers have difficulty constructing appropriate mental representations for modeling these problems and their solutions. For such problems, much of the difficulty is in constructing a plan for sequentially following a series of steps that inch ever closer to their solution. In one study, both domain knowledge and justification skills proved to be important for solving both ill- and well-structured problems. Justification skills are important because ill-structured problems can be represented in different ways and often have alternative solutions. Thus, problem solvers need to choose and justify their selection of a particular representation and solution. Additional cognitive and affective factors, including attitudes toward science and regulation of cognition, are also important for the solving of ill-structured problems (Shin, Jonassen, & McGee, 2003).

The preceding ill-structured problems are insight problems because you need to see the problem in a novel way. In particular, you need to see it differently from how you would probably see the problem at first, and differently from how you would probably solve problems in general. That is, you must restructure your representation of the problem to solve it.

Insight is a distinctive and sometimes seemingly sudden understanding of a problem or of a strategy that aids in solving the problem. Often, an insight involves reconceptualizing a problem or a strategy in a totally new way. Insight often involves detecting and combining relevant old and new information to gain a novel view of the problem or of its solution. Although insights may feel as though they are sudden, they are often the result of much prior thought and hard work. Without this work, the insight would never have occurred. Insight can be involved in solving well-structured problems, but it more often is associated with the rocky and twisting path to solution that characterizes ill-structured problems. For many years, psychologists interested in problem solving have been trying to figure out the true nature of insight.

What are the solutions to the insight problems we presented? Consider first the hat-rack problem. Harry was unable to solve the problem before Sally quickly whipped together a hat rack like the one shown in Figure 11.9. To solve the problem, Sally had to redefine her view of the materials in a way that allowed her to conceive of a C-clamp as a hat holder.

The woman who was involved in multiple marriages is a minister. The critical element for solving this problem is to recognize that the word married may be used to describe the performance of the marriage ceremony. So the minister married the 20 men but did not herself become wedded to any of them. To solve this problem, you had to redefine your interpretation of the term married. Others have suggested yet additional possibilities. For example, perhaps the woman was an actress and only married the men in her role as an actress. Or perhaps the woman’s multiple marriages were annulled so she never technically divorced any of the men.
As for the socks, you need only to take out three socks to be assured of having a pair of the same color. The ratio information is irrelevant. Whether the first two socks you withdraw match in color, the third certainly will match at least one of the first two.

**Early Gestaltist Views**

Gestalt psychologists emphasized the importance of the whole as more than a collection of parts. In regard to problem solving, Gestalt psychologists held that insight problems require problem solvers to perceive the problem as a whole. Gestalt psychologist Max Wertheimer (1945/1959) wrote about **productive thinking**, which involves insights that go beyond the bounds of existing associations. He distinguished it from **reproductive thinking**, which is based on existing associations involving what is already known. According to Wertheimer, insightful (productive) thinking differs fundamentally from reproductive thinking. In solving the insight problems given in this chapter, you had to break away from your existing associations and see each problem in an entirely new light. Productive thinking also can be applied to well-structured problems.

Wertheimer’s colleague Wolfgang Köhler (1927) studied insight in non-human primates, particularly a caged chimpanzee named Sultan. In Köhler’s view, the ape’s behavior illustrated insight (see Figure 11.10). To Köhler and other Gestaltists, insight is a special process. It involves thinking that differs from normal, linear information processing.

**The Neo-Gestaltist View**

Some researchers have found that insightful problem solving can be distinguished from non-insightful problem solving in two ways (Metcalf, 1986; Metcalfe & Wiebe, 1987). For one thing, when given routine problems to solve, problem solvers show remarkable accuracy in their ability to predict their own success in solving a
problem prior to any attempt to solve it. In contrast, when given insight problems, problem solvers show poor ability to predict their own success prior to trying to solve the problems. Not only were successful problem solvers pessimistic about their ability to solve insight problems, but unsuccessful problem solvers were often optimistic about their ability to solve them.

In addition, the investigators used a clever methodology to observe the problem-solving process while participants were solving routine versus insight problems. Routine problems included algebra problems, such as \((3x^2 + 2x + 10)(3x) = \).

Insight problems included problems such as “A prisoner was attempting escape from a tower. He found in his cell a rope which was half long enough to permit him to reach the ground safely. He divided the rope in half and tied the two parts together and escaped. How could he have done this?” At 15-second intervals, participants paused briefly to rate how close (“warm”) versus far (“cold”) they felt they were to reaching a solution. Consider first what happened for routine problems, such as algebra, or the Tower of Hanoi. Participants showed increases in their feelings of warmth as they drew closer to reaching a correct solution. For insight problems, however, participants showed no such increases. Figure 11.11 shows a comparison of participants’ reported feelings of warmth for solving algebra problems versus insight problems. In solving insight problems, participants showed no increasing feelings of warmth until moments before abruptly realizing the solution and correctly solving the problem. Metcalfe’s findings certainly seem to support the Gestaltist view that there is something special about insightful problem solving, as distinct from non-insightful, routine problem solving. The specific nature and underlying mechanisms of insightful problem solving have yet to be addressed by this research, however.
When Janet Metcalfe presented participants with routine problems and insight problems, they showed clear differences in their feelings of warmth as they approached a solution to the problems. These frequency histograms (bar graphs in which the area of each bar indicates the frequency for the given interval of time) show comparative feelings of warmth during the four 15-second intervals prior to solving the problems. When solving insight problems, participants showed no incremental increases in feelings of warmth, whereas when solving routine problems, participants showed distinct incremental increases in feelings of warmth. (From Metcalfe & Wiebe, 1987, pp. 242, 245.)
Insights into Insight
According to Smith (1995a), insights need not be sudden “a-ha” experiences. They may and often do occur gradually and incrementally over time. When an insightful solution is needed but not forthcoming, sleep may help produce a solution. In both mathematical problem solving and solution of a task that requires understanding underlying rules, sleep has been shown to increase the likelihood that an insight will be produced (Stickgold & Walker, 2004; Wagner et al., 2004).

Unfortunately, insights—like many other aspects of human thinking—can be both startlingly brilliant and dead wrong. How do we fall into mental traps that lead us down false paths as we try to reach solutions?

Neuroscience and Insight
Neuroimaging studies suggest that the activity of our brain during rest can be divided up into several different networks. Some of these networks are also active when we engage in problem solving. This indicates that at least portions of the thought processes are the same when we are problem solving and when we have thoughts during rest (Andreasen et al., 1995; Christoff et al., 2004; Damoiseaux et al., 2006; Kounios et al., 2008). fMRI studies show that activity in the right anterior superior-temporal gyrus increases when a person experiences an insight. Furthermore, EEGs also record a burst of high-frequency activity during insight (Jung-Beeman et al., 2004). In fact, before insights even become conscious, activity in the right hemisphere can be observed. It is therefore generally assumed that the right hemisphere has a special role in insight processes (Bowden et al., 2005).

The right hippocampus is critical in the formation of an insightful solution (Luo & Niki, 2003). (As you may remember from Chapters 2 and 5, the hippocampus is integral to the formation of new memories. Therefore it makes sense that the hippocampus would be involved in the formation of an insightful solution, as this process involves combining relevant information stored in memory.) Another study demonstrated a spike of activity in the right anterior temporal area immediately before an insight is formed. This area is active during all types of problem solving, as it involves making connections among distantly related items (Jung-Beeman et al., 2004). This spike in activity, however, suggests a sudden understanding of relationships within a problem that leads to a solution.

Neural correlates measured even before an individual sees a problem can predict if insight will occur. In one study, during the preparation prior to viewing of a problem, participants who would later generate an insightful solution had substantial activation in the frontal lobes, whereas those who would not generate an insightful solution had comparable activation in the occipital lobes (Kounios et al., 2006). These findings suggest, first, that certain problem solvers are more likely to use insight than others. Second, they suggest that insight involves some advanced planning that occurs before a problem is even presented.

CONCEPT CHECK

1. What is the difference between well-structured and ill-structured problems?
2. When are two problems isomorphic?
3. What is insight?
4. According to Neo-Gestaltism, how can insightful problem solving and non-insightful problem solving be distinguished?
5. Are insights always sudden?
Obstacles and Aids to Problem Solving

Several factors can hinder or enhance problem solving. Among them are mental sets as well as positive and negative transfer. Incubation plays a role in problem solving as well. In the next sections, we will explore these factors in more detail.

Mental Sets, Entrenchment, and Fixation

One factor that can hinder problem solving is mental set—a frame of mind involving an existing model for representing a problem, a problem context, or a procedure for problem solving. Another term for mental set is entrenchment. When problem solvers have an entrenched mental set, they fixate on a strategy that normally works well in solving many problems but that does not work well in solving this particular problem. For example, in the two-string problem, you may fixate on strategies that involve moving yourself toward the string, rather than moving the string toward you. In the oft-marrying minister problem, you may fixate on the notion that to marry someone is to become wedded to the person.

Mental sets also can influence the solution of rather routine problems. For example, consider “water-jar” problems (Luchins, 1942). In water-jar problems, participants are asked how to measure out a certain amount of water using three different jars. Each jar holds a different amount of water. Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Luchin’s Water-Jar Problems shows the problems used by Luchins. Look at the box and try to solve the problems yourself before you read on.

Problems 7 through 11 can be solved in a much simpler way. One need use just two of the jars. Problem 7 can be solved by \( A - C \). Problem 8 can be solved by \( A + C \), and so on. People who are given Problems 1 through 6 to solve generally continue to use the \( B - A - 2C \) formula in solving Problems 7 through 11. Consider, in Luchins’s original experiment, those participants who solved the first set of problems. Between 64% and 83% of them went on to solve the last set of problems by using the less simple strategy. What happened to the control participants who were not given the first set of problems? Only 1% to 5% failed to apply the simpler solutions to the last set of problems. They had no established mental set that interfered with their seeing things in a new and simpler way.

Another type of mental set involves fixation on a particular use (function) for an object. Specifically, functional fixedness is the inability to realize that something known to have a particular use may also be used for performing other functions (German & Barrett, 2005; Rakoczy et al., 2009). Functional fixedness prevents us from solving new problems by using old tools in novel ways. Becoming free of functional fixedness is what first allowed people to use a reshaped coat hanger to get into a locked car. It is also what first allowed thieves to pick simple spring door locks with a credit card.

Another type of mental set is considered an aspect of social cognition. Stereotypes are beliefs that members of a social group tend more or less uniformly to have particular types of characteristics. We seem to learn many stereotypes during childhood. For example, cross-cultural studies of children show their increasing knowledge about—and use of—gender stereotypes across the childhood years (Neto, Williams, & Widner, 1991; Seguino, 2007). Stereotype awareness, for a variety of groups, develops in most children between the ages of 6 and 10 (McKown & Weinstein, 2003). Stereotypes often arise in the same way that other kinds of mental sets develop. We observe a particular instance or set of instances of some pattern. We then may overgeneralize...
from those limited observations. We may assume that all future instances similarly will
demonstrate that pattern. For example, we may observe that some African Americans
can run very fast. If we then conclude that every African American is a fast runner, we
do have a stereotype because not every African American is a fast runner. Of course,
when the stereotypes are used to target particular scapegoats for societal mistreatment,
grave social consequences result for the targets of stereotypes. The targets are not the
only ones to suffer from stereotypes, however. Like other kinds of mental sets, stereo-
types hinder the problem-solving abilities of the individuals who used them. These
people limit their thinking by using set stereotypes.

---

**INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY**

*Luchins’s Water-Jar Problems*

How do you measure out the right amount of water using Jars A, B, and C? You need to
use up to three jars to obtain the required amounts of water (measured in numbers of
cups) in the last column. Columns A, B, and C show the capacity of each jar. The first
problem, for example, requires you to get 20 cups of water from just two of the jars,
a 29-cup one (Jar A) and a 3-cup one (Jar B). Easy: Just fill Jar A, and then empty out
9 cups from this jar by taking out 3 cups three times, using Jar B. Problem 2 isn’t too
hard, either. Fill Jar B with 127 cups, then empty out 21 cups using Jar A, and then
empty out 6 cups, using Jar C twice. Now try the rest of the problems yourself. (After
Luchins, 1942.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem Number</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>Required Amount (CUPS)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Luchins, Abraham S. (1942). Mechanization in Problem Solving: The Effect of Einstellung, Psychological
Monographs, 54(6), 248. © 1942, by Dr. Abraham S. Luchins. Reprinted by permission.

If you are like many people solving these problems, you will have found a formula
that works for all the remaining problems. You fill up Jar B. Then you pour out of it the
amount of water you can put into Jar A. Then you twice pour out of it the amount of
water you can put into Jar C. The formula, therefore, is \( B - A - 2C \).
Negative and Positive Transfer

Often, people have particular mental sets that prompt them to fixate on one aspect of a problem or one strategy for problem solving to the exclusion of other possible relevant ones. They are carrying knowledge and strategies for solving one kind of problem to a different kind of problem. Transfer is any carryover of knowledge or skills from one problem situation to another (Detterman & Sternberg, 1993; Gentile, 2000). Transfer can be either negative or positive. Negative transfer occurs when solving an earlier problem makes it harder to solve a later one. Sometimes an early problem gets an individual on a wrong track. For example, police may have difficulty solving a political crime because such a crime differs so much from the kinds of crime that they typically deal with. Or when presented with a new tool, a person may operate it in a way similar to the way in which he or she operated a tool with which he or she was already familiar (Besnard & Cacitti, 2005). Positive transfer occurs when the solution of an earlier problem makes it easier to solve a new problem. That is, sometimes the transfer of a mental set can be an aid to problem solving. For instance, one may transfer early math skills, such as addition, to advanced math problems of the kinds found in algebra or physics (Bassok & Holyoak, 1989; Chen & Daehler, 1989; see also Campbell & Robert, 2008).

Transfer of Analogies

Researchers designed some elegant studies of positive transfer involving analogies (Gick & Holyoak, 1980, 1983). To appreciate their results, you need to become familiar with a problem first used by Karl Duncker (1945), often called the “radiation problem.” It is described in the Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Problems Involving Transfer.

INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY
Problems Involving Transfer

The Radiation Problem

Imagine that you are a doctor treating a patient with a malignant stomach tumor. You cannot operate on the patient because of the severity of the cancer. But unless you destroy the tumor somehow, the patient will die. You could use high-intensity X-rays to destroy the tumor. Unfortunately, the intensity of X-rays needed to destroy the tumor also will destroy healthy tissue through which the rays must pass. X-rays of lesser intensity will spare the healthy tissue, but they will be insufficiently powerful to destroy the tumor. What kind of procedure could you employ that will destroy the tumor without also destroying the healthy tissue surrounding the tumor?

Duncker had in mind a particular insightful solution as the optimal one for this problem. Figure 11.12 shows the solution pictorially.

Prior to presenting Duncker’s radiation problem, participants received another, easier problem. This particular problem was called the “military problem” (Holyoak, 1984, p. 205).

The Military Problem

A general wishes to capture a fortress located in the center of a country. There are many roads radiating outward from the fortress. All have been mined. Although small groups of men can pass over the roads safely, any large force will detonate the mines. A full-scale direct attack is therefore impossible. What should the general do?

Think about this: What are the commonalities between the two problems, and what is an elemental strategy that can be derived by comparing the two problems?
The correspondence between the radiation and military problems is actually quite close, although not perfect (see Table 11.2). The question is whether producing a group-convergence solution to the military problem helped participants in solving the radiation problem. Consider participants who received the military problem with the convergence solution and then were given a hint to apply it in some way to the radiation problem. About 75% of the participants reached the correct solution to the radiation problem. This figure compared with less than 10% of the participants who did not receive the military story first but instead received no prior story or only an irrelevant one.

In another experiment, participants were not given the convergence solution to the military problem. They had to figure it out for themselves. About 50% of the participants generated the convergence solution to the military problem. Of these, 41% went on to generate a parallel solution to the radiation problem. That is, positive transfer was weaker when participants produced the original solution themselves than when the solution to the first problem was given to them (41%, as compared with 75%).

The investigators found that the usefulness of the military problem as an analog to the radiation problem depended on the induced mental set with which the problem solver approached the problems. Consider what happened when participants were asked to memorize the military story under the guise that it was a story-recall experiment and then were given the radiation problem to solve.

**Table 11.2 Correspondence between the Radiation and the Military Problems**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Military Problem</th>
<th>Radiation Problem</th>
<th>Convergence Schema</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Initial State Goal:</strong> Use army to capture fortress</td>
<td><strong>Initial State Goal:</strong> Use rays to destroy tumor</td>
<td><strong>Initial State Goal:</strong> Use force to overcome a central target</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resources:</strong> Sufficiently large army</td>
<td><strong>Resources:</strong> Sufficiently powerful rays</td>
<td><strong>Resources:</strong> Sufficiently great force</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Constraint:</strong> Unable to send entire army along one road</td>
<td><strong>Constraint:</strong> Unable to administer high-intensity rays from one direction only</td>
<td><strong>Constraint:</strong> Unable to apply full force along one path alone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Solution Plan:</strong> Send small groups along multiple roads simultaneously</td>
<td><strong>Solution Plan:</strong> Administer low-intensity rays from multiple directions simultaneously</td>
<td><strong>Solution Plan:</strong> Apply weak forces along multiple paths simultaneously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Outcome:</strong> Fortress captured by army</td>
<td><strong>Outcome:</strong> Tumor destroyed by rays</td>
<td><strong>Outcome:</strong> Central target overcome by force</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Only 30% of participants produced the convergence solution to the radiation problem. The investigators also found that positive transfer improved if two, rather than just one, analogous problems were given in advance of the radiation problem.

Researchers have expanded these findings to encompass problems other than the radiation problem. They found that when the domains or the contexts for the two problems were more similar, participants were more likely to see and apply the analogy (see Holyoak, 1990). Similar patterns of data were found with various types of problems involving electricity and mathematical insight (Davidson & Sternberg, 1984; Gentner & Gentner, 1983; Novick & Holyoak, 1991).

Perhaps the most crucial aspect of these studies is that people have trouble noticing analogies unless they explicitly are told to look for them. Consider studies involving physics problems. Positive transfer from solved examples to unsolved problems was more likely among students who specifically tried to understand why particular examples were solved as they were, as compared with students who sought only to understand how particular problems were solved as they were (Chi et al., 1989). Based on these findings, we generally need to be looking for analogies to find them. We often will not find them unless we explicitly seek them.

**Figure 11.12** The Radiation Problem.

The solution to the X-ray problem involving the treatment of a patient with a tumor involves dispersion. The idea is to direct weak X-radiation toward the tumor from a number of different points outside the body. No single set of rays would be strong enough to destroy either the healthy tissue or the tumor. However, the rays would be aimed so that they all converged at one spot within the body—the spot that houses the tumor. This solution actually is used today in some X-ray treatments, except that a rotating source of X-rays is used for dispersing rays.

People sometimes do not recognize the surface similarities of problems (Bassok, 2003). Other times they are fooled by surface similarities into believing two different kinds of problems are the same (Bassok, Wu, & Olseth, 1995; Gentner, 2000). Sometimes even experienced problem solvers are led astray. They believe that similar surface structures indicate comparable deep structures. For example, problem solvers may use the verbal content rather than the mathematical operations required in a mathematical problem to classify the problem as being of a certain kind (Blessing & Ross, 1996).

Intentional Transfer: Searching for Analogies

In order to find analogies between two problems, one must perceive the relationships between them (Gentner, 1983, 2000). The actual content attributes of the problems are irrelevant. In other words, what matters in analogies is not the similarity of the content but how closely their structural systems of relationships match. Because we are accustomed to considering the importance of the content, we find it difficult to push the content to the background. It also is difficult to bring form (structural relationships) to the foreground. For example, the differing content makes the analogy between the military problem and the radiation problem hard to recognize and impedes positive transfer from one problem to the other.

The opposite phenomenon is transparency, in which people see analogies where they do not exist because of similarity of content. In making analogies, we need to be sure we are focusing on the relationships between the two terms being compared, not just their surface content attributes. For example, in studying for final exams in two psychology courses, you may need different strategies when studying for a closed-book essay exam than for an open-book, multiple-choice exam. Transparency of content may lead to negative transfer between non-isomorphic problems if care is not taken to avoid such transfer.

Incubation

For solving many problems, the chief obstacle is not the need to find a suitable strategy for positive transfer. Rather, it is to avoid obstacles resulting from negative transfer. Incubation—putting the problem aside for a while without consciously thinking about it—offers one way in which to minimize negative transfer. It involves taking a pause from the stages of problem solving. For example, suppose you find that you are unable to solve a problem. None of the strategies you can think of seem to work. Try setting the problem aside for a while to let it incubate. During incubation, you must not consciously think about the problem. You do, however, allow for the possibility that the problem will be processed subconsciously. Some investigators of problem solving have even asserted that incubation is an essential stage of the problem-solving process (e.g., Cattell, 1971; von Helmholtz, 1896). Others have failed to find experimental support for the phenomenon of incubation (e.g., Baron, 1988).

A recent meta-analysis (Sio & Ormerod, 2009) found that, as most of the time in psychological research, the state of affairs is complex. When people have more time to prepare for the solving of a problem, incubation periods are usually more fruitful. Likewise, being occupied with tasks that are highly cognitively demanding is detrimental to the effect of an incubation period. The effect of incubation furthermore depends on the kind of task, with performance on divergent-thinking tasks (where something has to be produced) benefiting more than performance on
linguistic tasks, for example. Incubation seems to help because people continue to process, below consciousness, information about a problem on which they are incubating at the same time that they are attending to other matters.

**Neuroscience and Planning during Problem Solving**

One way to invest enough initial time in a problem is through the formation of a plan of action for the problem. As previously discussed, planning saves time and improves performance. In one study employing variants of the Tower of Hanoi, when participants became more familiar with this type of problem, they showed increased planning times, which resulted in a decrease in the total number of moves (Gunzelmann & Anderson, 2003). These results highlight the importance of planning for efficient problem solving.

Recall from Chapter 2 that the frontal lobes are involved in high-level cognitive processes. It is therefore not surprising that the frontal lobes and in particular the prefrontal cortex are essential for planning for complex problem-solving tasks (Unterrainer & Owen, 2006). A number of studies using a variety of neuropsychological methods, including functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) and positron emission tomography (PET), have highlighted activation in this region of the brain during problem solving (Unterrainer & Owen, 2006). Additionally, both the left and right prefrontal areas are active during the planning stage of complex problem solving (Newman et al., 2003). When a participant gives an incorrect response in a problem-solving task and therefore has to continue working on the problem, he or she reveals greater bilateral prefrontal activation than is associated with a correct response (Unterrainer et al., 2004). This finding would suggest that if the initial plan fails, problem solvers must devise a new plan, thereby activating the prefrontal cortex.

Further evidence for the importance of the prefrontal regions in problem solving can be seen in cases of traumatic brain injury. Both problem solving and planning ability decline following traumatic brain injury (Catroppa & Anderson, 2006). In fact, with regard to the problem-solving ability of patients with traumatic brain injury, those patients who performed best were ones with limited damage to the left prefrontal regions (Cazalis et al., 2006).

In the Tower of London task, other areas, including the premotor cortex and the parietal regions, were also activated (Newman et al., 2003; Unterrainer & Owen, 2006). This additional activation is likely the result of the need for attention and planning for movement. In addition to the prefrontal regions, the same areas active during use of visual spatial working memory are also active during solution of the Tower of London (Baker et al., 1996).

**Intelligence and Complex Problem Solving**

Cognitive approaches for studying information processing can be applied to more complex problem-solving tasks, such as analogies, series problems (e.g., completing a numerical or figural series), and syllogisms (Sternberg, 1977, 1983, 1984; see Chapter 12). The idea is to take the kinds of tasks used on conventional intelligence tests and to isolate components of intelligence. **Components** are the mental processes used in performing these tasks, such as translating a sensory input into a mental representation, transforming one conceptual representation into another, or translating a conceptual representation into a motor output (Sternberg, 1982). Many
investigators have elaborated on and expanded this basic approach (Lohman, 2000, 2005; Wenke, Frensch, & Funke, 2005). For example, in processing the analogy DOG : BOXER :: CAT : SIAMESE, one needs to encode the terms of the problem, infer the relation between DOG and BOXER, and then apply that relation from CAT to SIAMESE (see also Figure 11.13).

There are significant correlations between speed in executing these processes and performance on other, traditional intelligence tests. However, a more intriguing discovery is that participants who score higher on traditional intelligence tests take longer to encode the terms of the problem than do less intelligent participants. But they make up for the extra time by taking less time to perform the remaining components of the task. In general, more intelligent participants take longer during global planning—encoding the problem and formulating a general strategy for attacking the problem (or set of problems). But they take less time for local planning—forming and implementing strategies for the details of the task (Sternberg, 1981).

The advantage of spending more time on global planning is the increased likelihood that the overall strategy will be correct. Thus, when taking more time is advantageous, brighter people may take longer to do something than will less bright people. For example, the brighter person might spend more time researching and planning for writing a term paper but less time in the actual writing of it. This same differential in time allocation has been shown in other tasks as well. An example would be in solving physics problems (Larkin et al., 1980; see Sternberg, 1979, 1985a). That is, more intelligent people seem to spend more time planning for and encoding the problems they face. But they spend less time engaging in the other components of task performance. This may relate to the previously mentioned metacognitive attribute many include in their notions of intelligence.

---

**Figure 11.13  Mental Processes in Solving Analogies.**

In the solution of an analogy problem, the problem solver must first encode the problem A is to B as C is to D. The problem solver then must infer the relationship between A and B. Next, the problem solver must map the relationship between A and B to the relationship between C and each of the possible solutions to the analogy. Finally, the problem solver must apply the relationship to choose which of the possible solutions is the correct solution to the problem.
Researchers have also studied information processing of people engaged in complex problem-solving situations, such as playing chess and performing logical derivations (Bilalic et al., 2008; Kiesel et al., 2009; Simon, 1976). For example, a simple, brief task might require the participants first to view an arithmetic or geometric series. Then they must figure out the rule underlying the progression. And finally they must guess what numeral or geometric figure might come next. More complex tasks might include some of the tasks mentioned before, like the water-jar problem.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. How can mental sets impair our problem-solving ability?
2. What is negative transfer?
3. Are analogies always useful for problem solving?
4. What is the role of incubation in problem solving?

**Expertise: Knowledge and Problem Solving**

Even people who do not have expertise in cognitive psychology recognize that knowledge, particularly expert knowledge, greatly enhances problem solving. Expertise is superior skills or achievement reflecting a well-developed and well-organized knowledge base. What interests cognitive psychologists is the reason that expertise enhances problem solving. Why can experts solve problems in their field more successfully than can novices? Do experts know more problem-solving algorithms, heuristics, and other strategies? Do experts know better strategies? Or do they just use these strategies more often? What do experts know that makes the problem-solving process more effective for them than for novices in a field? Is it all talent or just acquired skill?

**Organization of Knowledge**

Do you think one can distinguish beers by their flavor? In one study, beer experts and beer novices experienced tasting a series of beers (Valentin et al., 2007). Both groups could sort the beers equally well. However, the beer experts performed better on subsequent recognition tasks (Valentin et al., 2007). These findings suggest that there was no difference in perceptual abilities between the experts and the novices, but there was a difference in memory between these two groups (Valentin et al., 2007). The researchers concluded that the beer experts had a superior framework for encoding and retrieving the new beer information (Valentin et al., 2007).

Knowledge can interact with understanding in problem solving as well (Whitten & Graesser, 2003). Consider a study investigating how knowledge interacts with coherence of a text. Investigators presented children with biology texts (McNamara et al., 1996). Half the children in the study had high levels of domain knowledge about biology and half had low levels. In addition, half the texts were highly coherent, meaning that they made clear how the various concepts in the text related to each other. The other half of the texts were of low coherence, meaning that they were more difficult to read because the ideas did not flow smoothly. Readers then had to do a variety of problem-solving tasks based on what they had read.
As the authors predicted, participants with low domain knowledge performed better when the texts were highly coherent. This finding suggests that, in general, learners do better when they are presented new material in a coherent way.

Surprisingly, however, the high-knowledge group performed better when the texts were of low rather than high coherence. The authors of the study suggested that high-knowledge readers may have been, essentially, on automatic pilot when reading the high-coherence texts, not paying much attention because they thought they knew what was in the texts. The low-coherence texts forced them to pay attention. These results point out the importance of attentional processes when people solve problems. This is particularly relevant in domains in which they are expert and in which they therefore may not feel they have to pay attention.

Elaboration of Knowledge

Do you remember the study with chess experts and novices described at the very beginning of this chapter in *Believe It or Not?* What differentiated the experts from the novices was the amount, organization, and use of knowledge. There were two tasks in the chess study: One involved a random array of pieces and the other a meaningful arrangement of pieces (Figure 11.14). For both chess tasks, the experts used heuristics for storing and retrieving information about the positions of the pieces on the chess-board. The novices, to the contrary, had not stored significant knowledge about positions. The key difference, therefore, was that chess experts had stored and organized in memory tens of thousands of particular board positions. When they saw sensible board positions, they could use the knowledge they had in memory to help them. They were able to remember the various board positions as integrated, organized chunks of information. As you may recall from Chapter 5, the ability to chunk information into meaningful units allows for superior memory and capacity. For random scatterings of pieces on the board, however, the knowledge of the experts was of no use. The experts had no advantage over the novices. Like the novices, they had to try to memorize the distinctive interrelations among many discrete pieces and positions. This memorization requires the storage of many more items, thus taxing one’s memory abilities.

Retrieval processes involving recognition of board arrangements are instrumental in grand master–level chess players’ success when compared with novices’ play (Gobet & Simon, 1996a, 1996b, 1996c). Even when grand masters are time-constrained so that look-ahead processes are curtailed, their constrained performance does not differ substantially from their unconstrained playing. Thus, an organized knowledge system is relatively more important to experts’ performance in chess than even the processes involved in predicting future moves.

Other studies have examined experts in other domains like radiology (Lesgold et al., 1988), physics (Larkin et al., 1980), and meditation (Brefczynski-Lewis et al., 2007). These studies revealed the same thing again and again. What differentiated experts from novices were their schemas for solving problems within their own domains of expertise (Glaser & Chi, 1988). The schemas of experts involve large, highly interconnected units of knowledge. They are organized according to underlying structural similarities among knowledge units. In contrast, the schemas of novices involve relatively small and disconnected units of knowledge. They are organized according to superficial similarities (Bryson et al., 1991).

Experts and novices also differ in how they classify various problems, describe the essential nature of problems, and how they determine and describe solutions (Chi, Glaser, & Rees, 1982; Larkin et al., 1980). One study exploring problem-solving strategies in both expert and novice mathematicians noted a difference in the use of
When experts and novices were asked to recall realistic patterns of chess pieces, as in panel (a), experts demonstrated much better performance, as shown in panel (b). However, when experts and novices were asked to recall random arrangements of chess pieces, as shown in panel (c), experts performed no better than novices, as shown in panel (d).

visual depictions. The researchers observed that novice problem solvers use a visual representation to solve problems that have an obvious spatial component, such as geometry problems. However, expert problem solvers used visual representations to solve a wide range of mathematical problems (Stylianou & Silver, 2004), whether or not they had an obvious spatial component. The ability to apply a visual representation to a variety of problems allows greater flexibility and an increased likelihood that a solution will be found.

An interesting study looked at the role of knowledge in understanding and interpreting a news broadcast regarding a baseball game (Hambrick & Engle, 2002). A total of 181 adults having a wide range of knowledge about baseball listened to radio broadcasts recorded by a professional baseball announcer. The announcements sounded like a real game. After each broadcast, memory for changes in the status of the game were measured. For example, participants would be asked questions about which bases were occupied after each player's turn at bat and about the numbers of outs and of runs scored during the inning. Baseball knowledge accounted for more than half the reliable variation in participants' performance. Working memory capacity also mattered, but not nearly so much as knowledge. Thus, people can remember things better and solve problems with what they remember better if they have a solid knowledge base with which to work.

**Reflections on Problem Solving**

Another difference between experts and novices can be observed by asking problem solvers to report aloud what they are thinking as they are attempting to solve various problems (Bilalic, 2008; Dew et al., 2009). Statements made by problem solvers are called verbal protocols. An interesting effect of verbal protocols is that they can lead to increased problem-solving ability. In one study, when participants spoke aloud or wrote about their problem-solving strategy in a way that centered on the objects of the problem, an improvement in quality of solutions was observed (Steif et al., 2006). In another study, problem-solving ability was enhanced when participants wrote a description of their problem-solving strategy as compared with when they spoke about their strategy (Pugalee, 2004). Thus, it seems that, for novice problem solvers, communicating problem-solving strategies improves performance.

Another difference between expert and novice problem solvers is the time spent on various aspects of problems, and the relationship between problem-solving strategies and the solutions reached. Experts appear to spend proportionately more time determining how to represent a problem than do novices (Lesgold, 1988; Lesgold et al., 1988), but they spend much less time than do novices actually implementing the strategy for solution.

The differences between experts and novices in their expenditure of time can be viewed in terms of the focus and direction of their problem solving. Experts seem to spend relatively more time than do novices figuring out how to match the given information in the problem with their existing schemas. In other words, they try to compare what they know about the problem with how the information they have matches what they already know, based on their expertise. Once experts find a correct match, they quickly can retrieve and implement a problem strategy. Thus, experts seem able to work forward from the given information (“What do I know?”) to find the unknown information (“What do I need to find out?”). They implement the correct sequence of steps, based on the strategies they have retrieved from their schemas in long-term memory (Chi et al., 1982).
CHAPTER 11 • Problem Solving and Creativity

Image not available due to copyright restrictions
Consider the ways an expert doctor and a novice medical student might handle a patient with a set of symptoms. The novice is not sure what to make of the symptoms. He somewhat haphazardly orders a long and expensive series of medical tests. He is hoping that with a more nearly complete set of symptomatic information, he may be able to make a correct diagnosis. The more experienced doctor, however, is more likely to immediately recognize the symptoms as fitting into a diagnostic pattern or one of a small number of patterns. This doctor orders only a small number of highly targeted tests. She is able to choose the correct diagnosis from among the limited number of possibilities. She then moves on to treat the diagnosed illness.

In contrast, novices seem to spend relatively little time trying to represent the problem. Instead, they choose to work backward from the unknown information to the given information. That is, they go from asking what they need to find out to asking what information is offered and what strategies do they know that can help them find the missing information. Often, novices use means–ends analysis (see Hunt, 1994). Thus, novices often consider more possible strategies than experts consider (see Holyoak, 1990). For experts, means–ends analysis of problems serves only as a backup strategy. They turn to it only if they are unable to retrieve an appropriate strategy, based on their existing schemas.

Thus, experts have not only more knowledge but also better-organized knowledge. They use their knowledge more effectively. Furthermore, the schemas of experts involve not only greater declarative knowledge about a problem domain. They also involve more procedural knowledge about strategies relevant to that domain. Perhaps because of their better grasp of the strategies required, experts more accurately predict the difficulty of solving problems than do novices. Experts also monitor their problem-solving strategies more carefully than do novices (Schoenfeld, 1981).

**Automatic Expert Processes**

Through practice in applying strategies, experts may automatize various operations. They can retrieve and execute these operations easily while working forward (see VanLehn, 1989). They use two important processes: One is *schematization*, which involves developing rich, highly organized schemas; the other is *automatization*, which involves consolidating sequences of steps into unified routines that require little or no conscious control. Through these two processes, experts may shift the burden of solving problems from limited-capacity working memory to infinite-capacity long-term memory. They thereby become increasingly efficient and accurate in solving problems. The freeing of their working-memory capacity may better enable them to monitor their progress and their accuracy during problem solving. Novices, in contrast, must use their working memory for trying to hold multiple features of a problem and various possible alternative strategies. This effort may leave novices with less working memory available for monitoring their accuracy and their progress toward solving the problem.

Automaticity can be seen in mathematics, for example, where low-level skills, such as counting and adding, become automatic (Tronsky, 2005). These skills reduce the working-memory load and allow for higher-level mathematical procedures to be complete.

However, the automaticity of experts actually may hinder problem solving by making them less flexible. This can occur when experts are tackling problems that differ structurally from the problems they normally encounter (Frensch & Sternberg, 1989). Initially, novices may perform better than experts when the problems appear
structurally different from the norm. Eventually, however, the performance of experts generally catches up to and surpasses that of novices (Frensch & Sternberg, 1989; Lesgold, 1988). Perhaps this difference results from the experts' richly developed schemas and their enhanced self-monitoring skills. The highest level experts, however, are less vulnerable to falling prey to their own expertise (Bilalic et al., 2008). They have the wisdom to realize their own susceptibility to becoming entrenched and take this susceptibility into account.

Table 11.3 summarizes the various characteristics of expert problem solving.

**Innate Talent and Acquired Skill**

Although a richly elaborated knowledge base is crucial to expertise in a domain, there remain differences in performance that are not explainable in terms of knowledge level alone. There is considerable debate as to whether differences between novices and experts and among different experts themselves are due either to innate talent or to the quantity and quality of practice in a domain. Many espouse the “practice makes perfect” point of view (see for example Ericsson, 2003). The practice should be deliberate, or focused. It should emphasize acquisition of new skills and applications rather than mindless repetition of what the developing expert already knows how to do.

However, some take an alternative approach. This approach acknowledges the importance of practice in building a knowledge and skill base. It also underscores the importance of something like talent. Indeed, the interaction between innate abilities modified by experience is widely accepted in the domain of language acquisition as well as other domains. Certainly, some skill domains are heavily dependent on nurture. For example, wisdom is partly knowledge based. The knowledge one uses to make wise judgments is necessarily a result of experience (Baltes & Smith, 1990).

Experts in some domains perform at superior levels by virtue of prediction skills. For example, expert typists move their fingers toward keys corresponding to the letters they will need to type more quickly than do novice typists (Norman & Rumelhart, 1983). Indeed, the single best predictor of typing speed is how far ahead in the text a typist looks when typing (Ericsson, 2003). The farther ahead he or she looks, the better the typist is able to have fingers in position as needed. When typists are not allowed to look ahead in their typing, the advantage of expert typists is largely eliminated (Salthouse, 1984). Expert sign-language users show variations in sign production in preparation for the next sign (Yang & Sarkar, 2006). Rather than produce one sign in isolation, these signers are looking ahead. Looking ahead allows experts to produce signs more quickly than do novices. Expert musicians, too, are better able to sight-read than novices by virtue of their looking farther ahead in the music so they can anticipate what notes will be coming up (Sloboda, 1984). Even in sports, such as tennis, experts are superior to novices in part by virtue of their being able to predict the trajectory of an approaching ball more rapidly and accurately than novices (Abernethy, 1991).

Another characteristic of experts is that they tend to use a more systematic approach to difficult problems within their domain of expertise than do novices. For example, one study compared strategies used by problem solvers in a simulated biology laboratory (Vollmeyer, Burns, & Holyoak, 1996). The investigators found that better problem solvers were more systematic in their approach to the lab than were poorer problem solvers. For example, in seeking an explanation of a biological phenomenon, they were more likely to hold one variable constant while varying other variables.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 11.3</th>
<th>What Characterizes Expertise?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Experts</strong></td>
<td><strong>Novices</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Schemas | Have large, rich schemas containing a great deal of declarative knowledge about domain  
Schemas contain a great deal of procedural knowledge about problem-solving strategies relevant to a given domain | Have relatively impoverished schemas containing relatively less declarative knowledge about domain  
Schemas contain relatively little procedural knowledge about problem strategies relevant to the given domain |
| Organization | Have well-organized, highly interconnected units of knowledge in schemas | Have poorly organized, loosely interconnected, scattered units of knowledge |
| Use of time | Spend proportionately more time determining how to represent a problem than in searching for and executing a problem strategy | Spend proportionately more time searching for and executing a problem strategy than in determining how to represent a problem |
| Representation of problems | Develop sophisticated representation of problems based on structural similarities among problems | Develop relatively poor and naive representation of problems based on superficial similarities among problems |
| Work direction | Work forward from given information to implement strategies for finding unknown information | Work backward from focusing on the unknown to finding problem strategies that make use of given information |
| Strategy | Generally choose a strategy based on elaborate schema of problem strategies; use means–ends analysis only as a backup strategy for handling unusual, atypical problems | Frequently use means–ends analysis as a strategy for handling most problems; sometimes choose a strategy based on knowledge of problem strategies |
| Automatization | Have automatized many sequences of steps within problem strategies | Show little or no automatization of any sequences of steps within problem strategies |
| Efficiency | Show highly efficient problem solving; when time constraints are imposed, solve problems more quickly than novices | Show relatively inefficient problem solving; solve problems less quickly than experts |
| Prediction of difficulty | Accurately predict the difficulty of solving particular problems | Do not accurately predict the difficulty of solving particular problems |
| Monitoring | Carefully monitor own problem-solving strategies and processes | Show poor monitoring of own problem-solving strategies and processes |
| Accuracy of solution | Show high accuracy in reaching appropriate solutions | Show much less accuracy than experts in reaching appropriate solutions |
| Confronting unusual problems | When confronting highly unusual problems with atypical structural features, take relatively more time than novices both to represent the problem and to retrieve appropriate problem strategies | When confronting highly unusual problems with atypical structural features, novices take relatively less time than experts both to represent the problem and to retrieve problem strategies |
| Handling contradictory information | When provided with new information that contradicts initial problem representation, show flexibility in adapting to a more appropriate strategy | Show less ability to adapt to new information that contradicts initial problem representation and strategy |
Many scientists in the field of expertise prefer to minimize the contributions of talent to expertise by locking talent in the trunk of “folk” psychology (Sternberg, 1996a). This tendency is not surprising, given two factors. The first is the widespread use of the term talent outside the scientific community. The second is the lack of an adequate, testable definition of talent.

Genetic heritage seems to make some difference in the acquisition of at least some kinds of expertise. Studies of the heritability of reading disabilities, for example, seem to point to a strong role for genetic factors in people with a reading disability (see Haworth et al., 2009; Platko et al., 2008). Furthermore, differences in the phonological awareness required for reading ability could be a factor in reading for which individual differences are at least partially genetic (Wagner & Stanovich, 1996). In general, even if the role of practice is found to account for much of the expertise shown in a given domain, the contributions of genetic factors to the remaining portion of expertise could make some difference in a world of intense competition.

Artificial Intelligence and Expertise

Computer programs have been developed both to simulate human intelligence and to exceed it. In many ways, computer programs have been created with the intention of solving problems faster and more efficiently than humans. But can a computer be intelligent at all? How can it be tested? Where are systems used that mimic human expertise, and are they successful? These are some of the questions we explore in the next sections.

Can a Computer Be Intelligent?

Much of early information-processing research centered on work based on computer simulations of human intelligence as well as computer systems that use optimal methods to solve tasks. Programs of both kinds can be classified as examples of artificial intelligence (AI), or intelligence in symbol-processing systems such as computers (see Schank & Towle, 2000). Computers cannot actually think; they must be programmed to behave as though they are thinking. That is, they must be programmed to simulate cognitive processes. In this way, they give us insight into the details of how people process information cognitively. Essentially, computers are just pieces of hardware—physical components of equipment—that respond to instructions. Other kinds of hardware (other pieces of equipment) also respond to instructions. For example, if you can figure out how to give the instructions, a DVR (digital video recorder) will respond to your instructions and will do what you tell it to do.

What makes computers so interesting to researchers is that they can be given highly complex instructions (computer programs, more commonly known as software). Programs tell the computer how to respond to new information.

Before we consider any intelligent programs, we need to consider seriously the issue of what, if anything, would lead us to describe a computer program as being “intelligent.”

The Turing Test

Probably the first serious attempt to deal with the issue of whether a computer program can be intelligent was made by Alan Turing (1963). The basic idea behind the Turing Test is whether an observer can distinguish the performance of a computer
from that of a human. The test is conducted with a computer, a human respondent, and an interrogator. The interrogator has two different “conversations” with an interactive computer program. The goal of the interrogator is to figure out which of two parties is a person communicating through the computer, and which is the computer itself. The interrogator can ask the two parties any questions at all. However, the computer will try to fool the interrogator into believing that it is human. The human, in contrast, will be trying to show the interrogator that he or she truly is human. The computer passes the Turing Test if an interrogator is unable to distinguish the computer from the human.
Often, what researchers are interested in when assessing the “intelligence” of computers is not their reaction time, which is often much faster than that of humans. They are interested instead in patterns of reaction time, that is, whether the problems that take the computer relatively longer to solve also take human participants relatively longer.

Sometimes, the goal of a computer model is not to match human performance but to exceed it. In this case, maximum AI, rather than simulation of human intelligence, is the goal of the program. The criterion of whether computer performance matches that of humans is no longer relevant. Instead, the criterion of interest is that of how well the computer can perform the task assigned to it. Computer programs that play chess, for example, typically play in a way that emphasizes “brute force,” or the consideration of all possible moves without respect to their quality. The programs evaluate extremely large numbers of possible moves. Many of them are moves humans would never even consider evaluating (Berliner, 1969; Bernstein, 1958). Using brute force, the IBM program, “Deep Blue,” beat world champion Gary Kasparov in a 1997 chess match. The same brute-force method is used in programs that play checkers (Samuel, 1963). These programs generally are evaluated in terms of how well they can beat each other or, even more importantly, human contenders playing against them.

**Expert Systems**

**Expert systems** are computer programs that can perform the way an expert does in a fairly specific domain. They are not developed to model human intelligence, but to simulate performance in just one domain, often a narrow one. They are mostly based on rules that are followed and worked down like a decision tree.

Several programs were developed to diagnose various kinds of medical disorders, like cancer. Such programs are obviously of enormous potential significance, given the very high costs (financial and personal) of incorrect diagnoses. Not only are there expert systems for use by doctors, but there are even medical expert systems on-line for use by consumers who would like an analysis of their symptoms.

Expert systems are used in other areas as well, for example in banks. The processing of small mortgages is relatively expensive for banks because a lot of factors need to be considered. If the data are fed into a computer, however, an expert system makes a decision about the mortgage application based on rules it was programmed with. There is one expert system with which you may have made some experiences yourself: Microsoft Windows offers troubleshooting through the “help section” where you can enter into a dialogue with the system in order to figure out a solution to your particular problem. Reflecting on your own experiences with computerized troubleshooting processes, you can see the strengths but also weaknesses of expert systems.

One has to be cautious in the use of expert systems. Because patients generally do not have the knowledge their doctors have, their use of expert systems, such as on-line ones, may lead them to incorrect conclusions about what illnesses they suffer. In medicine, patient use of the Internet is no substitute for the judgment of a medical doctor.

The application of expertise to problem solving generally involves converging on a single correct solution from a broad range of possibilities. A complementary asset to expertise in problem solving involves creativity. Here, an individual extends the range of possibilities to consider never-before-explored options. In fact, many problems can be solved only by inventing or discovering strategies to answer a complex question. We will discuss the role of creativity in problem solving in the next section of this chapter.
How can we possibly define creativity as a single construct that unifies the work of Leonardo da Vinci and Marie Curie, of Vincent Van Gogh and Isaac Newton, and of Toni Morrison and Albert Einstein? There may be about as many narrow definitions of creativity as there are people who think about creativity (Figure 11.15). However, most investigators in the field of creativity would broadly define creativity as the process of producing something that is both original and worthwhile (Csikszentmihalyi, 1999, 2000; Kozbelt, Beghetto, & Runco, 2010; Lubart & Mouchiroud, 2003; Sternberg & Lubart, 1996). The something could take many forms. It might be

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. How do the schemas of experts and novices differ?
2. Why does automatization help experts solve problems efficiently?
3. How does talent contribute to expertise?
4. What are expert systems?

Here are some original and worthwhile ways of defining creativity. How do you define creativity?

a theory, a dance, a chemical, a process or procedure, a story, a symphony, or almost anything else.

What does it take to create something original and worthwhile? What are creative people like? Almost everyone would agree that creative individuals show creative productivity. They produce inventions, insightful discoveries, artistic works, revolutionary paradigms, or other products that are both original and worthwhile. Conventional wisdom suggests that highly creative individuals also have creative lifestyles. These lifestyles are characterized by flexibility, non-stereotyped behaviors, and non-conforming attitudes.

**What Are the Characteristics of Creative People?**

Some psychologists measure creativity through *divergent production*—the generation of a diverse assortment of appropriate responses, an approach originated by Guilford (1950) (see Runco & Albert, 2010, for a history of the field, and Plucker & Makel, 2010, for a discussion of assessment of creativity). For example, creative individuals often have high scores on assessments of creativity. An example of such an assessment is found in the Torrance Tests of Creative Thinking (Torrance, 1974, 1984). They measure the diversity, quantity, and appropriateness of responses to open-ended questions. An example of such a question is to think of all the possible ways in which to use a paper clip or a ballpoint pen. Torrance’s test also assesses creative figural responses. For example, a person might be given a sheet of paper displaying some circles, squiggles, or lines. The test would assess how many different ways the person had used the given shapes to complete a drawing. Assessment of the Torrance test would consider particularly how much the person had used unusual or richly elaborated details in completing a figure.

Other psychological researchers have focused on creativity as a cognitive process by studying problem solving and insight (Finke, 1995; Ward & Kolomyts, 2010; Weisberg, 1988, 2009). Some of these researchers believe that what distinguishes remarkably creative individuals from less remarkable people is their expertise and commitment to their creative endeavor. Highly creative individuals work long and hard. They study the work of their predecessors and their contemporaries. They thereby become thoroughly expert in their fields. They then build on and diverge from what they know to create innovative approaches and products (Weisberg, 1988, 2009) and thereby change society (Moran, 2010). One study examined the creativity of projects completed by design students. The researchers found that the greater the knowledge amassed by a student, the greater, on average, the creativity of the project (Christiaans & Venselaar, 2007).

Some computer programs, such as those composing music or rediscovering scientific principles, can be viewed as creative. The question one always needs to ask with these programs is whether their accomplishments truly are comparable to those of creative humans, and whether the processes they use to be creative are the same as those used by humans (Boden, 1999). Langley and colleagues’ (1987) programs of scientific discovery actually rediscover scientific ideas rather than discover them for the first time. Even Deep Blue, the computer program that beat world-champion chess player Gary Kasparov, did so not by playing chess more creatively than Kasparov. Rather, it won through its enormous powers of rapid computation.

Personality and motivation play important roles in creativity (Barron, 1988; Feist, 2010; Hennessey, 2010; Runco, 2010). Often underlying creativity are flexible beliefs and broadly accepting attitudes toward other cultures, other races, and other
religious creeds. Some investigators have focused on the importance of motivation in creative productivity (e.g., Amabile, 1996; Collins & Amabile, 1999).

One may differentiate intrinsic motivation, which is internal to the individual, from extrinsic motivation, which is external to the individual. For example, intrinsic motivators might include sheer enjoyment of the creative process or personal desire to solve a problem. Intrinsic motivation is essential to creativity. Extrinsic motivators might include a desire for fame or fortune. Extrinsic motivators actually may impede creativity under many but not all circumstances (Amabile, 1996; Prabhu et al., 2008). Curiously, in one experiment, extrinsic rewards for novel performance led to an increase in both creativity and intrinsic motivation. Conversely, extrinsic rewards for normal performance resulted in a decrease in both creativity and intrinsic motivation (Eisenberger & Shanock, 2003).

Certain traits seem consistently to be associated with creative individuals (Feist, 1998, 1999; Prabhu et al., 2008; Zhang & Sternberg, 2009). In particular, creative individuals tend to be more open to new experiences, self-confident, self-accepting, impulsive, ambitious, driven, dominant, and hostile than less creative individuals. They also are less conventional.

Creativity needs to be viewed in the contexts in which it occurs (Csikszentmihalyi, 1988, 1996; Moran, 2010). One can seek to understand creativity by going beyond the immediate social, intellectual, and cultural context to embrace the entire sweep of history (Simonton, 1988, 1994, 1997, 1999, 2010). Creative contributions, almost by definition, are unpredictable because they violate the norms established by the forerunners and the contemporaries of the creator. Among the many attributes of creative individuals are the abilities to make serendipitous discoveries and to pursue such discoveries actively (Simonton, 1994).

Evolutionary thinking also can be used to study creativity (Cziko, 1998; Gabora & Kaufman, 2010; Simonton, 2010). Underlying such models is the notion that creative ideas evolve much as organisms do. The idea is that creativity occurs as an outcome of a process of blind variation and selective retention (Campbell, 1960). In blind variation, creators first generate an idea. They have no real sense of whether the idea will be
BEFORE IT OR NOT

DOES THE FIELD YOU ARE IN PREDICT WHEN YOU WILL DO YOUR BEST WORK?

Creative people often long to make a contribution that will change the world. What they may not realize is that the age at which they make such a contribution depends not only on them, but the field that they choose to enter. Dean Simonton (1988, 1991, 1994) has studied career trajectories for creative contributions. He has found that the age at which people make their outstanding creative contributions varies somewhat widely by field. For example, in chemistry, the average age of one’s greatest work is 38. In medicine, it is 42. Among composers, it is around 41. But notice this: Despite the variation, chances are pretty good that, on average, the best work will occur roughly around the age of 40. So if you view yourself as creative but have not yet had your great idea, and you are under 40, remember that the best is probably yet to come.

Creative individuals tended to have moderately supportive, but often strict and relatively chilly (i.e., not warmly affectionate and nurturing) early family lives. They have highly supportive mentors. Most showed an early interest in their chosen field, but many were not particularly noteworthy (Gardner, 1993a, Policastro & Gardner, 1999; see also Gruber, 1974/1981; Gruber & Davis, 1988). They generally tended to show an early interest in exploring uncharted territory; but only after gaining mastery of their chosen field, after about a decade of practicing their craft, did they have their initial revolutionary breakthrough. Most creators seemed to have obtained at least some emotional and intellectual support at the time of their breakthrough. However, following this initial breakthrough (and sometimes before), highly creative individuals generally dedicated all their energies to their work. They sometimes abandoned, neglected, or exploited close relationships during adulthood. About a decade after their initial creative achievement, most of the creators Gardner studied made a second breakthrough. It was more comprehensive and more integrative but less revolutionary. Whether a creator continued to make significant contributions depended on the particular field of endeavor. Poets and scientists were less likely to do so than musicians and painters.

An alternative integrative theory of creativity suggests that multiple individual and environmental factors must converge for creativity to occur (Sternberg & Lubart, 1991, 1996). What distinguishes the highly creative individual from the only modestly creative one is the confluence of multiple factors, rather than extremely high levels of any particular factor or even the possession of a distinctive trait. This theory is termed the investment theory of creativity. The theme unifying these various factors is that the creative individual takes a buy-low, sell-high approach to ideas (Sternberg & Lubart, 1995, 1996). In buying low, the creator initially sees the hidden potential of ideas that are presumed by others to have little value. The creative person then focuses attention on this idea. It is, at the time of the creator’s interest, unrecognized or undervalued by contemporaries, but it has great potential for creative development. The creator then develops the idea into a meaningful, significant creative contribution until at last others also can recognize the merits of the idea. Some of these contributions may be stunning; others more modest (Sternberg, Kaufman, & Pretz, 2001, 2002). Once the idea has been developed and its value is recognized, the creator then sells high. He or she then moves on to other pursuits and looks for the hidden potential in other...
undervalued ideas. Thus, the creative person influences the field most by always staying a step ahead of the rest. In the ideal, students would develop not only a strong knowledge base, but the skills and attributes discussed here that are essential to creativity (Beghetto, 2010; Smith & Smith, 2010).

Neuroscience and Creativity

The examination of creative thought and production has led researchers to identify brain regions that are active during creativity (Kaufman, Kornilov, Bristol, Tan, & Grigorenko, 2010). The prefrontal regions are especially active during the creative process, regardless of whether the creative thought is effortful or spontaneous (Dietrich, 2004).

In addition to the prefrontal area, other regions have also been identified as important for creativity. In one study, participants were given a list of words that were either semantically related or unrelated (Bechtereva et al., 2004). The participants were then asked to make up a story using all of these words. Forming a story from a list of unrelated words should require more creativity than using a list of semantically related words. These researchers noted that Brodmann’s area (BA) 39 was active during the unrelated-list story production but not during production of stories with the list of related words. Previous research has indicated that this and related Brodmann’s areas are involved in verbal working memory, task switching, and imagination (Blackwood et al., 2000; Collette et al., 2001; Sohn et al., 2000; Zurowski et al., 2002).

A selective thinning of cortical areas seems to correlate with intelligence and creativity. In particular, a thinning of the left frontal lobe, lingual, cuneus, angular, inferior parietal, and fusiform gyri is connected with high scores on creativity measures. These areas include several Brodmann’s areas, including BA 39. Additionally, a relative thickness of the right posterior cingulate gyrus and right angular gyrus was related to higher creativity as well. These variations in cortical thickness, and especially a thinning in various areas, probably influence information flow within the brain (Jung et al., 2010).

CONCEPT CHECK

1. Name some ways how one can identify a creative individual.
2. What makes a contribution creative?
3. Which brain regions contribute to creative processes?
Key Themes

This chapter highlights several of the themes first presented in Chapter 1.

**Domain generality versus domain specificity.** Early work on problem solving, such as that by Allen Newell and Herbert Simon and their colleagues, emphasized the domain generality of problem solving. These investigators sought to write computer routines, such as the General Problem Solver, that would solve a broad array of problems. Later theorists have emphasized domain specificity in problem solving. They have especially called attention to the need for a broad knowledge base to solve problems successfully.

**Validity of causal inference versus ecological validity.** Most studies of creativity have occurred in laboratory settings. For example, Paul Torrance gave students paper-and-pencil tests of creative thinking administered in classrooms. In contrast, Howard Gruber has been interested only in creativity as it occurred in natural settings, such as when Darwin generated his many ideas behind the theory of evolution.

**Applied versus basic research.** The field of creativity has generated many insights regarding fundamental processes used in creative thought. But the field has also spawned a large industry of “creativity enhancement”—programs designed to make people more creative. Some of these programs use insights of basic research. Others represent little more than the intuitions of their inventors. When possible, training should be based on psychological theory and research, rather than guesswork.

Summary

1. **What are some key steps involved in solving problems?** Problem solving involves mentally working to overcome obstacles that stand in the way of reaching a goal. The key steps of problem solving are problem identification, problem definition and representation, strategy construction, organization of information, allocation of resources, monitoring, and evaluation. In everyday experiences, these steps may be implemented very flexibly. Various steps may be repeated, may occur out of sequence, or may be implemented interactively.

2. **What are the differences between problems that have a clear path to a solution versus problems that do not?** Although well-structured problems may have clear paths to solution, the route to solution still may be difficult to follow. Some well-structured problems can be solved using algorithms. They may be tedious to implement but are likely to lead to an accurate solution if applicable to a given problem. Computers are likely to use algorithmic problem-solving strategies. Humans are more likely to use rather informal heuristics (e.g., means–ends analysis, working forward, working backward, and generate and test) for solving problems. When ill-structured problems are solved, the choice of an appropriate problem representation powerfully influences the ease of reaching an accurate solution. Additionally, in solving ill-structured problems, people may need to use more than a heuristic or an algorithmic strategy; insight may be required.

Many ill-structured problems cannot be solved without the benefit of insight. There are several alternative views of how insightful problem solving takes place. According to the Gestaltist and the neo-Gestaltist views, insightful problem solving is a special process. It comprises more than the sum of its parts and may be evidenced by the suddenness of realizing a solution.

3. **What are some of the obstacles and aids to problem solving?** A mental set (also termed entrenchment) is a strategy that has worked in the past but that does not work for a particular problem that needs to be solved in the present.

   A particular type of mental set is functional fixedness. It involves the inability to see that something that is known to have a particular use also may be used for serving other purposes.
Transfer may be either positive or negative. It refers to the carryover of problem-solving skills from one problem or kind of problem to another. Positive transfer across isomorphic problems rarely occurs spontaneously, particularly if the problems appear to be different in content or in context. Incubation follows a period of intensive work on a problem. It involves laying a problem to rest for a while and then returning to it. In this way, subconscious work can continue on the problem while the problem is consciously ignored.

4. How does expertise affect problem solving?
Experts differ from novices in both the amount and the organization of knowledge that they bring to bear on problem solving in the domain of their expertise. For experts, many aspects of problem solving may be governed by automatic processes.

Such automaticity usually facilitates the expert's ability to solve problems in the given area of expertise. When problems involve novel elements requiring novel strategies, however, the automaticity of some procedures actually may impede problem solving, at least temporarily. Expertise in a given domain is viewed mostly from the practice-makes-perfect perspective. However, talent should not be ignored and probably contributes much to the differences among experts.

5. What is creativity, and how can it be fostered?
Creativity involves producing something that is both original and worthwhile. Several factors characterize highly creative individuals. One is extremely high motivation to be creative in a particular field of endeavor (e.g., for the sheer enjoyment of the creative process). A second factor is both non-conformity in violating any conventions that might inhibit the creative work and dedication in maintaining standards of excellence and self-discipline related to the creative work. A third factor in creativity is deep belief in the value of the creative work, as well as willingness to criticize and improve the work. A fourth is careful choice of the problems or subjects on which to focus creative attention.

A fifth characteristic of creativity is thought processes characterized by both insight and divergent thinking. A sixth factor is risk taking. The final two factors in creativity are extensive knowledge of the relevant domain and profound commitment to the creative endeavor. In addition, the historical context and the domain and field of endeavor influence the expression of creativity.

Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

1. Describe the steps of the problem-solving cycle and give an example of each step.
2. What are some of the key characteristics of expert problem solvers?
3. What are some of the insights into problem solving gained through studying computer simulations of problem solving? How might a computer-based approach limit the potential for understanding problem solving in humans?
4. Compare and contrast the various approaches to creativity.
5. Design a problem that would require insight for its solution.
6. Design a context for problem solving that would enhance the ease of reaching a solution.
7. Given what we know about some of the hindrances to problem solving, how could you minimize those hindrances in your handling of the problems you face?
8. Given some of the ideas regarding creativity presented in this chapter, what can you do to enhance your own creativity?
### Key Terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>algorithms</td>
<td>449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>analysis</td>
<td>445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convergent thinking</td>
<td>445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creativity</td>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divergent thinking</td>
<td>445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expert systems</td>
<td>478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expertise</td>
<td>468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>functional fixedness</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heuristics</td>
<td>449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ill-structured problems</td>
<td>447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incubation</td>
<td>465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insight</td>
<td>455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isomorphic</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mental set</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative transfer</td>
<td>462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>positive transfer</td>
<td>462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>problem solving</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>problem space</td>
<td>449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>problem-solving cycle</td>
<td>444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>productive thinking</td>
<td>456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stereotypes</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>synthesis</td>
<td>445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transfer</td>
<td>462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transparency</td>
<td>465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well-structured problems</td>
<td>447</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Media Resources

Visit the companion website—www.cengagebrain.com—for quizzes, research articles, chapter outlines, and more.

**CogLab**

Explore CogLab by going to http://coglab.wadsworth.com. To learn more, examine the following experiments:

- Monty Hall
CHAPTER OUTLINE

Decision Making and Reasoning

Judgment and Decision Making
  Classical Decision Theory
    The Model of Economic Man and Woman
    Subjective Expected Utility Theory
  Heuristics and Biases
    Heuristics
    Biases
  Fallacies
    Gambler’s Fallacy and the Hot Hand
    Conjunction Fallacy
    Sunk-Cost Fallacy
  The Gist of It: Do Heuristics Help Us or Lead Us Astray?
  Opportunity Costs

Naturalistic Decision Making

Group Decision Making
  Benefits of Group Decisions
  Groupthink
  Antidotes for Groupthink
  Neuroscience of Decision Making

Deductive Reasoning
  What Is Deductive Reasoning?
  Conditional Reasoning
    What Is Conditional Reasoning?
    The Wason Selection Task
    Conditional Reasoning in Everyday Life
  Influences on Conditional Reasoning
    Evolution and Reasoning

Syllogistic Reasoning: Categorical Syllogisms
  What Are Categorical Syllogisms?
    How Do People Solve Syllogisms?

Aids and Obstacles to Deductive Reasoning
  Heuristics in Deductive Reasoning
  Biases in Deductive Reasoning
  Enhancing Deductive Reasoning

Inductive Reasoning
  What Is Inductive Reasoning?
  Causal Inferences
  Categorical Inferences

Reasoning by Analogy

An Alternative View of Reasoning

Neuroscience of Reasoning

Key Themes

Summary

Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions

Key Terms

Media Resources
Here are some questions we will explore in this chapter:

1. What are some of the strategies that guide human decision making?
2. What are some of the forms of deductive reasoning that people may use, and what factors facilitate or impede deductive reasoning?
3. How do people use inductive reasoning to make causal inferences and to reach other types of conclusions?
4. Are there any alternative views of reasoning?

**BELIEVE IT OR NOT**

**Can a Simple Rule of Thumb Outsmart a Nobel Laureate’s Investment Strategy?**

If you wanted to invest your money in the stock market, would you rather rely on a Nobel laureate’s strategy or on a simple heuristic (which is kind of a rule of thumb)? Researchers (De Miguel, 2007) compared the levels of success of 14 portfolio management strategies and compared them with the success of the simple $1/N$ heuristic. This heuristic simply suggests that you distribute your assets evenly among a given number of options. That is, each of the $N$ options receives $1/N$ of the total investment. Among the other strategies evaluated was Nobel laureate Harry Markowitz’s mean-variance model, according to which investors should optimize the trade-off between the mean and variance of a portfolio return. Markowitz suggested you minimize your risk and maximize your return by considering several factors, such as that sometimes certain groups of stocks go up in price whereas others go down (e.g., if the oil price goes up, airline profits will go down). The researchers found that the simple $1/N$ heuristic actually outperformed all 14 other models. In this chapter, you will learn more about how humans make decisions and what shortcuts (heuristics) they use when they are faced with uncertainty or more information than they can process.

Let’s start this chapter with a puzzle. Read the following description in Investigating Cognitive Psychology: The Conjunction Fallacy, and rate the likelihood of the presented statements.

**INVESTIGATING COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY**

**The Conjunction Fallacy**

Linda is 31 years old, single, outspoken, and very bright. She majored in philosophy. As a student, she was deeply concerned with issues of discrimination and social justice and also participated in anti-nuclear demonstrations.

Based on the preceding description, list the likelihood that the following statements about Linda are true (with 0 meaning completely unlikely and 100 meaning totally likely):

(a) Linda is a teacher in elementary school.
(b) Linda works in a bookstore and takes yoga classes.
(c) Linda is active in the feminist movement.
(d) Linda is a psychiatric social worker.
(e) Linda is a member of the League of Women Voters.
(f) Linda is a bank teller.
(g) Linda is an insurance salesperson.
(h) Linda is a bank teller and is active in the feminist movement.

If you are like 85% of the people Tversky and Kahneman studied, you rated the likelihood of item (h) as greater than the likelihood of item (f). Imagine a huge convention hall filled with the entire population of bank tellers. Now think about how many of them would be at a hypothetical booth for feminist bank tellers—a subset of the entire population of bank tellers. If Linda is at the booth for feminist bank tellers, she must, by definition, be in the convention hall of bank tellers. Hence, the likelihood that she is at the booth (i.e., she is a feminist bank teller) cannot logically be greater than the likelihood that she is in the convention hall (i.e., she is a bank teller). Nonetheless, given the description of Linda, we intuitively feel more likely to find her at the booth within the convention hall than in the entire convention hall, which makes no sense. This intuitive feeling is an example of a fallacy—erroneous reasoning—in judgment and reasoning.

In this chapter, we consider many ways in which we make judgments and decisions and use reasoning to draw conclusions. The first section deals with how we make choices and judgments. Judgment and decision making are used to select from among choices or to evaluate opportunities. Afterward, we consider various forms of reasoning. The goal of reasoning is to draw conclusions, either deductively from principles or inductively from evidence.

Judgment and Decision Making

In the course of our everyday lives, we constantly are making judgments and decisions. One of the most important decisions you may have made is that of whether and where to go to college. Once in college, you still need to decide on which courses to take. Later on, you may need to choose a major field of study. You make decisions about friends, dates, how to relate to your parents, how to spend money, and countless other things. How do you go about making these decisions?

Classical Decision Theory

The earliest models of how people make decisions are referred to as classical decision theory. Most of these models were devised by economists, statisticians, and philosophers, not by psychologists. Hence, they reflect the strengths of an economic perspective. One such strength is the ease of developing and using mathematical models for human behavior.

The Model of Economic Man and Woman

Among the early models of decision making crafted in the 20th century was that of economic man and woman. This model assumed three things:

1. Decision makers are fully informed regarding all possible options for their decisions and of all possible outcomes of their decision options.
2. They are infinitely sensitive to the subtle distinctions among decision options.
3. They are fully rational in regard to their choice of options (Edwards, 1954; see also Slovic, 1990).

The assumption of infinite sensitivity means that people can evaluate the difference between two outcomes, no matter how subtle the distinctions among options may be. The assumption of rationality means that people make their choices to maximize something of value, whatever that something may be.
Consider an example of how this model works. Suppose that a decision maker is considering which of two smartphones to buy. The decision maker, according to this model, will consider every aspect of each phone. The shopper will next decide on some objective basis how favorable each phone is on each aspect. The shopper then will weigh objectively each of the aspects in terms of how important it is. The favorability ratings will be multiplied by the weights. Then an overall averaged rating will be computed, taking into account all of the data. The shopper then will buy the smartphone with the best score. A great deal of economic research has been based on this model.

Subjective Expected Utility Theory
An alternative model makes greater allowance for the psychological makeup of each individual decision maker. According to subjective expected utility theory, the goal of human action is to seek pleasure and avoid pain. According to this theory, in making decisions, people will seek to maximize pleasure (referred to as positive utility) and to minimize pain (referred to as negative utility). In doing so, however, each of us uses calculations of two things. One is subjective utility, which is a calculation based on the individual’s judged weightings of utility (value), rather than on objective criteria. The second is subjective probability, which is a calculation based on the individual’s estimates of likelihood, rather than on objective statistical computations. The difference between this model and the former one is that here the ratings and weights are subjective, whereas in the former model they are supposedly objective.

Scientists soon noticed that human decision making is more complex than even this modified theory implies. In particular, when have you seriously considered every aspect of a decision, rated each possible choice, weighted the choice, and then used your favorability ratings and weights to compute an averaged evaluation of each of the choices? Probably not recently.

Heuristics and Biases
The world is full of information and stimuli of different kinds. In order to function properly and not get overwhelmed, we need to filter out the information we need among the many different pieces of information available to us. The same holds true for decision making. In order to be able to make a decision within a reasonable time frame, we need to reduce the available information to a manageable amount. Heuristics help us achieve this goal and at the same time decrease our efforts by allowing us to examine fewer cues or deal with fewer pieces of information (Shah & Oppenheimer, 2008). However, sometimes our thinking also gets biased by our tendencies to make decisions more simply. The mental shortcuts of heuristics and biases lighten the cognitive load of making decisions, but they also allow for a much greater chance of error. We will explore both heuristics and biases in more detail in the next section.

Heuristics
In the following sections, we discuss several heuristics people use in their daily decision making. Heuristics are mental shortcuts that lighten the cognitive load of making decisions.
As early as the 1950s some researchers were beginning to challenge the notion of unlimited rationality. Not only did these researchers recognize that we humans do not always make ideal decisions and that we usually include subjective considerations in our decisions. But they also suggested that we humans are not entirely and boundlessly rational in making decisions. In particular, we humans are not necessarily irrational. Rather, we show bounded rationality—we are rational, but within limits (Simon, 1957).

Whereas classical decision theory suggested that people optimize their decisions, researchers began to realize that we have only limited resources and time to make a decision, so often we try to get as close as possible to optimizing, without actually optimizing.

One of the first heuristics that was formulated by researchers is termed satisficing (Simon, 1957). In satisficing, we consider options one by one, and then we select an option as soon as we find one that is satisfactory or just good enough to meet our minimum level of acceptability. When there are limited working-memory resources available, the use of satisficing for making decisions may be increased (Chen & Sun, 2003). Satisficing is also used in industrial contexts in which too much information can impair the quality of decisions, as in the selection of suppliers in electronic marketplaces (Chamodrakas, et al., 2010).

Of course, satisficing is only one of several strategies people can use. The appropriateness of this strategy will vary with the circumstance. For example, satisficing might be a reasonable strategy if you are in a hurry to buy a pack of gum and then catch a train or a plane, but a poor strategy for diagnosing a disease.

Elimination by Aspects We sometimes use a different strategy when faced with far more alternatives than we feel that we reasonably can consider in the time we have available (Tversky, 1972a, 1972b). In such situations, we do not try to manipulate
mentally all the weighted attributes of all the available options. Rather, we use a process of elimination by aspects, in which we eliminate alternatives by focusing on aspects of each alternative, one at a time. If you are trying to decide which college to attend, the process of elimination by aspects might look like this:

- focus on one aspect (attribute) of the various options (the cost of going to college);
- form a minimum criterion for that aspect (tuition must be under $20,000 per year);
- eliminate all options that do not meet that criterion (e.g., Stanford University is more than $30,000 and would be eliminated);
- for the remaining options, select a second aspect for which we set a minimum criterion by which to eliminate additional options (the college must be on the West Coast); and
- continue using a sequential process of elimination of options by considering a series of aspects until a single option remains (Dawes, 2000).

Here is another example of elimination by aspects. In choosing a car to buy, we may focus on total price as an aspect. We may choose to dismiss factors, such as maintenance costs, insurance costs, or other factors that realistically might affect the money we will have to spend on the car in addition to the sale price. Once we have weeded out the alternatives that do not meet our criterion, we choose another aspect. We set a criterion value and weed out additional alternatives. We continue in this way. We weed out more alternatives, one aspect at a time, until we are left with a single option. In practice, it appears that we may use some elements of elimination by aspects or satisficing to narrow the range of options to just a few. Then we use more thorough and careful strategies. Examples would be those suggested by subjective expected utility theory. They can be useful for selecting among the few remaining options (Payne, 1976).

We often use mental shortcuts and even biases that limit and sometimes distort our ability to make rational decisions. One of the key ways in which we use mental shortcuts centers on our estimations of probability. Consider some of the strategies used by statisticians when calculating probability. They are shown in Table 12.1.

Another kind of probability is conditional probability, which is the likelihood of one event, given another. For example, you might want to calculate the likelihood

---

**Table 12.1 Rules of Probability**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hypothetical Example</th>
<th>Calculation of Probability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lee is one of 10 highly qualified candidates applying for one scholarship. What are Lee’s chances of getting the scholarship?</td>
<td>Lee has a 0.1 chance of getting the scholarship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If Lee is one of 10 highly qualified scholarship students applying for one scholarship, what are Lee’s chances of not getting the scholarship?</td>
<td>(1 - 0.1 = 0.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lee’s roommate and Lee are among 10 highly qualified scholarship students applying for one scholarship. What are the chances that one of the two will get the scholarship?</td>
<td>(0.1 + 0.1 = 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There is a 0.2 chance that one of the two roommates will get the scholarship.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
of receiving an “A” for a cognitive psychology course, given that you receive an “A” on the final exam. The formula for calculating conditional probabilities in light of evidence is known as Bayes’s theorem. It is quite complex, so most people do not use it in everyday-reasoning situations. Nonetheless, such calculations are essential to evaluating scientific hypotheses, forming realistic medical diagnoses, analyzing demographic data, and performing many other real-world tasks. (For a highly readable explanation of Bayes’s theorem, see Eysenck & Keane, 1990, pp. 456–458.)

Representativeness Heuristic  Before you read about representativeness, try the following problem from Kahneman and Tversky (1972).

All the families having exactly six children in a particular city were surveyed. In 72 of the families, the exact order of births of boys and girls was G B G B B G (G, girl; B, boy).

What is your estimate of the number of families surveyed in which the exact order of births was B G B B B B!

Most people judging the number of families with the B G B B B B birth pattern estimate the number to be less than 72. Actually, the best estimate of the number of families with this birth order is 72, the same as for the G B G B B G birth order. The expected number for the second pattern would be the same because the gender for each birth is independent (at least, theoretically) of the gender for every other birth. For any one birth, the chance of a boy (or a girl) is one of two. Thus, any particular pattern of births is equally likely \((1/2)^6\), even B B B B B B or G G G G G G.

Why do many of us believe some birth orders to be more likely than others? In part, the reason is that we use the heuristic of representativeness. In representativeness, we judge the probability of an uncertain event according to:

1. how obviously it is similar to or representative of the population from which it is derived; and
2. the degree to which it reflects the salient features of the process by which it is generated (such as randomness) (see also Fischhoff, 1999; Johnson-Laird, 2000, 2004).

For example, people believe that the first birth order is more likely because:

(1) it is more representative of the number of females and males in the population; and (2) it looks more like a random order than does the second birth order. In fact, of course, either birth order is equally likely to occur by chance.

Similarly, suppose people are asked to judge the probability of flips of a coin yielding the sequence H T H H T H (H, heads; T, tails). Most people will judge it as higher than they will if asked to judge the sequence H H H H T H. If you expect a sequence to be random, you tend to view as more likely a sequence that “looks random.” Indeed, people often comment that the numbers in a table of random numbers “don’t look random.” The reason is that people underestimate the number of runs of the same number that will appear wholly by chance. We frequently reason in terms of whether something appears to represent a set of accidental occurrences, rather than actually considering the true likelihood of a given chance occurrence. This tendency makes us more vulnerable to the machinations of magicians, charlatans, and con artists. Any of them may make much of their having predicted the realistic probability of a non-random-looking event. For example, in one out of ten cases two people in a group of 40 (e.g., in a classroom or a small nightclub audience)
will share a birthday (the same month and day). In a group of 14 people, there are better than even odds that two people will have birthdays within a day of each other (Krantz, 1992).

That we frequently rely on the representativeness heuristic may not be terribly surprising. It is easy to use and often works. For example, suppose we have not heard a weather report prior to stepping outside. We informally judge the probability that it will rain. We base our judgment on how well the characteristics of this day (e.g., the month of the year, the area in which we live, and the presence or absence of clouds in the sky) represent the characteristics of days on which it rains. Another reason that we often use the representativeness heuristic is that we mistakenly believe that small samples (e.g., of events, of people, of characteristics) resemble in all respects the whole population from which the sample is drawn (Tversky & Kahneman, 1971). We particularly tend to underestimate the likelihood that the characteristics of a small sample (e.g., the people whom we know well) of a population inadequately represent the characteristics of the whole population.

We also tend to use the representativeness heuristic more frequently when we are highly aware of anecdotal evidence based on a very small sample of the population. This reliance on anecdotal evidence has been referred to as a “man-who” argument (Nisbett & Ross, 1980). When presented with statistics, we may refute those data with our own observations of, “I know a man who . . .” For example, faced with statistics on coronary disease and high-cholesterol diets, someone may counter with, “I know a man who ate whipped cream for breakfast, lunch, and dinner, smoked two packs of cigarettes a day, and lived to be 110 years old. He would have kept going but he was shot through his perfectly healthy heart by a jealous lover.”

One reason that people misguidedly use the representativeness heuristic is because they fail to understand the concept of base rates. Base rate refers to the prevalence of an event or characteristic within its population of events or characteristics. In everyday decision making, people often ignore base-rate information, but it is important to effective judgment and decision making. In many occupations, the use of base-rate information is essential for adequate job performance. For example, suppose a doctor was told that a 10-year-old boy was suffering chest pains. The doctor would be much less likely to worry about an incipient heart attack than if the doctor were told that a 60-year-old man had the identical symptom. Why? Because the base rate of heart attacks is much higher in 60-year-old men than in 10-year-old boys. Of course, people use other heuristics as well. People can be taught how to use base rates to improve their decision making (Gigerenzer, 1996; Koehler, 1996).

**Availability Heuristic** Most of us at least occasionally use the availability heuristic, in which we make judgments on the basis of how easily we can call to mind what we perceive as relevant instances of a phenomenon (Tversky & Kahneman, 1973; see also Fischhoff, 1999; Sternberg, 2000). For example, consider the letter R. Are there more words in the English language that begin with the letter R or that have R as their third letter? Most respondents say that there are more words beginning with the letter R (Tversky & Kahneman, 1973). Why? Because generating words beginning with the letter R is easier than generating words having R as the third letter. In fact, there are more English-language words with R as their third letter. The same happens to be true of some other letters as well, such as K, L, N, and V.
The availability heuristic also has been observed in regard to everyday situations. In one study, married partners individually stated which of the two partners performed a larger proportion of each of 20 different household chores (Ross & Sicoly, 1979). These tasks included mundane chores such as grocery shopping or preparing breakfast. Each partner stated that he or she more often performed about 16 of the 20 chores. Suppose each partner was correct. Then, to accomplish 100% of the work in a household, each partner would have to perform 80% of the work. Similar outcomes emerged from questioning members of college basketball teams and joint participants in laboratory tasks.

Although clearly 80% + 80% does not equal 100%, we can understand why people may engage in using the availability heuristic when it confirms their beliefs about themselves. However, people also use the availability heuristic when its use leads to a logical fallacy that has nothing to do with their beliefs about themselves. Two groups of participants were asked to estimate the number of words of a particular form that would be expected to appear in a 2,000-word passage. For one group the form was _ _ _ _ _ _ _ (i.e., seven letters ending in \textit{ing}). For the other group the form was _ _ _ _ _ _ _n_ (i.e., seven letters with \textit{n} as the second-to-the-last letter). Clearly, there cannot be more seven-letter words ending in \textit{ing} than seven-letter words with \textit{n} as the second-to-the-last letter. But the greater availability of the former led to estimates of probability that were more than twice as high for the former, as compared with the latter (Tversky & Kahneman, 1983).

**Anchoring** A heuristic related to availability is the anchoring-and-adjustment heuristic, by which people adjust their evaluations of things by means of certain reference points called end-anchors. Before you read on, quickly (in less than 5 seconds) calculate in your head the answer to the following problem:

\[
8 \times 7 \times 6 \times 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1
\]

Now, quickly calculate your answer to the following problem:

\[
1 \times 2 \times 3 \times 4 \times 5 \times 6 \times 7 \times 8
\]

Two groups of participants estimated the product of one or the other of the preceding two sets of eight numbers (Tversky & Kahneman, 1974). The median (middle) estimate for the participants given the first sequence was 2,250. For the participants given the second sequence, the median estimate was 512. (The actual product is 40,320 for both.) The two products are the same, as they must be because the numbers are exactly the same (applying the commutative law of multiplication). Nonetheless, people provide a higher estimate for the first sequence than for the second because their computation of the anchor—the first few digits multiplied by each other—renders a higher estimate from which they make an adjustment to reach a final estimate. Furthermore, the adjustment people make in response to an anchor is bigger when the anchor is rounded than when it seems to be a precise value. For example, when the price of a TV set is given as $3,000, people adjust their estimate of its production costs more than when the price is given as $2,991 (Janiszewski & Uy, 2008). Anchoring effects occur in a variety of settings, for example at art auctions, where the price of paintings is anchored by the price the painting achieved in prior sales, or monthly economic forecasts, which are anchored toward the past month (Beggs & Graddy, 2009; Campbell & Sharpe, 2009).
Another consideration in decision theory is the influence of framing effects, in which the way that the options are presented influences the selection of an option (Tversky & Kahneman, 1981). For instance, we tend to choose options that demonstrate risk aversion when we are faced with an option involving potential gains. That is, we tend to choose options offering a small but certain gain rather than a larger but uncertain gain. Although riding a car is statistically much more risky than riding in a plane, people often feel less safe in a plane, in part because of the availability heuristic. People hear about every major U.S. plane crash that takes place, but they hear about relatively few car accidents.
than a larger but uncertain gain, unless the uncertain gain is either tremendously greater or only modestly less than certain. The first example in Investigating Cognitive Psychology: Framing Effects is only slightly modified from one used by Tversky and Kahneman (1981).

Framing effects have public relevance. Messages from politicians, political parties, and other stakeholders can be framed in different ways and therefore take on a different connotation. A message about the Ku Klux Klan, for example, can be framed either as a free-speech issue or as a public-safety issue. Framing effects are less persuasive when they come from sources of low credibility (Druckman, 2001).

Biases
In the next section, we discuss several biases that frequently occur when people make decisions: illusory correlation, overconfidence, and hindsight bias.

Illusory Correlation We are predisposed to see particular events or attributes and categories as going together, even when they do not. This phenomenon is called illusory correlation (Hamilton & Lickel, 2000). In the case of events, we may see spurious cause-effect relationships. In the case of attributes, we may use personal
prejudices to form and use stereotypes (perhaps as a result of using the representa-

tiveness heuristic). For example, suppose we expect people of a given political party
to show particular intellectual or moral characteristics. The instances in which peo-
ple show those characteristics are more likely to be available in memory and recalled
more easily than are instances that contradict our biased expectations. In other
words, we perceive a correlation between the political party and the particular
characteristics.

Illusory correlation even may influence psychiatric diagnoses based on projective
tests such as the Rorschach and the Draw-a-Person tests (Chapman & Chapman,
1967, 1969, 1975). Researchers suggested a false correlation in which particular
diagnoses would be associated with particular responses. For example, they suggested
that people diagnosed with paranoia tend to draw people with large eyes more than
do people with other diagnoses (which is not true). However, what happened when
individuals expected to observe a correlation between a drawing with large eyes and
the associated diagnosis of paranoia? They tended to see the illusory correlation,
although no actual correlation existed.

**Overconfidence** Another common error is overconfidence—an individual’s over-
valuation of her or his own skills, knowledge, or judgment. For example, people an-
swered 200 two-alternative statements, such as “Absinthe is (a) a liqueur, (b) a
precious stone.” (Absinthe is a licorice-flavored liqueur.) People were asked to
choose the correct answer and to state the probability that their answer was correct
(Fischhoff, Slovic, & Lichtenstein, 1977). People were overconfident. For example,
when people were 100% confident in their answers, they were right only 80% of the
time. In general, people tend to overestimate the accuracy of their judgments
(Kahneman & Tversky, 1996). Why are people overconfident? One reason is that peo-
ple may not realize how little they know. Another is that they may not realize that
their information comes from unreliable sources (Carlson, 1995; Griffin & Tversky,

People sometimes make poor decisions as a result of overconfidence. These de-
cisions are based on inadequate information and ineffective decision-making strate-
gies. Why we tend to be overconfident in our judgments is not clear. One simple
explanation is that we prefer not to think about being wrong (Fischhoff, 1988).

Businesses sometimes use our tendencies toward overconfidence to their own ad-
vantage. Think about the American cell phone market, for example. Many contracts
consist of a monthly fee that includes usage of a certain amount of air-time minutes.
If a person exceeds this amount, he or she will incur steep charges. There are good
reasons for such a contract model, but from the company’s point of view, not from
the consumer’s point of view. Consumers tend to overestimate their usage of min-
utes, so they are willing to pay for a high-minute usage in advance. At the same
time, they are confident they will not go over their limit, so they do not even realize
the high costs they will incur if they exceed their free air-time minutes, until they
actually discover they have gone over (Grubb, 2009).

**Hindsight Bias** Finally, a bias that can affect all of us is hindsight bias—when we
look at a situation retrospectively, we believe we easily can see all the signs and
events leading up to a particular outcome (Fischhoff, 1982; Wasserman, Lempert,
& Hastie, 1991). For example, suppose people are asked to predict the outcomes of
psychological experiments in advance of the experiments. People rarely are able to
predict the outcomes at better-than-chance levels. However, when people are told of
the outcomes of psychological experiments, they frequently comment that these outcomes were obvious and could easily have been predicted in advance. Similarly, when intimate personal relationships are in trouble, people often fail to observe signs of the difficulties until the problems reach crisis proportions. By then, it may be too late to save the relationship. In retrospect, people may ask themselves, “Why didn’t I see it coming? It was so obvious! I should have seen the signs.”

Hindsight bias hinders learning because it impairs one’s ability to compare one’s expectations with the outcome—if one always expected the outcome that eventually happened, one thinks there is nothing to learn! And indeed, studies show that investment bankers’ performance suffers when they exhibit a strong hindsight bias. Curiously, experience does not reduce the bias (Biais & Weber, 2009).

**Fallacies**

Heuristics and fallacies are often studied together because they go hand in hand. The application of a heuristic to make a decision may lead to fallacies in thinking. Therefore, when we discuss some fallacies, we refer back to some of the heuristics in association with which they often occur.

**Gambler’s Fallacy and the Hot Hand**

Gambler’s fallacy is a mistaken belief that the probability of a given random event, such as winning or losing at a game of chance, is influenced by previous random events. For example, a gambler who loses five successive bets may believe that a win is therefore more likely the sixth time. He feels that he is “due” to win. In truth, of course, each bet (or coin toss) is an independent event that has an equal probability of winning or losing. The gambler is no more likely to win on the 6th bet than on the 1st—or on the 1001st. Gambler’s fallacy is an example of the representative heuristic gone awry: One believes that the pattern representative of past events is now likely to change.

A tendency opposite to that of gambler’s fallacy is called the “hot hand” effect. It refers to a belief that a certain course of events will continue. Apparently, both professional and amateur basketball players, as well as their fans, believe that a player’s chances of making a basket are greater after making a previous shot than after missing one. However, the statistical likelihoods (and the actual records of players) show no such tendency (Gilovich, Vallone, & Tversky, 1985; see also Roney & Trick, 2009). Shrewd players take advantage of this belief and closely guard opponents immediately after they have made baskets. The reason is that the opposing players will be more likely to try to get the ball to these perceived “streak shooters.”

**Conjunction Fallacy**

Do you remember the experiment described in the section on the availability heuristic where people were asked to judge how often the form _ _ _ _ ing (i.e., seven letters ending in –ing) or _ _ _ _ n_ (i.e., seven letters with n as the second-to-the-last letter) appears in a passage? The availability heuristic might lead to the conjunction fallacy. In the conjunction fallacy, an individual gives a higher estimate for a subset of events (e.g., the instances of -ing) than for the larger set of events containing the given subset (e.g., the instances of n as the second-to-the-last letter). This fallacy also is illustrated in the chapter opening vignette regarding Linda.
The representativeness heuristic may also induce individuals to engage in the conjunction fallacy during probabilistic reasoning (Tversky & Kahneman, 1983; see also Dawes, 2000). Tversky and Kahneman asked college students:

Please give your estimate of the following values: What percentage of the men surveyed [in a health survey] have had one or more heart attacks?

What percentage of the men surveyed both are over 55 years old and have had one or more heart attacks? (p. 308)

The mean estimates were 18% for the former and 30% for the latter. In fact, 65% of the respondents gave higher estimates for the latter (which is clearly a subset of the former). However, people do not always engage in the conjunction fallacy. Only 25% of respondents gave higher estimates for the latter question than for the former when the questions were rephrased as frequencies rather than as percentages (e.g., “how many of the 1,000 men surveyed have had one or more heart attacks?”). The way statistical information is presented influences how likely it is that people draw the correct conclusions (see also Gigerenzer & Hoffrage, 1995).

Sunk-Cost Fallacy

An error in judgment that is quite common in people’s thinking is the sunk-cost fallacy (Dupuy, 1998, 1999; Strough et al., 2008). This fallacy represents the decision to continue to invest in something simply because one has invested in it before and one hopes to recover one’s investment. For example, suppose you have bought a car. It is a lemon. You already have invested thousands of dollars in getting it fixed. Now you have another major repair on it confronting you. You have no reason to believe that this additional repair really will be the last in the string of repairs. You think
about how much money you have spent on repairs and reason that you need to do
the additional repair to justify past amounts already spent. So you do the repair
rather than buy a new car. You have just committed the sunk-cost fallacy. The prob-
lem is that you already have lost the money on those repairs. Throwing more money
into the repairs will not get that money back. Your best bet may well be to view the
money already spent on repairs as a “sunk cost” and then buy a new car.

Similarly, suppose you go on a two-week vacation. You are having a miserable
time. Should you go home a week early? You decide not to, thereby attempting to
justify the investment you have already made in the vacation. Again, you have com-
mitted the sunk-cost fallacy. Instead of viewing the money simply as lost on an un-
fortunate decision, you have decided to throw more money away. But you do so
without any hope that the vacation will get any better.

The Gist of It: Do Heuristics Help Us or Lead Us Astray?

Heuristics do not always lead to wrong judgments or poor decisions (Cohen, 1981).
Indeed, we use these mental shortcuts because they are so often right. Sometimes,
they are amazingly simple ways of drawing sound conclusions. For example, a simple
heuristic, take-the-best, can be amazingly effective in decision situations (Gigerenzer &
Brighton, 2009; Gigerenzer & Goldstein, 1996; Marsh, Todd, & Gigerenzer, 2004).
The rule is simple. In making a decision, identify the single most important criterion
to you for making that decision. For example, when you choose a new automobile, the
most important factor might be good gas mileage, safety, or appearance. Make your
choice on the basis of that attribute.

On its face this heuristic would seem to be inadequate. In fact, it often leads to
very good decisions. It produces even better decisions, in many cases, than far more
complicated heuristics. Thus, heuristics can be used for good as well as for bad deci-
sion making. Indeed, when we take people’s goals into account, heuristics often are
amazingly effective (Evans & Over, 1996).

The take-the-best heuristic belongs to a class of heuristics called fast-and-frugal
heuristics (FFH). As the name implies, this class of heuristics is based on a small
fraction of information, and decisions using the heuristics are made rapidly. These
heuristics set a standard of rationality that considers constraints including, time, in-
formation, and cognitive capacity (Bennis & Pachur, 2006; Gigerenzer, Todd, & the
ABC Research Group, 1999). Furthermore, these models consider the lack of opti-
mum solutions and environments in which the decision is taking place. As a result,
these heuristics provide a good description of decision making during sports.

Fast-and-frugal heuristics can form a comprehensive description of how people
behave in a variety of contexts. These behaviors vary from lunch selections to how
physicians decide whether to prescribe medication for depression, to making business
decisions (Goldstein & Gigerenzer, 2009; Scheibehenne, Miesler, & Todd, 2007;
Smith & Gilhooly, 2006).

The work on heuristics and biases shows the importance of distinguishing be-
tween intellectual competence and intellectual performance as it manifests itself in
daily life. Even experts in the use of probability and statistics can find themselves
falling into faulty patterns of judgment and decision making in their everyday lives.
People may be intelligent in a conventional, test-based sense. Yet they may show
exactly the same biases and faulty reasoning that someone with a lower test score
would show. People often fail to fully utilize their intellectual competence in their
daily life. There can even be a wide gap between the two (Stanovich, 2010). Thus,
if we wish to be intelligent in our daily lives and not just on tests, we have to be street smart. In particular, we must be mindful of applying our intelligence to the problems that continually confront us.

**Opportunity Costs**

Opportunity costs are the prices paid for availing oneself of certain opportunities. Taking opportunity costs into account is important when judgments are made. For example, suppose you see a great job offer in San Francisco. You always wanted to live there. You are ready to take it. Before you do, you need to ask yourself a question: What other things will you have to forego to take advantage of this opportunity? An example might be the chance, on your budget, of having more than 500 square feet of living space. Another might be the chance to live in a place where you probably do not have to worry about earthquakes. Any time you take advantage of an opportunity, there are opportunity costs. They may, in some cases, make what looked like a good opportunity look like not such a great opportunity at all. Ideally, you should try to look at these opportunity costs in an unbiased way.

**Naturalistic Decision Making**

Many researchers contend that decision making is a complex process that cannot be reproduced adequately in the laboratory because real decisions are frequently made in situations where there are high stakes. For instance, the mental state and cognitive pressure experienced by an emergency room doctor encountering a patient is difficult to reproduce outside a clinical setting.

This criticism has led to the development of a field of study that is based on decision making in natural environments (naturalistic decision making). Much of the research completed in this area is from professional settings, such as hospitals or nuclear plants (Carroll, Hatakenaka, & Rudolph, 2006; Galanter & Patel, 2005; Roswarski, & Murray, 2006). These situations share a number of features, including the challenges of ill-structured problems, changing situations, high risk, time pressure, and sometimes, a team environment (Orasanu & Connolly, 1993). A number of models are used to explain performance in these high-stakes situations. These models allow for the consideration of cognitive, emotional, and situational factors of skilled decision makers; they also provide a framework for advising future decision makers (Klein, 1997; Lipshitz et al., 2001). For instance, Orasanu (2005) developed recommendations for training astronauts to be successful decision makers by evaluating what makes current astronauts successful, such as developing team cohesion and managing stress. Naturalistic decision making can be applied to a broad range of behaviors and environments. These applications can include individuals as diverse as badminton players, railroad controllers, and NASA astronauts (Farrington-Darby et al., 2006; Macquet & Fleurance, 2007; Orasanu, 2005; Patel, Kaufman, & Arocha, 2002).

**Group Decision Making**

Groups form decisions differently than individuals. Often, there are benefits to making decisions in groups. However, a phenomenon called “groupthink” can occur that seriously impairs the quality of decisions made. In the next sections we will explore group decision making in more detail.
Making Decisions in an Uncertain World

If you were in my lab, you would talk to pre-docs, post-docs, and researchers from ten different disciplines as well as nationalities. We investigate bounded rationality, that is, how humans make decisions in an uncertain world. This differs from the study of deductive reasoning, syllogisms, or classical decision theory, where all alternatives, consequences, and probabilities are known for certain. In the real world, omniscience is absent and surprises can happen; nevertheless, people have to make decisions, such as whom to trust, what medication to take, or how to invest money. How does this rationality for mortals work?

The first question we pose is descriptive: What heuristics do people rely on, consciously or unconsciously, to make decisions in an uncertain world? A heuristic is a strategy that focuses on the most relevant pieces of information and ignores the rest. We have investigated a number of these, including those relying on:

- recognition (the recognition and fluency heuristics),
- one good reason (such as take-the-best), and
- on the wisdom of others (such as imitate-the-majority).

The study of the adaptive toolbox investigates the heuristics used, their building blocks, and the core cognitive capacities they exploit.

Our second question is prescriptive: In what environment does a heuristic work, and where would it fail? To find answers, one needs to develop formal models of heuristics, using analysis and computer simulation. One surprising discovery we made is that simple heuristics that rely on only one good reason (such as take-the-best) can actually make more accurate predictions than can complex strategies such as multiple regression or neural networks. In contrast to what many textbooks still preach, this result shows that heuristics are not second-best, and that less information, computation, and time can lead to better decisions. In fact, unlike in certain worlds, in an uncertain world one needs to ignore part of the information to make good judgments.

The study of the ecological rationality of a given heuristic investigates in what world it succeeds.

The third question concerns intuitive design. Here we use the results of our research to design heuristics and environments that help experts and laypeople make better decisions. For instance, based on our work, physicians in Michigan hospitals use heuristics called fast and frugal trees when making ICU allocations. These simple heuristics mirror the sequential, intuitive thinking of doctors, are fast and frugal, and are nevertheless better than complex linear regression models at predicting heart attacks.

A particularly relevant aspect of intuitive design is risk communication. Consider the contraceptive pill scare in the United Kingdom. The media reported that third-generation pills increase the risk of potentially life-threatening blood clots (thrombosis) by 100%. Distressed by this news, many women stopped taking the pill, which led to unwanted pregnancies and an estimated 13,000 additional abortions in England and Wales. How big is 100%? The studies on which the warning was based had shown that out of every 7,000 women who took the earlier second-generation pill, about 1 had a thrombosis; this number increased to 2 among women who took third-generation pills. That is, the absolute risk increase was only 1 in 7,000 while the relative risk increase was indeed 100%. Had the media reported the absolute risks, few women would have panicked. The pill scare illustrates how citizens’ fears are manipulated by framing numbers in a misleading and non-transparent way.

We study and develop transparent representations—such as absolute risks and natural frequencies—that help people understand health statistics. During the last few years, I have trained some 1,000 physicians and dozens of U.S. federal judges in understanding risks, for instance when evaluating cancer screening or DNA tests. Few physicians and lawyers have been educated in risk communication, and this blind spot is an important area in which psychologists can apply their knowledge and help.
Benefits of Group Decisions

Working as a group can enhance the effectiveness of decision making, just as it can enhance the effectiveness of problem solving. Many companies combine individuals into teams to improve decision making. By forming decision-making teams, the group benefits from the expertise of each of the members. There is also an increase in resources and ideas (Salas, Burke, & Cannon-Bowers, 2000). Another benefit of group decision making is improved group memory over individual memory (Hinsz, 1990). Groups that are successful in decision making exhibit a number of similar characteristics, including the following:

- the group is small;
- it has open communication;
- members share a common mind-set;
- members identify with the group; and
- members agree on acceptable group behavior (Shelton, 2006).

In juries, members share more information during decision making when the group is made up of diverse members (Sommers, 2006). The juries are thereby in a position to make better decisions. Furthermore, in examining decision making in public policy groups, interpersonal influence is important (Jenson, 2007). Group members frequently employed tactics to affect other members’ decisions (Jenson, 2007). The most frequently used and influential tactics were inspirational and rational appeals.

Groupthink

There can be disadvantages associated with group decision making, however. Of these disadvantages, one of the most explored is groupthink. Groupthink is a phenomenon characterized by premature decision making that is generally the result of group members attempting to avoid conflict (Janis, 1971). Groupthink frequently results in sub-optimal decision making that avoids non-traditional ideas (Esser, 1998).

What conditions lead to groupthink? Janis cited three kinds:

1. an isolated, cohesive, and homogeneous group is empowered to make decisions;
2. objective and impartial leadership is absent, within the group or outside it; and
3. high levels of stress impinge on the group decision-making process.

Another cause of groupthink is anxiety (Chapman, 2006). When group members are anxious, they are less likely to explore new options and will likely try to avoid further conflict.

The groups responsible for making foreign policy decisions are excellent candidates for groupthink. They are usually like-minded. Moreover, they frequently isolate themselves from what is going on outside their own group. They generally try to meet specific objectives and believe they cannot afford to be impartial. Also, of course, they are under very high stress because the stakes involved in their decisions can be tremendous.

But what exactly is groupthink? Janis (1971) delineated six symptoms of groupthink:

1. Closed-mindedness—the group is not open to alternative ideas.
2. Rationalization—the group goes to great lengths to justify both the process and the product of its decision making, distorting reality where necessary in order to be persuasive.
3. **Squelching of dissent**—those who disagree with the group are ignored, criticized, or even ostracized.

4. **Formation of a “mindguard”** for the group—one person appoints himself or herself the keeper of the group norm and ensures that people stay in line.

5. **Feeling invulnerable**—the group believes that it must be right, given the intelligence of its members and the information available to them.

6. **Feeling unanimous**—members believe that everyone unanimously shares the opinions expressed by the group.

Defective decision making results from groupthink, which in turn is due to examining alternatives insufficiently, examining risks inadequately, and seeking information about alternatives incompletely.

Consider how groupthink might arise in a decision when college students decide to damage a statue on the campus of a football rival to teach a lesson to the students and faculty in the rival university. The students rationalize that damage to a statue really is no big deal. Who cares about an old ugly statue anyway? When one group member dissent, other members quickly make him feel disloyal and cowardly. His dissent is squelched. The group’s members feel invulnerable. They are going to damage the statue under the cover of darkness, and the statue is never guarded. They are sure they will not be caught. Finally, all the members agree on the course of action. This apparent feeling of unanimity convinces the group members that far from being out of line, they are doing what needs to be done.

**Antidotes for Groupthink**

Janis has prescribed several antidotes for groupthink. For example, the leader of a group should encourage constructive criticism, be impartial, and ensure that members seek input from people outside the group. The group should also form subgroups that meet separately to consider alternative solutions to a single problem. It is important that the leader take responsibility for preventing spurious conformity to a group norm.

In 1997, members of the Heaven’s Gate cult in California committed mass suicide in the hope of meeting up with extraterrestrials in a spaceship trailing the Hale-Bopp comet. Although this group suicide is a striking example of conformity to a destructive group norm, similar events have occurred throughout human history, such as the suicide of more than 900 members of the Jonestown, Guyana, religious cult in 1978. In 2010, a series of incredibly bad decisions by a group of oil-rig operators on the Deepwater Horizon, situated in the Gulf of Mexico, led to the largest oil-well leak in history. And even in the 21st century, suicide bombers are killing themselves and others in carefully planned attacks.

**Neuroscience of Decision Making**

As in problem solving, the prefrontal cortex, and particularly the anterior cingulate cortex, is active during the decision-making process (Barraclough, Conroy, & Lee, 2004; Kennerley et al., 2006; Rogers et al., 2004). Explorations of decision making in monkeys have noted activation in the parietal regions of the brain (Platt & Glimcher, 1999). The amount of gain associated with a decision also affects the amount of activation observed in the parietal region (Platt & Glimcher, 1999).

Examination of decision making in drug abusers identified a number of areas involved in risky decisions. The researchers studied drug abusers because drug abuse,
by its very nature, produces risky decisions. They found decreased activation in the left pregenual anterior cingulate cortex of drug abusers (Fishbein et al., 2005). These findings suggest that during decision making, the anterior cingulate cortex is involved in the consideration of potential rewards.

Another study had healthy participants play the gambling game Blackjack. The researchers found that suboptimal decisions (too risky or too cautious) were associated with increased activity in the anterior cingulate cortex (Hewig et al., 2008).

Another interesting effect seen in this area is observed in participants who have difficulty with a decision. In one study, participants made decisions concerning whether an item was old or new and which of two items was larger (Fleck et al., 2006). Decisions that were rated lowest in confidence and that took the most time to answer were associated with higher activation of the anterior cingulate cortex.

These findings suggest that this area of the brain is involved in the comparison and weighing of possible solutions.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. Why can the model of the economic man and woman not explain human decision making satisfactorily?
2. Why do we use heuristics?
3. What is the difference between overconfidence and hindsight bias?
4. Name and describe three fallacies.
5. What are the symptoms of groupthink?
6. Which parts of the brain play prominent roles in decision making?
Deductive Reasoning

Judgment and decision making involve evaluating opportunities and selecting one choice over another. A related kind of thinking is reasoning. Reasoning is the process of drawing conclusions from principles and from evidence (Leighton & Sternberg, 2004; Sternberg, 2004; Wason & Johnson-Laird, 1972). In reasoning, we move from what is already known to infer a new conclusion or to evaluate a proposed conclusion.

Reasoning is often divided into two types: deductive and inductive reasoning. We explore both kinds of reasoning in the remainder of this chapter.

What Is Deductive Reasoning?

Deductive reasoning is the process of reasoning from one or more general statements regarding what is known to reach a logically certain conclusion (Johnson-Laird, 2000; Rips, 1999; Williams, 2000). It often involves reasoning from one or more general statements regarding what is known to a specific application of the general statement.

Deductive reasoning is based on logical propositions. A proposition is basically an assertion, which may be either true or false. Examples are “Cognitive psychology students are brilliant,” “Cognitive psychology students wear shoes,” or “Cognitive psychology students like peanut butter.” In a logical argument, premises are propositions about which arguments are made. Cognitive psychologists are interested particularly in propositions that may be connected in ways that require people to draw reasoned conclusions. That is, deductive reasoning is useful because it helps people connect various propositions to draw conclusions. Cognitive psychologists want to know how people connect propositions to draw conclusions. Some of these conclusions are well reasoned; others are not.

Much of the difficulty of reasoning is in even understanding the language of problems (Girotto, 2004). Some of the mental processes used in language understanding and the cerebral functioning underlying them are used in reasoning, too (Lawson, 2004).

Conditional Reasoning

One type of deductive reasoning is conditional reasoning. In the next sections, we will explore what conditional reasoning is and how it works.

What Is Conditional Reasoning?

One of the primary types of deductive reasoning is conditional reasoning, in which the reasoner must draw a conclusion based on an if-then proposition. The conditional if-then proposition states that if antecedent condition p is met, then consequent event q follows. For example, “If students study hard, then they score high on their exams.” Under some circumstances, if you have established a conditional proposition, then you may draw a well-reasoned conclusion. The usual set of conditional propositions from which you can draw a well-reasoned conclusion is, “If p, then q. p. Therefore, q.” This inference illustrates deductive validity. That is, it follows logically from the propositions on which it is based. The following is also logical:

“If students eat pizza, then they score high on their exams. They eat pizza. Therefore, they score high on their exams.”
As you may have guessed, deductive validity does not equate with truth. You can reach deductively valid conclusions that are completely untrue with respect to the world. Whether the conclusion is true depends on the truthfulness of the premises. In fact, people are more likely mistakenly to accept an illogical argument as logical if the conclusion is factually true. For now, however, we put aside the issue of truth and focus only on the **deductive validity**, or logical soundness, of the reasoning.

One set of propositions and its conclusion is the argument:

“If $p$, then $q$. $p$.
Therefore, $q$,”

which is termed a *modus ponens* argument. In the *modus ponens* argument, the reasoner affirms the antecedent ($p$). For example, take the argument “If you are a husband, then you are married. Harrison is a husband. Therefore, he is married.” The set of propositions for the *modus ponens* argument is shown in Table 12.2.

In addition to the *modus ponens* argument, you may draw another well-reasoned conclusion from a conditional proposition, given a different second proposition:

“If $p$, then $q$. Not $q$. Therefore, not $p$.”

This inference is also deductively valid. This particular set of propositions and its conclusion is termed a *modus tollens* argument, in which the reasoner denies the consequent. For example, we modify the second proposition of the argument to deny the consequent:

“If you are a husband, then you are married. Harrison is not married. Therefore, he is not a husband.”

Table 12.2 shows two conditions in which a well-reasoned conclusion can be reached. It also shows two conditions in which such a conclusion cannot be reached.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 12.2</th>
<th>Conditional Reasoning: Deductively Valid Inferences and Deductive Fallacies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type of Argument</strong></td>
<td><strong>Conditional Proposition</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deductively valid inferences</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modus ponens — affirming the antecedent</td>
<td>$p \rightarrow q$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modus tollens — denying the consequent</td>
<td>$p \rightarrow q$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deductive fallacies</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denying the antecedent</td>
<td>$p \rightarrow q$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affirming the consequent</td>
<td>$p \rightarrow q$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As the examples illustrate, some inferences based on conditional reasoning are fallacies, which lead to conclusions that are not deductively valid. When using conditional propositions, we cannot reach a deductively valid conclusion based either on denying the antecedent condition or on affirming the consequent. Let's return to the proposition, “If you are a husband, then you are married.” We would not be able to confirm or to refute the proposition based on denying the antecedent: “Joan is not a husband. Therefore, she is not married.” Even if we ascertain that Joan is not a husband, we cannot conclude that she is not married. Similarly, we cannot deduce a valid conclusion by affirming the consequent: “Joan is married. Therefore, she is a husband.” Even if Joan is married, her spouse may not consider her a husband.

The Wason Selection Task
Conditional reasoning can be studied in the laboratory using a “selection task” (Wason, 1968, 1969, 1983; Wason & Johnson-Laird, 1970, 1972). Participants are presented with a set of four two-sided cards. Each card has a number on one side and a letter on the other side. Face up are two letters and two numbers. The letters are a consonant and a vowel. The numbers are an even number and an odd number. For example, participants might be presented with the set of cards shown in Figure 12.1.

Each participant then is told a conditional statement. For example, “If a card has a consonant on one side, then it has an even number on the other side.” The task is to determine whether the conditional statement is true or false. One does so by turning over the exact number of cards necessary to test the conditional statement. That is, the participant must not turn over any cards that are not valid tests of the statement. But the participant must turn over all cards that are valid tests of the conditional proposition. Which cards would you turn?

Table 12.3 illustrates the four possible tests participants might perform on the cards. Two of the tests (modus ponens: affirming the antecedent, and modus tollens: denying the consequent) are both necessary and sufficient for testing the conditional statement:

- That is, to evaluate the deduction, the participant must turn over the card showing a consonant to see whether it has an even number on the other side. He or she thereby affirms the antecedent (the modus ponens argument).
- In addition, the participant must turn over the card showing an odd number (i.e., not an even number) to see whether it has a vowel (i.e., not a consonant) on the other side. He or she thereby denies the consequent (the modus tollens argument).

The other two possible tests (denying the antecedent and affirming the consequent) are irrelevant. That is, the participant need not turn over the card showing a
vowel (i.e., not a consonant). To do so would be to deny the antecedent. He or she also need not turn over the card showing an even number (i.e., not an odd number). To do so would be to affirm the consequent.

Most participants knew to test for the modus ponens argument. However, many participants failed to test for the modus tollens argument. Some of these participants instead tried to deny the antecedent as a means of testing the conditional proposition.

### Conditional Reasoning in Everyday Life

Most people of all ages (at least starting in elementary school) appear to have little difficulty in recognizing and applying the modus ponens argument. However, few people spontaneously recognize the need for reasoning by means of the modus tollens argument. Many people do not recognize the logical fallacies of denying the antecedent or affirming the consequent, at least as these fallacies are applied to abstract reasoning problems (Braine & O'Brien, 1991; O'Brien, 2004; Rips, 1988, 1994). In fact, some evidence suggests that even people who have taken a course in logic fail to demonstrate deductive reasoning across various situations (Cheng et al., 1986). Even training aimed directly at improving reasoning leads to mixed results. After training aimed at increasing reasoning, there is a significant increase in the use of mental models and rules. However, after this training, there may be only a moderate increase in the use of deductive reasoning (Leighton, 2006).

Why might both children and adults fallaciously affirm the consequent or deny the antecedent? Perhaps they do so because of invited inferences that follow from normal discourse comprehension of conditional phrasing (Rumain, Connell, & Braine, 1983). For instance, suppose that a textbook publisher advertises,
“If you buy the *Introduction to Ethics* textbook, then we will give you a $5 rebate.”

You probably correctly infer that if you do not buy this textbook, the publisher will not give you a $5 rebate. However, formal deductive reasoning would consider this denial of the antecedent to be fallacious. The statement says nothing about what happens if you do not buy the textbook. Similarly, you may infer that you must have bought this textbook (affirm the consequent) if you received a $5 rebate from the publisher. But the statement says nothing about the range of circumstances that lead you to receive the $5 rebate. There may be other ways to receive it. Both inferences are fallacious according to formal deductive reasoning, but both are quite reasonably invited inferences in everyday situations. It helps when the wording of conditional reasoning problems either explicitly or implicitly disinvites these inferences. People are then much less likely to engage in these logical fallacies.

The demonstration of conditional reasoning also is influenced by the presence of contextual information that converts the problem from one of abstract deductive reasoning to one that applies to an everyday situation. For example, participants received both the Wason Selection Task and a modified version of the Wason Selection Task (Griggs & Cox, 1982). In the modified version, the participants were asked to suppose that they were police officers. As officers, they were attempting to enforce the laws applying to the legal age for drinking alcoholic beverages. The particular rule to be enforced was:

“If a person is drinking beer, then the person must be over 19 years of age.”

Each participant was presented with a set of four cards:

1. drinking a beer
2. drinking a Coke
3. 16 years of age
4. 22 years of age.

The participant then was instructed to “Select the card or cards that you definitely need to turn over to determine whether or not the people are violating the rule” (p. 414). On the one hand, none of Griggs and Cox’s participants had responded correctly on the abstract version of the Wason Selection Task. On the other hand, a remarkable 72% of the participants correctly responded to the modified version of the task; that is, they turned cards 1 and 3.

**Influences on Conditional Reasoning**

A more recent modification of the task based on drinking and age has shown that beliefs regarding plausibility influence whether people choose the *modus tollens* argument (denying the consequent—checking to see whether a person who is younger than 19 years of age is not drinking beer). When the test involves checking to see whether an 18-year-old is drinking beer, people are far more likely to try the *modus tollens* argument than when they have to check whether a 4-year-old is drinking beer. Nevertheless, the logical argument is the same in both cases (Kirby, 1994).

How do people use deductive reasoning in realistic situations? Two investigators have suggested that, rather than using formal inference rules, people often use pragmatic reasoning schemas (Cheng & Holyoak, 1985). **Pragmatic reasoning schemas** are general organizing principles or rules related to particular kinds of goals, such as permissions, obligations, or causations. These schemas sometimes are referred to as *pragmatic rules*. These pragmatic rules are not as abstract as formal logical rules. Yet, they
are sufficiently general and broad so that they can apply to a wide variety of specific situations. Prior beliefs, in other words, matter in reasoning (Evans & Feeney, 2004).

Alternatively, one’s performance may be affected by perspective effects—that is, whether one takes the point of view of the police officers or of the people drinking the alcoholic beverages (Almor & Sloman, 1996; Staller, Sloman, & Ben-Zeev, 2000). So it may not be permissions per se that matter. Rather, what may matter are the perspectives one takes when solving such problems.

Thus, consider situations in which our previous experiences or our existing knowledge cannot tell us all we want to know. Pragmatic reasoning schemas help us deduce what might reasonably be true. Particular situations or contexts activate particular schemas. For example, suppose that you are walking across campus and see someone who looks extremely young. Then you see the person walk to a car. He unlocks it, gets in, and drives away. This observation would activate your permission schema for driving: “If you are to be permitted to drive alone, then you must be at least 16 years old.” You might now deduce that the person you saw is at least 16 years old. In one experiment, 62% of participants correctly chose modus ponens and modus tollens arguments when the conditional-reasoning task was presented in the context of permission statements. Only 11% did so when the task was presented in the context of arbitrary statements unrelated to pragmatic reasoning schemas (Cheng & Holyoak, 1985).

Researchers conducted an extensive analysis comparing the standard abstract Wason selection task with an abstract form of a permission problem (Griggs & Cox, 1993). The standard abstract form might be “If a card has an ‘A’ on one side, then it must have a ‘4’ on the other side.” The abstract permission form might be, “If one is to take action ‘A,’ then one must first satisfy precondition ‘P.’ ” Performance on the abstract-permission task was still superior (49% correct overall) to performance on the standard abstract task (only 9% correct overall) (Griggs & Cox, 1993; Manktelow & Over, 1990, 1992).

**Evolution and Reasoning**

A different approach to conditional reasoning takes an evolutionary view of cognition (Cummins, 2004). This view asks what kinds of thinking skills would provide a naturally selective advantage for humans in adapting to our environment across evolutionary time (Cosmides, 1989; Cosmides & Tooby, 1996). To gain insight into human cognition, we should look to see what kinds of adaptations would have been most useful in the distant past. So we hypothesize on how human hunters and gatherers would have thought during the millions of years of evolutionary time that predated the relatively recent development of agriculture and the very recent development of industrialized societies.

How has evolution influenced human cognition? Humans may possess something like a schema-acquisition device (Cosmides, 1989). It facilitates our ability to quickly glean important information from our experiences. It also helps us to organize that information into meaningful frameworks. In Cosmides’ view, these schemas are highly flexible. But they also are specialized for selecting and organizing the information that will most effectively aid us in adapting to the situations we face. One of the distinctive adaptations shown by human hunters and gatherers has been in the area of social exchange. There are two kinds of inferences in particular that social-exchange schemas facilitate: inferences related to cost-benefit relationships and inferences that help people detect when someone is cheating in a particular social exchange. In earlier times, detecting a cheater may have made the difference between life and death.
Syllogistic Reasoning: Categorical Syllogisms

In addition to conditional reasoning, the other key type of deductive reasoning is syllogistic reasoning, which is based on the use of syllogisms. Syllogisms are deductive arguments that involve drawing conclusions from two premises (Maxwell, 2005; Rips, 1994, 1999). All syllogisms comprise a major premise, a minor premise, and a conclusion. Unfortunately, sometimes the conclusion may be that no logical conclusion may be reached based on the two given premises.

What Are Categorical Syllogisms?

Probably the most well-known kind of syllogism is the categorical syllogism. Like other kinds of syllogisms, categorical syllogisms comprise two premises and a conclusion. In the case of the categorical syllogism, the premises state something about the category memberships of the terms. In fact, each term represents all, none, or some of the members of a particular class or category. As with other syllogisms, each premise contains two terms. One of them must be the middle term, common to both premises. The first and the second terms in each premise are linked through the categorical membership of the terms. That is, one term is a member of the class indicated by the other term. However the premises are worded, they state that some (or all or none) of the members of the category of the first term are (or are not) members of the category of the second term. To determine whether the conclusion follows logically from the premises, the reasoner must determine the category memberships of the terms. An example of a categorical syllogism would be as follows:

All cognitive psychologists are pianists.
All pianists are athletes.
Therefore, all cognitive psychologists are athletes.

Logicians often use circle diagrams to illustrate class membership. They make it easier to figure out whether a particular conclusion is logically sound. The conclusion for this syllogism does in fact follow logically from the premises. This is shown in the circle diagram in Figure 12.2. However, the conclusion is false because the premises are false. For the preceding categorical syllogism, the subject is cognitive psychologists, the middle term is pianists, and the predicate is athletes. In both premises, we asserted that all members of the category of the first term were members of the category of the second term.

There are four kinds of premises (see also Table 12.4):

1. Statements of the form “All A are B” sometimes are referred to as universal affirmatives, because they make a positive (affirmative) statement about all members of a class (universal).
2. Universal negative statements make a negative statement about all members of a class (e.g., “No cognitive psychologists are flutists.”).
3. Particular affirmative statements make a positive statement about some members of a class (e.g., “Some cognitive psychologists are left-handed.”).
4. Particular negative statements make a negative statement about some members of a class (e.g., “Some cognitive psychologists are not physicists.”).

In all kinds of syllogisms, some combinations of premises lead to no logically valid conclusion. In categorical syllogisms, in particular, we cannot draw logically valid conclusions from categorical syllogisms with two particular premises or with two negative premises. For example, “Some cognitive psychologists are left-handed. Some
left-handed people are smart.” Based on these premises, you cannot conclude even
that some cognitive psychologists are smart. The left-handed people who are smart
might not be the same left-handed people who are cognitive psychologists. We just
don’t know. Consider a negative example: “No students are stupid. No stupid people
eat pizza.” We cannot conclude anything one way or the other about whether students
eat pizza based on these two negative premises. As you may have guessed, people
appear to have more difficulty (work more slowly and make more errors) when
trying to deduce conclusions based on one or more particular premises or negative
premises.

**How Do People Solve Syllogisms?**

Various theories have been proposed as to how people solve categorical syllogisms.
One of the earliest theories was the atmosphere bias (Begg & Denny, 1969;
Woodworth & Sells, 1935). There are two basic ideas of this theory:
1. If there is at least one negative in the premises, people will prefer a negative solution.

2. If there is at least one particular in the premises, people will prefer a particular solution. For example, if one of the premises is “No pilots are children,” people will prefer a solution that has the word no in it.

Nonetheless, the theory does not account very well for large numbers of responses.

Other researchers focused attention on the conversion of premises (Chapman & Chapman, 1959). Here, the terms of a given premise are reversed. People sometimes believe that the reversed form of the premise is just as valid as the original form. The idea is that people tend to convert statements like “If A, then B” into “If B, then A.” They do not realize that the statements are not equivalent. These errors are made by children and adults alike (Markovits, 2004).

A more widely accepted theory is based on the notion that people solve syllogisms by using a semantic (meaning-based) process based on mental models (Ball & Quayle, 2009; Espino et al., 2005; Johnson-Laird & Savary, 1999; Johnson-Laird & Steedman, 1978). This view of reasoning as involving semantic processes based on mental models may be contrasted with rule-based (“syntactic”)
processes, such as those characterized by formal logic. A **mental model** is an internal representation of information that corresponds analogously with whatever is being represented (see Johnson-Laird, 1983). Some mental models are more likely to lead to a deductively valid conclusion than are others. In particular, some mental models may not be effective in disconfirming an invalid conclusion.

For example, in the Johnson-Laird study, participants were asked to describe their conclusions and their mental models for the syllogism, “All of the artists are beekeepers. Some of the beekeepers are clever. Are all artists clever?” One participant said, “I thought of all the little . . . artists in the room and imagined they all had beekeeper’s hats on” (Johnson-Laird & Steedman, 1978, p. 77). Figure 12.3 shows two different mental models for this syllogism. As the figure shows, the choice of a mental model may affect the reasoner’s ability to reach a valid deductive conclusion. Because some models are better than others for solving some syllogisms, a person is more likely to reach a deductively valid conclusion by using more than one mental model. In the figure, the mental model shown in (a) may lead to the
A deductively invalid conclusion that some artists are clever. By observing the alternative model in (b), we can see an alternative view of the syllogism. It shows that the conclusion that some artists are clever may not be deduced on the basis of this information alone. Specifically, perhaps the beekeepers who are clever are not the same as the beekeepers who are artists.

As mentioned previously, circle diagrams are often used to represent categorical syllogisms. In circle diagrams, you can use overlapping, concentric, or non-overlapping circles to represent the members of different categories (see Figure 12.2). People can learn how to improve their reasoning by being taught how to draw circle diagrams (Nickerson, 2004). Amazingly, even congenitally blind persons are able to create spatial mental models to assist them in their reasoning processes (Fleming et al., 2006; Knauff & May, 2006).

The difficulty of many problems of deductive reasoning relates to the number of mental models needed for adequately representing the premises of the deductive argument (Johnson-Laird, Byrne, & Schaeken, 1992). Arguments that entail only one mental model may be solved quickly and accurately. However, to infer accurate conclusions based on arguments that may be represented by multiple alternative models is much harder. Such inferences place great demands on working memory (Gilhooly, 2004). In these cases, the individual must simultaneously hold in working memory each of the various models. Only in this way can he or she reach or evaluate a conclusion. Thus, limitations of working-memory capacity may underlie at least some of the errors observed in human deductive reasoning (Johnson-Laird, Byrne, & Schaeken, 1992).

In two experiments, the role of working memory was studied in syllogistic reasoning (Gilhooly et al., 1993). In the first, syllogisms were simply presented either orally or visually. Oral presentation placed a considerably higher load on working memory because participants had to remember the premises. In the visual-presentation condition, participants could look at the premises. As predicted, performance was lower in the oral-presentation condition. In a second experiment, participants needed to solve syllogisms while at the same time performing another task. Either the task drew on working-memory resources or it did not. The researchers found that the task that drew on working-memory resources interfered with syllogistic reasoning. The task that did not draw on these resources did not.

Other factors also may contribute to the ease of forming appropriate mental models. People seem to solve logical problems more accurately and more easily when the terms have high imagery value (Clement & Falmagne, 1986).

Some deductive reasoning problems comprise more than two premises. For example, transitive-inference problems, in which problem solvers must order multiple terms, can have any number of premises linking large numbers of terms. Mathematical and logical proofs are deductive in character and can have many steps as well.

**Aids and Obstacles to Deductive Reasoning**

In deductive reasoning, as in many other cognitive processes, we engage in many heuristic shortcuts. These shortcuts sometimes lead to inaccurate conclusions. In addition to these shortcuts, we often are influenced by biases that distort the outcomes of our reasoning. In this section, we examine heuristics and biases in deductive reasoning. Finally, we look at ways to enhance your deductive reasoning skills.
**Heuristics in Deductive Reasoning**

Heuristics in syllogistic reasoning include overextension errors. In these errors, we overextend the use of strategies that work in some syllogisms to syllogisms in which the strategies fail us. For example, although reversals work well with universal negatives, they do not work with other kinds of premises. We also experience foreclosure effects when we fail to consider all the possibilities before reaching a conclusion. In addition, premise-phrasing effects may influence our deductive reasoning, for example, the sequence of terms or the use of particular qualifiers or negative phrasing. Premise-phrasing effects may lead us to leap to a conclusion without adequately reflecting on the deductive validity of the syllogism.

**Biases in Deductive Reasoning**

Biases that affect deductive reasoning generally relate to the content of the premises and the believability of the conclusion. They also reflect the tendency toward confirmation bias. In confirmation bias, we seek confirmation rather than disconfirmation of what we already believe. Suppose the content of the premises and a conclusion seem to be true. In such cases, reasoners tend to believe in the validity of the conclusion, even when the logic is flawed (Evans, Barston, & Pollard, 1983).

Confirmation bias can be detrimental and even dangerous in some circumstances. For instance, in an emergency room, if a doctor assumes that a patient has condition X, the doctor may interpret the set of symptoms as supporting the diagnosis without fully considering all alternative interpretations (Pines, 2005). This shortcut can result in inappropriate diagnosis and treatment, which can be extremely dangerous. Other circumstances where the effects of confirmation bias can be observed are in police investigations, paranormal beliefs, and stereotyping behavior (Ask & Granhag, 2005; Biernat & Ma, 2005; Lawrence & Peters, 2004). To a lesser extent, people also show the opposite tendency to disconfirm the validity of the conclusion when the conclusion or the content of the premises contradicts the reasoner’s existing beliefs (Evans, Barston, & Pollard, 1983; Janis & Frick, 1943).

**Enhancing Deductive Reasoning**

To enhance our deductive reasoning, we may try to avoid heuristics and biases that distort our reasoning. We also may engage in practices that facilitate reasoning. For example, we may take longer to reach or to evaluate conclusions. Effective reasoners also consider more alternative conclusions than do poor reasoners (Galotti, Baron, & Sabini, 1986). In addition, training and practice seem to increase performance on reasoning tasks. The benefits of training tend to be strong when the training relates to pragmatic reasoning schemas (Cheng et al., 1986) or to such fields as law and medicine (Lehman, Lempert, & Nisbett, 1987). The benefits are weaker for abstract logical problems divorced from our everyday life (see Holland et al., 1986; Holyoak & Nisbett, 1988).

One factor that affects syllogistic reasoning is mood. When people are in a sad mood, they tend to pay more attention to details (Schwarz & Skurnik, 2003). Perhaps surprisingly, they tend to do better in syllogistic reasoning tasks when they are in a sad mood than when they are in a happy mood (Fiedler, 1988; Melton, 1995). People in a neutral mood tend to show performance in between the two extremes.
We now consider inductive reasoning in more detail. First, we discuss what inductive reasoning is. Next, we will explore how we make causal inferences. Last, we will consider categorical inferences and reasoning by analogies.

**What Is Inductive Reasoning?**

**Inductive reasoning** is the process of reasoning from specific facts or observations to reach a likely conclusion that may explain the facts. The inductive reasoner then may use that probable conclusion to attempt to predict future specific instances (Johnson-Laird, 2000). The key feature distinguishing inductive from deductive reasoning is that, in inductive reasoning, we never can reach a logically certain conclusion. We only can reach a particularly well-founded or probable conclusion. With

---

**PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS OF COGNITIVE PSYCHOLOGY**

**IMPROVING YOUR DEDUCTIVE REASONING SKILLS**

Even without training, you can improve your own deductive reasoning through developing strategies to avoid making errors. For example, an unscrupulous politician might state that, “We know that some suspicious-looking people are illegal aliens. We also know that some illegal aliens are terrorists. Therefore, we can be sure that some of those people whom we think are suspicious are terrorists, and that they are out to destroy our country!” The politician’s syllogistic reasoning is wrong. If some A are B and some B are C, it is not necessarily the case that any A are C. This is obvious when you realize that some men are happy people and some happy people are women, but this does not imply that some men are women.

Make sure you are using the proper strategies in solving syllogisms. Remember that reversals only work with universal negatives. Sometimes translating abstract terms to concrete ones (e.g., the letter C to cows) can help. Also, take the time to consider contrary examples and create more mental models. The more mental models you use for a given set of premises, the more confident you can be that if your conclusion is not valid, it will be disconfirmed. Thus, the use of multiple mental models increases the likelihood of avoiding errors. The use of multiple mental models also helps you to avoid the tendency to engage in confirmation bias. Circle diagrams also can be helpful in solving deductive-reasoning problems.

Is the use of fingerprints in solving a crime an example of deductive reasoning? Why or why not?

---

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. Which are deductively valid inferences in conditional reasoning?
2. What are categorical syllogisms?
3. How can mental models be helpful when solving categorical syllogisms?
4. What does “reversibility” mean with respect to premises?
5. Name some biases that we are prone to in deductive reasoning.
deductive reasoning, in contrast, reaching logically certain—deductively valid—conclusions is possible.

For example, suppose that you notice that all the people enrolled in your cognitive psychology course are on the dean’s list (or honor roll). From these observations, you could reason inductively that all students who enroll in cognitive psychology are excellent students (or at least earn the grades to give that impression). However, unless you can observe the grade-point averages of all people who ever have taken or ever will take cognitive psychology, you will be unable to prove your conclusion. Furthermore, a single poor student who happened to enroll in a cognitive psychology course would disprove your conclusion. Still, after large numbers of observations, you might conclude that you had made enough observations to reason inductively.

The fundamental riddle of induction is how we can make any inductions at all. As the future has not happened, how can we predict what it will bring? There is also an important so-called new riddle of induction (Goodman, 1983). Given possible alternative futures, how do we know which one to predict? For example, in the number series problem 2, 4, 6, ?, most people would replace the question mark with an 8. But we cannot know for sure that the correct number is 8. A mathematical formula could be proposed that would yield any number at all as the next number. So why choose the pattern of ascending even numbers? Partly we choose it because it seems simple to us. It is a less complex formula than others we might choose. And partly we choose it because we are familiar with it. We are used to ascending series of even numbers. But we are not used to other complex series in which 2, 4, 6, may be embedded, such as 2, 4, 6, 10, 12, 14, 18, 20, 22, and so forth.

Inductive reasoning forms the basis of the empirical method (Holyoak & Nisbett, 1998). In it, we cannot logically leap from saying, “All observed instances to date of X are Y” to saying, “Therefore, all X are Y.” It is always possible that the next observed X will not be a Y. For example, you may say that all swans that you have ever seen are white. However, you cannot form the conclusion then that all swans are white because the next swan you happen upon might be black. Indeed, black swans do exist.

In research, when we reject the null hypothesis (the hypothesis of no difference), we use inductive reasoning. We never know for sure whether we are correct in rejecting a null hypothesis.

Cognitive psychologists probably agree on at least two of the reasons why people use inductive reasoning. First, it helps them to become increasingly able to make sense out of the great variability in their environment. Second, it also helps them to predict events in their environment, thereby reducing their uncertainty. Thus, cognitive psychologists seek to understand the how rather than the why of inductive reasoning. We may (or may not) have some innate schema-acquisition device. But we certainly are not born with all the inferences we manage to induce.

We already have implied that inductive reasoning often involves the processes of generating and testing hypotheses. In addition, we reach inferences by generalizing some broad understandings from a set of specific instances. As we observe additional instances, we further broaden our understanding. Or, we may infer specialized exceptions to the general understandings. For example, after observing quite a few birds, we may infer that birds can fly. But after observing penguins and ostriches, we may add to our generalized knowledge specialized exceptions for flightless birds.
Causal Inferences

One approach to studying inductive reasoning is to examine causal inferences—how people make judgments about whether something causes something else (Cheng, 1997, 1999; Spellman, 1997). The philosopher David Hume observed that we are most likely to infer causality when we observe covariation over time: First one thing happens, then another. If we see the two events paired enough, we may come to believe that the first causes the second.

Perhaps our greatest failing is one that extends to psychologists, other scientists, and non-scientists: We demonstrate confirmation bias, which may lead us to errors such as illusory correlations (Chapman & Chapman, 1967, 1969, 1975). Furthermore, we frequently make mistakes when attempting to determine causality based on correlational evidence alone. Correlational evidence cannot indicate the direction of causation. Suppose we observe a correlation between Factor A and Factor B. We may find one of three things:

1. it may be that Factor A causes Factor B;
2. it may be that Factor B causes Factor A; or
3. some higher order, Factor C, may be causing both Factors A and B to occur together.

Based on the correlational data we cannot determine which of the three options indeed causes the observed phenomenon.

A related error occurs when we fail to recognize that many phenomena have multiple causes. For example, a car accident often involves several causes. It may have originated with the negligence of several drivers, rather than just one. Once we have identified one of the suspected causes of a phenomenon, we may commit what is known as a discounting error. We stop searching for additional alternative or contributing causes.

Confirmation bias can have a major effect on our everyday lives. For example, we may meet someone, expecting not to like her. As a result, we may treat her in ways that are different from how we would treat her if we expected to like her. She then may respond to us in less favorable ways. She thereby “confirms” our original belief that she is not likable. Confirmation bias thereby can play a major role in schooling. Teachers often expect little of students when they think them low in ability. The students then give the teachers little. The teachers’ original beliefs are thereby “confirmed” (Sternberg, 1997). This effect is referred to as a self-fulfilling prophecy (Harber & Jussim, 2005).

Categorical Inferences

On what basis do people draw inferences? People generally use both bottom-up strategies and top-down strategies for doing so (Holyoak & Nisbett, 1988). That is, they use both information from their sensory experiences and information based on what they already know or have inferred previously. Bottom-up strategies are based on observing various instances and considering the degree of variability across instances. From these observations, we abstract a prototype (see Chapters 8 and 9). Once a prototype or a category has been induced, the individual may use focused sampling to add new instances to the category. He or she focuses chiefly on properties that have provided useful distinctions in the past. Top-down strategies include selectively searching for constancies within many variations and selectively combining existing concepts and categories.
**Reasoning by Analogy**

Inductive reasoning may be applied to a broader range of situations than those requiring causal or categorical inferences. For example, inductive reasoning may be applied to reasoning by analogy. Consider an example analogy problem:

Fire is to asbestos as water is to: (a) vinyl, (b) air, (c) cotton, (d) faucet.

In reasoning by analogy, the reasoner must observe the first pair of items (“fire” and “asbestos” in this example) and must induce from those two items one or more relations (in this case, surface resistance because surfaces coated with asbestos can resist fire). The reasoner then must apply the given relation in the second part of the analogy. In the example analogy, the reasoner chooses the solution to be “vinyl” because surfaces coated with vinyl can resist water.

Some investigators have used reaction-time methodology to figure out how people solve induction problems. For example, using mathematical modeling you might be able to break down the amounts of time participants spent on various processes of analogical reasoning. Most of the time spent in solving simple verbal analogies is spent in encoding the terms and in responding (Sternberg, 1977). Only a small part actually is spent in doing reasoning operations on these encodings.

The difficulty of encoding can become even greater in various puzzling analogies. For example, in the analogy:

RAT : TAR :: BAT : (a. CONCRETE, b. MAMMAL, c. TAB, d. TAIL),

the difficulty is in encoding the analogy as one involving letter reversal rather than semantic content for its solution. In a problematic analogy such as the following, the difficulty is in recognizing the meanings of the words:

AUDACIOUS : TIMOROUS :: MITIGATE :
(a. ADUMBRATE, b. EXACERBATE, c. EXPOSTULATE, d. EVISCERATE)

If reasoners know the meanings of the words, they probably will find it relatively easy to figure out that the relation is one of antonyms. (Did this example audaciously exacerbate your difficulties in solving problems involving analogies?)

An application of analogies in reasoning can be seen in politics. Analogies can help governing bodies come to conclusions (Breuning, 2003). These analogies also can be effectively used to conveying the justification of the decision to the public (Breuning, 2003). However, the use of analogies is not always successful. This highlights both the utility and possible pitfalls of using analogies in political deliberation. In 2010, opponents of the war in Afghanistan drew an analogy to Vietnam to argue for withdrawing from Afghanistan. They asserted that the failure of U.S. policies to lead to a conclusive victory were analogous between Vietnam and Afghanistan. Some members of government then turned the tables, using an analogy to Vietnam to argue that withdrawal from Afghanistan could lead to mass slaughter, as they asserted happened in Vietnam after the Americans left. Thus, analogies can end up being largely in the eye of the beholder rather than in the actual elements being compared.

Analogies are also used in everyday life as we make predictions about our environment. We connect our perceptions with our memories by means of analogies. The analogies then activate concepts and items stored in our mind that are similar to the current input. Through this activation, we can then make a prediction of what is likely in a given situation (Bar, 2007). For example, predictions about global warming are being guided in part by people drawing analogies to times in the past when the people believed either that the atmosphere warmed up or did not.
Whether a given individual believes in global warming depends in part upon what analogy or analogies the individual decides to draw.

✔ CONCEPT CHECK

1. What is inductive reasoning?
2. Which strategies do people use to draw inferences?
3. What is an analogy?
4. What leads analogies to succeed or fail?

An Alternative View of Reasoning

By now you have reasonably inferred that cognitive psychologists often disagree—sometimes rather heatedly—about how and why people reason as they do. An alternative perspective on reasoning, dual-process theory, contends that two complementary systems of reasoning can be distinguished. The first is an associative system, which involves mental operations based on observed similarities and temporal contiguities (i.e., tendencies for things to occur close together in time). The second is a rule-based system, which involves manipulations based on the relations among symbols (Barrett, Tugade, & Engle, 2004; Sloman, 1996).

The associative system can lead to speedy responses that are highly sensitive to patterns and to general tendencies. Through this system, we detect similarities between observed patterns and patterns stored in memory. We may pay more attention to salient features (e.g., highly typical or highly atypical ones) than to defining features of a pattern. This system imposes rather loose constraints that may inhibit the selection of patterns that are poor matches to the observed pattern. It favors remembered patterns that are better matches to the observed pattern. An example of associative reasoning is use of the representativeness heuristic.

Another example is the belief-bias effect in syllogistic reasoning (Markovits et al., 2009; Tsujii et al., 2010). This effect occurs when we agree more with syllogisms that affirm our beliefs, whether or not these syllogisms are logically valid. An example of the workings of the associative system may be in the false-consensus effect. Here, people believe that their own behavior and judgments are more common and more appropriate than those of other people (Ross, Greene, & House, 1977). Suppose people have an opinion on an issue. They are likely to believe that because it is their opinion, it is likely to be shared and believed to be correct by others (Dawes & Mulford, 1996; Krueger, 1998). Associating others' views with our own simply because they are our own is a questionable practice, however.

The rule-based system of reasoning usually requires more deliberate, sometimes painstaking procedures for reaching conclusions. Through this system, we carefully analyze relevant features (e.g., defining features) of the available data, based on rules stored in memory. This system imposes rigid constraints that rule out possibilities that violate the rules. Evidence in favor of rule-based reasoning includes:

1. We can recognize logical arguments when they are explained to us.
2. We can recognize the need to make categorizations based on defining features despite similarities in typical features. For example, we can recognize that a coin with a 3-inch diameter, which looks exactly like a quarter, must be a counterfeit.
3. We can rule out impossibilities, such as cats conceiving and giving birth to puppies.
4. We can recognize many improbabilities. For example, it is unlikely that the U.S. Congress will pass a law that provides annual salaries to all full-time college students.

According to Sloman, we need both complementary systems. We need to respond quickly and easily to everyday situations, based on observed similarities and temporal contiguities. Yet we also need a means for evaluating our responses more deliberately.

The two systems may be conceptualized within a connectionist framework (Sloman, 1996). The associative system is represented easily in terms of pattern activation and inhibition, which readily fits the connectionist model. The rule-based system may be represented as a system of production rules (see Chapter 8). An alternative connectionist view suggests that deductive reasoning may occur when a given pattern of activation in one set of nodes (e.g., those associated with a particular premise or set of premises) entails or produces a particular pattern of activation in a second set of nodes (Rips, 1994). Similarly, a connectionist model of inductive reasoning may involve the repeated activation of a series of similar patterns across various instances. This repeated activation then may strengthen the links among the activated nodes. It thereby leads to generalization or abstraction of the pattern for a variety of instances.

Connectionist models of reasoning and the other approaches described in this chapter offer diverse views of the available data regarding how we reason and make judgments. At present, no one theoretical model explains all the data well. But each model explains at least some of the data satisfactorily. Together, the theories help us understand human intelligence and cognition.

Consider a concrete example of the interface between intelligence and cognition in Investigating Cognitive Psychology: When There Is No “Right” Choice.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. What are the two complementary systems of reasoning?
2. How does a connectionist model conceptualize deductive reasoning?

**Neuroscience of Reasoning**

As in both problem solving and decision making, the process of reasoning involves the prefrontal cortex (Bunge et al., 2004). Further, reasoning involves brain areas associated with working memory, such as the basal ganglia (Melrose, Poulin, & Stern, 2007). One would expect working memory to be involved because reasoning involves the integration of information (which needs to be held in working memory while it is being integrated).

The basal ganglia are involved in a variety of functions, including cognition and learning. This area is also associated with the prefrontal cortex through a variety of connections (Melrose, Poulin, & Stern, 2007).

However, when a person is presented with a statement that is either to be remembered, on the one hand, or to be used for reasoning, on the other, the processes
in the brain do differ somewhat. This means there may be more going on than encoding for recall when a person knows he or she will have to reason with a statement. In particular, for syllogistic reasoning, the left lateral frontal lobe (Broca’s areas 44 and 45) is more active than when a statement just needs to be remembered. This activation cannot be found for processing of conditional premises.

While people were engaged in the integration of the information (solving the syllogistic and conditional reasoning problems), the left fronto-lateral cortex as well as the basal ganglia were activated for both conditional and syllogistic reasoning. However, syllogistic reasoning also involved activation in the lateral parietal cortex, precuneus, and left ventral fronto-lateral cortex (Reverberi et al., 2010). Thus, syllogistic and conditional reasoning seem to involve processing in different parts of the brain.
Exploration of conditional reasoning through event-related potential (ERP) methods revealed an increased negativity in the anterior cingulate cortex approximately 600 milliseconds and 2,000 milliseconds after task presentation (Qui et al., 2007). This negativity suggests increased cognitive control, as would be expected in a reasoning task.

In one study exploring moral reasoning in persons who show antisocial behaviors indicative of poor moral reasoning, malfunctions were noted in several areas within the prefrontal cortex, including the dorsal and ventral regions (Raine & Yang, 2006). Additionally, impairments in the amygdala, hippocampus, angular gyrus, anterior cingulate, and temporal cortex were also observed. Recall that the anterior cingulate is involved in decision making and the hippocampus is involved in working memory. Therefore, it is to be expected that malfunctions in these areas would result in deficiencies in reasoning.

**Key Themes**

Several of the themes discussed in Chapter 1 are relevant to this chapter.

**Rationalism versus empiricism.** One way of understanding errors in syllogistic reasoning is in terms of the particular logical error made, independently of the mental processes the reasoner has used. For example, affirming the consequent is a logical error. One need do no empirical research to understand at the level of symbolic logic the errors that have been made. Moreover, deductive reasoning is itself based on rationalism. A syllogism such as, “All toys are chairs. All chairs are hot dogs. Therefore, all toys are hot dogs,” is logically valid but factually incorrect. Thus, deductive logic can be understood at a rational level, independently of its empirical content. But if we wish to know psychologically why people make errors or what is factually true, then we need to combine empirical observations with rational logic.

**Domain generality versus domain specificity.** The rules of deductive logic apply equally in all domains. One can apply them, for example, to abstract or to concrete content. But research has shown that, psychologically, deductive reasoning with concrete content is easier than reasoning with abstract content. So although the rules apply in exactly the same way generally across domains, ease of application is not psychologically equivalent across those domains.

**Nature versus nurture.** Are people preprogrammed to be logical thinkers? Piaget, the famous Swiss cognitive developmental psychologist, believed so. He believed that the development of logical thinking follows an inborn sequence of stages that unfold over time. According to Piaget, there is not much one can do to alter either the sequence or timing of these stages. But research has suggested that the sequence Piaget proposed does not unfold as he thought. For example, many people never reach his highest stage, and some children are able to reason in ways he would not have predicted they would be able to reason until they were older. So once again, nature and nurture interact.

**CONCEPT CHECK**

1. Which parts of the brain are prominently involved in reasoning processes?
2. Why can we expect that the parts of the brain that are involved in working memory are also active during reasoning?
1. What are some of the strategies that guide human decision making? Early theories were designed to achieve practical mathematical models of decision making and assumed that decision makers are fully informed, infinitely sensitive to information, and completely rational. Subsequent theories began to acknowledge that humans often use subjective criteria for decision making, that chance elements often influence the outcomes of decisions, that humans often use subjective estimates for considering the outcomes, and that humans are not boundlessly rational in making decisions. People apparently often use satisficing strategies, settling for the first minimally acceptable option, and strategies involving a process of elimination by aspects to eliminate an overabundance of options.

One of the most common heuristics most of us use is the representativeness heuristic. We fall prey to the fallacious belief that small samples of a population resemble the whole population in all respects. Our misunderstanding of base rates and other aspects of probability often leads us to other mental shortcuts as well, such as in the conjunction fallacy and the inclusion fallacy.

Another common heuristic is the availability heuristic, in which we make judgments based on information that is readily available in memory, without bothering to seek less available information. The use of heuristics, such as anchoring and adjustment, illusory correlation, and framing effects, also often impairs our ability to make effective decisions.

Once we have made a decision (or better yet, another person has made a decision) and the outcome of the decision is known, we may engage in hindsight bias, skewing our perception of the earlier evidence in light of the eventual outcome. Perhaps the most serious of our mental biases, however, is overconfidence, which seems to be amazingly resistant to evidence of our own errors.

2. What are some of the forms of deductive reasoning that people may use, and what factors facilitate or impede deductive reasoning? Deductive reasoning involves reaching conclusions from a set of conditional propositions or from a syllogistic pair of premises. Among the various types of syllogisms are linear syllogisms and categorical syllogisms. In addition, deductive reasoning may involve complex transitive-inference problems or mathematical or logical proofs involving large numbers of terms. Also, deductive reasoning may involve the use of pragmatic reasoning schemas in practical, everyday situations.

In drawing conclusions from conditional propositions, people readily apply the *modus ponens* argument, particularly regarding universal affirmative propositions. Most of us have more difficulty, however, in using the *modus tollens* argument and in avoiding deductive fallacies, such as affirming the consequent or denying the antecedent, particularly when faced with propositions involving particular propositions or negative propositions.

In solving syllogisms, we have similar difficulties with particular premises and negative premises and with terms that are not presented in the customary sequence. Frequently, when trying to draw conclusions, we overextend a strategy from a situation in which it leads to a deductively valid conclusion to one in which it leads to a deductive fallacy. We also may foreclose on a given conclusion before considering the full range of possibilities that may affect the conclusion. These mental shortcuts may be exacerbated by situations in which we engage in confirmation bias (tending to confirm our own beliefs).

We can enhance our ability to draw well-reasoned conclusions in many ways, such as by taking time to evaluate the premises or propositions carefully and by forming multiple mental models of the propositions and their relationships. We also may benefit from training and practice in effective deductive reasoning. We are particularly likely to reach well-reasoned conclusions when such conclusions seem plausible and useful in pragmatic contexts, such as during social exchanges.

3. How do people use inductive reasoning to reach causal inferences and to reach other types of conclusions? Although we cannot reach logically certain conclusions through inductive reasoning, we can at least reach highly probable conclusions through careful reasoning. When
making categorical inferences, people tend to use both top-down and bottom-up strategies. Processes of inductive reasoning generally form the basis of scientific study and hypothesis testing as a means to derive causal inferences. In addition, in reasoning by analogy people often spend more time encoding the terms of the problem than in performing the inductive reasoning. Reasoning by analogy can lead to better conclusions, but also to worse ones if the analogy is weak or based on faulty assumptions. It appears that people sometimes may use reasoning based on formal-rule systems, such as by applying rules of formal logic, and sometimes use reasoning based on associations, such as by noticing similarities and temporal continguities.

4. **Are there any alternative views of reasoning?**
A number of scientists have suggested that people have two distinct systems of reasoning: an associative system that is sensitive to observed similarities and temporal continguities and a rule-based system that involves manipulations based on relations among symbols. The two systems can work together to help us reach reasonable conclusions in an efficient way.

---

**Thinking about Thinking: Analytical, Creative, and Practical Questions**

1. Describe some of the heuristics and biases people use while making judgments or reaching decisions.
2. What are the two logical arguments and the two logical fallacies associated with conditional reasoning, as in the Wason Selection Task?
3. Which of the various approaches to conditional reasoning seems best to explain the available data? Give reasons for your answer.
4. Some cognitive psychologists question the merits of studying logical formalisms such as linear or categorical syllogisms. What do you think can be gained by studying how people reason in regard to syllogisms?
5. Based on the information in this chapter, design a way to help high school students more effectively apply deductive reasoning to the problems they face.
6. Design a question, such as the ones used by Kahneman and Tversky, which requires people to estimate subjective probabilities of two different events. Indicate the fallacies that you may expect to influence people’s estimates, or tell why you think people would give realistic estimates of probability.
7. Suppose that you need to rent an apartment. How would you go about finding one that most effectively meets your requirements and your preferences? How closely does your method resemble the methods described by subjective expected utility theory, by satisficing, or by elimination by aspects?
8. Give two examples showing how you use rule-based reasoning and associative reasoning in your everyday experiences. In what kinds of instances do you believe each type of reasoning works better, or not as well?

---

**Key Terms**

- availability heuristic, p. 494
- base rate, p. 494
- bounded rationality, p. 491
- categorical syllogism, p. 513
- causal inferences, p. 521
- conditional reasoning, p. 507
- confirmation bias, p. 518
- deductive reasoning, p. 507
- deductive validity, p. 508
- elimination by aspects, p. 492
- fallacy, p. 489
- heuristics, p. 490
- hindsight bias, p. 498
- illusory correlation, p. 497
- inductive reasoning, p. 519
- judgment and decision making, p. 489
- mental model, p. 516
- overconfidence, p. 498
- pragmatic reasoning schema, p. 511
- premises, p. 507
- proposition, p. 507
- reasoning, p. 507
- representativeness, p. 493
- satisficing, p. 491
- subjective probability, p. 490
- subjective utility, p. 490
- syllogisms, p. 513
Media Resources

Visit the companion website—www.cengagebrain.com—for quizzes, research articles, chapter outlines, and more.

CogLab

Explore Coglab by going to http://coglab.wadsworth.com. To learn more, examine the following experiments:
- Risky Decisions
- Typical Reasoning
- Wason Selection Task
accessibility the degree to which we can gain access to the available information

ACT Adaptive Control of Thought. In his ACT model, John Anderson synthesized some of the features of serial information-processing models and some of the features of semantic-network models. In ACT, procedural knowledge is represented in the form of production systems. Declarative knowledge is represented in the form of propositional networks

ACT-R a model of information processing that integrates a network representation for declarative knowledge and a production-system representation for procedural knowledge

agnosia a severe deficit in the ability to perceive sensory information

algorithms sequences of operations that may be repeated over and over again and that, in theory, guarantee the solution to a problem

Alzheimer’s disease a disease of older adults that causes dementia as well as progressive memory loss

amacrine cells along with horizontal cells, they make single lateral connections among adjacent areas of the retina in the middle layer of cells

amnesia severe loss of explicit memory

amygdala plays an important role in emotion, especially in anger and aggression

analog codes a form of knowledge representation that preserves the main perceptual features of whatever is being represented for the physical stimuli we observe in our environment

analysis breaking down the whole of a complex problem into manageable elements

anterograde amnesia the inability to remember events that occur after a traumatic event

aphasia an impairment of language functioning caused by damage to the brain

arousal a degree of physiological excitation, responsivity, and readiness for action, relative to a baseline

artifact categories groupings that are designed or invented by humans to serve particular purposes or functions

artificial intelligence (AI) the attempt by humans to construct systems that show intelligence and, particularly, the intelligent processing of information; intelligence in symbol-processing systems such as computers

associationism examines how events or ideas can become associated with one another in the mind to result in a form of learning

attention the active cognitive processing of a limited amount of information from the vast amount of information available through the senses, in memory, and through cognitive processes; focus on a small subset of available stimuli

autobiographical memory refers to memory of an individual’s history

automatic processes involve no conscious control

automatization the process by which a procedure changes from being highly conscious to being relatively automatic; also termed proceduralization

availability the presence of information stored in long-term memory

availability heuristic cognitive shortcut that occurs when we make judgments on the basis of how easily we can call to mind what we perceive as relevant instances of a phenomenon

axon the part of the neuron through which intraneuronal conduction occurs (via the action potential) and at the terminus of which is located the terminal buttons that release neurotransmitters

base rate refers to the prevalence of an event or characteristic within its population of events or characteristics

basic level degree of specificity of a concept that seems to be a level within a hierarchy that is preferred to other levels; sometimes termed natural level

behaviorism a theoretical outlook that psychology should focus only on the relation between observable behavior, on the one hand, and environmental events or stimuli, on the other

bilinguals people who can speak two languages

binaural presentation presenting the same two messages, or sometimes just one message, to both ears simultaneously

binocular depth cues based on the receipt of sensory information in three dimensions from both eyes

bipolar cells make dual connections forward and outward to the ganglion cells, as well as backward and inward to the third layer of retinal cells

blindsight traces of visual perceptual ability in blind areas

bottleneck theories theories proposing a bottleneck that slows down information passing through

bottom-up theories data-driven (i.e., stimulus-driven) theories

bounded rationality belief that we are rational, but within limits

brain the organ in our bodies that most directly controls our thoughts, emotions, and motivations
brainstem connects the forebrain to the spinal cord
categorical perception discontinuous categories of speech sounds
categorical syllogism a deductive argument in which the relationship among the three terms in the two premises involves categorical membership
category a concept that functions to organize or point out aspects of equivalence among other concepts based on common features or similarity to a prototype
causal inferences how people make judgments about whether something causes something else
central executive both coordinates attentional activities and governs responses
cerebellum controls bodily coordination, balance, and muscle tone, as well as some aspects of memory involving procedure-related movements; from Latin, “little brain”
cerebral cortex forms a 1- to 3-millimeter layer that wraps the surface of the brain somewhat like the bark of a tree wraps around the trunk
cerebral hemispheres the two halves of the brain
change blindness the inability to detect changes in objects or scenes that are being viewed
characteristic features qualities that describe (characterize or typify) the prototype but are not necessary for it
doarticulation occurs when phonemes or other units are produced in a way that overlaps them in time
cocktail party problem the process of tracking one conversation in the face of the distraction of other conversations
cognitive maps internal representations of our physical environment, particularly centering on spatial relationships
cognitive neuroscience the field of study linking the brain and other aspects of the nervous system to cognitive processing and, ultimately, to behavior
cognitive psychology the study of how people perceive, learn, remember, and think about information
cognitive science a cross-disciplinary field that uses ideas and methods from cognitive psychology, psychobiology, artificial intelligence, philosophy, linguistics, and anthropology
cognitivism the belief that much of human behavior can be understood in terms of how people think
communication exchange of thoughts and feelings
comprehension processes used to make sense of the text as a whole
concept an idea about something that provides a means of understanding the world
conditional reasoning occurs when the reasoner must draw a conclusion based on an if-then proposition
cones one of the two kinds of photoreceptors in the eye; less numerous, shorter, thicker, and more highly concentrated in the foveal region of the retina than in the periphery of the retina than are rods (the other type of photoreceptor); virtually nonfunctional in dim light, but highly effective in bright light and essential to color vision
confirmation bias the tendency to seek confirmation rather than disconfirmation of what we already believe
confounding variable a type of irrelevant variable that has been left uncontrolled in a study
conjunction search looking for a particular combination (conjunction: joining together) of features
connectionist models according to connectionist models, we handle very large numbers of cognitive operations at once through a network distributed across incalculable numbers of locations in the brain
connotation a word’s emotional overtones, presuppositions, and other non-explicit meanings
consciousness includes both the feeling of awareness and the content of awareness
consolidation the process of integrating new information into stored information
constructive prior experience affects how we recall things and what we actually recall from memory
constructive perception the perceiver builds (constructs) a cognitive understanding (perception) of a stimulus; he or she uses sensory information as the foundation for the structure but also uses other sources of information to build the perception
content morphemes the words that convey the bulk of the meaning of a language
context effects the influences of the surrounding environment on perception
contextualism belief that intelligence must be understood in its real-world context
contralateral from one side to another
controlled processes accessible to conscious control and even require it
convergent thinking attempt to narrow down the multiple possibilities to converge on a single best answer
converging operations the use of multiple approaches and techniques to address a problem
cooperative principle principle in conversation that holds that we seek to communicate in ways that make it easy for our listener to understand what we mean
core refers to the defining features something must have to be considered an example of a category
corpus callosum a dense aggregate of neural fibers connecting the two cerebral hemispheres
creativity the process of producing something that is both original and worthwhile
culture-fair equally appropriate and fair for members of all cultures
culture-relevant tests measure skills and knowledge that relate to the cultural experiences of the test-takers
decay occurs when simply the passage of time causes an individual to forget
decay theory asserts that information is forgotten because of the gradual disappearance, rather than displacement, of the memory trace
declarative knowledge knowledge of facts that can be stated

deductive reasoning the process of reasoning from one or

more general statements regarding what is known to
reach a logically certain conclusion

deductive validity logical soundness

deep structure refers to an underlying syntactic structure that
links various phrase structures through the application
of various transformation rules

defining feature a necessary attribute
dendrites the branch-like structures of each neuron that
extend into synapses with other neurons and that
receive neurochemical messages sent into synapses by
other neurons
denotation the strict dictionary definition of a word
dependent variable a response that is measured and is pre-
sumed to be the effect of one or more independent variables

depth the distance from a surface, usually using your own
body as a reference surface when speaking in terms of
depth perception
dialect a regional variety of a language distinguished by fea-
tures such as vocabulary, syntax, and pronunciation
dichotic presentation presenting a different message to each ear
direct perception theory belief that the array of information
in our sensory receptors, including the sensory context,
is all we need to perceive anything
discourse encompasses language use at the level beyond the
sentence, such as in conversation, paragraphs, stories,
chapters, and entire works of literature
dishabituation change in a familiar stimulus that prompts us
to start noticing the stimulus again
distracters nontarget stimuli that divert our attention away
from the target stimulus
distributed practice learning in which various sessions are
spaced over time
divergent thinking when one tries to generate a diverse
assortment of possible alternative solutions to a problem
divided attention the prudent allocation of available attentional
resources to coordinate the performance of more than one task at a time
dual-code theory belief suggesting that knowledge is repre-
sented both in images and in symbols
dual-system hypothesis suggests that two languages are
represented somehow in separate systems of the mind
dyslexia difficulty in deciphering, reading, and comprehending
text

dynamical validity the degree to which particular findings in
one environmental context may be considered relevant
outside that context

electroencephalograms (EEGs) recordings of the electrical
frequencies and intensities of the living brain, typically
recorded over relatively long periods
elimination by aspects occurs when we eliminate alternatives
by focusing on aspects of each alternative, one at a time

emotional intelligence the ability to perceive and express
emotion, assimilate emotion in thought, understand
and reason with emotion, and regulate emotion in the
self and others

empiricist one who believes that we acquire knowledge via
empirical evidence
encoding refers to how you transform a physical, sensory
input into a kind of representation that can be placed
into memory

encoding specificity what is recalled depends on what is
encoded
episodic buffer a limited-capacity system that is capable of
binding information from the subsidiary systems and
from long-term memory into a unitary episodic repre-
sentation
episodic memory stores personally experienced events or
episodes

event-related potential an electrophysiological response to a
stimulus, whether internal or external
executive attention a subfunction of attention that includes
processes for monitoring and resolving conflicts that
arise among internal processes
exemplars typical representatives of a category

expertise superior skills or achievement reflecting a well-
developed and well-organized knowledge base

expert systems computer programs that can perform the way
an expert does in a fairly specific domain
explicit memory when participants engage in conscious
recollection

factor analysis a statistical method for separating a construct
into a number of hypothetical factors or traits that the
researchers believe form the basis of individual differences in test performance
fallacy erroneous reasoning

feature-integration theory explains the relative ease of con-
ducting feature searches and the relative difficulty of conducting conjunction searches
feature-matching theories suggest that we attempt to match
features of a pattern to features stored in memory

feature search simply scanning the environment for a partic-
ular feature or features

figure-ground what stands out from versus what recedes into
the background

filter theories theories proposing a filter that blocks some of
the information going through and thereby selects only
a part of the total of information to pass through to the
next stage

flashbulb memory a memory of an event so powerful that the
person remembers the event as vividly as if it were
indelibly preserved on film

flow chart a model path for reaching a goal or solving a
problem

fovea a part of the eye located in the center of the retina that
is largely responsible for the sharp central vision people
use in activities such as reading or watching television or movies

**frontal lobe** associated with motor processing and higher thought processes, such as abstract reasoning

**functional-equivalence hypothesis** belief that although visual imagery is not identical to visual perception, it is functionally equivalent to it

**functional fixedness** the inability to realize that something known to have a particular use may also be used for performing other functions

**functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI)** a neuroimaging technique that uses magnetic fields to construct a detailed representation in three dimensions of levels of activity in various parts of the brain at a given moment

**functionalism** seeks to understand what people do and why they do it

**function morphemes** a morpheme that adds detail and nuance to the meaning of the content morphemes or helps the content morphemes fit the grammatical context

**ganglion cells** a kind of neuron usually situated near the inner surface of the retina of the eye; receive visual information from photoreceptors by way of bipolar cells and amacrine cells; send visual information from the retina to several different parts of the brain, such as the thalamus and the hypothalamus

**Gestalt approach to form perception** based on the notion that the whole differs from the sum of its individual parts

**Gestalt psychology** states that we best understand psychological phenomena when we view them as organized, structured wholes

**“g” factor** general ability

**grammar** the study of language in terms of noticing regular patterns

**habituation** involves our becoming accustomed to a stimulus so that we gradually pay less and less attention to it

**heuristics** informal, intuitive, speculative strategies that sometimes lead to an effective solution and sometimes do not

**hindsight bias** when we look at a situation retrospectively, we believe we easily can see all the signs and events leading up to a particular outcome

**hippocampus** plays an essential role in memory formation

**horizontal cells** along with amacrine cells, they make single lateral connections among adjacent areas of the retina in the middle layer of cells

**hypermnesia** a process of producing retrieval of memories that seem to have been forgotten

**hypothalamus** regulates behavior related to species survival: fighting, feeding, fleeing, and mating; also active in regulating emotions and reactions to stress

**hypotheses** tentative proposals regarding expected empirical consequences of the theory

**hypothesis testing** a view of language acquisition that asserts that children acquire language by mentally forming tentative hypotheses regarding language, based on their inherited facility for language acquisition and then testing these hypotheses in the environment

**hypothetical constructs** concepts that are not themselves directly measurable or observable but that serve as mental models for understanding how a psychological phenomenon works

**iconic store** a discrete visual sensory register that holds information for very short periods

**ill-structured problems** problems that lack well-defined paths to solution

**illusory correlation** occurs when we tend to see particular events or particular attributes and categories as going together because we are predisposed to do so

**imagery** the mental representation of things that are not currently being sensed by the sense organs

**implicit memory** when we recollect something but are not consciously aware that we are trying to do so

**incubation** putting the problem aside for a while without consciously thinking about it

**independent variable** a variable that is varied or purposefully manipulated and that affects one or more dependent variables

**indirect requests** the making of a request without doing so straightforwardly

**inductive reasoning** the process of reasoning from specific facts or observations to reach a likely conclusion that may explain the facts

**infantile amnesia** the inability to recall events that happened when we were very young

**insight** a distinctive and sometimes seemingly sudden understanding of a problem or of a strategy that aids in solving the problem

**intelligence** the capacity to learn from experience, using metacognitive processes to enhance learning, and the ability to adapt to the surrounding environment

**interference** occurs when competing information causes an individual to forget something

**interference theory** refers to the view that forgetting occurs because recall of certain words interferes with recall of other words

**introspection** looking inward at pieces of information passing through consciousness

**ipsilateral** on the same side

**isomorphic** the formal structure is the same, and only the content differs

**jargon** specialized vocabulary commonly used within a group, such as a profession or a trade

**judgment and decision making** used to select from among choices or to evaluate opportunities

**knowledge representation** the form for what you know in your mind about things, ideas, events, and so on that exist outside your mind

**Korsakoff’s syndrome** produces loss of memory function
language the use of an organized means of combining words in order to communicate
law of Prägnanz tendency to perceive any given visual array in a way that most simply organizes the disparate elements into a stable and coherent form
levels-of-processing framework postulates that memory does not comprise three or even any specific number of separate stores but rather varies along a continuous dimension in terms of depth of encoding
lexical access the identification of a word that allows us to gain access to the meaning of the word from memory
lexical processes used to identify letters and words
lexicon the entire set of morphemes in a given language or in a given person’s linguistic repertoire
limbic system important to emotion, motivation, memory, and learning
linguistic relativity the assertion that speakers of different languages have differing cognitive systems and that these different cognitive systems influence the ways in which people speaking the various languages think about the world
linguistic universals characteristic patterns across all languages of various cultures
lobes divide the cerebral hemispheres and cortex into four parts
localization of function refers to the specific areas of the brain that control specific skills or behaviors
long-term store very large capacity, capable of storing information for very long periods, perhaps even indefinitely
magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scan a technique for revealing high-resolution images of the structure of the living brain by computing and analyzing magnetic changes in the energy of the orbits of nuclear particles in the molecules of the body
magnetoencephalography (MEG) an imaging technique that measures the magnetic fields generated by electrical activity in the brain by highly sensitive measuring devices
massed practice learning in which sessions are crammed together in a very short space of time
medulla oblongata brain structure that controls heart activity and largely controls breathing, swallowing, and digestion
memory the means by which we retain and draw on our past experiences to use this information in the present
mental models knowledge structures that individuals construct to understand and explain their experiences; an internal representation of information that corresponds analogously with whatever is being represented
mental rotation involves rotationally transforming an object’s visual mental image
mental set a frame of mind involving an existing model for representing a problem, a problem context, or a procedure for problem solving
metacognition our understanding and control of our cognition; our ability to think about and control our own processes of thought and ways of enhancing our thinking
metamemory strategies involve reflecting on our own memory processes with a view to improving our memory
metaphor two nouns juxtaposed in a way that positively asserts their similarities, while not disconfirming their dissimilarities
mnemonic devices specific techniques to help you memorize lists of words
mnemonist someone who demonstrates extraordinarily keen memory ability, usually based on the use of special techniques for memory enhancement
modular divided into discrete modules that operate more or less independently of each other
monocular depth cues can be represented in just two dimensions and observed with just one eye
monolinguals people who can speak only one language
morpheme the smallest unit that denotes meaning within a particular language
multimode theory proposes that attention is flexible; selection of one message over another message can be made at any of various different points in the course of information processing
myelin a fatty substance coating the axons of some neurons that facilitates the speed and accuracy of neuronal communication
natural categories groupings that occur naturally in the world
negative transfer occurs when solving an earlier problem makes it harder to solve a later one
nervous system the organized network of cells (neurons) through which an individual receives information from the environment, processes that information, and then interacts with the environment
networks a web of relationships (e.g., category membership, attribution) between nodes
neurons individual nerve cells
neurotransmitters chemical messengers used for interneuronal communication
nodes the elements of a network
nodes of Ranvier gaps in the myelin coating of myelinated axons
nominal kind the arbitrary assignment of a label to an entity that meets a certain set of prespecified conditions
noun phrase syntactic structure that contains at least one noun (often, the subject of the sentence) and includes all the relevant descriptors of the noun
object-centered representation the individual stores a representation of the object, independent of its appearance to the viewer
occipital lobe associated with visual processing, the primary motor cortex, which specializes in the planning, control, and execution of movement, particularly of movement involving any kind of delayed response
optic ataxia impaired visual control of the arm in reaching out to a visual target
optic nerve the nerve that transmits information from the retina to the brain
overconfidence an individual’s overvaluation of her or his own skills, knowledge, or judgment
overregularization occurs when individuals apply the general rules of language to the exceptional cases that vary from the norm
parallel distributed processing (PDP) models or connectionist models the handling of very large numbers of cognitive operations at once through a network distributed across incalculable numbers of locations in the brain
parallel processing occurs when multiple operations are executed all at once
parietal lobe associated with somatosensory processing
perception the set of processes by which we recognize, organize, and make sense of the sensations we receive from environmental stimuli
perceptual constancy occurs when our perception of an object remains the same even when our proximal sensation of the distal object changes
phoneme is the smallest unit of speech sound that can be used to distinguish one utterance in a given language from another
phonemic-restoration effect sounds that are missing from a speech signal are constructed by the brain so it seems to the listener that he actually heard the missing sound
phonological loop briefly holds inner speech for verbal comprehension and for acoustic rehearsal
photopigments chemical substances that absorb light, thereby starting the complex transduction process that transforms physical electromagnetic energy into an electrochemical neural impulse; rods and cones contain different types of photopigments; different types of photopigments absorb differing amounts of light and may detect different hues
photoreceptors the third layer of the retina contains the photoreceptors, which transduce light energy into electrochemical energy
phrase-structure grammar syntactical analysis of the structure of phrases as they are used
pons serves as a kind of relay station because it contains neural fibers that pass signals from one part of the brain to another
positive transfer occurs when the solution of an earlier problem makes it easier to solve a new problem
positron emission tomography (PET) scans measure increases in glucose consumption in active brain areas during particular kinds of information processing
pragmatic reasoning schemas general organizing principles or rules related to particular kinds of goals, such as permissions, obligations, or causations
pragmatics the study of how people use language
pragmatists ones who believe that knowledge is validated by its usefulness
premises propositions about which arguments are made
primacy effect refers to superior recall of words at and near the beginning of a list
primary motor cortex region of the cerebral cortex that is chiefly responsible for directing the movements of all muscles
primary somatosensory cortex receives information from the senses about pressure, texture, temperature, and pain
prime a node that activates a connected node; this activation is known as the priming effect
priming the facilitation of one’s ability to utilize missing information; occurs when recognition of certain stimuli is affected by prior presentation of the same or similar stimuli
priming effect the resulting activation of the node
proactive interference occurs when the interfering material occurs before, rather than after, learning of the to-be-remembered material
problem solving an effort to overcome obstacles obstructing the path to a solution
problem-solving cycle includes problem identification, problem definition, strategy formulation, organization of information, allocation of resources, monitoring, and evaluation
problem space the universe of all possible actions that can be applied to solving a problem, given any constraints that apply to the solution of the problem
procedural knowledge knowledge of procedures that can be implemented
production the generation and output of a procedure
production system an ordered set of productions in which execution starts at the top of a list of productions, continues until a condition is satisfied, and then returns to the top of the list to start anew
productive thinking involves insights that go beyond the bounds of existing associations
proposition basically an assertion, which may be either true or false
propositional theory belief suggesting that knowledge is represented only in underlying propositions, not in the form of images or of words and other symbols
prototype a sort of average of a class of related objects or patterns, which integrates all the most typical (most frequently observed) features of the class
prototype theory suggests that categories are formed on the basis of a (prototypical, or averaged) model of the category
psycholinguistics the psychology of our language as it interacts with the human mind
rationalist one who believes that the route to knowledge is through logical analysis
reasoning the process of drawing conclusions from principles and from evidence
recall to produce a fact, a word, or other item from memory
recency effect refers to superior recall of words at and near
the end of a list
recognition to select or otherwise identify an item as being
one that you learned previously
recognition-by-components (RBC) theory the belief that we
quickly recognize objects by observing the edges of
objects and then decomposing the objects into geons
reconstructive involving the use of various strategies (e.g.,
searching for cues, drawing inferences) for retrieving
the original memory traces of our experiences and then
rebuilding the original experiences as a basis for retrieval
rehearsal the repeated recitation of an item
representativeness occurs when we judge the probability of
an uncertain event according to (1) its obvious similarity
to or representation of the population from which it
is derived and (2) the degree to which it reflects the
salient features of the process by which it is generated
(such as randomness)
reticular activating system (RAS) a network of neurons
essential to the regulation of consciousness (sleep, wake-
fulness, arousal, and even attention to some extent and
to such vital functions as heartbeat and breathing); also
called reticular formation
retina a network of neurons extending over most of the back
(posterior) surface of the interior of the eye. The retina
is where electromagnetic light energy is transduced—that is, converted—into neural electrochemical impulses
retrieval (memory) refers to how you gain access to informa-
tion stored in memory
retroactive interference caused by activity occurring after we
learn something but before we are asked to recall that
thing; also called retroactive inhibition
retrograde amnesia occurs when individuals lose their pur-
poseful memory for events prior to whatever trauma
induces memory loss
rods light-sensitive photoreceptors in the retina of the eye
that provide peripheral vision and the ability to see
objects at night or in dim light; rods are not color
sensitive
satisficing occurs when we consider options one by one, and
then we select an option as soon as we find one that is
satisfactory or just good enough to meet our minimum
level of acceptability
schemas mental frameworks for representing knowledge that
encompass an array of interrelated concepts in a mean-
ingful organization
script a structure that describes appropriate sequences of
events in a particular context
search refers to a scan of the environment for particular fea-
tures—actively looking for something when you are not
sure where it will appear
selective attention choosing to attend to some stimuli and to
ignore others
selective-combination insight involves taking selectively
encoded and compared snippets of relevant information
and combining that information in a novel, productive way
selective-comparison insight involves novel perceptions of
how new information relates to old information
selective-encoding insight involves distinguishing relevant
from irrelevant information
semantic memory stores general world knowledge
semantic network a web of interconnected elements of
meaning
semantics the study of meaning in a language
sensory adaptation a lessening of attention to a stimulus that
is not subject to conscious control
sensory store capable of storing relatively limited amounts of
information for very brief periods
septum is involved in anger and fear
serial-position curve represents the probability of recall of a
given word, given its serial position (order of presenta-
tion) in a list
serial processing means by which information is handled
through a linear sequence of operations, one operation
at a time
short-term store capable of storing information for somewhat
longer periods but also of relatively limited capacity
signal a target stimulus
signal detection the detection of the appearance of a particu-
lar stimulus
signal-detection theory (SDT) a theory of how we detect
stimuli that involves four possible outcomes of the pres-
ence or absence of a stimulus and our detection or non-
detection of a stimulus
simile introduces the word like or as into a comparison
between items
single-system hypothesis suggests that two languages are
represented in just one system
slips of the tongue inadvertent linguistic errors in what
we say
soma the cell body of a neuron that is the part of the neuron
essential to the life and reproduction of the cell
spacing effect refers to the fact that long-term recall is best
when the material is learned over a longer period of time
spatial cognition refers to the acquisition, organization, and
use of knowledge about objects and actions in two- and
three-dimensional space
speech acts addresses the question of what you can accom-
plish with speech
split-brain patients people who have undergone operations
severing the corpus callosum
spreading activation excitation that fans out along a set of
nodes within a given network
**statistical significance** indicates the likelihood that a given set of results would be obtained if only chance factors were in operation.

**stereotypes** beliefs that members of a social group tend more or less uniformly to have particular types of characteristics.

**storage (memory)** refers to how you retain encoded information in memory.

**Stroop effect** demonstrates the psychological difficulty in selectively attending to the color of the ink and trying to ignore the word that is printed with the ink of that color.

**structuralism** seeks to understand the structure (configuration of elements) of the mind and its perceptions by analyzing those perceptions into their constituent components.

**structure-of-intellect (SOI)** Guilford's model for a three-dimensional structure of intelligence, embracing various contents, operations, and products of intelligence.

**subjective probability** a calculation based on the individual’s estimates of likelihood, rather than on objective statistical computations.

**subjective utility** a calculation based on the individual's judged weightings of utility (value), rather than on objective criteria.

**surface structure** a level of syntactic analysis that involves the specific syntactical sequence of words in a sentence and any of the various phrase structures that may result.

**syllogisms** deductive arguments that involve drawing conclusions from two premises.

**symbolic representation** meaning that the relationship between the word and what it represents is simply arbitrary.

**synapse** a small gap between neurons that serves as a point of contact between the terminal buttons of one or more neurons and the dendrites of one or more other neurons.

**syntax** refers to the way in which users of a particular language put words together to form sentences.

**synthesis** putting together various elements to arrange them into something useful.

**templates** highly detailed models for patterns we potentially might recognize.

**temporal lobe** associated with auditory processing.

**terminal buttons** knobs at the end of each branch of an axon; each button may release a chemical neurotransmitter as a result of an action potential.

**thalamus** relays incoming sensory information through groups of neurons that project to the appropriate region in the cortex.

**thematic roles** ways in which items can be used in the context of communication.

**theory** an organized body of general explanatory principles regarding a phenomenon.

**theory-based view of meaning** holds that people understand and categorize concepts in terms of implicit theories, or general ideas they have regarding those concepts.

**theory of multiple intelligences** belief that intelligence comprises multiple independent constructs, not just a single, unitary construct.

**tip-of-the-tongue phenomenon** experience of trying to remember something that is known to be stored in memory but that cannot readily be retrieved.

**top-down theories** driven by high-level cognitive processes, existing knowledge, and prior expectations.

**transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS)** technique that temporarily disrupts the normal activity of the brain in a limited area. This technique requires placing a coil on a person's head and then allowing an electrical current to pass through it. The current generates a magnetic field. This field disrupts the small area (usually no more than a cubic centimeter) beneath it. The researcher can then look at cognitive functioning when the particular area is disrupted.

**transfer** any carryover of knowledge or skills from one problem situation to another.

**transformational grammar** involves the study of transformational rules that guide the ways in which underlying propositions can be rearranged to form various phrase structures.

**transparency** occurs when people see analogies where they do not exist because of similarity of content.

**triarchic theory of human intelligence** belief that intelligence comprises three aspects, dealing with the relation of intelligence (1) to the internal world of the person, (2) to experience, and (3) to the external world.

**verbal comprehension** the receptive ability to comprehend written and spoken linguistic input, such as words, sentences, and paragraphs.

**verbal fluency** the expressive ability to produce linguistic output.

**verb phrase** syntactic structure that contains at least one verb and whatever the verb acts on, if anything.

**viewer-centered representation** an individual stores the way the object looks to him or her.

**vigilance** refers to a person's ability to attend to a field of stimulation over a prolonged period, during which the person seeks to detect the appearance of a particular target stimulus of interest.

**visuospatial sketchpad** briefly holds some visual images.

**well-structured problems** problems that have well-defined paths to solution.

**word-superiority effect** letters are read more easily when they are embedded in words than when they are presented either in isolation or with letters that do not form words.

**working memory** holds only the most recently activated portion of long-term memory, and it moves these activated elements into and out of brief, temporary memory storage.
References


References


References


Dedegöl, A., Choi, J., Cormier, K., Kowall, N. W., & Jenkins, B. G. (2004). Magnetic resonance spectroscopic analysis of...


Donders, F. C. (1868/1869). Over de snelheid van psychische processen. Onderzoekingen gedaan in het Physiologisch Laboratorium der Universiteit van Utrecht. [About the velocity of psychological processes: Studies done at the Physiological Laboratory of the University of Utrecht.] Tweede reeks, II, 92–120.


References


individuals with history of substance dependence. Neuropsychology, 22(6), 776–786.


References


Nettelbeck, T., & Young, R. (1996). Intelligence and savant syndrome: Is the whole greater than the sum of the fragments? Intelligence, 22, 49–67.


handbook of creativity (pp. 413–446). New York: Cambridge University Press.


Schirduan, V., & Case, K. (2004). Mindful curriculum leadership for students with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder: Leading in
elementary schools by using multiple intelligences theory (SUMIT). Teachers College Record, 106(1), 87–95.


References


References 589


Name Index

Page numbers followed by F indicate figures; T, tables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aaronson, D.</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbott, L. E.</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC Research Group</td>
<td>501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abelson, R. P.</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abernethy, B.</td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abler, B.</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abrams, D. M.</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ackerman, P. L.</td>
<td>18, 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ackil, J. K.</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adams, M. J.</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adler, J.</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adolphs, R.</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aglioti, S. M.</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aleman, A.</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alex (parrot)</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alkire, M. T.</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allain, P.</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allefeld, C.</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almor, A.</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpert, N. M.</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altenmüller, E.</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altschuler, S. V.</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almor, A.</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alex (parrot)</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpert, N. M.</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altenmüller, E.</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altschuler, S. V.</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almor, A.</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alex (parrot)</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpert, N. M.</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altenmüller, E.</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altschuler, S. V.</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almor, A.</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alex (parrot)</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpert, N. M.</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altenmüller, E.</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altschuler, S. V.</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almor, A.</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alex (parrot)</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpert, N. M.</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altenmüller, E.</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altschuler, S. V.</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almor, A.</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alex (parrot)</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpert, N. M.</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altenmüller, E.</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altschuler, S. V.</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almor, A.</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alex (parrot)</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
M., H. (amnesiac), 218
M., H. (patient), 48, 335
McAfoose, J., 483
McAndrews, J., 193
McBride, D., 369, 372, 373
Lichtenberger, E. O., 18
Lichtenstein, S., 498
Lickel, B., 497
Lindem, K., 314
Lindeman, J., 391
Lindsay, D. S., 137
Lindsey, D. T., 408
Linton, M., 253
Lipshitz, R., 502
Little, D. R., 323
Liu, K. P. Y., 277
Llinas, R. R., 143
Locke, J., 7, 38
Lockhart, R. S., 187, 189, 200
Lodi, R., 48
Loebell, H., 378, 384, 419
Loftus, E. F., 199, 253, 257, 258, 260, 261, 262, 334, 345, 406
Loftus, G. R., 199
Logan, G., 170, 173
Logothetis, N. K., 75
Lohnen, D. F., 467
Longoni, A. M., 294
Lonner, W. J., 404
Lorincz, A., 106–7
Loth, E., 339
Lou, H. C., 163
Louwserse, M. M., 300, 312
Love, B. C., 322
Love, T., 215
Lowenstein, J. A., 261
Lu, C., 472
Lubart, T. L., 479
Lucas, T. H., 460, 461
Luchins, A. S., 460, 461
Lucy, S. J., 163, 198
Luka, B. J., 378
Luo, J., 459
Lupton, L., 370
Luria, A., 214
Luria, A. R., 161
Luus, C. A. E., 258
Luzzati, C., 166
Luria, A., 214
Luka, B. J., 378
McCloskey, M. E., 259
McCormick, D. A., 48, 224
McDaniel, M. A., 78
McDermott, J., 117
McDermott, K. B., 24, 256, 262
McDermott, M. A., 24
MacDonald, J., 373
McDonough, L., 409
McDowd, J. M., 156
Mace, W. M., 98
McGarry-Roberts, P. A., 79
McGarva, A. R., 159
McGee, S., 455
McGuire, P. K., 289
McGurk, H., 373
McIntosh, A. R., 210
Mcmurry, C. K., 63
Mack, M. L., 324
MacKay, D. G., 218
Mckenna, J. J., 294
Mckrown, M. G., 394
McKhan, G. M., 436
McKinley, S. C., 327
Macknik, S. L., 89
McKone, E., 190
McKoon, G., 212, 311, 397
Mackworth, N. H., 142
MacLean, K. A., 142, 160
MacLeod, C. M., 174, 263
MacLin, O. H., 120
McMullen, P. A., 112
McNamara, D. S., 397, 468
McNamara, T. P., 310, 311, 344
McNamara, T. R., 311
Mcnaughton, B. C., 237, 352
Mcnaughton, B. L., 237
McNeil, J. E., 129
McNeill, D., 180
Macquet, A. C., 502
McRorie, M., 162
MacSweeney, M., 437
Madden, D. J., 147, 148
Maddison, I., 365
Maddox, B., 347
Maguire, E. A., 310
Makel, M. C., 480
Makowski, T., 248
Malakos, S., 175
Malagro, R., 420
Malpass, R. S., 120, 259
Malsbury, C. W., 48
Malt, B., 325, 325T
Mandler, G., 219
Mangun, G. R., 43, 48, 57, 66, 74, 76, 153
Mani, K., 302
Mankoff, R., 446
Manktelow, K. I., 512
Manns, J. R., 46, 223
Mantriya, T., 265
Maratos, M. P., 414
Marcel, A. J., 178, 181
Marcus, D., 409
Maril, A., 181
Markman, A. B., 328, 331
Markman, E. M., 331, 367
Markovits, H., 515, 523
Markowitz, H., 488
Marr, D., 16, 27, 85
Marrero, M. Z., 414
Marsh, B., 501
Marsh, R. L., 151
Marsolek, C. J., 112
Martin, L., 404
Martin, M., 104
Martinez-Conde, S., 89
Mascolo, M. F., 313
Massaro, D. W., 370, 374
Mason, M. E. J., 388
Masuda, T., 5
Matarazzo, J. D., 78
Marlin, M. W., 195, 264, 283
Matsui, M., 339
Matsuzawa, T., 311
Matthews, R. J., 214
Mattingley, J. B., 108
Mattingly, I. G., 372
May, E., 517
Mayer, R. E., 444F, 453F, 454F
Mazaheri, A., 67
Meacham, J. A., 241
Meade, M. L., 263
Meador-Woodruff, J. H., 48
Mechelli, A., 413, 417
Medin, D. L., 323, 326, 331
Medina, J. H., 63
Meerlo, P., 237
Meeter, M., 157
Meinerz, M., 414
Mejia-Arauz, R., 13
Meinik, L., 261
Melrose, R. J., 524
Melton, R. J., 518
Memon, A., 262
Merikle, P., 137
Mervis, C. B., 325, 326
Metcalfe, J., 234, 456, 457, 458F
Metcalfe, S., 118
Metzger, W., 89
Metzler, J., 287, 289, 290, 291, 298, 300
Meyer, A. S., 361
Meyer, D., 157
Meyer, D. E., 390, 391
Meyer, M., 314
Meyer, R. E., 389
Micheau, J., 63
Micheyl, C., 148
Middleton, F. A., 51
Miesler, L., 501
Mignot, E., 48
Milani, L., 103
Miller, B., 387
Miller, D. G., 257, 258
Miller, G., 16
Miller, G. A., 16, 198, 354, 367, 371, 420
Miller, J., 155
Miller, M. B., 54
Miller, M. D., 200
Mills, C. J., 201
Milner, A. D., 95, 96, 130
Milen, B., 218, 221
Mingagawa-Kawai, Y., 365
Mirman, D., 371
Mirochnich, S., 221
Mishkin, M., 95
Miymoto, Y., 5
Moir, I., 312
Medaferri, P. A., 257
Medell, H. I., 303
Meettoenen, R., 373
Mohammed, A. K. K., 66
Monaco, A. P., 387
Monnier, C., 264
Monteill, S., 251
Montague, L., 367
Monello, D. R., 300, 312
Montgomery, K., 120
Mooney, A., 426
Moore, N. M., 259
Moore, K. S., 238
Moran, S., 480, 481
Morawski, J., 7
Moray, N., 151, 153
Morey, R., 378, 384, 419
Mor, M., 79
Morris, C. D., 202
Morrison, T., 479
Morson, J., 388
Morton, T. A., 331
Morton, T. U., 427
Moscovitch, M., 128, 223, 263
Mottet, A. E., 366
Mottet, B., 142
Mouchiroud, C., 479
Moulton, S. T., 276
Mueller, H. J., 144
Mufwene, S. S., 365
Mulder, A. B., 66
Mulford, M., 523
Mulligan, N. W., 190
Murphy, K., 190
Murray, M., 290
Murray, J., 290
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Webster, M. A.</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wedderburn, A. A. I.</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wegner, D. M.</td>
<td>177, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weinberger, R.</td>
<td>122, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weinberger, D. R.</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weingartner, H.</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weinshall, D.</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weisberg, D. R.</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weiskrantz, L.</td>
<td>127, 181, 205, 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weisstein, N.</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Welbourne, S. R.</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wells, G. L.</td>
<td>257, 258, 259, 261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Welsh, M. C.</td>
<td>453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wenke, D.</td>
<td>449, 467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Werner, H.</td>
<td>395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wernicke, C.</td>
<td>52, 53, 432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wertheimer, M.</td>
<td>13, 113, 456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Westwood, D. A.</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheeldon, L. R.</td>
<td>361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheeler, D. D.</td>
<td>390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whishaw, B.</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whishaw, I. Q.</td>
<td>51, 129, 432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whitaker, H. A.</td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whitten, S.</td>
<td>443, 468</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whorf, B. L.</td>
<td>404, 410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wickens, D. D.</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wickert, J. C.</td>
<td>78, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Widner, S. C.</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiebe, D.</td>
<td>456, 458F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiedenbauer, G.</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiener, S. I.</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiesel, T.</td>
<td>66, 105, 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiesel, T. N.</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilcox, L. M.</td>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Williams, A. M.</td>
<td>472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Williams, J. E.</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Williams, M.</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Williams, R. N.</td>
<td>507</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Williams, S. E.</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Williams, W. M.</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willis, R. F.</td>
<td>422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson, B. A.</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson, C.</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson, M. A.</td>
<td>199, 237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson, T. D.</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilt, J. K.</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winawer, J.</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windham, G. C.</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windschitl, P. D.</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winocur, G.</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisco, B. E.</td>
<td>254, 264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wise, R. A.</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wisniewski, E. J.</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Witelson, S. F.</td>
<td>52, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wittgenstein, L.</td>
<td>99, 324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wittlinger, R. P.</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woldorff, M. G.</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wolf, O. T.</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wolfe, J. M.</td>
<td>111, 146, 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wolford, G.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood, J. V.</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood, N.</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woodman, G. F.</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woodward, A. L.</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woodworth, R. S.</td>
<td>514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wright, D. B.</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wu, L.</td>
<td>465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wundr, W.</td>
<td>8, 24, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xu, F.</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xu, Y.</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yamauchi, T.</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yang, D.</td>
<td>472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yang, R.</td>
<td>370, 474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yang, Y.</td>
<td>456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yantis, S.</td>
<td>142, 144, 156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yendrikhovskij, S. N.</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yeo, R. A.</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yi, D.-J.</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yokoyama, S.</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoshikawa, S.</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young, A. W.</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young, R.</td>
<td>19, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yovel, G.</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuille, J.</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuille, J. C.</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zacks, J. M.</td>
<td>289, 293, 294, 300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zapparoli, P.</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zaragoza, M. S.</td>
<td>256, 259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zaromb, F.</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhang, L. F.</td>
<td>481</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhang, M.</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhao, L.</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinchenko, P. I.</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zola, S. M.</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zola-Morgan, S. M.</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zolton, B.</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zuidema, L. A.</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zumbach, J.</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zurif, E. B.</td>
<td>433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zurofsky, B.</td>
<td>483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zwaan, R. A.</td>
<td>300, 312, 364</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Subject Index

Page numbers followed by F indicate figures; T, tables.

**A**
- ACT-R (adaptive control of thought-rational) model, 344–48, 346F
- Adaptation to environment. See also ADHD (attention deficit hyperactivity disorder); Cognitive errors; Flexibility; Habituation; Nervous system; Sensory adaptation by animals, 112 and brainstem, 50 and change blindness, 165 as evolutionary advantage, 512 in expertise, 472, 473T intelligence as, 17, 18, 80, 292, 314 knowledge organization as, 340 by limbic systems, 46 via conscious attention, 138, 142 ADHD (attention deficit hyperactivity disorder), 163–65, 169, 182 Agnosia. See Visual agnosia Alzheimer’s disease acetylcholine deficit in, 64, 82 applied vs. basic research in, 225 cognitive dysfunction in, 62, 161, 335 diagnosis of, 221–23 and hippocampus, 66, 82, 221 PET scans for, 72–73 Amnesia, 171, 217–21, 226, 343 Amygdala and anger and aggression, 45, 46, 49 and emotion, 26, 224, 225 and fear, 118 vigilance regulation by, 142 Analogical codes, 281, 310 Angiograms, 68, 69–70 Animal research, 11, 66, 429–32 Aphasia, 52, 379, 436–38, 437F Apraxia, 54 Arousal response, 64, 160, 161, 169 Artificial intelligence (AI), 14, 33, 337, 476–78 Associationism, 9–10, 38, 97. See also Functionalism; Structuralism Attention. See also Attentional-resources theory; Schizophrenia; Selective attention theories; Task-specific attention theories automatic vs. controlled processes in, 169–70, 172–75, 172T and brain areas, 57, 160–61 consciousness compared to, 138, 160, 177–81, 182–83 deficits in, 163–66 defined, 137, 137F functions of, 138, 139T influences on, 159–60 and intelligence, 161–62 and learning, 119 Attentional blink phenomena, 119, 155 Attentional-resources theory, 155–57, 156F, 183 Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. See ADHD (attention deficit hyperactivity disorder) Attentive processes. See Controlled processes Attenuation model. See Treisman’s model Autism emotional impairment in, 46, 120 language impairment in, 232, 426 orienting dysfunction in, 161 savant ability in, 320 theories of, 438–39 Automatic processes. See also ACT-R (adaptive control of thought-rational) model; Habituation; Preconscious processing; Unconscious processing and attention, 172–75 vs. controlled processes, 169–70, 172T defined, 183 by experts, 473, 475T, 485

**B**
- Base-rate information, 494, 527
- Behaviorism, 11–13, 15, 38
- Beowulf (epic poem), 364
- Biases, 497–99, 514–15, 518, 523, 527. See also Expectations, influence of; Heuristics
- Bilingualism advantages vs. disadvantages, 412, 415 and age factors, 413, 417 and brain studies, 436 single- vs. dual-system hypotheses, 414–15, 415F Binocular depth cues. See Depth cues Blindsight phenomenon, 181, 182
- Boredom. See Habituation
- Bottom-up perception theories, 96–97, 110, 133. See also Direct perception theory; Feature-matching theories; Recognition-by-components (RBC) theory; Template theories
- Brain. See also Brain lesions; Brain research; Cerebral cortex; Cerebral hemispheres; Localization of brain functions; Neurons; Prefrontal cortex (PFC); Primary motor cortex; Primary visual cortex; Visual pathways in brain as cognition metaphor, 351 death determination of, 50 development of, 44F, 51 disorders of, 46, 64, 75–78 energy used by, 42 and intelligence, 16, 78–80 nurturance effect on, 47 views of, 43F
- Brain lesions. See also Lesioning techniques and attentional dysfunction, 165–66 and behavioral dysfunction, 65, 66 in blindsight phenomenon, 181 and cognitive deficits, 30, 46, 304 and color perception deficits, 130 and inconclusiveness of study findings, 435 and memory, 209, 256 MRI detection of, 71 and object recognition, 376 and speech dysfunction, 52, 53F, 432 Brain mapping. See Localization of brain functions
- Brain research, 66, 70T, 75, 81–82, 161, 179. See also Brain; Brain lesions; Research methods; Split-brain patients; Treatment methods; Individual techniques
- Brainstem, 50
- Brain tumors, 76–77
- Broadbent’s model, 150–51, 150F
- Broca’s area and aphasia, 436–38, 437F and autism, 232 defined, 52 and language, 73, 431 and speech, 53F, 66
- Brodmann’s areas, 483

**C**
- Canterbury Tales (Chaucer), 364
- Capacity models of attention
  - See Attentional-resources theory
- Car accidents and attention deficits, 136, 157 cell phone use in, 159, 160F change blindness in, 131 cognitive research on, 34 head injuries from, 77 perceptual distortion in, 3
Subject Index 605

proto-frequency-based categorization, 325–26
schematic representations, 336–40
semantic-network models, 332–36
as theory-based view of meaning, 328–31
Deductive reasoning and adaptive schemas, 511–12
in conditional reasoning, 507–9, 508T
connectionist model of, 524
defined, 507, 527
error avoidance in, 518–19
in syllogistic reasoning, 513–17, 514F, 515T, 516F
and Wason “selection task,” 509–11, 510T
Dendrites, 61, 62, 221, 224
Depression, 63T, 64, 81, 264, 501
Depth cues, 124–26, 125F, 126T, 127, 128F, 132–33
Depth perception, 124–30
Dialectical thinking. See also Nature vs. nurture;
Rationalism vs. empiricism in linguistic relativity, 410
in selective attention theories, 150
in structuralism vs. functionalism, 7
as synthesis of thesis and antithesis, 4–5, 13, 36–38
as theory vs. data, 34
Dichotomic presentation, 149, 149F
Direct perception theory, 97–99, 133
Discourse, comprehension of, 392–98, 399
Dishabituation. See Habituation
Display-size effect, 143–44, 143F
Distal objects, 88, 88T, 122
Distractor (nontarget) stimuli, 143–44
Divided attention theories, 138, 153–59, 155–57, 158F, 183
Domain specificity.
See Modularity of mind
Dopamine (DA), 63, 64, 161, 163, 164
Dual-code theory, 277–81, 308, 316
Dual-process theory, 523–24, 528
See also Reading
E
Ebbinghaus Forgetting Curve, 10F
Ecological model. See Direct perception theory
Ecological validity, 32–33, 39, 316, 356, 439, 484.
See also Causal inferences
Economic model, 489–90
Electroencephalograms (EEGs), 67–68
Electromagnetic spectrum, 92F, 93
Emotional intelligence, 20, 99, 446.
See also Autism
Empiricism vs. rationalism. See Rationalism vs. empiricism
Encoding. See also Encoding specificity
acoustic vs. semantic, 202, 230, 231, 266
in analogy solving, 467, 467F, 522
correlation context effect on, 235, 263
defined, 187, 230
elaboration of, 200, 202, 226, 255
forms of, 230–33
and hippocampus, 223
semantic, 393–94
stimuli binding during, 211
Encoding specificity, 241, 265, 267.
See also Memory;
Retrieval of memory
Environmental cues, 86, 98, 98F, 121–24, 165.
See also Context, effect of; Depth cues
Epilepsy, 67, 74
Episodic buffer, 204, 205
Episodic memory, 171, 209–10, 223, 226
Essentialism, 330–31
Event-related potential (ERP) techniques, 67–68, 153, 307
Executive functions, 47, 161, 412, 439. 
See also Central executive
Exemplars, 327
See also Biases; Stereotypes
Experimental method, 22–23, 24–25, 28–30, 520
Experimenter bias. See Biases;
Expectations, influence of
Expert-individuation hypothesis, 120
Expertise. See also Artificial intelligence (AI); Biases
characteristics of, 473T
defined, 468
knowledge organization in, 468–71, 473, 485
and practice activity, 472, 477 and talent, 474, 476
Explicit memory, 190, 192, 209.
See also Amnesia; Implicit memory
Extratopic objects. See Distal objects
Extinction phenomenon, 166
Eye, composition of, 93–95, 93F
Eyewitness testimony, validity of, 257–61, 405–6
Face recognition, 117–21, 117F, 354
Fallacies, 489, 499–501. See also Biases; Deductive reasoning;
Heuristics
False memories. See Constructive memory; Decay theory; Interference theory; Memory
Feature analysis system, 116–17, 121
Feature-integration theory, 145, 153
Feature-matching theories, 101–5
Feature-search processes, 144–45, 144F. See also Speech perception
Figure-ground perception, 113–15, 114F
Filter and bortellence theories. See Selective attention theories
Flashbulb memory, 255
Flexibility. See also Adaptation to environment; Autism;
Functional fixedness vs. automatic expertise, 473–74
in creative people, 480
and intelligence, 20, 79
in learning, 331, 351
in problem solving, 445, 471
Forcing functions, 175–76, 241
Forebrain, 43, 44, 45–46, 48, 82
Forgetting. See Amnesia; Decay theory; Interference theory; Memory
Form and pattern perception. See Bottom-up perception theories; Gestalt psychology; Top-down perception theories
Frontal lobe and attention deficits, 163, 165
executive functions in, 205, 439
high-level cognitive and motor processes in, 56, 57–58, 82, 459, 466, 525
and intelligence, 80
and lobotomy, 12
and script generation and use, 339
Functional-equivalence hypothesis, 287, 288–89, 288T, 293, 317
Functional fixedness, 460, 484.
See also Flexibility
Functionalism, 8–9, 38. See also Associationism; Structuralism
Functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) scans, 73–74, 119, 211
Fusiform gyri, 117, 119–21, 129
Ganglion cells, 93, 94, 95
Ganzfeld effect, 89–90
Gender differences, 78, 79, 164, 293–94, 409, 434–36
Geons, 106–7, 107F
Gestalt psychology. See also Speech perception
defined, 13
figure-ground effect, 114F
form perception principles in, 113–16, 113F, 115T, 133
and insightful problem solving, 455–57, 457F
and mental image manipulation, 286
Global precedence effect, 103, 103F
Glucose metabolism, 79–80
Gray matter, 51, 78, 417
Groupthink, 504–5
Guided search theory, 146–47, 147F
Habituation, 167–69, 168T, 177, 183
Head injuries, 77
Hemispheres. See Cerebral hemispheres
Heuristics. See also Biases;
Fallacies
anchoring, 495
availability, 4, 494–95
in cognitive map manipulation, 310–14, 313F, 317
defined, 490
elimination by aspects, 491–93
fast-and-frugal class of, 501, 503
framing, 496–97
overextension errors, 518
in problem solving, 449, 450T, 451F, 469, 484, 488
representativeness, 493–94, 523, 527
satisfying, 491
Hierarchical models. See Semantic-network models
Hindbrain, 43, 44, 50–51, 82
Hippocampus. See also
Korsakoff’s syndrome
and Alzheimer’s disease,
66, 82, 221
and cognitive maps, 310
and insightful problem
solving, 459
and learning, 81, 237, 336
and memory, 46, 66, 223–24,
226
and stress regulation, 47–48
Hypermesnia, 216–17
Hypotheses. See also specific
hypotheses
in constructive perception, 108
defined, 23
vs. direct perception, 99
formulation of, 36
in inductive reasoning, 520
pattern recognition in, 54
testing of, 28, 31, 127

I
Identity. See Object recognition
III-structured problems. See
Problems
Implicit memory, 171, 190–92.
See also Explicit memory
Inattentional blindness, 119,
165. See also Preconscious
processing; Unconscious
processing
Indirect speech theory, 425–26
Inductive reasoning, 519–23,
524, 527–28

Information processing. See also
Connectionist model;
Intelligence; Knowledge
representation; Memory;
“Turing test”
components of, 21
serial vs. parallel, 152, 170,
172T, 213, 341, 356–57
and systematic errors, 35
Information theory, 15, 348
Innate ideas, 7, 36
Insight, 454–59, 457F, 458F, 484
Intelligence. See also Aphasias;
Autism; Bilingualism;
Color perception; Reading;
Sapir-Whorf hypothesis;
Semantics; Speech perception;
Syntax in animals, 429–32
cognitive influence by, 403
components of, 365–68
defined, 360
dialectical differences in, 416–17
and gender differences, 426–29,
434–36
impaired acquisition of, 47
and memory impairments of, 405–6
metaphorical, 419–21
properties of, 361–65, 398–99
psychobiological basis of, 14
psychology of, 380
relativity vs. universality of, 407–10
slips of the tongue, 418–19
social use of (pragmatics),
421, 440
and speech acts,
422–26, 424T, 425T, 427T
syntactical-lexical relationships,
383–85
Late filter model, 152, 152F
Law of Prägnanz, 113
Learning. See also Biases
and attention, 119
from context, 98, 344, 386,
393–91, 394, 395
and distractions, 157
distributed vs. massed prac-
tice, 235–36, 237, 238,
240, 267
effects of on brain, 35, 71–72
flexibility in, 331
as new neuronal connections,
14, 61, 62
practice effect on, 173F
and REM sleep, 237
and repetition, 10
by social observations, 13
speed of information process-
ing compared with, 246
Lesioning techniques, 66, 81,
310. See also Brain lesions
Lexical access. See Word
recognition
Lexicon, 367, 376, 383–84, 399,
403
Limbic system, 46, 49
Linguistic-relativity hypothesis.
See Sapir-Whorf hypothesis
Lobes of cerebral hemispheres.
See specific lobes
Localization of brain functions.
See also Attention;
Dyslexia; Working memory
and awake surgical tests, 77
and causal inferences, 75
in cerebral cortex, 48, 51–56
and creativity, 483
in decision making, 505–6
defined, 43
and emotion, 119–20, 142
gender differences, 434–36
and general applicability, 435
in insight processes, 459
in language differences, 360
and memory, 223–25, 232
in neurons, 61, 62, 63, 63T
in problem solving, 466
in reasoning, 524–26
and semantic processing, 433
in speech, 373, 374
by structure, 45F, 49T–50T,
53F, 57F, 58F–59F, 60F
summary of, 82
in tic disorders, 375
Local precedence effect, 103–4,
104F

M
Macbeth (Shakespeare), 525
Magnetic resonance imaging
scans. See MRI (magnetic
resonance imaging) scans
Magnetoencephalography (MEG), 74–75
Medulla oblongata, 50–51
Memory. See also Alzheimer’s
disease; Amnesia;
Encoding; Memory, models
of; Retrieval of memory;
Storage of memory;
Working memory
consolidation of, 234, 235,
236–38, 267
as context dependent, 263–65
defined, 187
dysfunctions of, 48, 210, 211,
220–21, 256–61
outstanding cases of,
214–17, 253–56, 472
processing of, 243, 243–44,
243F, 246, 267
repression of, 261–63
retrospective vs. prospective,
241–42
tasks for measuring, 187,
188T, 189–92, 226
and temporal lobe, 186
Memory, models of. See also
Memory
connectionist model,
212–14, 213F, 349–52
levels-of-processing (LOP)
model, 200, 201–2, 201T
multiple memory systems,
209–12, 212F
process-dissociation model,
190, 192
“three-store model,”
193–200, 194F, 203T
working memory model,
203–5, 206F, 207–9, 207F
Mental images
applications of, 276–77
defined, 276
rotations of, 289–94, 290F,
291F
scaling of, 294–96
scanning of, 296–98, 297F
Mental models, 301–4, 515–17,
516F
Mental processes. See Cognitive
processes
Mental representations. See also
Categorization of knowledge;
Dual-code theory; Encoding;
Heuristics; Language; Mental
images; Mental models;
Recognition-by-components
(RBC) theory
ambiguity of, 283–84, 284F
as images vs. words vs.
propositions, 273–75, 281–82,
314–15, 317
as organized percepts, 90, 92
as vantage-centric, 111–13
Mental rotations, 289–94, 290F
Pandemonium model, 101–3, 102F, 104
Parallel distributed processing (PDP). See Connectionist model
Parietal-frontal integration theory (P-FITT), 80
Parietal lobe, 56–57, 58, 80, 82, 161, 221. See also Autism; Gender differences; Scripts
PASS (Planning, Attention, and Simultaneous-Successive) Process Model of Human Cognition, 161
Pattern recognition. See Feature analysis system; Gestalt psychology
Perception. See also Bottom-up perception theories; Color perception; Constructive perception theories; Direct perception theory; Object recognition; Optical illusions; Speech perception; Top-down perception theories
cognitive role in, 86, 92
deficits of, 127–31, 133
defined, 85
and intelligence, 107–10
as vantage-centric, 111–13
Percepts, 90, 108, 110, 284–85, 287
Peripheral nervous system (PNS). See Nervous system
PET (positron emission tomography) scans, 68, 72–73
Phonemes, 365, 366T, 399
Phonemic-restoration effect, 371
Phonological loop, 204, 205
Photoreceptors, 94–95
Phrase-structure grammar, 379–81
Positron emission tomography (PET) scans. See PET (Positron emission tomography) scans
Postmortem studies, 26, 30, 65–66
Practice effects, 173F, 234
Pragmatics, 421
Pragmatism, 9
Preattentive processes. See Automatic processes
Preconscious processing, 178–81, 182–83, 391, 466. See also Automatic processes; Inattentive blindness; Unconscious processing
Prefrontal cortex (PFC), 56, 211
Premises
in categorical syllogisms, 513–15, 515T
conclusive errors from, 508, 518, 527
defined, 507
mental models for, 517, 519
Primitivity effect, 250, 251F
Primary motor cortex, 57–59, 58F–59F. See also Brain
Primary somatosensory cortex, 58–59
Primary visual cortex, 60, 95, 100, 104–5, 105F, 127. See also Blindsight; Brain; Visual pathways in brain
Priming effect and connectionist model, 212–13, 226
defined, 182–83
and implicit memory, 190–91, 219
in post-hypnotic subjects, 171
and preconscious processing, 178–79
semantic and preconscious processing types, 343–44
Principles of Psychology (James), 9, 137
Proactive interference (inhibition), 248
Probability, 490, 492–93, 492T, 501, 527. See also Fallacies; Heuristics
Problems. See also Problem solving
algorithms, 449
insight, 454–56, 454F, 456F
isomorphic, 450, 451Fb
move, 447, 448F, 450T
Tower of Hanoi, 452–54, 452F
Problem solving. See also Creativity; Localization of brain functions; Problems analogy (structural) recognition in, 462–65, 467F
analysis in, 443–44
by experts vs. novices, 468–71, 470F, 473–74, 475T
incubation in, 465–66, 485
insight role in, 454–59, 457F, 458F, 484
intelligence-glucose ratio during, 79
mental sets (entrenchment) in, 460–61
planning in, 466–68
problem representation in, 450, 452–54, 455
problem space model, 449, 451F
Neurons
action potential of, 350
binocular, 127
as feature detectors, 145
and information processing, 95
of primary visual cortex, 104–5
in retina, 93–94
stimuli effects on, 66
structure of, 61–62, 62F
viewpoint sensitivity of, 106–7
Neuroscience. See also Brain; Brain lesions; Cerebral cortex; Feature-matching theories; Localization of brain functions; Recognition-by-components (RBC) theory; Template theories; specific brain structures and functions of aging, 147–48
of attention, 153, 160–61
of childhood poverty, 47
defined, 42
depth perception, 99, 127
of face recognition, 119–21
of intelligence, 78–80
and neural mapping limits, 351
of vigilance, 142–43
and working memory, 205
Neurotransmitters, 62–64, 63T, 224–25, 226, 350
Monocular depth cues. See Depth cues
Morphemes, 365–67, 399
Motor theory of speech perception, 372–73, 374
MRI (magnetic resonance imaging) scans, 68, 70–71, 71F, 77
Multiple intelligences theory, 19–20, 20T, 165
Myelin sheath, 61–62
Naloxone (drug), 64–65
Nature vs. nurture, 4–5, 36, 81, 473–74, 476, 526
Neoplasms. See Brain tumors
Nervous system
central (CNS), 81
defined, 42, 43, 61
in embryo, 44
Peripheral nervous system (PNS), 57, 81
Network models. See Neural-network models; Semantic-network models
Neural-network models, 355

Merrim-Webster’s Collegiate Dictionary (2003), 14
Merrim-Webster’s Online Dictionary (2010), 274
Metabolic imaging techniques, 72–75
Metacognition, 18, 21, 234
Metamemory, 234, 241
Metaphorical language, 419–21
Methodologies. See Research methods
Midbrain, 43, 48, 82
Mind. See also Localization of brain functions; Modularity of mind
nature of, 36–38
as nonobservable black box, 12
philosophical vs. physiological understanding of, 6
as scientific object of study, 24
structures vs. processes (functions) of, 7–9, 37, 225
Mnemonic devices, 238, 239T, 240T
Modularity of mind
defined, 19
vs. domain generality, 16, 37, 39, 132, 354, 357
in hemispheric differences, 51–56
and specialization of tasks, 130
Modularity of Mind, The (Fodor), 354
Monocular depth cues. See Depth cues
Morphemes, 365–67, 399
Motor theory of speech perception, 372–73, 374
MRI (magnetic resonance imaging) scans, 68, 70–71, 71F, 77
Multiple intelligences theory, 19–20, 20T, 165
Myelin sheath, 61–62
Naloxone (drug), 64–65
Nature vs. nurture, 4–5, 36, 81, 473–74, 476, 526
Neoplasms. See Brain tumors
Nervous system
central (CNS), 81
defined, 63
and cognitive correlations, 42, 43, 61
in embryo, 44
Peripheral nervous system (PNS), 57, 81
Network models. See Neural-network models; Semantic-network models
Neural-network models, 355

Psycholinguistics, 361, 374

S
Saper–Whorf hypothesis, 404–7
Schemata

R
Random sample, 25, 28
RAS. See Reticular activating system

Recall tasks, 187, 189
Recency effect, 250, 251F
Recognition-by-components (RBC) theory, 106–7, 133
Recognition tasks, 187, 189
Rematch, 234–35, 241, 247, 251
REM sleep, 236–37, 236F
Representational neglect, 298–99
Research methods. See also Alzheimer’s disease; Brain lesions; Brain research; Cross-disciplinary studies; Postmortem studies; Treatment methods basic as applied, 35, 38, 39, 81, 132, 484 biological vs. behavioral, 38, 81, 182, 225, 439 comparison of, 267–27T computer simulations and artificial intelligence, 33 experimental, 24–25, 28 goals of, 22–23, 36 psychological techniques, 30 self-reports, case studies, and naturalistic observation, 30–33 in vivo techniques, 65, 66 Resource theories. See Attentional-resources theory
Reticular activating system (RAS), 48, 50 Retina, 93–95, 94F Retrieval of memory. See also Encoding specificity; Hypernesia; Memory, models of; Mnemonic devices; Priming effect as constructive, 252–53 context effect on, 202, 263–65 defined, 187, 230 emotionality effect on, 224 from long-term memory, 244–46 from short-term memory, 242–44, 243F, 267 Rods and cones. See Photoreceptors

S
Sapir–Whorf hypothesis, 404–7 Schemata

Reticular activating system


Unconscious processing. See also Automatic processes; Inat- tentional blindness; Pre- conscious processing and advertising, 177

V


Working memory. See also Memory and acoustical encoding, 231 and ACT-R model, 346F and attentive, controlled processes, 152 and brain, 73, 206F and connectionist model, 212–13, 226 and deductive reasoning errors, 517 and executive function, 225 and forgetfulness, 246 integrative model of, 203–9 and intelligence, 208–9 as limited and temporary, 182, 194F and macropropositions, 395–96 and reasoning, 453, 524 and script generation, 339 tasks to assess, 207F

X
X-ray techniques, 68–69
This page intentionally left blank
THE STROOP EFFECT

In 1935, John Ridley Stroop observed a peculiar phenomenon of visual selective attention. Try implementing the set of tasks shown to the right. If you are like most people, you will find it more difficult to perform task c than either task a or task b. During the decades since the Stroop effect was first observed, many reasons have been proposed to explain it. For instance, in 1991, Colin MacLeod proposed that seeing the color word activates one cortical pathway and trying to identify the ink-color name activates a different cortical pathway, and the former pathway interferes with the latter.

(a) Read through this list of color names as quickly as possible. Read from right to left across each line.

Red  Yellow  Blue  Green
Blue  Red  Green  Yellow
Yellow  Green  Red  Blue

(b) Name each of these color patches as quickly as possible. Name from left to right across each line.

(c) Name as quickly as possible the color of ink in which each word is printed. Name from left to right across each line.

POSITRON EMISSION TOMOGRAPHY (PET) SCANS

The brain consumes glucose (a simple sugar) for its activity, and the most active areas of the brain consume the most glucose. PET scans use a radioactively tagged form of glucose, which can be detected by a scanner. The red areas on the scans indicate the greatest consumption of glucose and therefore the most brain activity, the blue areas indicate the least activity, and the intermediate colors (in the order of the color spectrum) show intermediate levels of activity. These scans show the regions of the cortex that are the most active during particular activities (e.g., the frontal lobes during motor activity and planning, the occipital lobes during visual activity, and the temporal lobes during auditory activity).